E 5
Cost — £ 1 - 1 - 0 D
M Pennyman
A. 6

Hugh Cecil Earl of Lonsdale.

lon-GENT

THE EXPERIENC'D FARRIER, OR Farring Compleated.

CONTAINING

Every thing that belongs to a Compleat HORSEMAN, GROOM, FARRIER or HORSELEACH.

WITH

The Office of the Breeder, Keeper, Rider, Feeder, Buyer and Farrier: Shewing the Marks of Beauty, Goodneſs, Faults and Imperfections of Horſes; with the beſt Method of Buying, Dieting, Shooing, and otherwiſe Managing of Horſes for all Uſes.

ALSO,

Plain Directions in the Knowledge of all Diſtempers and Accidents incident to Horſes, *&c.* With the beſt Receipts and Methods uſed in their Cure, never publiſhed before.

In Two PARTS, Phyſical and Chyrurgical.

By *E. R.* Gent.

The Fourth EDITION.

LONDON,

Printed for G. CONYERS, J. and B. SPRINT, and T. BALLARD; and ſold by EDWARD SYMON over againſt the *Royal Exchange* in *Cornhill*. M. DCC. XX.

TO THE READER.

YOU would say, That * this Book, tho new, is no otherwise than old, by reason that a great part thereof are Collections, and therefore the less to be regarded. Let me ask you one Question, Is the Honey the worse, because the Bee sucks it out of many Flowers? or, Is the Spider's Web the more to be valued, because extracted out of her own Bowels? Let not this be any prejudice to this Book, but peruse it without Partiality, and with the Judgment of a Farrier: and you shall then find, That these old Collections are become new, because they are new digested and modelized, and put into a better Form and Method than ever any before printed: For let me tell you, there was never any thing in this Nature ever printed before, but there was something or other wanting to make it a more compleat Book of Farring; but in this you shall find nothing wanting, either to the perfecting a Cure of all Diseases of a Horse, either inward or outward, or to the making a Man a compleat Horseman. Besides these old Collections, you shall find a great many new Additions.

* Nil dictum quod non prius dictum.

First, An Alphabetical Table of most of the Principal Medicines both Simple and Compound belonging to

Farring, *with their Virtues in curing the several Diseases incident to Horses. A Table so very useful, that 'tis much to be wondred at, that amongst so many Excellent Books of* Farring *as are Extant in the World, there should be nothing of this kind ever before annexed to them.*

Secondly, *You have a large Table of the Nature, Temperature and Virtues of most Simples, set down Alphabetically.*

Thirdly, *You have an Account of many Hundreds more of Simples, placed in order one after another for the Cure of all inward and outward Diseases; with an Advertisement touching the Usefulness of them.*

Fourthly, *You have the Gathering, Drying and Preserving of Simples and their Juices.*

Fifthly, *You have the Method of making Syrups, Decoctions, Oils, Ointments, Plasters, Charges, Poultices, Balls,* &c.

Sixthly, *You have hot Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.*

Seventhly, *You have cold Medicaments appropriate to the same Use.*

Eighthly, *You have the Properties of purging Medicaments.*

Ninthly, *You have the Properties of altering Medicaments.*

Tenthly, *You have a Table of the Diseases of a Horse, either inward or outward, set down Alphabetically, shewing you where they do grow in any part of the Body, how you may know them, and what were the Causes that bred them.*

Eleventhly and Lastly, *You have five infallible Cures never yet put to Press before,* viz. For the Glanders, Farcin, Staling of Blood, Scratches, and making the brittlest Hoof that is so tough, that it will carry a Shoe passing well. *With many other things contained in this Book, which are not here inserted.*

By E. R. *Gent.*

THE

Errat. In the Title-page of the Second Part, dele *the three last lines.*

THE *Experienc'd Farrier.*

PART I.

THERE is no Man who is a Lover of Horſes, but would be glad to be acquainted with ſuch Methods to preſerve them ſound when they are ſo, as well as to recover them from any Indiſpoſition or Diſaſter that may at any time befall them. You have in the following Sheets t only my own, but the Experiences of the moſt knowing en that have made it their Study and Buſineſs, with the eateſt Succeſs in the right Management of Horſes, under the various Accidents and Indiſpoſitions that they are ſub- t to, with the beſt Medicines, both old and of long expe- nce, as well as thoſe more modern Diſcoveries made by e greateſt Men in our days; and you will find them all ote in the plaineſt Methods, that all Perſons may be ca- ble not only of making them up, but of applying them th uſual Succeſs. That Man who hath been ſo ſucceſsful to find out an infallible Cure for any Diſtemper in a

Horſe, does render himſelf more famous and uſeful to Poſterity, than he who treats his Reader with unprofitable Speculations in a pompous manner; for ſuch Diſcourſes do more puzzle and confound the Ignorant, than inſtruct them in thoſe things which are truly uſeful and beneficial to be known. I have therefore avoided, throughout this Work, every thing that may ſeem difficult and puzzling, and have given you in as plain a manner as I could, the various Remedies, the beſt Methods of Compoſition, and moſt exact Doſes that have been uſed with the greateſt Succeſs: and I dare venture to affirm, that he who ſhall obſerve thoſe Methods and Rules that are laid down in this Book, will ſeldom, if ever, fail in his Expectations. Let me only give you this Caution, that if one Medicine ſhould fail, you would not fling it by as naught, but try another; for there are different Conſtitutions in Horſes as well as there are amongſt Men, and that Medicine that will not cure a Diſtemper in one Horſe, will cure the ſame Diſtemper in another Horſe, of a different Conſtitution; which daily Experience convinces us of. I ſhall without any further Introduction proceed to inform you of the firſt Step to Knowledge in Horſemanſhip, and that is the Office of the Breeder; but firſt I ſhall begin with deſcribing the Shapes of a Horſe.

The Shapes of a Horſe.

HE muſt have the Eyes and Joints of an *Ox*, the Strength of a *Mule*, the Foot of the ſame, the Hoofs and Thighs of an *Aſs*, the Throat and Neck of a *Wolf*, the Ear and Tail of a *Fox*, the Breaſt and Hair of a *Woman*, the Boldneſs of a *Lion*, the ſharp and quick Sight of a *Serpent*, the Pace of a *Cat*, the Lightneſs and Nimbleneſs of a *Hare*, a high *Pace*, a deliberate *Trot*, a pleaſant *Gallop*, a ſwift *Running*, a rebounding *Leap* and *Preſent*, and be quick in hand.

The Colours of a Horſe in Verſe.

If you deſire a Horſe thee long to ſerve,
Take a Brown-bay, *and him with Care preſerve:*
The Grey*'s not ill, but he is prized far*
That is Cole-black, *and blazed with a Star.*

If

If for thyself or Friend thou wilt procure
A Horse, let him White-Lyard *be, he'll long endure.*

The Shapes of a Horse, another way.

He ought to have three of an *Ox*, which is a fair and full *Eye*, a large *Neck*, and to be strong and short-jointed.

Three of a *Fox*, which is to have a comely and short *Trot*, small and long *Ears*, and a bushy *Tail*.

Three of a *Hart*, which is to have lean and dry *Legs*, to be well-risen before, and a lean *Head*.

Three of a *Woman*, which is to have a fair and large *Breast*, to have a beautiful and full *Hair*, and gentle to his Rider and Keeper.

A Proverb amongst Husbandmen.

If you have a Foal with four white Feet, keep him not a day;
If you have a Foal with three white Feet, make him soon away:
If you have a Foal with two white Feet, give him to thy Friend;
If you have a Foal with one white Foot, keep him to his life's end.

These things are good to strew in a Horse's Provender.

Turmerick, white Lilly-Roots chop'd small, and dry'd; the Powder of Anniseeds, Liquorice, Fenugreek, Bay-berries, Brimstone, Allum, Hemp-seed, Elicampane, or the Roots of Polypodium of the Oak, or Savin, Marshmallows, Rue, Hyssop, Horehound, Coltsfoot. If you give him the Herbs green, you must chop them small; if dry, beat them to powder: which Simples will keep him sound and in perfect health; for their Virtues are to purify the Blood, prevent Obstructions, open and resolve the Liver, cool the Blood, keep and preserve the whole Structure of the Body in sound and perfect health.

These things you are always to have in a readiness by you.

Fenugreek a Pound, Liquorice half a Pound, Bay-berries a quarter of a Pound, *London*-Treacle one Pound, Anniseeds a quarter of a Pound, Cumminseeds a quarter of a Pound, Grains a quarter of a Pound, Turmerick a quarter of a Pound, Long-Pepper two Ounces, Elicampane half a Pound, Allum half a Pound, Brimstone half a Pound, green Copperas half a Pound, Savin three Handfuls, Chopt-Hair a Handful.

These things repeated over again, with their Virtues declared.

Fenugreek, Liquorice, Bay-berries, *London*-Treacle, Aniseeds, Cumminseeds, Grains, Long Pepper, Elicampane, all good for Colds.

Turmerick, good to purge the Blood, and to cure the Yellows.

Brimstone, Elicampane, Allum, Savin, chopt Hair, good for the Worms.

Throw these things among his Provender.

If you are ask'd what Fault your Horse hath, if you know him to be sound, you may answer him in this manner:

He hath neither Splint, Spavin, nor Wind-gall, Scratches, Crepances, nor Rats-tails, Mules nor kibed Heels, Sellander nor Mallender, Curb, Ring-bone, Quitter-bone, Hough-bonny, Sit-fast, Ambury, Vives; but good Eyes and good Thighs. Or if you can affirm him further to be sound, you may say he hath neither Farcin, foundred Foot, broken Wind, moulten Grease, nor running Glaunders.

Of the Office of the Breeder.

The best Manner of Breeding.

YOU are not to breed in fenny mooriſh Pastures, nor in Lands too fertile nor too barren, the golden Number is the best Temper: yet to incline a little to Hardness, is better than much Rankness; the one breeds Health, and the other Diseases. Let the Situation be a little hilly, and in some places stony and rocky; for they are very good for Colts to play on, and helpeth their Wind, and knitteth their Joints, and hardeneth and maketh tough their Hoofs: and no matter how rough and uncertain it is, for it will make them the more sure-footed. As much Ground as will keep a milch Cow, will keep a milch Mare.

Change of Grounds.

You are to have three sorts of Grounds, one to foal in, another to summer in, and a third to winter in: The first to be without danger; the second not to be without shelter of Bushes, or Under-Woods, to defend from Storms and Tem-

Tempeſts; and the third is, to have good Hovels, Sheds, Barns, or Back-ſtables, wherein may be ſtored Winter-Proviſion. You are likewiſe to accommodate your Grounds with Partitions, to put each Cattel by themſelves, as your young and old, Race or Breeding Mares by themſelves, your Weanlings by themſelves, your Fillies by themſelves, and your ſtoned Colts by themſelves; or elſe your Breed will come to nothing, and you may run the hazard both of your Coſt and Pains.

Choice of Stallions.

You are to be careful, that neither your Stallion nor Mare have any of theſe Defects, *viz.* Neither Moon-Eyes, watry Eyes, or blood-ſhotten Eyes, neither Splint, nor Spavin, nor Curb, *&c.* nor any natural Imperfection; for the Colts will take them as hereditary from their Parents. I ſhall adviſe you, that you chuſe the beſt and ableſt, the higheſt-ſpirited, the faireſt-colour'd, and the fineſt-ſhaped, whether it be *Neapolitan*, *Turk*, *Spaniard*, *Barbary*, *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, *Polander*, *French*, or *German*; and that you would inform yourſelf of all natural Defects in the Stallion, (for it is impoſſible to find out abſolute Perfection) and to amend them in the Mare; and what is amiſs in the Mare, to ſee it repaired in the Horſe.

The Age of Stallions and Mares.

A Stallion ought not to be younger than four Years when he covereth a Mare, and he will beget Colts from that Age to twenty. And a Mare may bring forth from three years old to thirteen. When ſhe is four Years, ſhe will nouriſh her Colt beſt; but after ſhe is ten Years ſhe is not good, for commonly an old Mare-Colt will be heavy in Labour.

Obſervations upon Covering.

Let your Mare be covered from the end of the firſt Quarter to the Full of the Moon, or at the Full; for thoſe Colts will be ſtronger, and hardier of Nature.

After the Change.

It is not good for Mares to be covered after the Change, for thoſe Colts will be tender and nice.

The Wain.

Mark the Wain in that time the Mare was covered, the ſame time of the Moon ſhe will foal.

Burning.

If your Mare hath been covered, and the Colt knit within her, if another Horſe covers her, he burns her.

Of Spaying a Mare-Colt.

If a Mare-Colt be ſpayed nine days after it is foaled, ſhe will prove (as ſome ſay) fair, gallant and well.

Of Gelding of Colts.

Horſes will be better ſhaped, and in leſs danger of Gelding, if they be gelt at nine or fifteen days old, if the Stones appear, or ſo ſoon as you find them fall down into the Cod.

The Time of Gelding is when the Moon is in the Wain, the Sign in *Aries* or *Virgo*; the Time of the Year is early in the Spring or Fall.

What time a Mare is to take Horſe.

If your Mare be cover'd on St. *Lucy*'s Day, which is the thirteenth of *December*, then ſhe will foal about St. *Thomas*'s Day, the ſame Month in the Year following.

How long time a Mare goes.

During the time of her going with Foal, from the day of her Covering unto the day of her Foaling, is commonly twelve Months and ten Days, unleſs it be a young Mare upon her firſt Colt, which may come ſooner.

How to order her before ſhe is covered.

You are to take her into the Houſe about ſix Weeks before ſhe is cover'd, and feed her well with good Hay and Oats, well ſifted, to the end ſhe may have Strength and Seed to perform the Office of Generation. But if you would have her certainly conceive, then take Blood from both ſides of her Neck, and let her bleed nigh a quart of either Vein, which you muſt do five or ſix days before you have her covered. If you deſire to have a Horſe-Colt of your Mare, then let her be covered when one of the firſt maſculine Signs do reign, which are either *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, or *Leo*. But if ſhe be covered when one of the feminine Signs be predominate, as *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricornus*, *Aquarius*, or *Piſces*; then be confident it will be a Mare: for it is ſo certain, that it ſeldom or never fails, eſpecially if the Wind be either Weſt or North, but Weſt is beſt.

The

The Manner of Covering her.

You are to bring her out into ſome broad place, and tie her to a Poſt; then bring out ſome Stone Jade to dally with her, to provoke her to Appetite; then let the Stallion be led out by two Men, and let him leap her, and let him do it in the Morning faſting: and when the Horſe is diſmounting, throw a Pale-full of cold Water upon her Shape, which by reaſon of the Coldneſs will make her ſhrink in, and truſs up her Body, and will make her retain her Seed the better: then take away the Stallion, and let her be put out of the hearing of the Horſe, and let her neither eat nor drink in four or five hours after, and give her a Maſh and white Water. If ſhe ſtands to her Covering, you may know it by this; if ſhe keeps a good Stomach, and does not neigh at the ſight of a Horſe, or if ſhe does not piſs often, or open and ſhut her Shape often; or that if her Belly, four days after her Covering, be more gant, and her Hair more ſleek and cloſe to her Skin, *&c.*

How many Mares for one Horſe.

If you cover abroad, one Horſe will ſerve twelve Mares, if you expect no other Service from him; but if you keep him in the Stable, where he hath extraordinary keeping, he will ſerve fifteen.

How to order a Mare after Covering to her Foaling.

Keep her with the ſame Diet as before Covering, for three Weeks or a Month after, leſt the Seed be empaired before it be formed in the Womb; and let her be kept ſweet and clean without any Exerciſe, during three Weeks or a Month, and to keep her in the Houſe till Mid-*May*, and not to turn her out before Mid-*May*, and with her Feet well pared, and a thin Pair of Shoes upon them; and take her in again the latter end of *September*, if not before, and keep her to the end of her Foaling: and let her be looſe in the Stable with good ſtore of Straw with her, that ſo the Foal may fall the ſofter, for a Mare does uſually foal ſtanding.

How to help her if ſhe cannot foal.

If ſhe cannot foal, hold her Noſtrils ſo that ſhe cannot take her wind; or if that will not do, take the quantity of a Walnut of Madder, and diſſolve it in a Pint of old Ale,

and being warm, give it the Mare: if both fail, take the help of ſome underſtanding Farrier. If ſhe cannot void her Secundine, then boil two or three Handfuls of Fennel in running Water, and take half a pint of it with as much Sack, or for want thereof, a pint of Strong-Beer or Ale, with a fourth part of Sallet Oil; mix them together, and give it her lukewarm into her Noſtrils, and hold them cloſe for a good ſpace: or for want thereof, give her good green Wheat or Rye, (but Rye is the beſt) and they are as effectual. Let her not eat her clean, for that is very unwholeſom, and will dry up her Milk.

To order her after Foaling.

When ſhe hath foaled, and licked her Foal, milk and ſtroke her before the Colt doth ſuck, which will not only cauſe her to bring down her Milk, but make it to multiply, and keep it that it doth not clot; which may cauſe her to become dry: which if there be cauſe, boil as much Milk as you can get from her, with the Leaves of Lavender, or Spike, and bathe the Udder with it warm till it be broken, and the Knobs and Knots diſſolved. Let her Water after Foaling be white Water, which is Bran put into her Water, and give her ſweet Maſhes; and a Month after her Foaling give her a Maſh, and put into it ſome Brimſtone or Savin, which will be a great Preſervation to the Colt. And then if ſhe be moderately laboured at Plough, or Harrow, the Mare and Colt will be the better, provided ſhe be kept from raw Meats while ſhe remaineth in the Stable, which will both increaſe her Milk, and cauſe her Colt to thrive the better; and that you ſuffer not the Colt to ſuck when ſhe is hot, leſt thereby you ſurfeit the Colt.

How long Foals are to run with their Dam.

Let them run with their Dams a full Year at leaſt, but if they be choice Foals, then two Years; for the loſs of the uſe of the Mare will be no loſs, in compariſon of the benefit you will receive by the Foal. But if you want Accommodations, wean at ſeven Months, but be ſure to keep them well; for what they loſe the firſt Year, they will hardly gain in three following. And at the weaning give them Savin and Butter for divers Mornings together, or elſe the Worm and Gargil will hazard to deſtroy them; beſides, have an Eye to the Strangle, for it is apt to aſſay them, and if not taken in time, it will deſtroy them. The

firſt

first Winter spare neither Hay nor Corn, that is, Oats in the Chaff, or in the Sheaf, or give him any Offal that comes from any Grain whatsoever.

The Time of Foaling look'd upon to be very improper, because in the Winter Season.

The Time of Foaling, as I have said before, I would have in *December* or *January*, which most hold to be a very improper time, the Weather being cold, and but little Grass, for which reason of necessity she must be housed, and fed with hard Meat, which will dry up her Milk, and so starve the Foal. But to satisfy this Scruple, I must tell you, that Experience is the best Master; for certainly the Winter-Season must needs be the best both for the Mare and Foal, being kept in a warm House; and as for her Milk, she will have great plenty, being fed well, and that more nourishing than that got at Grass, which will make him more lusty, and of greater Bone and Stature, and cleaner-limb'd, and more neatly jointed and hoof'd, and in better liking than that Colt foaled in *May* or *June*, or any of the hotter Months: for tho Grass doth yield great plenty of Milk, yet it is not so nourishing, because it is very thin and watry, therefore it will not yield so substantial Nourishment as the Winter-Food, if it be good; for tho the quantity of Milk is not so great, yet it is of greater goodness. And besides, the pinching Cold, Rains and Floods in Winter, will so nip the poor Colt, and enfeeble the Mare in such desperate manner, that the wanting her former plenty of Food and dry Lodging, her Milk will decay when the Colt hath most need of it, by which means they must needs both fall into extreme Poverty. And over and above all this, by his running abroad with the Mare, he becometh so savage and wild, that if any Infirmity seize upon him, his own Unrulineſs being so great, the Cure may be difficult, for infinite are the number that have perished in this kind.

When Mares are fit to take Horse.

Observe their chasing and galloping up and down Morning and Evening, and their throwing up of their Noses, and lifting up of their Tails, riding on one another's backs, often pissing, or opening of their Shapes, and closing of them again, which are Signs of Lust.

To

To know the true Shape, Spirit, and Height of a Foal.

The same Shape that it carries at a Month old, he will carry at six Years old, if he be not abused in after-keeping; and as the good Shape, so the Defects also.

From the Shin-bone.

A large Shin-bone, that is long from the Knee to the Pastern in a Foal, shews a tall Horse.

From the Space between his Knee and Withers.

Look what Space he has between his Knees and Withers, double that will be his Height when he is a compleat Horse.

From their Spirits to know their Goodness.

If they are stirring Spirits, free from Affrights, wanton of Disposition, and very active in leaping and running, and striving for Mastery, they prove generally good mettled Horses, the contrary Jades.

From his Hoofs.

If his Hoofs be strong, deep, tough, smooth, upright standing and hollow, he cannot be evil; for they are the Foundation of his Building, and lend Fortitude from all the rest. Therefore the *Barbary* Horse is well known by his Hoofs, for there is no Horse hath naturally so good a Hoof as he.

Weaning of Foals.

Wean your ordinary Foals at the end of seven Months, your better at a year or two, and let them not be within the hearing of one another, and keep them very high the second Year; but the third and fourth put them to hard Grazing.

Taming of Colts.

You are to make them familiar to you from the first Weaning, and so Winter after Winter (in the House) use them to familiar Actions, as rubbing, clawing, haltering, leading to water, taking up of his Feet, knocking his Hoofs, and the like.

The Time to break Colts.

The best Time to break Colts to the Saddle, is at three Years

Years old, and the advantage, or four at the utmoſt. But he that hath the patience to ſtay to ſee his Horſe full five, ſhall be ſure to have him of longer continuance, and leſs ſubject to Diſeaſe or Infirmity, and on that (but by Death) will hardly come to the knowledge of tiring.

Coiling of the Stud, or making of Election.

I adviſe you by no means to make too early Coiling; for ſome Horſes will ſhew their beſt Shape at two and three Years old, and loſe it at four, others not till five, nay ſix, but then keep it ever. Some will do their beſt days work at ſix or ſeven Years old, others not till eight or nine: but be the time when it will, let him preſerve for his own uſe the beſt. Thoſe that be defective, I mean ſuch as bring incurable Deformities, groſs Sorrances, as Spavins, Ringbones, imperfect Eyes, or the like, make away with them.

Barren Mares.

If you find any of your Mares grow into Barrenneſs, away with them; for tho I could preſcribe you Remedies, yet they are not worthy of your uſe.

General Obſervations concerning Mares.

In length and height a Mare groweth till ſhe be five, and a Horſe till he be ſix Years old.

Covering.

When a Mare is paſt two Years old, ſhe may be covered, but the beſt time is after four Years old.

Bringing of Foals.

Common Mares may bring Foals every Year, but let your beſt bring but every ſecond Year, eſpecially if they bring Horſe-Colts.

To make a Mare ſlink Foal.

To make a Mare ſlink her Foal, is to give her down her Throat with a Horn ſome Water, with three Grig-Eels, which will make her ſlink with a great deal of ſafety.

To make her ſtand to Horſe.

To make a Mare ſtand to Horſe the better, is to let her ſtand by him two or three days before he cover her.

Stallion for Trotters.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either *Neapolitan* Courſer, or *Arabian*, *Turk*, or *Barbary*; and for Amblers, either the *Spaniſh* Jennet or the *Iriſh* Hobby.

Mares to Horſe.

Put your Mares to Horſe, from the middle of *March* till the middle of *May*, or middle of *June*, the Moon having newly changed.

To put your Horſe into an empty Houſe.

It is good to put the Horſe and the Mare for three or four Nights together into an empty Houſe, and take him away in the Morning, and feed him well, and feed your Mare ſparingly, but eſpecially give her but little Water.

Chaſing the Mares.

At the end of ſix Months chaſe not the Mares, for then they are a quickning, and may eaſily be made to caſt their Foals.

The Wall-Eye.

The Wall-Eye of a Horſe or Mare doth never ſee perfectly, eſpecially when the Snow is upon the ground.

Choice of Mares.

For your Choice of Mares, you ought to reſpect their Shapes and Mettles, that they be beautifully fore-handed, and that they be of a mean Stature, large and broad, and the Stallion of like ſhape, but ſomewhat broader and taller; and temper their Natures thus: Put unto the hot Horſe the cool Mare, and to the hot Mare the cool Horſe.

If you will elect a Horſe for Service and Warlike Employment, then theſe are beſt.

The *Neapolitan*, the *Sardinian*, the Courſer, the *Almain*, the *French*, the Jennet, or the *Turky*: Or if any of theſe baſtardized in themſelves, with a fair well-ſhaped and mettled *Engliſh* Mare.

For Swiftneſs.

If you will elect for Swiftneſs, then the *Arabian*, the *Barbary*, which is a Horſe of *Africa*; the *Spaniſh*, the *Grecian*, which

which is the *Turkey* Horſe: or any of theſe baſtardized in themſelves with our *Engliſh* Mares.

For Travel.

If you will chuſe for long Travel and Service, then the *Engliſh*, the *Hungarian*, the *Swedeland*, the *Poland*, the *Iriſh*.

For Draught.

If you will chuſe for Draught and Service, then the *Flanders*, the *Frieſland*, or any of the *Netherlands*, either baſtardized in themſelves, or with our *Engliſh* Races; and theſe are excellent for Coach, for Cart, for Pack, or any Burden. If you will chuſe for Eaſe, then the *Iriſh*.

To know whether your Mares be with Foal, or not.

If you pour a Spoonful of cold Vinegar or Water into her Ear, if ſhe ſhake only her Head, it is a ſign ſhe is with Foal; but if ſhe ſhake her Head, Body and all, then it is a ſign ſhe is not with Foal: or if ſhe ſcowers, her Coat grows ſmooth and ſhining, and that ſhe grows fat, it is a ſign that ſhe holds.

To make the Mare conceive Male Foals.

To make your Mare conceive Male Foals, is to keep your Stallion proud, and your Mare poor; that his Luſt maſtering hers, he may only be predominant and chief in the Action.

Of the Office of the Keeper.

Of the Horſe in general, his Choice for every ſeveral Uſe, his Ordering, Diet, and beſt Preſervation for Health, both in Travel and in Reſt.

Of the Nature of Horſes in general.

HE is valiant, ſtrong and nimble, and above all other Beaſts moſt apt and able to endure the extremeſt Labours; the moiſt Quality of his Compoſition being ſuch, that neither extreme Heat doth dry up his Strength, nor the Violence of Cold freeze the warm Temper of his moving Spirits;

Spirits; for he withſtandeth all Defects of Sickneſs with an uncontrouled Conſtancy. He is moſt gentle and loving to Man, apt to be taught, and not forgetful when an Impreſſion is fixed in his Brain. He is watchful above all other Beaſts, and will endure his Labour with the moſt empty Stomach. He is naturally given to much Cleanlineſs: he is of an excellent Scent, and therefore not ſo much as to offend any Man with his evil Savours.

Your Choice of a Horſe for the Wars.

Chuſe him of a tall Stature, with a comely Head and out-ſwelling Forehead, a large ſparkling Eye, the White thereof covered with the Eye-brows, a ſmall thin Ear, ſhort and pricking; if it be long, well carried, and ever moving, a deep Neck, a large Creſt, broad Breaſt, bending Ribs, broad and ſtrait Chine, round and full Buttocks, a Tail high and broad, neither too thick nor too thin, a full ſwelling Thigh, a broad, flat, and lean Leg, ſhort-paſtern'd, ſtrong-jointed.

Colours of a Horſe.

The beſt Colours are Brown-Bay, Dapple-gray, Roan, Bright-Bay, Black, with a white near Foot behind, white Fore-Foot before, white Star, Cheſnut or Sorrel, with any of thoſe Marks, or Dun with a black Liſt.

Horſes for a Prince's Seat.

If you will chuſe a Horſe for a Prince's Seat, or for any Supreme Magiſtrate, or any great Lady; then chuſe the fineſt Shape, that is nimble, with an eaſy Pace, and gentle to get up, familiar and quiet in the company of other Horſes, and let his Colour be Milk-white, with red Frains or without, or elſe Dapple-grey, with a white Mane, and white Tail.

Horſes for Travel.

If you chuſe a Horſe for Travel, chuſe him for Strength, *viz.* His Joints ſtrong, his Paſternes ſhort and ſtreight without bending in his going, hollow and tough Hoofs; let him be of a temperate Nature, neither too furious, nor too dull.

Hunting Horſes.

If you chuſe a Horſe for Hunting, let his Shape be generally

rally ſtrong, and well knit together, making equal Proportions; for as unequal Shapes ſhew Weakneſs, ſo equal Shapes ſhew Strength and Durance. Your unequal Shapes are a great Head and little Neck, a big Body and a thin Buttock, a large Limb to a little Foot, *&c.* Let him have a large and lean Head, wide Noſtrils, open Chauld, a big Wheaſand, and the Windpipe ſtreight.

Running Horſes.

If you chuſe him for Running, let him have all the fineſt Shapes that may be. Let him be nimble, quick and fiery, apt to fly with the leaſt Motion; long Shapes are ſufferable, or though they ſhew Weakneſs, yet they aſſure ſudden Speed.

Coach-Horſes.

If you chuſe him for the Coach, which is called the ſwift Draught, let his Shape be tall, broad and well furniſh'd, not groſs with much Fleſh, but with the highneſs of his Bones; let him have a ſtrong Neck, a broad Breaſt, a large Chine, ſound clean Limbs, and tough Hoofs. And for this purpoſe your large *Engliſh* Geldings are beſt, your *Flemiſh* Mares next, and your ſtrong Stone-Horſes tolerable.

Pack-Horſes.

If you chuſe a Horſe for Portage, that is, for the Pack or Hampers; let him have a ſtrong Body and Limbs, but not tall, with a broad Back, Out-Ribs, full Shoulders and thick Withers, for if it be thin in that part, you ſhall hardly keep his Back from galling; and beſure he take a large ſtride, for he that taketh the largeſt ſtride goes at the moſt eaſe, and rids his Ground the faſteſt.

Cart or Plough.

Laſtly, if you will chuſe a Horſe for Cart or Plough, which is the ſlow Draught, chuſe him that is of an ordinary height; for Horſes in the Cart unequally ſorted never draw at eaſe, but the tall hang up the low Horſes. Let him be big, large-bodied and ſtrong-limb'd, by Nature rather inclin'd to crave the Whip, than to draw more than is needful. And for this purpoſe, Mares are moſt profitable, if you have cheap keeping for them, for they will not only do your work, but bring you yearly Increaſe: be ſure you take them well-forehanded, that is, good Head, Neck, Breaſt and Shoulders; for the reſt, it is not ſo regardful, only let her

Body be large, for the more room a Foal hath in her Dam's Belly, the fairer are his Members. And be ſure you never put your Draught-Beaſts to the Saddle, for that alters their Pace, and hurts them in their Labour.

How to order theſe ſeveral Horſes: And firſt of the Horſe for the Wars.

During his time of teaching, which is out of the Wars, you ſhall keep him high; let his Food be good Hay and Oats, or two parts Oats, and one part Beans or Peaſe, well dried and hard; half a Peck at a Morning, Noon, and at Evening, is ſufficient. In his days of reſt, dreſs him betwixt five and ſix in the Morning, and water him at ſeven or eight in the Afternoon. Dreſs him between three and four, and water him about four or five, and give him Provender always after Watering; litter him at eight, and give Food for all night. The night before he is ridden, about nine at night take away his Hay, and at four of the clock in the Morning give him a Handful or two of Oats, which being eaten, turn him upon the Snaffle, rub him all over with dry Cloths, then ſaddle him and make him fit for his Exerciſe; and when you have done with him, bring him into the Stable all ſweaty, as he is, and rub him all over with dry Wiſps: then take off his Saddle, and after you have rubbed him all over with dry Cloths, put on his Houſing-Cloth; then put on the Saddle again, and girt it, and walk him about gently till he be cold; then ſet him up, and after two or three hours faſting, put him to his Meat: then in the Afternoon, curb, rub and dreſs him, and water him, and order him as aforeſaid.

Ordering a Horſe for a Prince, or great Lady's Seat.

You muſt order him in the time of his Reſt like unto the Horſe for Service; and in his time of Labour like the travelling Horſe, only you are to keep him more choicely: I mean, in a beautiful manner, his Coat lying ſmooth and ſhining; if he come in ſweating into the Stable, after you have rubbed him down, take off the Sweat with a Sword-Blade, whoſe Edge is rebated.

Ordering of Travelling Horſes at home and abroad.

Feed him with good Hay in the Winter, and good Graſs in the Summer. Let his Provender be good dry Oats, Beans, Peaſe or Bread, according to his Stomach; in the

time

time of Reſt, half a Peck at a Watering is ſufficient, in the time of Labour as much as he will eat with a good Stomach.

Of Watering in the Morning.

When you travel him, water two hours before you ride, then rub, dreſs, and luſtily feed; then bridle up, and let him ſtand an hour before you take his back.

Of Feeding betimes.

In your Travel feed your Horſe betimes for all night, that thereby he may the ſooner take his reſt.

Moderate Travelling.

Travel moderately in the Morning, till his Wind be rack'd, and his Limbs warmed, then after do as your Affairs require. Be ſure at night to water your Horſe two miles before you come to your Journey's end; then the warmer you bring him to his Inn the better. Walk not, nor waſh not at all; the one doth beget Colds, the other Foundrings in the Feet or Body: but ſet him up warm, well ſtopt, and well rubbed, with clean Litter. Give no Meat whilſt the outwards Parts of your Horſe are hot or wet with Sweat, as the Ear-roots, the Flank, the Neck, or under his Chaps; but being dry, rub and feed him according to the Goodneſs of his Stomach.

To get a Stomach.

Change of Food begetteth a Stomach, ſo doth the waſhing the Tongue or Noſtrils with Vinegar, Wine and Salt, or warm Urine.

Not to ſtop the Horſe's Feet with Cow-dung till they be cold.

Stop not your Horſe's Feet with Cow-dung till he be ſufficiently cold, and that the Blood and Humours which were diſperſed, be ſettled into their proper places.

Look to his Back, Girts and Shoes.

Look well to his Back, that the Saddle hurt not; to the Girts, that they gall not; and to his Shoes, that they be large, faſt and eaſy.

Not to eat nor drink when he is hot.

Let him neither eat nor drink when he is hot, nor preſently after his Travel.

To labour him moderately, when the Weather is either extreme hot or cold.

Labour him moderately when the Weather is either extreme hot, or extreme cold, that so you may avoid extreme Heats or sudden Colds.

Not to travel him too late.

Travel him not to late, that your own Eye may see him well dried, and well fed, before you take your own rest.

The Saddle not to be presently taken off.

Take not the Saddle from your Horse's Back suddenly.

Horse-bread very good Food.

Horse-bread which is made of clean Pease, Beans or Fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

River-water is not so good as Standing-water.

Let your Horse's Meat and Drink be exceeding sweet and clean: Standing-water is better than River-water, for that is too piercing.

Swine and Pullen is naught to be nigh a Stable.

Let him lie clean and dry, keep your Stable sweet, let no Swine lie near it, nor let any Pullen come within it.

Let the Light of your Stable be towards the South and North.

Let the Light of your Stable be ever towards the South and North; yet so as the North-windows may in the Winter be shut close at pleasure.

To be tied with two Reins.

Let him be tied with two Reins.

To ride him on stony Ways.

Ride him often on stony Ways, that he may the better feel his Feet, and harden his Hoofs.

Wheat-Straw, and Oat-Straw, best for Litter.

Let his Bed be of Wheat-straw above his Knees, the Barley-straw is the softest, yet a Horse will covet to eat it, which is unwholesom; Wheat-straw, though it be hard to lie upon, yet it is wholesom to eat: and as for Oat-straw, it is the best in the superlative, for it is not only wholesom to eat, but soft to lie upon.

Of

Of Dreſſing your Horſe.

Curry or dreſs your Horſe twice a day, that is, before Water; and when he is curried, rub him well with your Hand, and with a Rubber: His Head ſhould be rubbed with a wet Cloth, and his Cods made clean with a dry Cloth, otherwiſe he would be ſcabby between his Legs. You ſhould wet his Fore-top, his Mane and his Tail with a wet Mane-Comb; and ever where the Horſe's Hair is thinneſt, there curry the gentleſt.

Of the Stable.

Let the Plaunchers of your Stable lie even and level, that your Horſe may ſtand at his eaſe, and not prove lame by too much oppreſſing his hinder Feet.

A Mud-wall is naught to be nigh a Horſe.

Let not any Mud-wall be within your Horſe's reach, for he will naturally covet to eat it, and nothing is more unwholeſome.

Chopt Straw is good to ſtrew amongſt his Provender.

Give your Horſe plenty of Garbage (which is chopt Wheat-ſtraw) both with his Provender and without, for it is a mighty Cleanſer of a Horſe's Body.

Bottles of Hay to be ty'd hard.

Let your Hay-Bottles be very little, and ty'd very hard, for ſo your Horſe ſhall eat with a better Stomach, and make leaſt waſte.

To ſprinkle the Hay with Water is good, and to ſtrew Fenugreek amongſt his Provender.

To ſprinkle Water upon your Hay is moſt wholeſom, and to ſprinkle Fenugreek upon your Provender, is as ſovereign; the firſt is good for the Wind, the latter for Worms.

Exerciſe good.

Let your Horſe have daily Exerciſe, for that begets a good Stomach to his Meat.

Graſs is good once a year, to cleanſe the Blood and cool the Body.

Purge your Horſe once a year with Graſs, or green Blades of Corn call'd Forage, for fifteen days together; yet before

you purge him, in any caſe let him blood: and whilſt he is in purging, let him have no Provender.

A Horſe good ſtore of Blood after Travel.

A Horſe after Travel hath ever more Blood than any Beaſt whatſoever, therefore it is good to take blood from him, to prevent the Yellows, or other Diſeaſes that may follow.

What you are to do in caſe of Neceſſity, coming late to your Inn.

If you come late to your Inn, ſo that your Journey be great and earneſt, and that your Horſe will not eat till he hath drank, and yet is hot notwithſtanding, then let his Drink be Milk given in the dark, leſt the Whiteneſs make him refuſe it; this is both cordial and pleaſant. If you cannot get Milk enough, then mingle Milk with Water lukewarm.

To give him Mare's Milk to drink, if he be poor.

If your Horſe either by Labour, or any Surfeits, be brought low, lean and weak, give him Mare's Milk to drink many days together, and it will make him ſtrong.

The beſt Times to water in the Winter.

The beſt Hours to water your Horſe in the Winter (when he is at reſt) is betwixt Seven and Eight in the Morning, or Four or Five in the Evening.

Not good to waſh a Horſe if he be hot.

It is not good to waſh a Horſe when he is hot, but you may waſh him above the Knees, ſo that you do not waſh his Belly, and that you ride him after he is waſhed, and ſo ſet him up and dreſs him. The purer the Water is wherein you waſh your Horſe, the more wholeſom it is, ſo that it be not too extreme cold.

To light at every ſteep Hill.

When you travel, at every ſteep Hill light, both to refreſh your Horſe and yourſelf.

How a fat Horſe is to have his Meat and his Water.

Let a fat Horſe have his Water at four times, and not as much as he will drink at once, and let him ſtand two or three hours every day without Meat.

Rub-

Rubbing is good for a Horſe.

Rubbing much, hard and well, doth profit, preſerve, and it keeps both Legs and Body in Strength, and he doth much delight in it, and it doth better than much Meat.

Boiled Barley is good.

Boiled Barley is a great Fatner of a Horſe.

To pick his Feet after Travel.

Cleanſe and pick the Soles of his Feet ever after Travel, and ſtuff them well with Ox-dung, and anoint his Hoofs with Greaſe, Tar, or Turpentine.

Much Reſt naught.

Much Reſt is the Nurſe and Mother of many Diſeaſes.

Be careful to look to your Saddle.

When you ride, look often to your Saddle and your Horſe's Shoes, and you ſhall find much more eaſe in your Journey.

A Horſeman's Rule.

If you do intend to keep your Horſe in his Skin,
Go ſoftly out, and come ſoftly in.

Riding ſoftly.

Ride moderately the firſt two Hours, but after according to your occaſions.

Trotters Oil is good to help ſtiff Limbs.

Trotters Oil is an excellent Ointment, being applied very warm to your Horſe's Limbs, to nimble them, and to help Stiffneſs and Lameneſs: And Dog's-Greaſe is better; therefore never want one of them in the Stable.

To bathe his Legs with cold Water, is good to keep his Legs from Scabs and Swellings.

Bathe the Fore-legs from the Knees and Gambrels downwards with cold Water, for it is wholeſom, and both comforteth the Sinews, and prevents Scabs and Swellings.

To waſh at the Stable-door, if Neceſſity requires.

If foul Ways compel you to waſh your Horſe's Legs, then do it with a Pail of Water at the Stable-door, rather

than to endanger him in Pond or River; and for walking, rather ſit on your Horſe's back to keep his Spirit ſtirring, than to walk him in your hand: for he will ſoon catch cold that way, the Wind and Air getting between his Saddle and Back.

Dreſſing upon Travel and Reſt.

Dreſs your Horſe twice a day upon Reſt, and once upon Travel.

Blooding.

Spring and Fall are the beſt Times to take Blood from a Horſe.

Ordering of Hunting Horſes.

While he is at reſt, let him have all the quietneſs that may be; let him have much Meat, much Litter, much Dreſſing, and Water ever by him, and let him ſleep as long as he pleaſeth. Keep him to dung rather ſoft than hard, and look that it be well-coloured and bright, for Darkneſs ſhews Greaſe, and Redneſs inward Heating. Let him be exerciſed and have Maſhes of ſweet Malt, after his uſual Scourings; or let Bread of clean Beans, or Beans and Wheat mix'd together, be his beſt Food, and Beans and Oats the moſt ordinary.

Sir Robert Chernock's *Manner of Hunting in Buck-ſeaſon.*

He never takes his Horſe up into the Stable during the Seaſon, but hunts him upon Graſs, only allowing him as many Oats as he can well eat. And he approves of this to be a very good way, by reaſon that if there be any molten Greaſe within him, which violent Hunting may raiſe up, this going to Graſs will purge it out. He hath rid his Horſe three days in a week during the Seaſon, and never yet found any hurt, but rather good by it, ſo that you turn your Horſe out very cool.

The Ordering of your Running Horſe.

Let him have no more Meat than will ſuffice Nature, Drink once in twenty four hours, and Dreſſing every day once at Noon only; let him have moderate Exerciſe Morning and Evening, Airings, or the fetching of his Water, and know no other Violence but in his Courſes only. If he be very fat, ſcour oft; if of reaſonable Stature, ſeldom; if lean, then ſcour but with a ſweet Maſh only: let him ſtand dark and warm, having many Cloths and much Litter, and that Wheat-ſtraw only. Let him be empty before you run, and let his Food be the fineſt, lighteſt, and quickeſt

of

of Digeſtion that may be. The Sweats are moſt wholeſom that are given abroad, and the Cooling moſt natural which is given before he cometh into the Stable. Keep his Limbs with cool Ointments, and let not any hot Spices come into his Body. If he grow dry inwardly, waſh'd Meats are moſt wholeſom. If he grow looſe, give him Wheat-ſtraw in more abundance. And be ſure do every thing neat and cleanly about him, which will nouriſh him the better.

Ordering of Coach-Horſes.

Let them have good Dreſſing twice a day, Hay and Provender their Belly-full, and Litter enough to tumble on. Let them be walk'd and waſh'd after Travel, for by reaſon of their many occaſions to ſtand ſtill, they muſt be enur'd with all Hardneſs, tho it be much unwholeſom. Their beſt Food is ſweet Hay, or well-dry'd Beans and Oats, or Bean-bread. Look well to the Strength of their Shoes, and the Galling of their Harneſs; keep their Legs clean, eſpecially about their hinder Fetlocks, and let them ſtand in the Houſe warmly clothed.

Ordering of the Pack and Cart-Horſe.

They need no Walking, Waſhing, or Hours of Faſting; only dreſs them well, look to their Shoes and Backs, then fill their Bellies, and they will do their Labour. Their beſt Food is ſweet Hay, Chaff or Peaſe, or Oat-hulls and Peaſe, or chopt Straw and Peaſe mix'd together. To give them warm Grains and Salt once a Week, will not be amiſs; which will prevent the breeding of Worms, and ſuch-like Miſchief.

The Office of the Rider and Groom, and of Things belonging to him, viz. *His general and particular Knowledge in Handling, Saddling, Mouthing, Backing and Riding of the Great Horſe, or Horſe of Pleaſure.*

Of the Stable, and what it ought to be built with.

TO begin firſt with the Winter-houſe of the Horſe, the Stable; you ought to place it in a good Air, and to

be made of Brick, and not Stone, Brick being moſt wholeſom and warmeſt, for Stone will ſweat upon Change of Weather, which begetteth Damps, and cauſeth Rheums in Horſes. There ought not to be nigh it any unſavoury Gutter nor Sink, no Jakes, Hog-ſty or Hen-Rooſt to annoy it. The Rack ought to be placed neither too high nor too low, and ſo well placed, that the Hay-duſt fall not into his Neck, Mane, nor Face. The Manger ought to be of an indifferent height, made deep, and of one intire piece, as well for Strength as Convenience. Let the Floor be pitched, and not planked, and let there be no Mud or Lome-wall near it, for he will eat it, which will cauſe him to be ſick; for Lome and Lime are ſuffocating things, and they will infect and putrefy the Blood, and endanger his Lungs, and ſpoil his Wind. Neither let any Dung lie near his heels, for that will breed kibed and ſcabby Heels.

Paving of Stables is better than Planked Stables, for theſe Reaſons.

Firſt, They are much more durable and laſting.

Secondly, They are leſs Charges by much.

Thirdly, For him to ſtand continually upon a pitched Floor, it emboldneth his Feet and Treading the more.

Fourthly, It is the moſt excellent thing that may be for Colts who are unſhod, for it hardeneth their Hoofs, ſo that by Cuſtom they will be as bold to go upon Stones, rocky and hard Ways, as Horſes that are ſhod; neither will it ſuffer the Hoofs to grow broad in the manner of an Oyſter: beſides, the uſe thereof will make their Hoofs more tough, durable, and hollow, inſomuch that when they come to be ſhod, they will carry their Shoes much longer.

To ſhew the Inconveniencies of a Planked Floor:

Firſt, It is more ſlippery, on which account a mettled Horſe may be endanger'd to be lamed or ſpoiled by ſome ſudden Slip, which a pitched Stable is not ſo ſubject to.

Secondly, The Planks oftentimes ſhrinking, if the Horſe be high-mettled and be ſubject to curvet, he may break a Plank, and ſo plunging may eaſily ſpoil or break his Leg.

Thirdly, When you put forth your Horſe to graſs in the Summer, the Sun will ſo dry the Planks, that they will warp and looſen the Pins, and make them give way; that ſo when a Horſe that has gone for ſome Months before, not being handled, becomes wild and unruly, upon coming into the

the Stable, and feeling the Planks to give way under him, he will fall to flinging and leaping till he has diſlocated the Planks, and not only both endanger himſelf, but his Fellows alſo.

Fourthly, Whereas you may imagine a planked Stable warmer than a paved one, I know the contrary; for your pitched Floors have no Vaults or Channels under them, like as your planked ones have, to carry away the Water that the Horſes make, by which means the Horſes lie over a dampiſh moiſt Vault; and beſides, the evil Savour of the Horſe Piſs will be ever in their Noſe, which is very unwholeſom and noiſom, and many times the cauſe of many Infirmities. Neither can it be ſo warm as the other, for Chinks and Holes, which are made by the Awger through the Planks (which muſt always be kept open to let forth the Urine) give way to the cold Wind which cometh from thence, which cannot but be very unwholeſom. Therefore I do affirm, that if your Groom do litter up your Horſe well, ſo that he may lie ſoft and warm, he will proſper better than upon a planked Floor, provided it be laid even, not higher before than behind, more than will carry the Water to his hinder Feet, where there ought to be a ſmall Gutter to carry it away; for by raiſing your Floor too much, his hinder Legs will ſwell, and ſo he will become lame, by reaſon he bears too much weight on his hinder parts.

Of the Care in the Choice of a Groom.

After you have bred Colts according to my Inſtructions, and that they prove to your mind, then the next Care you ought to have is of Grooms, which ought to be very expert in their Faculties, in which conſiſteth their making or marring; for you cannot ſay that a Colt three or four years old can be a perfect Horſe, till he come to be handled and made fit for his Maſter's Riding, which is to be made gentle, ſhod, back'd, broken, ridden, way'd, mouth'd, and in brief brought to his utmoſt perfection. His Rider therefore muſt be an expert and able Horſeman, and his Keeper every way as ſufficient; otherwiſe what Defects you find in your Horſe, are not to be attributed to him, but either to his Rider or to his Groom; therefore let your Care be, that they be both ſufficient.

How a Rider ought to be qualified.

If you deſire your Colts to come to their utmoſt perfection,

ſection, then let your Rider be one who is cry'd up to be an experienc'd Horſeman; he muſt not be of Life diſſolute or debauch'd, nor of Nature harſh, furious, cholerick or hair-brain'd; for the leaſt of either of theſe Vices are very unſeemly in a Perſon of this Profeſſion. He muſt be Maſter over his Paſſions, for he that is not, cannot make a good Horſeman. And it is not much to be wondred at, if a Horſe fall into Imperfections or Vices, for theſe his evil Conditions and Faults are not ſo much to be imputed to the Horſe, but to the Teacher; for he is not a good Horſeman that doth not bring his Horſe to perfection, by ſweet and gentle means, rather than by Correction and ſevere Chaſtiſements: yet not but that I allow of Correction, and that it is as neceſſary as Meat, if it do not exceed the limited Bounds of Moderation, and that it be done at the very inſtant when he offendeth, and doth juſtly merit the ſame, or elſe he will not know the Cauſe why he is chaſtiſed; ſo on the other ſide, when he doth well, let him be cheriſh'd and made much of, which will encourage him to go forward in well-doing.

What manner of Perſon a Groom ought to be.

The Groom muſt be a Man that muſt truly love his Horſe, and ſo ſhape his courſe towards him, as that the Horſemay love and doat upon; for a Horſe is the moſt loving Creature to Man of all other brute Creatures, and none more obedient to him. Wherefore if he be mildly dealt withal, he will be alſo reciprocal; but if he be harſh and cholerick, the Horſe will be put by his Patience, and become rebellious, and fall to biting and ſtriking: For the old *Proverb* is, *Patience once wronged will turn into Fury.* He muſt continually toy, dally and play with him, be always talking and ſpeaking pleaſing words unto him; he muſt lead him abroad in the Sunſhine, and then run, ſcope and ſhew him all the delight he can; he muſt duly curry, comb and dreſs him, wipe, duſt, pick and cleanſe him, feed, pamper and cheriſh him, and be always doing ſomewhat about him, either about his Heels, or taking up his Feet, or rapping him upon the Soles. And he muſt keep him ſo well dreſs'd, that he may almoſt ſee his Face upon his Coat; he muſt keep his Feet ſtopt and daily anointed, his Heels free from Scratches and other Sorrances, and to have ſo vigilant an eye upon him, to overſee all his Actions, as well feeding as drinking, that ſo no inward Infirmity may ſeize upon him,

him, but that he may be able to discover it; and being discovered, may seek to cure it.

To Saddle and Bridle a Colt.

When your Horse is made gentle, take a sweet Watering-Trench, wash'd and anointed with Honey and Salt, put it into his Mouth, and so place it, that it may hang about his Tush; and then offer him the Saddle, but with that carefulness that you do not affright him therewith, suffering him to smell at it, to be rubbed with it, and then to feel it: then in the end fix it on, and girt it fast, and at what part and motion he seems most coy, with that make him most familiar. Then being thus saddled and bridled, lead him forth to water; then bring him in, and after he hath stood a little reined upon the Trench, an hour or more, take away the Bridle and Saddle, and let him go to his Meat till the Evening: then lead him forth as before, and when he is set up gently, take off his Saddle and dress him, and clothe him up for all Night. The way to make him endure the Saddle the better, is by making it familiar unto him, by clapping the Saddle with your Hand as it stands upon his back, to shake it and sway upon it, to dangle the Stirrops by his Sides, and to rub them on his Sides, and make much of him, and be familiar with all things about him, as straining the Crooper, fastning and loosening the Girts, or taking up and letting out of the Stirrops.

Of Mouthing.

When he will trot with the Saddle obediently, then you shall wash a Trench of a full Mouth, and put it into his Mouth, and throw the Reins over the fore-part of the Saddle, so that the Horse may have a full feeling of it; then put on a Martingal, and you shall buckle it at such length, that he may no more than feel it when he jirketh up his Head. Then take a broad piece of Leather, and put it about the Horse's neck, and make the two ends of it fast by platting, or otherwise, at the Withers and Midpart before his Weasand: about two handfuls below the Throple, betwixt the Leather and his Neck, let the Martingal pass, so that when at any time he shall offer to duck or throw down his Head, the Cavezan being placed upon the tender Gristle of his Nose, may correct and punish him, which will make him bring down his Head, and fashion him to an absolute Rein. Then trot him abroad, and if you find the Reins or Martingal grow slack, straiten them; for where there is no feeling, there is no Vertue.

Of

Of Backing.

When you have exercised your Horse thus, divers Mornings, Noons, or Evenings, and find him obedient, then take him into some ploughed Ground (the lighter the better) and after you have made him trot a good pace about you in your hand, and thereby taken from him all his wantonness, look and see whether your Tackling be firm and good, and every thing in its true and due place. You may then (having one to stay his Head and govern the Chasing-Rein) take his back, yet not suddenly, but by degrees, with divers Heavings, and Half-raisings, which if he endure patiently, then settle your self; but if he shrink or dislike, then forbear to mount, and chase him about again, and then offer to mount, and do thus till he be willing to receive you. Then when you are settled, and have received your Stirrops and cherish him, put your Toes forward, and he that stays his Head, let him lead him forward half a dozen Paces, then cherish him; then lead hima little further and cherish him, and shake and move your self in the Saddle, then let him stay his Head, and remove your hand a little from the Cavezan; and as you thrust forwards your Toes, let him move him forward with his Rein, till you have made the Horse apprehend your own Motion of Body and Foot, (which must go equally together, and with Spirit also) so that he will go forward without the other assistance, and stay upon the restraint of your own Hand. Then cherish him, and give him Grass and Bread to eat; alight from his Back, then mount and unmount twice or thrice together, ever mixing them with Cherishings. Thus exercise him till you have made him perfect in going forward, and standing still at your pleasure.

Helps at first Backing.

When this is effected, you may lay by the long Rein, and the Band about the Neck, and only use the Trenches and Cavezan, and the Martingal, and let a Groom lead the way before you on another Horse, and go on streight forward, and stand still when you please, which will soon be effected, by trotting him after another Horse; and bring him home sometimes after the Horse, and sometimes equally with him, and sometimes before, so that he may fix upon no certainty, but your own pleasure: And be sure to have regard to the Well-carriage of his Neck and Head, and as the Martingal slacketh, so to streighten it.

What

What Leſſons for what Horſe.

When this Work is finiſhed, then teach your Horſe theſe Leſſons: As if he be for Hunting, Running, Travel, Hackney, or the like, then the chiefeſt things you are to apply your ſelf to, are to preſerve a good Mouth, to trot freely and comely, to amble ſurely and eaſily, to gallop ſtrongly and ſwiftly, to obey the Hand in ſtopping gently, and retiring willingly, and to turn on the other hand readily and nimbly. But if you intend him for the great Saddle, or the Uſe of the Wars, then although the Leſſons be the ſame, yet they are to be done in a more punctual manner. So that if any Horſe can be brought to the beſt, the eaſier muſt needs follow with little induſtry. And it is a Rule in Horſemanſhip, *That no Leſſon which belongs to the Wars can be hurtful, or do injury to any Horſe whatſoever, that is kept for any other purpoſe.* Whence it cometh, that any Horſe for the Wars may be trained for a Runner, or Hunter, at pleaſure; but every Runner, or Hunter, will not ſerve the Wars: and every Horſe-man that can make a Horſe for the Wars, may be a Jockey when he pleaſes; but no Jockey (that I know) can make a Horſe for the Wars. Therefore I will run a middle way, and ſute my Leſſons to both purpoſes.

Helps and Corrections.

Before you teach your Horſe any Leſſons, you muſt know there are ſeven Helps to advantage him in his Leſſons, to puniſh him for Faults gotten in his Leſſons: And they be, the Voice, the Rod, the Bit or Snaffle, the Calves of the Legs, the Stirrop, Spur, and the Ground.

Voice.

The Voice is an Help when it is ſweet and accompanied with Cheriſhings, and it is a Correction when it is rough or terrible, and accompanied with Strokes or Threatnings.

Rod.

The Rod is an Help in the ſhaking, and a Correction in the ſtriking.

Bit or Snaffle.

The Bit is an Help in its ſweetneſs, the Snaffle in its ſmoothneſs; and they are Corrections, the one in its hardneſs, the other in its roughneſs, and both in flatneſs and ſquareneſs.

Calves of the Legs

Are Helps when you lay them to the Horſe's Sides gently, and Corrections when you ſtrike them hard, becauſe they give warning that the Spurs follow.

Stirrop and Stirrop-Leathers

Are Corrections, when you ſtrike them againſt the hinder part of the Shoulder; and they are Helps, when you thruſt them forward in a quick Motion.

Spur

Is a Help when it is gently deliver'd in any Motion that asks Quickneſs and Agility, whether on the ground or above the ground, and a Correction when it is ſtricken hard in the ſides, upon any Sloth, or any Fault committed.

The Ground.

The Ground is an Help when it is plain and ſmooth, and not painful to tread upon; and it is a Correction when it is rough, deep, and uneven, for the Amendment of any Vice conceived.

Of large Rings.

When your Horſe will receive you to and from his Back gently, trot forward willingly, and ſtand ſtill obediently; then intending him for the Wars, or other purpoſe, (for theſe Leſſons ſerve all occaſions) you ſhall in ſome gravelly or ſandy place, where his Footſteps may be diſcerned, labour him within the large Ring, that is, at leaſt fifty Paces in compaſs. And having trod it about three or four times on the right hand, reſt and cheriſh; then change the hand again, and do as much on the left hand, then reſt and cheriſh; and change the hand again, and do as much on the right hand, ever obſerving upon every ſtop to make him retire and go back a ſtep or two.

Thus labour him till he will trot his Ring on which hand you pleaſe, changing within the Ring in the manner of a Roman S, and doing it readily and willingly. Then teach him to gallop them as he did trot them, and that alſo with true Footing, lofty Carriage and brave Rein; ever obſerving when he gallops to the right hand, to lead with his left Fore-foot, and when he gallops to the left hand, to lead with the right Fore-foot.

Object. Now here is to be cleared a Paradox held by many of our Horſemen, which is, *That the Exerciſe of the Ring is not good for running Horſes, becauſe it raiſeth up his Fore-feet, and makes him gallop painfully, and ſo is an hindrance unto ſpeed.*

Anſw. But if they conſider that this Habit (if it be taken) is ſoon broken, either by the Horſe-man's Hand or Diſcretion, who hath power to make him move as he pleaſeth; or if they will truly look into the Benefit of the Thing it ſelf, they ſhall find it is the only means to bring a Horſe to the true uſe of his Feet, and the nimble Carriage of them in all advantages. For every Runner of Horſes will allow, that for a Horſe (in his Courſe) to lead with his right Foot, is moſt proper; and when at any time he breaks or alters it, it muſt be diſadvantage, becauſe, (not well acquainted to lead with the other) he cannot handle it ſo nimbly. Now at his firſt backing, by the uſe of his Ring and Change of Hands, he will become ſo expert and cunning with both, that whatſoever miſchance ſhall alter his Stroke, yet ſhall his Speed and Nimbleneſs keep one and the ſame Goodneſs.

Of Stopping.

When you come to the place of Stop, or would ſtop, by a ſudden drawing in of your Bridle-Hand, ſomewhat hard and ſharp, make him ſtop cloſe, firm, and ſtreight in an even Line; and if he errs in any thing, put him to it again, and leave not till you have made him underſtand his Error and amend it.

Advancing.

Now if you do accompany this Stop, with an Advancement a little from the Ground, it will be more gallant, and may be done by laying the Calves of your Legs to his Sides, and ſhaking your Rod over him as he ſtops.

If it chance at firſt he underſtands you not, yet by continuance and labouring him herein, he will ſoon attain unto it; eſpecially, if you forget not to cheriſh him, when he gives the leaſt ſhew to apprehend you.

Retiring.

After ſtopping and advancing, make him retire, as before ſhewed. And this Motion of retiring, you muſt both cheriſh and increaſe, making it ſo familiar with him, that no Leſſon may be more perfect; neither muſt he retire in a confuſed manner, but with a brave Rein, a conſtant Head, and

and a direct Line; neither muſt he draw or ſweep his Legs one after another, but take them clean, nimbly and loftily, as when he trotted forward.

Of Bitting.

When your Horſe is come to perfection in theſe Leſſons, and hath his Head firmly ſettled, his Reins conſtant, and his Mouth ſweetned; you may then (if you intend him for the Wars) take away his Trench and Martingal, and only uſe the Cavezan of four or three Pieces, that is, a Joint or no Joint in the midſt; and to that Joint a ſtrong Ring, and a Joint of each ſide, with Rings before the Joints, to which you ſhall put ſeveral Reins to uſe, either at the Poſt or otherwiſe. Into his Mouth you ſhall put a ſmooth ſweet Canon-Bit, with a *French* Cheek ſutable to the Proportion of the Horſe's Neck; knowing that the long Cheek raiſes up the Head, and the ſhort pulls it down. And with theſe you ſhall exerciſe the Horſe in all the Leſſons before taught, till he be perfect in them, without Diſorder or Amazement.

Of ſtreight Turns and Turnings.

When he is ſettled upon his Bit, then you are to teach him to turn roundly and readily in the ſtreighter Rings; and of theſe there are divers kinds, and divers methods to teach them. But I ſhall fix upon two manner of ſtreight Turns, as the Perfection from whence all Turnings are derived.

The one is, when a Horſe keepeth his hinder Parts inward and cloſe to the Poſt or Center, and ſo cometh about and maketh his Circumference with his hinder Parts, oppoſing face to face with his Enemy.

The firſt ſtreight Turn.

You ſhall to the Ring in the mid-part of the Cavezan fix a long Rein of two fathom or more, and to the other Rings two other ſhorter Reins; then having ſaddled the Horſe, and put on his Bit, bring him to the Poſt, and put the Reins of the Bit over the forepart of the Saddle, Bolſters and all, and fix them at a conſtant ſtreightneſs on the top of the Pommel, ſo that the Horſe may have a feeling both of the Bit and Curb. Then if you will have him turn to the right hand, take the ſhort Rein on the left ſide of the Cavezan, and bringing it under the fore Bolſter of the

the Saddle up to the Pommel, and there fix it at such a straitness, that the Horse may rather look from, than to the Post on the right side. Then let some Groom or skilful Attendant hold the right-side Rein of the Cavezan at the Post, governing the fore-parts of his Body to come about at large: Then yourself taking the long Rein into your hand, and keeping his hinder parts inward, with your Rod on his outward Shoulder, and sometimes on his outward Thigh, make him move about the Post, keeping his inward parts as a Center, and making his fore-parts move in a larger Circumference. Thus you shall exercise him a pretty space on one hand, till he grow to some perfectness; then changing the Reins of the Cavezan, make him do the like to the other hand. And thus apply him divers Mornings, and cherishing him in his Exercise according to his deservings, till you have brought him to that Readiness, that he will upon the moving of your Rod couch his hinder parts in towards the Post, and lapping the outward Fore-leg over the inward, trot about the Post swiftly, distinctly, and in as strait a compass as you can desire, or is convenient for the Motion of the Horse: and from trotting you may bring him to flying and wheeling about, with that swiftness, that both the Fore-legs rising and moving together, the hinder parts may follow in one and the same instant. When you have made him thus perfect in your hand, you shall then mount his back; and making some skilful Groom govern the long Rein, and another the short, by the Motion of your Hand upon the Bit, and soft Rein of the Cavezan, keeping the Horse's Head from the Post, and by the help of the Calf of your Leg, laid on his Side, and your Rod turned toward his outward Thigh, to keep his hinder Parts into the Post, labour and exercise him till you have brought him to that Perfection which you desire. Then take away the long Rein, and only exercise him with the help of the short Rein of the Cavezan, and no other. After take both the Reins of the Cavezan into your Hands, and exercise him for the Post; making him as ready in any place where you please to ride him, as he was at the Post.

The other streight Turn.

Now for the other streight flying Turn, which is to keep his Face fixt on the Post as on his Enemy, and to move about only with his hinder Parts, you shall take the same helps of the long Rein, and the short

Reins of the Cavezan, and govern them as before shewed; only you shall not give the short Rein to the post-ward, so much liberty as before, but keep his Head closer to the Post, and following his hinder Parts with the long Rein, by the help of your Rod make him bring his hinder parts round about the Post; and observe, that as before he did lap one foot over another, so now he must lap the hinder Legs one over another. In this Exercise, exercise him as the former; then (after a perfectness) mount his Back, and labour him, as before shewed. Then lastly, leaving the Post and all other helps, only apply him in such open and free places as you shall think convenient; for upon the finishing of this Work your Horse is made compleat, and can perform all things that can be required, either for the Service in the Wars, for the High-way, or any other galloping Pleasure.

How to help an ill Rein, and cure a Run-away Jade.

Many Horses are evil beholden to Nature, for giving them short Necks, and worse set-on Heads, and little beholden to Art to amend them; which causes many a good Horse to be left cureless of those two gross insufferable Faults, which are either a deform'd Carriage of the Head, like a Pig on a Broach, or else a furious running away, got by a spoil'd Mouth, or an evil Habit.

The Help.

If it be a young Horse at his first riding, then to his Trench; if an old, then to his Snaffle, (for I speak not of the Bit) but a pair of Reins, half as long again as any ordinary Reins, and Loops to fasten and unfasten at the Eye of the Snaffle, as other Reins have. Now when you see that the Horse will not yield to your Hand, but the more you draw, the more he thrusts out his Nose, or the more violently he runs away; then undo the Buttons of the Reins from the Eye of the Snaffle, and draw them through the Eyes, and bring them to the Buckles of the foremost Girt, and there button them fast: then riding the Horse in that manner, labour him with the gentle Motions of your Hand, coming and going by degrees, and sometimes accompany'd with your Spur, to gather up his Body, and to feel your Command, and in a short time he will bring his Head where you will place it. And for running away, if you draw one Rein, you turn him about in despite of all Fury; and if you draw both, you break his Chaps, or bring them to his Bosom; In the

end,

end, finding himself not able to resist, he will be willing to obey.

Another Help for unconstant Carriage.

There is another foul Error in many Horses, which these Reins also cure; as this, When your Horse is either so withy-cragg'd (as the Northern Man calls it) or so loose and unsteddy-neck'd, that which way soever you draw your Hand, his Head and Neck will follow it, sometimes beating against your Knees, sometimes dashing against your Bosom, and indeed generally so loose and uncertain, that a Man knows not when he hath steddy hold of him; a Vice wonderful incident to running Horses, especially the furious ones: In this case you shall take these long Reins, and as before you drew them to the Buckles of the Girts, so now Martingal-wise draw from the Eyes of the Snaffle, betwixt his Fore-legs to the Girts, and there fasten them. Thus ride him with a constant Hand, firm and somewhat hard, correcting him both with the Spurs and Rod, and sometimes with hard Twitches in his Mouth when he errs; and with a few weeks Labour, his Head will come to a constant Carriage, provided that you labour him as well upon his Gallop as his Trot, and leave him not till you find him fully reclaim'd.

Of the Office of the Feeder.

An Introduction to the Work, touching the Limitation of Time for preparing the Running Horse.

I Will not dispute the several Opinions of Men in this Kingdom, touching the keeping of Running Horses, because they are idle and frivolous. Only this I shall do, clear one Paradox; and that is, the Limitation of Time allow'd for the making ready of a Horse for a Match or Wager.

Some do affirm, that a Horse newly taken from Grass being foul, cannot be made fit under six Months; by which they rob their Masters of half a year's Pleasure, thrust him upon a tiring Charge, to make the Sport loathsom, and get nothing but a Cloke for Ignorance, and a few false got Crowns, that melt as they are possessed.

Their Reasons.

Yet as Hereticks cite Scripture, so these find Reasons to defend Want of Knowledge.

As, *The Danger of too early Exercise, the Offence of Grease suddenly broken, the moving of evil Humours too hastily, which leads to mortal Sickness; and the Moderation, or helping of these by a slow Proceeding, or bringing of the Horse into order by degrees and time:* or (as I may say) by an ignorant Sufferance.

These Reasons have shew of a good ground, for too early Exercise is dangerous, but not if free from Violence.

To break Grease too suddenly, is an Offence insufferable; for it puts both Limbs and Life in hazard, but not if it be purged away by wholesom Scourings. The hasty stirring up of Humours in the Body, where they superabound, and are generally dispersed, and not settled, cannot chuse but breed Sickness; but not where Discretion and Judgment evacuateth them, in wholesome, sweet, and moderate Airings.

Long Time inconvenient.

And for the Moderation of all these, by the Tediousness of Time, as two Months for the first, two Months for the second, and as much for the last; it is like the curing of the Gangrene in an old Man: better to die than be dismembred, better lose the Price than bear the Charge. For I appeal to any noble Judgment, whose Purse hath experienced these Actions, if six Months Preparation, and the Dependents to it, do not devour up an hundred Pounds Wager.

Now I allow but of two Months time at any time of the Year whatsoever, for an old Horse, or an Horse formerly trained, for I speak not of Colts; if he does it not in two Months, he shall not do it in fifteen.

But reply they, no Scouring is to be allow'd, for they are physical; they force Nature, and so hurt Nature; they make Sickness, and so empair Health: And that indeed nothing is comparable to the Length of Time, because Nature worketh every thing itself; and tho she be longer, she hath less danger.

I confess that Sibbesauce Scourings, which are stuff'd with poisonous Ingredients, cannot chuse but bring forth Infirmity; but wholesom Scourings, that are composed of beneficial and nourishing Simples, neither occasion Sickness, nor any

any manner of Infirmity, but bring away Greaſe and all Foulneſs, in that kindly and abundant ſort, that one Week ſhall effect more than two Months dilatory and doubtful Forbearance.

I call it dilatory and doubtful, becauſe no Man (in this lingring Courſe) can certainly tell which way the Greaſe and other Foulneſs will be voided; as whether in his Ordure, (which is the ſafeſt;) into Sweat, (which is hazardous;) into his Limbs, (which is miſchievous;) or remain and putrefy in his Body, (which is mortally dangerous:) ſince the Iſſue of any, or all theſe, falls out according to the Strength and Eſtate of the Horſe's Body, and the Diligence of the Feeder. And if either the one fail in Power, or the other in Care, farewel Horſe for that Year.

All this, Envy cannot chuſe but confeſs; only they have one broken Crutch to ſupport them, which is, they know no Scouring, therefore they will allow of no Scouring.

Againſt Barbariſm I will not diſpute, only I appeal to Art or Diſcretion, whether Purgation or Sufferance, when Nature is offended, be the better Doers.

But they reply by a Figure call'd *Abſurdity*, That whatſoever is given to any Horſe more than his natural Food, and which he will naturally and willingly receive, is both improper and unwholeſome. To this I anſwer, The natural Food of Man is Bread only, all other things (according to the Philoſopher) are ſuperfluous, and ſo to be avoided.

At this Argument both Humanity and Divinity laughs. For other Helps, as Phyſick, divers Meats, and divers Means, ordained for both, even by the Power of the Almighty himſelf, tell the Contemners hereof how groſly they err in this fooliſh Opinion. Nay, allow them a little Shadow of Truth, that things moſt natural are moſt beneficial, then it muſt follow, that Graſs or Hay (which is but wither'd Graſs) is moſt natural, and ſo moſt beneficial. Now Graſs is phyſical, for in it is contain'd all manner of Simples, of all manner of Mixtures, as hot, cold, moiſt, dry, of all qualities, and all quantities. So that whatſoever I give (which is good) is but that which he hath formerly gathered out of his own nature; only with this difference, that what he gathereth is in a confuſed manner, clapping Contraries together ſo abundantly, that we are not able to judge where the predominant Quality lieth; and that which we compound is ſo govern'd by Art and Reaſon, that we

know how it ſhould work, and we expect the Event, if it be not croſs'd by ſome greater Diſaſter.

But will they bind themſelves to keep the Running Horſe only with Graſs or Hay? They know then the end of their Labours will be loſs. Nay, they will allow Corn, nay divers Corns, ſome nouriſhing and looſening, as Oats and Rye; ſome aſtringent and binding, as Beans; and ſome fatning, breeding both Blood and Spirit, as Wheat: nay, they will allow Bread, nay Bread of divers Compoſitions, and divers Mixtures, ſome before Heat, and ſome after, ſome quick of Digeſtion, and ſome ſlow. And if this be not as phyſical as the Scourings a good Horſeman gives, I repent me that I have ſaid any thing.

Nay, theſe Contemners of Scourings will allow an Egg, and that mix'd with other Ingredients. And for Butter and Garlick, they will uſe it, tho it be ever ſo fulſom; the reaſon is, becauſe their Knowledge can ariſe to no higher a Stair in Phyſick, and authorized Ignorance will ever wage battel with the beſt Underſtanding: like fooliſh Gallants on St. *George*'s Day, who neither having Ability to buy, nor Credit to borrow a Gold Chain, ſcorn at them that wear them; or *Martin Mar-Prelate*, that not having Learning worthy of a Deacon, found no felicity but in railing at Divine Fathers. There are another ſort of Feeders, which in a contrary Extreme run beyond theſe into miſchiefs, and thoſe are they that over-ſcour their Horſes, and are never at peace but when they are giving of Potions, (which they call Scourings) ſometimes without cauſe, always without order, bringing upon an Horſe ſuch intolerable Weakneſs, that he is not able to perform any violent Labour.

From this too little, and too much, I would have our Feeder to gather a Mean; that is, firſt to look that his Simples be wholeſom; then to the Occaſion, that he be ſure there is Foulneſs; and laſtly, to the Eſtate of the Body, that he may rather augment than decreaſe Vigour: ſo ſhall his Work be proſperous, and his Actions without controulment. To conclude, two Months I allow for Preparation, and according to that time have laid my Directions. Mine humble Suit is, out of a ſincere Opinion to Truth and Juſtice, ſo to allow or diſallow, to refrain or imitate.

The firſt Ordering of the Running Horſe, according to the ſeveral Eſtates of their Bodies.

This Office of the Feeder, albeit in general it belong to

all Horſemen, yet in particular it is moſt appropriate to the Feeder of the Running Horſe; becauſe other general Horſes have a general way of feeding, theſe are artificial and preſcript from, full of Curioſity and Circumſpection, from which whoſoever errs, he ſhall ſooner bring his Horſe to deſtruction than perfection. You are to have regard to three Eſtates of a Horſe's Body:

The firſt is, if he be very fat, foul, or either taken from Graſs or Soil.

The ſecond, if he be extreme lean and poor, either thro Over-riding, Diſorder, or other Infirmity.

And the third, if he be in good and well-liking Eſtate, having had good Uſage and moderate Exerciſe.

If he be in the firſt Eſtate of Body, you ſhall take longer time for his Feed, as two Months at the leaſt; for he will ask much Labour in airing, great Carefulneſs in heating, and Diſcretion in ſcouring, and rather a ſtrict than liberal hand in feeding. If he be in the ſecond Eſtate of Body (which is poor) then take a longer time, and let his Airings be moderate, as not before and after Sun, rather to increaſe Appetite than harden Fleſh; and let him have a bountiful hand in feeding, but not ſo much as to cloy him.

If he be in the third Eſtate of Body, which is a Mean betwixt the other Extremes, then a Month or ſix Weeks, or a Fortnight, or leſs, may be time ſufficient to dyet him for his Match. Now as this Eſtate participates with both the former, ſo it would borrow from them a ſhare in all their Orderings; that is, to be neither too early, nor too late in Airings; laborious, but not painful Heatings; nouriſhing in Scouring, and conſtant in a moderate way of Feeding.

To have an Eye to the particular Eſtate of a Horſe's Body.

Now as you regard theſe general Eſtates of Bodies, ſo you muſt have an eye to certain particular Eſtates of Bodies. As if an Horſe be fat and foul, yet of a free and ſpending nature, apt quickly to conſume and loſe his Fleſh; this Horſe muſt not have ſo ſtrict a Hand, neither can he endure ſo violent Exerciſe as he that is of an hardy Diſpoſition, and will feed and be fat upon all Meats and all Exerciſes.

Again, if your Horſe be in extreme Poverty, through Diſorder and Miſuſage, yet is by Nature very hard, and apt both ſoon to recover his Fleſh, and long to hold it;

then over this Horſe you ſhall by no means hold ſo liberal a hand, nor forbear that Exerciſe, which is of a tender Nature, a weak Stomach, and a free Spirit, provided always you have regard to his Limbs and the Imperfections of Lameneſs.

The firſt Fortnight's feeding of an Horſe for a Match, that is fat, foul, or either newly taken from Graſs or Soil.

If you match a Horſe that is fat and foul, either by running at Graſs or ſtanding at Soil, or any other Means of Reſt, or too high Feeding; you ſhall (after his Body be emptied, and the Graſs avoided, which will be within three or four days) for the firſt Fortnight at leaſt, riſe early in the Morning before Day, or at the Spring of Day, according to the time of Year; and having put on his Bridle waſh'd in Beer, and ty'd him up to the Rack, take away his Dung and other Foulneſs of the Stable; then dreſs him well, as in *The Office of the Keeper.* When that Work is finiſhed, take a fair large Body-Cloth of thick Houſewives Kerſey, (if it be in Winter) or of Cotton or other light Stuff (if it be in Summer) and fold it round about his Body; then clap on the Saddle, and girt the foremoſt Girt pretty ſtreight, but the other ſomewhat ſlack, and wiſp it on each ſide his Heart, that both the Girts may be of equal ſtreightneſs.

Then put before his Breaſt a Breaſt-Cloth ſutable to the Body-Cloth, and let it cover both his Shoulders; then take a little Beer into your mouth, and ſquirt it into the Horſe's Mouth, and ſo draw him out of the Stable, and take his back, leaving a Groom behind you to trim up the Stable, to carry out your Dung, and to truſs up the Litter. For you are to underſtand, that he is to ſtand upon good ſtore of dry Litter both night and day, and it muſt be Wheat-ſtraw or Oat-ſtraw; for Barley-ſtraw and Rye-ſtraw are very unwholeſome and dangerous, the one doth heart-burn, the other cauſeth ſcouring. When you are mounted, rack the Horſe a foot-pace (for you muſt neither amble nor trot, for they both hurt Speed) at leaſt a mile or two, or more, upon ſmooth and ſound Ground, and (as near as you can) to the ſteepeſt Hills you can find; there gallop him gently up thoſe Hills, and rack and walk him ſoftly down, that he may cool as much one way, as he warmeth another. And when you have thus exerciſed him a pretty ſpace, and ſeeing the Sun begin to riſe, or elſe riſen, rack down either to

ſome freſh River or clear Pond, and there let him drink at his pleaſure. After he hath drunk, bring him gently out of the Water, and ſo ride him a little ſpace with all gentleneſs, and not according to the Ignorance of ſome Grooms ruſh him preſently into a Gallop; for that brings with it two Miſchiefs, either it teaches the Horſe to run away with you ſo ſoon as he is water'd, or elſe refuſe to drink, fearing the Violence of his Exerciſe which follows upon it. When you have uſed him a little calmly, put him into a Gallop gently, and exerciſe him moderately, as you did before; then walk him a little ſpace, after offer him more Water: if he drink, then gallop him again, after calm Uſage; if he refuſe, then gallop him to occaſion Thirſt. And thus always give him Exerciſe both before and after Water. When he hath drunk ſufficient, bring him home gently, without a wet Hair, or any Sweat about him. When you come to the Stable-Door, provoke him to piſs if you can, by ſtirring up his Litter under him; which if he do not, a little Cuſtom will make him do it, and it is a wholeſom Action, both for his Health and the ſweet keeping of the Stable. This done, bring him to the Stall, and tie him up to the Rack, and rub him well with Wiſps; then looſe his Breaſt-Cloth, and rub his Head and Neck with a dry Cloth: then take off the Saddle, and hang it by; then take his Body-Cloth, and rub him all over with it, eſpecially his Back, where the Saddle ſtood. Then clothe him up firſt with a Linen Sheet, and then over that a good ſtrong Houſing-Cloth, and above it his Woollen Body-Cloth, which in the Winter it is not amiſs to have lined with ſome Cotton, but in the Summer the Kerſey is ſufficient. When theſe are girt about him, ſtop his Circingle with ſmall Wiſps very looſe, for they will be the ſofter.

His Feet ſtopped with Cows-Dung.

After he is clothed, ſtop his Feet with Cow's-Dung; then throw into the Rack a little Bundle of Hay, hard bound together and well duſted, and let him eat it, ſtanding upon his Bridle. When he hath ſtood an hour upon his Bridle, take it off, and rub his Head and Neck very well with a Rubber of hempen Cloth, for this is good to diſſolve all groſs and thick Humours from the Head. Then after you have made clean the Manger, take a Quart of ſweet, dry, old and clean-dreſs'd Oats; for thoſe that are unſweet, breed Infirmities; thoſe that are moiſt, cauſe ſwelling in

the

the Body; thoſe that are new, breed Worms; and they which are half-dreſs'd, deceive the Stomach, and bring the Horſe to ruin. Tho the black Oat is tolerable, yet it makes foul Dung, and hinders a Man's Knowledge in the State of his Body. This Quart of Oats you ſhall dreſs in ſuch a Sieve as will let a light Oat paſs thorow it; and if he eat them with a good Stomach, let him have another, and let him reſt till Eleven of the clock. Then rub his Head and Neck as before, and dreſs him another Quart of Oats; then leave him till One of the clock, with the Windows cloſe, for the darker you keep him the better; and it will cauſe him to lie down and take his reſt, which otherwiſe he would not: therefore you are to arm the Stable with Canvas, both for Darkneſs, Warmth, and that the Filth may not come near him. Then at One of the clock uſe him as you did before, and give him another Quart of Oats in the ſame manner; making of him clean by taking away his Dung, and give him a little Knob of Hay, and leave him till the Evening. At the Evening come to the Stable, and having made all things clean, bridle as in the Morning, take off his Cloths, and dreſs him as before. Then clothe, ſaddle, bring him forth, and urge him to empty; mount, rack him abroad, but not to the Hills, if you can find any other plain Ground, and air him in all points as you did in the Morning. When you have water'd and ſpent the Evening in airing, till within Night, (for nothing is more wholeſom, and conſumeth Foulneſs more than early and late Airings;) rack him home to the Stable-door, and there alight and do as you did in the Morning, both within doors and without, and ſo let him reſt till Nine at night; then at night come to him, and rub down his Legs well with Wiſps, and his Face and Neck with a clean Cloth, and turning up his Cloths rub all his hinder Parts; then give him a Quart of Oats in the ſame manner as you did before, and after that a little Bundle of Hay; then toſs up his Litter, and make his Bed ſoft, and leave him till the next Morning. Then the next Morning do every thing to him, without the leaſt Omiſſion, as hath formerly been declared; and thus keep him for the firſt Fortnight, which will ſo take away his Foulneſs, and harden his Fleſh, that the next Fortnight you may adventure to give him ſome Heats.

Object. But to anſwer an Objection that may be urged, touching the quantity of Provender which is preſcribed, being but a Quart at a Meal, ſeeing there be many Horſes

that

that will eat a larger Proportion; and to ſcant them to this little, were to ſtarve, or at the beſt to breed Weakneſs.

Anſw. I ſet not down this as an infallible Rule, but a Precedent that may be imitated, yet altered at pleaſure: for I have left you this Caveat, That if he eat this with a good Stomach, you may give him another, leaving the Proportion to the Feeder's Diſcretion.

Four Conſiderations in giving of Heats.

Firſt, That two Heats in the Week is a ſufficient Proportion for any Horſe, of what Condition or State of Body ſoever. That one Heat ſhould ever be given on that day in the Week, on which he is to run his Match, as thus; Your Match-day is a Monday, your Heating-days are then Mondays and Fridays, and the Monday to be ever the ſharper Heat, becauſe it is the Day of his Match, and there are three Days betwixt it and the other Heat. If the Day be Tueſday, then the Heating-days are Tueſdays and Saturdays; if Wedneſday, then Wedneſdays and Saturdays, by reaſon of the Lord's-Day; if on Thurſday, then Thurſdays and Mondays, and ſo of the reſt.

You ſhall give no Heat (but in caſe of neceſſity) in Rain or foul Weather, but rather defer Hours, and change Times; for it is unwholeſom and dangerous. And therefore in caſe of Showers and uncertain Weather, you ſhall have for the Horſe a lined Hood, with lined Ears, and the Nape of the Neck lined to keep out Rain; for nothing is more dangerous than cold Wet falling into the Ears, and upon the Nape of the Neck and Fillets.

And laſtly, obſerve to give the Heats (the Weather being ſeaſonable) as early in the Morning as you can, that is, by the Spring of Day; but by no means in the dark, for it is to the Horſe both unwholeſom and unpleaſant, to the Man a great Teſtimony of Folly, and to both an Act of Danger and Precipitation.

The ſecond Fortnight's Feeding.

You ſhall do all things as in the firſt Fortnight; only before you put on his Bridle, give him a Quart of Oats, then bridle him up and dreſs him, as before ſhew'd; then clothe, ſaddle, air, water, exerciſe and bring him home, as before ſhew'd: only you ſhall not put Hay into his Rack, but give it him out of your hand, handful after handful, and ſo leave him on his Bridle for an hour; then rub him, and after

other

other Ceremonies, ſift him a Quart of Oats, and ſet them by; then take a Loaf of Bread that is three days old, and made in this manner:

The firſt Bread.

Take three Pecks of clean Beans, and one Peck of Wheat, mix them together, and grind them, and bolt it pretty fine, and knead it up with good ſtore of Barm and Lightning, but with as little Water as may be; labour it in the Trough very well, and break it, and ſo cover it warm, that ſo it may ſwell: then knead it over again, and make it up in big Loaves, and ſo bake it well, and let it ſoak ſoundly, and when they are drawn, turn the bottom upwards, that ſo they may cool. At three days old give it him, for new Bread is hurtful. When you give it him, chip it very well, and cut ſome of it into ſmall pieces, and put them into his Quart of Oats you had formerly ſifted. About Eleven of the clock give him the ſame quantity of Oats, and let him reſt till the Afternoon. At One of the clock in the Afternoon, if you intend not to give him a Heat that day, feed him with Bread and Oats as you did in the Forenoon, and ſo conſequently every Meal following for that day.

But if you intend the next day to give him a Heat, (to which I now bend mine Aim) you ſhall only then give him a Quart of Oats clean ſifted, but no Hay; and ſo let him reſt till Evening.

At Four of the clock give him a Quart of clean ſifted Oats, and after they are eaten, bridle him up, dreſs, clothe, ſaddle, air, water, exerciſe, bring home and order, as before ſhew'd, only give him no Hay at all. After he hath ſtood an hour upon his Bridle, give him a Quart of Oats; and after they are eaten, put on his head a ſweet Muzzle, and let him reſt till Nine at night.

The Uſe of the Muzzle.

The Uſe of the Muzzle being rightly made, is to keep the Horſe from eating up his Litter, from gnawing upon Boards and Mudwalls, and indeed to keep him from eating any thing but what he receiveth from your own hands. They are made ſometimes of Leather, and ſtamp'd full of holes, or elſe cloſe, but they are unſavoury and unwholeſom: nay, indeed all Leather is unpleaſant. Beſides, they are too cloſe and too hot for him. The beſt Summer Muzzle (and indeed beſt at all times) is the Net-Muzzle, made of ſtrong Packthred, and knit very thick and cloſe in the bottom,

bottom, and ſo enlarged wider and wider upwards to the middle of the Horſe's Head; then bound upon the top with Tape, and on the nether ſide a Loop, and on the farther ſide a long String to faſten it to the Horſe's Head. The beſt Winter-Muzzle (and indeed tolerable at any time) is made of double Canvas, with a round Button, and a ſquare Lettice Window of ſmall Tape before both his Noſtrils, down to the very bottom of the Muzzle, and upward more than a handful, and muſt alſo have a Loop and a String to faſten about his Head. At Nine of the clock at night, give him a Quart of clean Oats, and when they are eaten, put on his Muzzle, and toſs up his Litter, and ſo leave him.

The next day early give him a Quart of clean Oats, rubbed between your hands with ſome Beer or Ale, and when he hath eaten them, dreſs him and ſaddle him as before; and being ready to depart, give him a new-laid Egg or two, and waſh his Mouth after it with Beer or Ale, and ſo lead him away, and at the door provoke him to empty: then mount and back him gently to the Courſe, ever and anon making him ſmell another Horſe's Dung.

When you are come within a mile of the Starting-Poſt, alight and take off his Body-Cloth and Breaſt-Cloth, and girt on the Saddle again; then ſending away your Grooms both with thoſe Cloths, and other dry Cloths to rub with, let him ſtay at the end of the Courſe till you come: then your ſelf rack your Horſe gently up to the Starting-Poſt, and beyond, making him ſmell to that Poſt, (which you call the weighing-Poſt) that he may take notice of the beginning and ending of the Courſe. There ſtart your Horſe roundly and ſharply, at near a three-quarters ſpeed; and according to his Strength of Body, Ability of Wind, and Cheariulneſs of Spirit, run him the whole Courſe through. But by no means do any thing in extremity, or above his Wind, but when you find him a little yield, then give him a little eaſe, ſo that all he doth may be done with Pleaſure, and not with Anguiſh; for this manner of training will make him take delight in his Labour, and ſo increaſe it: The contrary will breed diſcomfort, and make Exerciſe irkſom. Alſo during the time you thus courſe him, you ſhall note upon what Ground he runneth beſt, and whether up the Hill or down the Hill; whether on the ſmooth, or on the rough, on the wet or on the dry, on the level, or on the Earth ſomewhat riſing: and according as you find his Nature, ſo manage him for your own Advantage. When you have finiſhed the

Heats,

Heats, and a little ſlightly galloped him up and down to rate his Wind and chear his Spirits, you ſhall then (the Groom being ready) ride into ſome warm Place, and with your glaſſing Knife, or ſcraping Knife, made either of ſome broken Sword-Blade, or ſome old broken Scythe, or for want of that, a thin piece of old hard Oaken Wood, faſhioned like a long broad Knife with a ſharp Edge, ſcrape off the Sweat of your Horſe in every part (Buttocks excepted) till there will none ariſe, ever and anon moving him up and down. Then with dry Cloths rub him all over (Buttocks excepted) then take off his Saddle, and having glaſſed his Back, and rub'd it near dry, put on his Body-Cloth and Breaſt-Cloth, and ſet on his Saddle again and girt it; then mount and gallop him gently, and ever and anon rubbing his Head, Neck and Body, as you ſit, then walk him about the Fields to cool him: and when you find he drieth apace, then rack him homewards, ſometimes racking, and ſometimes galloping; and by no means bring him to the Stable, till you find him throughly dry. When you are come to the Stable-door, entice him to empty; then ſet him up and tie him to the Rack, and (as having prepared it before) give him this Scouring, made in this manner:

The firſt Scouring.

Take a Pint of the Syrup of Roſes, or a Pint of ſtrong Honey'd-water, and diſſolve into it of Caſſia, Agarick and Myrrh, of each an Ounce, and jumble them well together in a Viol-Glaſs. Then being mull'd, and made warm at the Fire, and the Horſe newly come from his Heat (as before ſhewed) give him this Scouring, for it is a ſtrong one, and avoideth all manner of molten Greaſe and Foulneſs.

Ordering him after his Scouring.

When you have given it him, rub his Legs well, then take off his Saddle, and if his Body be dry, run ſlightly over it with a Curry-Comb, and after that the *French* Bruſh; and laſtly, rub him all over with dry Cloths very well, and clothe him up very warm; and if the Weather be very cold, throw over him a looſe Blanket. He muſt faſt full two Hours after his Scouring, not departing out of the Stable, and keep him ſtirring therein, for it will work the better. After he hath faſted on the Bridle two hours, then take a handful of Wheat-Ears, and coming to him, handle the Roots of his Ears; then put your hand under his Cloths

next to his Heart upon his Flanks, and on the nether part of his Thighs; and if you find any new Sweat arise, or any Coldness arise, or if you see his Body beat, or his Breast move fast, then forbear to give him any thing, for it shews there is much Foulness stirred up, on which the Medicine worketh with a conquering Quality, the Horse is brought to a little Sickness; therefore in this case you shall only take off his Bridle, put on his Collar, toss up his Litter, and absent your self (having made the Stable dark and still) for other two hours, which is the utmost end of that Sickness. But if you find no such offence, then give him the Ears of Wheat, by three or four together; and if he eat this handful, give him another, and so another or two. Then give him a little Knob of Hay well dusted, and draw his Bridle, and rub his Head well. An hour after give him a quart of clean Oats, and put two or three handfuls of split Beans amongst them, and see that they be very clean, and break amongst them two or three Shives of Bread clean chipt, and so leave him for two or three hours. At Evening before you dress him, give him the like quantity of Oats, Beans and Bread, and when he hath eaten them, bridle him, dress and clothe him; for you shall neither saddle, or air him forth, because this Evening after his Heat, the Horse being foul, and the Scouring yet working in his Body, he may not receive any cold Water at all. After he is dress't, and hath stood two hours on his Bridle, then wash three pints of clean Oats in Beer or Ale, and give them him, for this will inwardly cool him, as if he had drank Water.

After he hath eaten his wash'd Meat, and rested upon it a little, you shall at his feeding times with Oats and split Beans, or Oats and Bread, or all together, or each several, or simply of it self, according to the liking of the Horse, feed him that Night in a plentiful manner, and leave a Knob of Hay in his Rack when you go to bed.

The next day early, first feed, then dress, clothe, saddle, air, water and bring home as at other times; only have a more careful eye to his emptying, and see how his Grease and Foulness wasteth.

At his feeding-times feed as was last shewed you, only but little Hay, and keep your Heating-days, and the preparation of the day before, as was before shewed. Thus you shall speed the second Fortnight, in which your Horse having received four Heats, Horseman-like given him, and four Scourings, there is no doubt but his Body will be drawn inwardly clean;

clean; you ſhall then the third Fortnight order him according to the Rules following.

The third Fortnight's Feeding.

The third Fortnight you ſhall make his Bread finer than it was formerly. As thus;

The ſecond Bread.

Take two Pecks of clean Beans, and two Pecks of fine Wheat, grind them well, and ſearce them through a fine Raunge, and knead them up with Barm and great ſtore of Lightning, and make it up as you did the former Bread. With this Bread, after the Cruſt is taken away, and being old, feed your Horſe, as before ſhewed, for this Fortnight, as you did the former, putting it amongſt his Beans and Oats; obſerving his Dreſſings, Airings, Feedings, Heatings and Preparations, as in the former Fortnight, only with theſe differences:

Firſt, you ſhall not give your Heats ſo violently as before, but with a little more pleaſure, as thus; If the firſt Heat have violence, the ſecond ſhall have eaſe, and indeed none to over-ſtrain him or to make his Body ſore. Next, you ſhall not after his Heats give him any more of the former Scouring, but inſtead thereof, inſtantly upon the end of the Heat, after the Horſe is a little cooled aud clothed up; and in the ſame place where you rub him, give him a Ball as big as a Hen's Egg, of that Confection which is mentioned in the *Office of the Farrier*, and goeth by this Title, *The true Manner of making thoſe Cordial Balls, which cure any violent Cold, or Glanders*, &c.

The fourth and laſt Fortnight's Feeding.

The fourth and laſt Fortnight you ſhall make your Bread much finer than either of the former.

The laſt and beſt Bread.

Take three Pecks of fine Wheat, and one Peck of Beans, grind them on the black Stones, and boult them through the fineſt Boulter you can get; then knead it up with ſweet Ale, Barm, and new ſtrong Ale and the Barm beaten together, and the Whites of twenty or thirty Eggs; but in any wiſe no Water at all, but inſtead thereof ſome ſmall quantity of new Milk, then work it up. Bake it and order it as the former. With this Bread, having the Cruſt cut clean away,

and

with Oats well sunned, beaten and rubbed between your Hands, then new-winnowed, sifted and dress'd, with the purest split Beans, and some fine Chilten Wheat, with any Simple, or any Compound, feed your Horse at his Feeding-times, as in the Fortnight last mentioned.

You shall keep your Heating-days the first Week or Fortnight, but the last Week you shall forbear one Heat, and not give any five days before the Match-day, only you shall give him strong and long Airings.

You shall not need this Fortnight to give him any Scouring at all. If this Fortnight, Morning and Evening you burn the best Frankincense in your Stable, you shall find it exceeding wholesome for him, and he will take wonderful delight therein.

In this Fortnight, when you give him any wash'd Meat, wash it in the Whites of Eggs, or Muscadine, for that is most wholesom and less pursy.

This Fortnight give him no Hay, but what he taketh out of your hand after his Heats, and that in little quantity, and clear dusted.

The last Week of this Fortnight, if the Horse be a foul Feeder, you must use the Muzzle continually; but if he be a clean Feeder, then three days before the Match is sufficient.

The Morning, the day before your Match, feed well both before and after Airing, and water as at other times, before Noon and after Noon, scant his Portion of Meat a little; before and after Evening Airing, feed as at Noon, and water as at other times, but be sure to come home before Sun-set.

Late at Night feed as you did in the Evening, and give him what he liketh, according to his Stomach, only as you can, forbear Bread and Beans.

This day you shall coul your Horse, shoe him, and do all extraordinary things of Ornament about him, provided that you do not give him offence to hinder his Feeding or Resting; for I have heard some Horsemen say, that when they had shod their Horses with light Shoes, the Night before the Course, that their Horse hath taken such notice thereof, that they have refused to eat, or lie down. But you must understand, that those Horses must be old, and long experienced in this Exercise, or else they cannot reach these subtil Apprehensions. But to pass by Curiosity, as plating of Tails, and all other unnecessary Ornaments,

whereby they do injury to the Horſe, I ſhall adviſe you for neceſſary and indifferent things, that they be done the day before rather than in the Morning of the Courſe, becauſe I would have him that Morning find neither trouble nor vexation.

The next Morning (which is the Match-day) come to him very early, and take off his Muzzle, rub his Head well, right his Cloths, and give them eaſe by wiſping and uſing the plain Circingle; then give him a pretty quantity of Oats waſh'd in Muſcadine, or the Whites of Eggs; or if he refuſe them, try him with fine-dreſs'd Oats mix'd with Wheat, or Oats ſimple: when he hath eaten them, if he be a ſlow Emptier, walk him abroad, and in the places where he uſes to empty; there intice him to empty, which when he hath done, bring him home, and let him reſt till you have warning to make ready. But if he be a free Emptier, let him lie quiet.

When you have warning to make ready, take off his Muzzle, and put on his Snaffle well waſh'd in Muſcadine; but before you bridle him (if you think him too empty) give him three or four Mouth-fuls of the waſh'd Meat laſt ſpoken of, then bridle him up and dreſs him, and after pitch the Saddle and Girts with Cordwainer's Wax, ſet it on and girt it gently, ſo as he may have feeling, but no ſtraitneſs: then lay a clean Sheet over the Saddle, over it his ordinary Cloths, then his Body-Cloth and Breaſt-Cloth, and wiſp him round with ſoft Wiſps; then if you have a Counterpane, or Cloth of State for Bravery ſake, let it be faſten'd above all. Being now ready to draw out, give him half a pint of Muſcadine, and ſo lead away.

In all your Leadings upon the Courſe, uſe gentle and calm Motions, ſuffering him to ſmell upon any Dung, and in eſpecial places of advantage; as where you find Ruſhes, long Graſs lying, Heath or the like, walk in and intice him to piſs: But if you find no ſuch Help, then in eſpecial places on the Courſe, and chiefly towards the latter end; and having uſed the ſame means before, break ſome of the Wiſps under him, and intice him to piſs.

Alſo in your leading, if any white or thick Foam or Froth riſe about the Horſe's Mouth, with a clean Handkerchief wipe it away, and carrying a Bottle of clean Water about you, waſh his Mouth now and then with it.

When you come to the place of Start, before you uncloth, rub or chafe his Legs with hard Wiſps; then pick his Feet,

Feet, uncloth, wash his Mouth with Water, mount his Rider, start fair, and leave the rest to God's Good-will and Pleasure.

Certain Observations and Advantages for every Feeder to observe in sundry Accidents.

There is no unreasonable Creature of Pleasure subject to so many disastrous Chances of Fortune as the Horse, and especially the Running Horse, both by reason of the Multiplicity of Diseases belonging unto them, as also the Violence of their Exercise, and the nice Tenderness of their keeping: and therefore it behoveth every Feeder to be armed with such Observations as may concern Mischiefs, and those Helps which may amend them when they happen.

Of Meat and Drink.

The first Observation that I shall arm the Feeder withal, is the true Distribution of Meat and Drink.

Let him observe, if there be any Meat, Drink, or other Nourishment, which you know to be good for him, yet he refuseth it; in this case you are not to thrust it violently upon him, but by gentle means and cunning enticements win him thereunto, tempting him when he is most hungry and most dry: and if he get but a bit at a time, it will soon increase to a greater quantity, and ever let him have less than he desireth; and that the sooner he may be brought unto it, mix the Meat he loveth best with that he loveth worst, till both be made alike familiar, and so shall the Horse be a stranger to nothing that is good and wholesome.

Observations for Lameness.

Our Feeder must observe, if his Horse be subject to Lameness or Stiffness, to Surbate or Tenderness of Feet, then to give him his Heat upon smooth Carpet Earth, or to forbear strong Ground, hard High-ways, cross Ruts and Furrows, till Extremity compel him.

Observations from the State of his Body.

Our Feeder must observe, that the strongest State of Body (which I account the highest and fullest of Flesh, so it be good, hard, and without inward Foulness) is the best and ablest for the performance of these Wagers: yet herein he must take two Considerations; the one the Shape of the Horse's Body, the other his Inclination and Manner of Feeding.

For the Shape of his Body; There be ſome Horſes that are round, plump, and cloſe knit together, ſo that they will appear fat and well-ſhaped, when they are lean and in poverty. Others are raw-boned, ſlender, and looſe-knit together, and will appear lean and deformed, when they are fat, foul and full of groſs Humours.

From his Inclination.

So likewiſe for their Inclination, ſome Horſes (at the firſt) will feed outwardly, and carry a thick Rib, when they are inwardly lean as may be. There be others that will appear lean to the Eye, when they are only Greaſe. In this caſe the Feeder hath two Helps to advantage his Knowledge, the one outward, the other inward.

From his outward Handling.

The outward Help is the outward Handling and Feeling the Horſe's Body, generally over all his Ribs, but particularly upon his ſhort and hindermoſt Ribs.

If his Fleſh generally handle ſoft and looſe, and the Fingers ſink into it as into Down, then he is foul without all queſtion; but if generally it be hard and firm, only upon the hindermoſt Rib is Softneſs, then he hath Greaſe and foul Matter within him, which muſt be avoided, how lean and poor ſoever he appear in outward Speculation.

The inward Help is only ſharp Exerciſe and ſtrong Scouring; the firſt will diſſolve the Foulneſs, the latter will bring it away.

Obſervations from the Privy Parts.

Our Feeder muſt obſerve his Horſe's Stones, for if they hang down ſide, or low from his Body, then is he out of luſt and heart, and is either ſick of Greaſe, or other foul Humours; but if they lie cloſe, couched up, and hid in a ſmall room, then he is healthful and in good plight.

Obſervations for the Limbs.

Our Feeder muſt obſerve ever the Night before he runs any Match, or ſore Heat, to bathe his Legs well, from the Knees and Gambrels downward, either with clarified Dogs-Greaſe, (which is the beſt) or Trotters Oil, (which is the next) or elſe the beſt Hogs-Greaſe, which is ſufficient; and work it well in with your hands, and not with fire. For what he gets not in the firſt Night, will be got in the

next

next Morning; and what is not got in the next Morning, will be got when he comes to unclothe at the end of the Course: So that you shall need to use the Ointment but once, but the rubbing as often as you find opportunity.

Observations for Water.

Our Feeder shall observe, that albeit I give no directions for watering him after the Heats, yet he may in any of the latter Fortnights (finding him clean, and his Grease consumed) somewhat late at Night, as about Six of the clock, give him Water in reasonable quantity, being made lukewarm, and fasting an hour after it. Also if through the Unseasonableness of the Weather you cannot water abroad, then you shall at your watering Hours water in the House with warm Water, as aforesaid. If you throw a Handful of Wheat-Meal, Bran or Oat-meal finely powder'd (but Oat-meal is the best) into the Water, it is very wholesom.

Observations for the Ground to run in.

Our Feeder shall observe, that if the Ground whereon he is to run his Match be dangerous and apt for mischievous Accidents, as Strains, Over-reaches, Sinew-bruises and the like, that then he is not bound to give all his Heats thereon; but having made him acquainted with the Nature thereof, then either to take part of the Course, as a Mile, two or three, according to the Goodness of the Ground, and so to run him forth: and again (which we call turning Heats) provided always that he end his Heat at the Weighing-Post, and that he make not his Course less, but rather more in quantity than that he must run. But if for some special Cases he like no part of the Course, then he may many times (but not ever) give his Heat upon any other good Ground, about any spacious and large Field, where the Horse may lay down his Body and run at pleasure.

Observations from Sweat.

Our Feeder shall take especial regard in all Airings, Heatings, and all manner of Exercises whatsoever, to the sweating of the Horse, and the Occasions of his sweating: as if he sweat upon little or no occasion, as walking a Foot-pace, standing still in the Stable, and the like, it is then apparent that the Horse is faint, foul fed, and wanteth Exercise.

If upon good occasion, as strong Heats, great Labour, and the like, he sweat, yet his Sweat is white Froth, and like Soap-suds, then is the Horse inwardly foul, and wanteth also Exercise. But if the Sweat be black, and as it were only Water thrown upon him, without any frothiness, then is he clean fed, in good lust and good case, and you may adventure riding without danger.

Observations from the Hair.

Our Feeder shall observe his Hair in general, but especially his Neck, and those Parts that are uncovered; and if they lie sleek, smooth, and close, and hold the Beauty of their natural Colour, then is he in good case: but if they be rough or staring, or if they be discoloured, then is he inwardly cold at the Heart, and wanteth both Cloths and warm Keeping.

Many other Observations there are, but these are most material, and I hope sufficient for any Understanding.

The Office of the Ambler.

Observations in Ambling.

THERE is not any Motion in a Horse more desired, more useful, nor indeed more hard to be obtained unto by a right way, than the Motion of Ambling; and yet (if we will believe the Protestations of the Professors) not any thing in all the Art of Horsemanship more easy, or more several ways to be effected; every Man conceiving to himself a several Method, and all those Methods held as infallible Maxims, that can never fail in the Accomplishment of the Work.

Mens Opinions and Errors.

But they which know Truths, know the Errors in these Opinions: for albeit every Man that hath hardly a Smell of Horsemanship can discourse of a way how to make a Horse amble, yet when they come to the Performance of the Motion, their Failings are so great, and their Errors so gross, that for mine own part I never yet saw an exact Ambler. I confess, some one Man may make a Horse amble well and perfectly, (nay, more than one, peradventure many) and thereby assume unto himself the Name of Perfection;

fection; yet such a Man have I seen err grosly, and spoil more than his Labour was able to recompence.

But leaving Men's Errors because they are past my Reformation, I will only touch at some special Observations, which in mine Opinion I hold to be the easiest, the certainest, and readiest for the effecting of this Work; and withal glance at those Absurdities, which I have seen followed, tho to little purpose, and less benefit.

Ambling by the plough'd Field.

There is one commends the new-plough'd Lands, and affirms, that by toiling the Horse thereon in his Foot-pace, there is no way so excellent for the making of him amble; but he forgets what Weakness, nay, what Lameness, such disorderly Toil brings to a young Horse, nay, to any Horse; because the Work cannot be done without Weariness, and no Weariness is wholesome.

Ambling by the Gallop.

Another will teach his Horse to amble from the Gallop, by sudden stopping, a more sudden choking him in the Cheeks of the Mouth, thrusting him into such an Amazedness betwixt his Gallop and his Trot, that losing both, he cannot chuse but find out Ambling.

But this Man forgets not alone the Error before spoken (which is too great toil) but also spoils a good Mouth, (if the Horse had one) loses a good Rein (if there were any) and by over-reaching and clapping one Foot against another, endangers upon every step an Hoof-breach or Sinew-strain.

Ambling by Weights.

Another says there is no better Ambling than by Weights, and thereupon overloads his Horse with unmerciful Shoes of intolerable Weight, and forgets how they make him interfere, strike short with his Hind-feet, and tho his Motion be true, yet is so slow, that it is not worth his Labour. Another folds great Weights of Lead about his Feet-lock Pasterns, and forgets that they have all the Mischiefs of the former; besides, the endangering of incurable Strains, the crushing of the Crownet, and the breeding of Ring-bones, Crown-scabs and Quitter-bones.

Another loads his Horse upon the Fillets with Earth, Lead, or some other massy Substance, and forgets the swaying of

the Back, the overſtraining of the Fillets, and a general diſabling of all the hinder Parts.

Ambling in Hand, or not ridden.

Another ſtruggles to make his Horſe amble in his Hand, before he mounts his Back, by the help of ſome Wall, ſmooth Pale or Rail, and by chocking him in the Mouth with the Bridle-Hand, and correcting him with his Rod on the hinder Hoofs, and under the Belly, when he treadeth falſe, and never remembers in what deſperate franticknes it drives an Horſe, before he can make him underſtand his meaning; as Plaughing, Rearing, Sprauling out his Legs, and uſing a World of antick Poſtures, which once ſetled are hardly ever reclaimed: beſides, when he hath ſpent all his labour, and done his utmoſt, as ſoon as he mounts his Back, he is as far to ſeek of his Pace, as if he had never known ſuch a Motion.

Ambling by the Help of Shoes.

Another finds out a new Stratagem, and in deſpite of all oppoſition in the Horſe, will make him amble perfectly, and thereupon he makes him a pair of hinder Shoes, with long Spurns or Plates before the Toes, and of ſuch length, that if the Horſe offer to trot, the Hinder-foot beats the Fore-foot before it. But he forgets that the Shoes are made of Iron, and the Horſe's Legs of Fleſh and Blood; neither doth he remember with what violence the Hinder-foot follows the Fore-foot, nor that every ſtroke it gives can light upon any place but the Back-Sinews, than which there is no part more tender, nor any Wound that brings ſuch incurable Lameneſs.

Ambling by the Help of fine Liſts.

Another (out of Quaintneſs more than ſtrong Reaſon) ſtrives to make his Horſe amble by taking of fine ſoft Liſts, and folding them ſtreight about the Gambrels, in that place where you garter an Horſe for a Stifle-ſtrain, and then turn him to graſs for a Fortnight, or more; in which time (ſaith he) he will fall to a perfect Amble, (for it is true, he cannot trot but with pain) then taking away the Liſts, the Work is finiſhed.

But under the Correction of the Profeſſors of this foreign Trick, for it is a *Spaniſh* Practice, I muſt aſſure them, that if they gain their purpoſe, they muſt offend the Members; if they hurt not the Limbs, they loſe their labour: but however, this is moſt aſſured, that the Amble thus gained muſt

must be disgraceful, or ambling and cringing in the hinder Parts, without Comelineſs, Speed or clear Deliverance.

Ambling by the Hand only.

Another (and he calls himſelf the Maſter-Ambler of all Amblers) affirms, there is no true way of making an Horſe to amble, but by the Hand only, and I am of this opinion, could this Secret be found out, or could a Man make a Horſe do all that he imagined; but Horſes are rebellious, and Men are furious, and the leaſt of either of theſe ſpoils the whole Work: and it is impoſſible for any Man to fadge an Horſe to a new Motion, utterly unknown, againſt which he will not reſiſt with his uttermoſt power. Beſides, to do this Action with the Hand only, it muſt only be done from the Horſe's Mouth, and that Mouth muſt of neceſſity be altered from his firſt manner of riding; for to uſe all one Hand, muſt preſerve all one Motion, and then where is his Ambling, which was not known at the firſt backing? Again, we ſtrive at the firſt backing of an Horſe to bring his Mouth to all Sweetneſs, his Rein to all Statelineſs, and the general Carriage of his Body to all Comelineſs. Now in this courſe of ambling by the Hand only, the Mouth muſt be changed from the Chaps to the Cheeks of the Mouth, which is from Sweetneſs to Hardneſs, his Rein muſt be brought from Conſtancy to Unconſtancy; for the Eyes that did look upward, the Noſe and Muzzle which was couched inward muſt be turned outward, and the general Comelineſs of the Body's Carriage muſt be brought to Diſorder and falſe Treading, or elſe he ſhall never accompliſh the true Art of Ambling by the Hand only.

Ambling by the Tramel.

There is another, (I will not call him the beſt, becauſe his Error may be as great as any) and he will make his Horſe amble by the Help of the Tramel only; which I confeſs is neareſt, the beſt and moſt aſſured way, yet he hath many Errors, as followeth.

Errors in the Tramel.

Firſt, he loſeth himſelf in the want of Knowledge for the length of the Tramel, and either he makes it too long (which gives no Stroke;) or too ſhort (which gives a falſe Stroke;) the firſt makes an Horſe hackle and ſhuffle his Feet confuſedly, the latter makes him roll and twitch

twitch up his hinder Feet so suddenly, that by Custom it brings him to a String-halt, from which he will hardly be recovered ever after. Another loses himself and his labour by misplacing the Tramel, and out of a niceness to seem more expert than he is, or out of fearfulness to prevent falling (to which the Tramel is subject) places them above the Knee, and above the hinder Foot-hoof. But the Rule is neither good nor handsom; for if the Tramel be too long or loose, that it gives no offence to the Sinews, and other Ligaments, about which they must necessarily be bound, when they are raised so high, then they can give no true Stroke, neither can the Fore-leg compel the hinder to follow it. And if they be so short and strait, that the Fore-leg cannot step forward, but the hinder must go equal with it, then will it so press the main Sinew of the Hinder-leg, and the Veins and fleshy part of the Fore-thighs, that the Horse will not be able to go without halting before, and cringing and crambling his Hinder-parts so ill-favour'dly, that it will be irksom to behold it; besides, it will occasion Sweatings, and draw down Humours, which will be more noisom than the Pace will be beneficial.

Another makes his Tramel of such coarse and hard Stuff, or else girts it so strait, or leaves it fretting up and down so loose, that he galls his Horse's Legs, and leaves neither Hair nor Skin upon them; at the best it leaves such a foul Print and Mark upon the Legs, that every one will accuse both the Horse and his Teacher of Disgrace and Indiscretion.

As these, so I must conclude with the last Error of the Tramel, which is Mens Opinions; and tho it be the most insufficient, yet it hath the greatest power to oversway Truth: and that is, the Tramel is utterly unnecessary and unprofitable, and the Defender worthy of no Employment, alledging the Land only to be excellent.

The Errors I have already confuted; it now remains (after all these faults-finding) that I shew the truest, easiest, and that way which is most uncontroulable for the making of an Horse to amble, with all the Gracefulness and Perfection that can be required.

The best Way to amble an Horse.

When you are about to make an Horse amble truly, and without controulment; First, try with your Hand by a gentle and deliberate racking and thrusting of the Horse forward

ward, by helping him in the Weeks of his Mouth with your Snaffle (which must be smooth, big, and full) and correcting him first on one side, then on another, with the Calves of your Legs, and sometimes with the Spur. If you can make him of himself strike into an Amble, tho shuffling disorderly, there will be much Labour saved; for that Proclivity or Aptness to amble, will make him with more easiness and less danger endure the Use of the Tramel, and make him find the Motion without stumbling or amazement: but if you find he will by no means either apprehend the Motions or Intentions, then struggle not with him, but fall to the use of the Tramel in the manner following.

The Form of the Tramel.

But before I come to the Use and Virtue thereof, I will shew you the Form and Substance whereof it ought to be made; because nothing hath ever done this Instrument more injury, than false Substances and false Shapes. Therefore some make these Tramels of all Leather, and they will either reach or break; the first mars the Work by uncertainty, the other loseth the labour.

Another makes it of Canvas, and that galls.

A third makes it of strong Lists, and that hath all the Faults of both the former; for the Softness will not let it lie close, and the Gentleness makes it stretch out of all compass, or break upon every Stumble. And as these, so there are a world of other useless Tramels: for you must understand, that touching the true Tramel, the Side-Ropes must be firm without yielding an hair; the Hose must be soft, lie close, and not move from its first place; and the Backband must be flat, no matter how light, and so defended from the Fillets that it may not gall. And this Tramel must be thus made, and of these Substances:

First, For the Side-Ropes, they must be made of the best, finest, and strongest Packthred, such as your *Turky*-Thred, and turn'd by the Roper into a delicate strong Cord; yet at the utmost not above the bigness of a small Jack-line, with a Noose at each end, so strong as is possible to be made; neither must these Side-Ropes be twined too hard, but gentle, and with a yielding Condition, for that will bring on the Motion more easy, and keep the Tramel from breaking. Now these Side-Ropes must be just thirty-six inches in length, and so equal one with another, that no difference may be espy'd.

For

For the Horſe which muſt be placed in the Small of the Fore leg, and the Small of the Hinder-leg, above the Feet-lock; they muſt be made of fine Girt-Web, which is ſoft and pliant, and lined with double Cotton. Over the Girt-Web muſt be faſtened ſtrong Tubs of white Neats-Leather well tallowed, and ſuited to an even length, and ſtamped with holes of equal diſtance, which ſhall paſs through the Nooſes of the Side-Ropes, and be made longer or ſhorter at pleaſure, with very ſtrong Buckles. Theſe Hoſe, the Girt would be four Inches in length, and the Tabs ten.

The Back-band being of no other uſe but to bear up the Side-Ropes, would (if you tramel all the Fore-legs) be made of fine Girt-Web, and lined with Cotton; but if you tramel but one ſide, then an ordinary Tape will ſerve, being ſure that it carries the Side-Ropes in an even Line, without either riſing or falling: for if it riſe, it ſhortens the Side-Rope, and if it falls, it endangers tangling.

Thus you ſee what the true Tramel is, and how to be made; touching the Uſe, it thus followeth.

The true Uſe of the true Tramel.

When you have brought your Horſe into an even ſmooth Path, without Rubs or Roughneſs, you ſhall there looſe the near Fore-leg, and the near Hind-leg; then put to them the Side-Rope, and ſee that he ſtand at that juſt proportion which Nature her ſelf hath formed him, without either ſtraining or enlarging his Members, and in that even and juſt length, ſtay the Side-Rope by a ſmall Tape faſtened up to the Saddle. Then with your hand on the Bridle, ſtraining his Head, put him gently forward, and if need be, have the help of a By-ſtander to put him forward alſo, and ſo force him to amble up and down the Road, with all the Gentleneſs you can, ſuffering him to take his own leiſure, that thereby he may come to an underſtanding of his reſtraint, and your Will for the Performance of the Motion; and though he ſnapper or ſtumble, or peradventure fall now and then, yet it matters not, do you only ſtay his Head, give him leave to riſe, and with all gentleneſs put him forward again, till finding his own fault, and underſtanding the Motion, he will become perfect, and amble in your Hand to your contentment. And that this may be done with more eaſe and leſs amazement to the Horſe, it is not amiſs (at his firſt Trameling) that you give your Side-Ropes more length than ordinary, both that the Twitches may be leſs ſudden

ſudden, and Motion coming more gently, the Horſe may ſooner apprehend it.

But as ſoon as he comes to any perfectneſs, then inſtantly put the Side-Ropes to their true length. For an Inch too long, is a Foot too ſlow in the Pace; and an Inch too ſhort cauſeth Rolling, a Twitching up of the Legs, and indeed a kind of plain Halting.

When to alter the Tramel.

When the Horſe will thus amble in your Hand perfectly, being tramelled on one ſide, you ſhall then change them to the other ſide, and make him amble in your hand as you did before. And thus you ſhall do, changing from one ſide to another, till with this Half-Tramel he will run and amble in your hand, without ſnappering or ſtumbling, both readily and ſwiftly. When this is attained unto, which cannot be above two or three hours labour, (if there be any tractableneſs) you may then put on the whole Tramel, and the broad flat-back Band, trameling both ſides equally; and ſo run him in your hand (at the utmoſt length of the Bridle) up and down the Road at divers times; then pauſe, cheriſh, and to it again: and thus apply him, till you have brought him to that Perfection, that he will amble ſwiftly, truly and readily, when, where, and how you pleaſe; then put him upon uneven and uncertain ways, as up hill and down-hill, where there are Clots and Roughneſs, and where there is Hollowneſs and falſe Treading.

When to mount his Back.

Now when he is perfect in your Hand upon all theſe, you may then adventure to mount his Back, which (if you pleaſe) you may firſt do by a Boy, or Groom; making the Horſe amble under him, whilſt you ſtay his Head to prevent danger, or to ſee how he ſtriketh. Then after mount your ſelf, and with all gentleneſs and lenity increaſing his Pace more and more, till you come to the height of Perfection. And thus as you did before in your Hand, ſo do now on his Back, firſt with the whole Tramel, then with the half, and changing the Tramel oft, firſt from one ſide, then to another, then altering Grounds, till you find that exquiſiteneſs which you deſire; and this muſt be done by daily Exerciſe and Labour, as twice, thrice, ſometimes oftener in the day.

When

When to Journey.

When you have obtain'd your Wish in the Perfection of his Stroke, the Nimbleness of his Limbs, and the good Carriage of his Head and Body, you may then take away the Tramel altogether, and exercise him without it. But this Exercise I would have upon the High-way, (and not Horsecourser like) in a private smooth Road, for that affords but a couzening Pace, which is left upon every small Weariness; therefore take the High-way forward for three, four, or five miles in a Morning, more or less, as you find his Aptness and Ability. Now if in this Journeying, either through Weariness, Ignorance or Peevishness, you find in him willingness to forsake his Pace, then (ever carrying in your Pocket the Half-Tramel) alight and put them on, and so exercise him in them, and now and then give him ease, bring him home in his true Pace. This Exercise you shall follow day by day, and every day increasing it more and more, till you have brought him from one mile to many; which done, you may then give him ease, as letting him rest a day or two, or more, and then apply him again: and if you find in him neither error nor alteration, then you may conclude your Work is finish'd.

But if any alteration do happen (as many fantasttick Horses are subject unto) if it be in the Motion of his Pace, then with your hand reform it. But if that fail, then the use of the Half-Tramel will never fail you.

Now if the Error proceed from any other occasion, look seriously into the cause thereof, and taking that away, the effect will soon cease; for you are to understand, that in this manner of teaching him to amble, you are forbidden no help whatsoever which belongs unto Horsemanship, as Chain, Cavezan, Musroul, Head-strain, Martingal, Bit, or any other necessary Instrument, because this Motion is not drawn from the Mouth, but from the Limbs.

Many things else might be spoken on this Subject, but it would only load Paper, and weary Memory; and I am only at short Essays, and true Experiments, therefore take this as sufficient.

The

The Office of the Buyer, wherein is ſhew'd all the Perfections and Imperfections that are or can be in a Horſe.

Obſervations and Advertiſements for any Man when he goes about to buy an Horſe.

THERE is nothing more difficult in all the Art of Horſemanſhip, than to ſet down conſtant and uncontroulable Reſolutions, by which to bind every Man's Mind to Unity of Conſent in the buying of an Horſe; for, according to the old Adage, *What is one Man's Meat, is another Man's Poiſon*; what one affects, another diſlikes. But to proceed according to the Rule of Reaſon, the Precepts of the Antients, and the modern Practice of our conceived Opinions, I will as briefly as I can (and the rather, becauſe it is a Labour I never undertook in this wiſe before) ſhew you thoſe Obſervations and Advertiſements which may fortify you in any hard Election.

The End for which to buy.

Firſt therefore you are to obſerve, that if you elect an Horſe for your Heart's Contentment, you muſt conſider the End and Purpoſe for which you buy him; as whether for the Wars, Running, Hunting, Travelling, Draught or Burden: every one having their ſeveral Characters, and their ſeveral Faces both of Beauty and Uncomelineſs.

But becauſe there is but one Truth and one Perfection, I will under the Deſcription of the perfect and untainted Horſe ſhew all the Imperfections and Attendures, which either Nature or Miſchance can put upon him of greateſt Deformity.

Let me then adviſe you that intend to buy an Horſe, to acquaint yourſelf with all the true Shapes and Excellencies which belong to a Horſe, whether it be in his natural and true Proportion, or in any accidental or outward Increaſe or Decreaſe of any Limb or Member; and from their Contraries, to gather all things whatſoever, that may give diſlike or offence.

Election how divided.

To begin therefore with the first Principle of Election you shall understand they are divided into two especial Heads, the one general, the other particular.

The General Rule.

The general Rule of Election is, First, The End for which you buy; then his Breed or Generation, his Colour, his Pace, and his Stature. These are said to be general, because they have a general Dependance upon every Man's several Opinion: as the first, which is the End for which you buy, is a thing shut up only in your own Bosom.

Of Breed.

The other, which is Breed, you must either take it from faithful Report, your own Knowledge, or from some known and certain Characters, by which one Strain, or one Country, is distinguish'd from another: as the *Neapolitan* is known by his Hawk-Nose, the *Spaniard* by his small Limbs, the *Barbary* by his fine Head and deep Hoof, the *Dutch* by his rough Legs, the *English* by his general strong knitting together, and so forth of divers others.

Of Colour.

As for his Colour, tho there is no Colour exempt from Goodness, for I have seen good of all, yet there are some better reputed than others; as the Dapple Grey for Beauty, the Brown-Bay for Service, the Black with silver Hairs for Courage, and the Liard and true mix'd Roan for Countenance. As for the Sorrel, the Black without White, and the unchangeable Iron-Grey, are reputed Cholerick; the bright Bay, the Flea-bitten, and the Black with white Marks, are Sanguinists; the Black, White, Yellow, Dun, Kite-glew'd and the Pye-bald, are Phlegmatick; and the Chesnut, the Mouse-dun, the Red-Bay, the Blue-Grey, are Melancholy.

Pace, as Trotting.

Now for his Pace, which is either Trot, Amble, Rack or Gallop, you must refer it to the End also for which you buy; as if it be for the Wars, Running, Hunting, or your own Pleasure, then the Trot is most tolerable, and this Motion you shall know by a cross moving of the Horse's Limbs; as when the Fore-leg, and the near Hinder-Leg, or the near

Fore-leg and the far Hinder-leg move and go forward in one inſtant, and in this Motion, the nearer the Horſe taketh his Limbs from the ground, the opener, the evener, and the ſhorter is his Pace: for to take up his Feet ſlovenly, ſhews Stumbling and Lameneſs; to tread narrow or croſs, ſhews Interfering or Failing; to ſtep uneven, ſhews Toil and Wearineſs; and to tread long, ſhews Over-reaching.

Ambling.

Now if you elect for Eaſe, great Perſons Seats, or long Travel, then Ambling is required. And this Motion is contrary to Trotting, for now both the Feet on one ſide muſt move equally together; that is, the far Fore-leg and the far Hinder-leg, and the near Fore-leg and the near Hinder-leg. And this Motion muſt go juſt, large, ſmooth and nimble; for to tread falſe, takes away all Eaſe; to tread ſhort, rids no ground; to tread rough, ſhews rolling; and to tread un-nimbly ſhews a falſe Pace that never continueth, as alſo Lameneſs.

Racking.

If you elect for Buck-hunting, galloping on the Highway poſt, Hackney, or the like, then a racking Pace is required: and this Motion is the ſame that Ambling is, only it is in a ſwifter Time, and a ſhorter Tread; and tho it rid not ſo much ground, yet it is a little more eaſy.

Galloping.

Now to all theſe Paces muſt be joined a good Gallop, which naturally every trotting and racking Horſe hath: the Ambler is a little unapt thereunto, becauſe the Motions are both one, ſo that being put to a greater Swiftneſs of Pace than formerly he hath been acquainted withal, he handles his Legs confuſedly, and out of order, and being train'd gently, and made to underſtand the Motion, he will as well undertake it as any trotting Horſe whatſoever. Now in a good Gallop you are to obſerve theſe Virtues: firſt that the Horſe which taketh up his Feet nimbly from the Ground, but doth not raiſe them high, that neither rolleth nor beateth himſelf, that ſtretcheth out his Fore-legs, follows nimbly with his hinder, and neither cutteth under his Knee, (which is called the ſwift Cut) nor croſſeth, nor claps one Foot on another, and ever leadeth with his far Fore-foot, and not with the near; he is ſaid ever to gallop comely and moſt true, and he is the fitteſt for Speed or any ſwift Employment. If he

gallop round, and raiſe his Fore-feet he is then ſaid to gallop ſtrongly, but not ſwiftly, and is fitteſt for the great Saddle, the Wars and ſtrong Encounters: if he gallop ſlow, yet ſure, he will ſerve for the High-way; but if he labour his Feet confuſedly, and gallop painfully, then he is good for no galloping Service; beſides, it ſhews ſome hidden Lameneſs.

His Stature.

Laſtly, touching his Stature, it muſt be referred to the End for which you buy, ever obſerving that the biggeſt and ſtrongeſt are fitteſt for ſtrong Occaſions, and great Burdens, ſtrong Draughts, and double Carriage; the middle ſize, for Pleaſure and general Employments; and the leaſt for Eaſe, Street-Walks, and Summer-Hackney.

The particular Rule.

Now touching the particular Rule of Election, it is contain'd in the Diſcovery of natural Deformities, accidental outward Sorrances, or inward hidden Miſchiefs, which are ſo many and ſo infinite, thar it is a World of Work to explain them; yet for Satisfaction ſake, I will in as methodical manner as I can, ſhew what you are to obſerve in this Occaſion.

How to ſtand to View.

When a Horſe is brought unto you to buy (being ſatisfied for his Breed, his Pace, Colour and Stature) then let him ſtand naked before you, and placing your ſelf before his Face, take a ſtrict View of his Countenance, and the Chearfulneſs thereof; for it is an excellent Glaſs wherein to behold his Goodneſs and beſt Perfections. As thus;

His Ears.

If his Ears be ſmall thin, ſharp, ſhort, pricked and moving; or if they be long, yet well ſet on, and well carried it is a Mark of Beauty, Goodneſs and Mettle: but if they be thick, laved or lolling, wide ſet and unmoving, then are they the ſigns of Dulneſs, Doggedneſs, and Evil-nature.

His Face.

If his Face be lean his Forehead ſwelling outward, a Mark or Feather in his Face ſet high, as above his Eyes, at the top of his Eyes; if he have a white Star or white Ratch of an indifferent ſize, and even placed, or a white Snip on his Noſe or Lip; all are Marks of Beauty and Go-

neſs. But if his Face be fat, cloudy or skouling, his Forehead flat as a Trencher, (which we call Mare faced) for the Marks in his Forehead ſtands low, as under his Eyes; if his Star or Ratch ſtand awry, or in an evil poſture, or inſtead of a Snip, his Noſe be raw and unhairy, or his Face generally bald; all are ſigns of Deformity.

His Eyes.

If his Eyes be round, big, black, ſhining, ſtarting or ſtaring from his Head, if the Black of the Eye fill the Pit or outward Circumference, ſo that in the moving, none (or very little) of the White appeareth, all are ſigns of Beauty, Goodneſs, and material: but if his Eyes be uneven, and of a wrinkled proportion, if they be little (which we call Pig-eyed) both are uncomely ſigns of Weakneſs; if they be red and fiery, take heed of Moon-Eyes, which is next door to Blindneſs; if white and walled, it ſhews a weak Sight and unneceſſary ſtarting or finding of Buggards; if with white Specks, take heed of the Pearl, Pin and Web; if they water or ſhew bloody, it ſhews Bruiſes; and if any Matter, they ſhew old Over-riding, feſtered Rheums or violent Strains. If they look dead or dull, or are hollow, or much ſunk, take heed of Blindneſs at the beſt. The beſt is of an old decrepit Generation, if the Black fill not the Pit, but the White is always appearing; or if in moving, the White or Black be ſeen in equal quantity, it is a ſign of Weakneſs and a dogged Diſpoſition.

His Cheeks and Chaps.

If in handling his Cheeks or Chaps, you find the Bones lean or thin, the Space wide between them, the Thropple or Windpipe big as you can gripe, and the void place without Knots or Kernels; and generally the Jaws ſo great, that the Neck ſeemeth to couch within them, they are excellent Signs of great Wind, Courage and Soundneſs of Head and Body. But if the Chaps be fat and thick, the Space between them cloſed up with groſs Subſtance, and the Thropple little, all are ſigns of ſhort Wind, and much inward Foulneſs. If the void place be full of Knots and Kernels, take heed of the Strangle or Glaunders; at the beſt, the Horſe is not without a foul Cold. If his Jaws be ſo ſtrait that his Neck ſwelleth above them, if it be no more than natural, it is only an uncomely Sign of ſhort Wind, and Purſineſs or Groſſneſs; but if the Swelling be long, and cloſe by

his Chaps like a Whetſtone, then take heed of the Vives, or ſome other unnatural Impoſthume.

His Noſtrils and Muzzle.

If his Noſtrils be open, dry, wide and large, ſo as upon any ſtraining the inward Redneſs is diſcovered; and if his Muzzle be ſmall, his Mouth deep, and his Lips equally meeting, then all are good Signs of Wind, Health and Courage. But if his Noſtrils be ſtrait, his Wind is little; if his Muzzle is groſs, his Spirit is dull; if his Mouth be ſhallow, he will never carry a Bit well; and if his Upper-Lip will not reach his nether, Old-Age or Infirmity hath mark'd him for Carrion. If his Noſe be moiſt and dropping, if it be clear Water, it is a Cold; if foul Matter, then beware of Glanders: if both Noſtrils run, it is hurtful; but if one, then moſt dangerous.

His Teeth.

Touching his Teeth and their Virtues, they are ſet down in a particular Chapter; only remember you never buy an Horſe that wanteth any, for as good looſe all almoſt as one.

His Breaſt.

From his Head look down to his Breaſt, and ſee that it be broad, outſwelling, and adorned with many Feathers; for that ſhews Strength and Durance. The little Breaſt is uncomely, and ſhews Weakneſs; the narrow Breaſt is apt to ſtumble, fall and interfere before; the Breaſt that is hidden inward, and wanteth the Beauty and Diviſion of many Feathers, ſhews a weak-armed Heart, and a Breaſt that is unwilling and unfit for any violent Toil or ſtrong Labour.

His Fore-Thighs.

Next look down from his Elbow to his Knees, and ſee that thoſe Fore-Thighs be ruſh-grown, well-horn'd within, ſinew'd, fleſhy, and out-ſwelling, for they are good ſigns of Strength; the contrary ſhew Weakneſs, and are unnatural.

His Knees.

Then look on his Knees, and ſee that they carry a Proportion, be lean, ſinewy, and cloſe-knit, for they are good and comely; but if one be bigger and rounder than another, the Horſe hath receiv'd miſchief; if they be groſs, the Horſe

Horſe is gouty; if they have Scars, or Hair broken, it is a true mark of a ſtumbling Jade, and a perpetual Faller.

His Legs.

From his Knees look down to his Legs, to his Paſterns; and if you find them lean, flat, and ſinewy, and the inward Bought of his Knee without Seams, or Hair-broken; then he ſhews good Shape and Soundneſs. But if on the inſide of the Leg you find hard Knots, they are Splinters; if on the outſide, they are Skrews or Excreſcencies; if under his Knees be Scabs on the inſide, it is the ſwift Cut, and he will ill endure galloping; if above his Paſterns on the inſide you find Scabs, it ſhews interfering; but if the Scabs be generally over his Legs, it is either extreme foul Keeping, or elſe a Spice of the Mange: if his Fleſh be fat, round, and fleſhy, he will never endure Labour; and if on the inward Bought of his Knees you find Seams, Scabs, or Hair broken, it ſhews a Mallender, which is a cancerous Ulcer.

His Paſterns.

Look then on his Paſtern-Joint and his Paſtern; the firſt muſt be clear and well knit together, the other muſt be ſhort, ſtrong, and upright ſtanding: for if the firſt be big or ſwell'd, take heed of Sinew-Strains and Gourdings; if the other be long, weak or bending, the Limbs will be hardly able to carry the Body without tiring.

His Hoofs.

For the Hoofs in general, they ſhould be black, ſmooth, tough, rather a little long than round, deep, hollow, and full of ſounding: for white Hoofs are tender, and carry a Shoe ill; a rough groſs-ſeam'd Hoof ſhews Old-Age or Over-heating. A brittle Hoof will carry no Shoe at all; an extraordinary round Hoof is ill for foul Ways and deep Hunting. A flat Hoof that is pumiced, ſhews Foundring; and a Hoof that is empty and hollow-ſounding, ſhews a decay'd inward part, by reaſon of ſome Wound or dry Founder. As for the Crown of the Hoof, if the Hair lie ſmooth and cloſe, and the Fleſh flat and even, then all is perfect; but if the Hair be ſtaring, the Skin ſcabbed, and the Fleſh riſing, then look for a Ring-bone, or a Crown-ſcab, or a Quitter-bone.

The Setting on of his Head, his Creſt and Mane.

After this, ſtand by his ſide, and firſt look to the ſetting on of his Head, and ſee that it ſtand neither too high nor too low, but in a direct Line; that his Neck be ſmall at the ſetting on of his Head, and long, growing deeper to the Shoulders, with an high, ſtrong, and thin Mane, long, ſoft, and ſomewhat curling; for theſe are beautiful Characters: whereas to have the Head ill ſet on, is the greateſt Deformity; to have any Bigneſs or Swelling in the Nape of the Neck, ſhews the Pole-Evil, or Beginning of a Fiſtula; to have a ſhort thick Neck like a Bull, to have it falling at the Withers, to have a low, weak, a thick or falling Creſt, ſhews want both of Strength and Mettle; to have much Hair on the Mane, ſhews intolerable Dulneſs; to have it too thin, ſhews Fury; and to have none or ſhed, ſhews the Worm in the Mane, the Itch, or elſe plain Manginess.

His Back, Ribs, Fillets, Belly and Stones.

Look on the Chine of his Back, that it be broad, even and ſtrait, his Ribs well compaſſed and bending outward, his Fillets upright, ſtrong, and ſhort, and not above a handful between his laſt Rib and his Huckle-bone. Let his Belly be well let down, yet hidden within his Ribs, and let his Stones be well truſs'd up to his Body, for all theſe are Marks of Health and good Perfection; whereas to have his Chine narrow, he will never carry a Saddle without wounding; and to have it bending or ſaddle-back'd, ſhews Weakneſs.

To have his Ribs flat, there is not liberty for Wind.

To have his Fillets hanging, long or weak, he will never climb a Hill nor carry a Burden. And to have his Belly clung up or gaunt, or his Stones hanging down looſe aſide, they are both ſigns of Sickneſs, Tenderneſs, Foundering in the Body, and Unaptneſs for Labour.

His Buttocks.

Then look upon his Buttocks, and ſee that they be round, plump, full, and in an even level with his Body; or if low, that it be well raiſed behind, and ſpread forth at the ſetting on of the Tail, for theſe are comely and beautiful. A narrow Pin-Buttock, the Hog or Swine-Rump, and the ſloping and down-let Buttock are full of Deformity, and

both an Injury in Nature, and that they are neither fit or becoming for Pad, Foot-Cloth or Pillion.

His Hinder-Thighs.

Then look to his Hinder-Thighs or Gaskings, if they be well let down even to the middle Joint, thick, brawny, full and swelling; for that is a great Argument of Strength and Goodness, whereas the lank slender Thighs shew Disability and Weakness.

His Gambrels.

Then look upon the Middle-Joint behind, and if it be nothing but Skin and Bone, Veins and Sinews, and rather a little bending than too strait, then it is perfect as it should be. But it hath Chaps or Sores on the inward Bought or Bending, then that is a Sellander. If the Joint be swell'd generally all over, then he hath got a Blow or Bruise; if the Swelling be particular, as in the Pit or hollow Part, or on the inside, and the Vein full and proud, if the Swelling be soft, it is a Blood-spavin; if hard, a Bone-spavin: but if the Swelling be just behind, before the Knuckle, then it is a Curb.

Hinder-Legs.

Then look to his Hinder legs: if they be lean, clean, flat and sinewy, then all is well; but if they be fat, they will not endure Labour. If they be swell'd, the Grease is molten in them. If he be scabbed above the Pasterns, he hath the Scratches; if he have Chaps under his Pasterns, he hath Rains: and none of these but are noisom.

His Tail.

Lastly, for the setting on of his Tail, where there is a good Buttock, the Tail can never stand ill; and where there is an evil Buttock, there the Tail can never stand well; for it ought to stand broad, high, flat, and couched a little inward. Thus I have shew'd you the true Shapes and true Deformities, you may in your choice please your own Fancies.

An uncontroulable Way to know the Age of an Horse.

There are seven outward Characters, by which to know the Age of every Horse; as namely, his Teeth, his Hoofs, his Tail, his Eyes, his Skin, his Hair, and the Bars in his Mouth.

His Teeth.

If you would know his Age by his Teeth, you must

underſtand that an Horſe hath in his Head juſt forty Teeth; that is to ſay, ſix great Wong-Teeth above, and ſix below on one ſide, and as many on the other, which maketh twenty four, and are called his Grinders: then ſix above and ſix below, in the fore-part of his Mouth, which are call'd Gatherers, and make thirty ſix. Then four Tuſhes, one above and one below on one ſide, and are called the Bit-Teeth, which make juſt forty.

Now the firſt Year he hath his Foal's Teeth, which are only Grinders and Gatherers, but no Tuſhes; and they be ſmall, white, and bright to look on.

The ſecond Year he changeth the four foremoſt Teeth in his Head, that is, two above, and two below, in the midſt of the Rows of the Gatherers; and they are browner and bigger than the other.

The third Year he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no apparent Foal's Teeth before, but two above, and two below of each ſide, which are all bright and ſmall.

The fourth Year he changeth the Teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more Foal's Teeth before, but one of each ſide, both above and below.

The fifth Year his foremoſt Teeth will be all changed; but then he hath his Tuſhes on each ſide compleat, and the laſt Foal's Teeth which he caſt: thoſe which come up in their place will be hollow, and have a little black Speck in the midſt, which is call'd the Mark in the Horſe's Mouth, and continueth till he be paſt eight Years old.

The ſixth Year he putteth up his new Tuſhes, near about which you ſhall ſee a growing a little of new and young Fleſh at the bottom of the Tuſh; beſides, the Tuſh will be white, ſmall, ſhort and ſharp.

The ſeventh Year all his Teeth will have their perfect Growth, and the Mark in his Mouth will be plainly ſeen.

The eighth Year all his Teeth will be full, ſmooth and plain, the black Speck or Mark being no more but diſcern'd, and his Tuſhes will be more yellow than ordinary.

The ninth Year his foremoſt Teeth will be longer, broader, yellower and fouler than at younger Years, the Mark gone, and his Tuſhes will be bluntiſh.

The tenth Year the inſide of his upper Tuſhes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers ends, which till that Age you ſhall ever feel; beſides, the Temples of his Head will begin to be crooked and hollow.

The

The eleventh Year his Teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black and foul; only he may then cut even, and his Teeth will ſtand directly oppoſite one to another.

The twelfth Year his Teeth will be long, yellow, black and foul, but then his upper Teeth will hang over his nether.

The thirteenth Year his Tuſhes will be worn ſomewhat cloſe to his Chaps (if he be a much ridden Horſe) otherwiſe they will be black, foul and long, like the Tuſhes of a Boar.

His Mouth.

See that he does not over-hang his upper Teeth over his nether; for tho it be the Mark of an old Horſe, yet ſometimes a young Horſe hath that Infirmity. See likewiſe that he is not too deep burnt of the Lampas, and that his Fleſh lie ſmooth with his Bars; for if it be too deep burnt, his Hay and Provender will ſtick therein, which will be very troubleſom to the Horſe.

His Hoofs.

If his Hoofs be rugged, and as it were ſeamed one Seam over another, and many Seams; if they be dry, full and cruſty, or crumbling, it is a ſign of very old Age; and on the contrary part, a ſmooth, moiſt, hollow and well-ſounding Hoof, is a ſign of young Years.

His Tail.

If you take your Horſe with your Finger and your Thumb by the Stern of the Tail, cloſe at the ſetting on by the Buttock, feeling there hard, and if you feel of each ſide of the Tail a Joint ſtick out more than any other, by the bigneſs of an Hazle-nut, then you may preſume the Horſe is under two years old; but if his Joints be all plain, and no ſuch thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and it may be thirteen.

His Eyes.

If his Eyes be round, full, ſtaring or ſtarting from his Head, if the Pits over them be filled, ſmooth and even with his Temples, and no Wrinkles, either about his Brow, or under his Eyes, then he is young; if otherwiſe you ſee the contrary Characters, it is a ſign of old Age.

His Skin.

If you take his Skin in any part of his Body, between your Finger and your Thumb, and pull it from his Fleſh, then letting it go again, if it ſuddenly return to the place from

from whence it came, and be ſmooth and plain without Wr
kle, then he is young and full of ſtrength; but if it ſtan
and not return inſtantly to its former place, then he is ver
old and waſted.

His Hair.

If an Horſe that is of any dark Colour, ſhall grow gri
only about his Eye-brows, or underneath his Mane; or an
Horſe of a whitiſh Colour ſhall grow meannelled with eith
black or red Meannels univerſally over his Body; then bo
are Signs of old Age.

His Bars.

Laſtly, if the Bars in his Mouth be great, deep, an
handle rough and hard, then is the Horſe old; but if th
be ſoft, ſhallow, and handle gently and tenderly, then is h
young, and in good ability of Body.

And thus much touching the Office of the Buyer.

The perfect Shape of a Horſe all together.

Firſt, there is required that the Hoof be black, ſmoot
dry, large, round and hollow; the Paſterns ſtrait and u
right; Fet-locks ſhort; the Legs ſtrait and flat, called al
Lath-legged; the Knees bony, lean and round; the Nec
long, high-reared, and great towards the Breaſt; the Brea
large and round; the Ears ſmall, ſharp, long and upright
the Fore-head lean and large; the Eyes great, full an
black; the Brows well filled, and ſhooting outwards; th
Jaws wide, ſlender and lean; the Noſtrils wide and open
the Mouth great; the Head long and lean, like to a Sheep
the Mane thin and large; the Withers ſharp and pointed
the Back ſhort, even, plain and double-chin'd; the Sides an
Ribs deep, large and bearing out like the Cover of a Trun
and cloſe ſhut at the Huckle-bone; the Belly long and grea
but hid under the Ribs; the Flanks full, yet gaunt; th
Rump round, plain and broad, with a large ſpace betwi
the Buttocks; the Thighs long and large, with well-faſhion
Bones, and thoſe fleſhy; the Hams dry and ſtrait; th
Truncheon ſmall, long, well ſet on, and well couched
the Train long, not too thick, and falling to the Ground
the Yard and Stones ſmall; and laſtly, the Horſe to be wa
riſen before. And to conclude, the perfect Shape of a Hor
according as a famous Horſe-man hath deſcribed it, is in
few words thus, *viz.* A broad Fore-head, a great Ey
a lean Head, thin, ſlender, lean, wide Jaws, a long hig
reared Neck, reared Withers, a broad deep Cheſt and Bod
upright

upright Pasterns, and narrow Hoof: And this is the common, allowed and approved Shape of a perfect Horse, so that if any of those things be deficient in him, he cannot be said to be a Horse of a perfect Shape. Wherefore I conclude, that if a Horse be of a good Colour, well marked, and rightly shaped, and right also by Sire and Mare, it will be seldom seen that he would prove ill, unless his Nature be alienated and marred, either in the Backing and Riding, or else that he be otherwise wronged, by the means of an unskilful Groom. But I may in this point be taxed to hold a Paradox; for some may object unto me, that many times Horses, who are of the best Colour, best Marks, and truest Shapes, do nevertheless prove arrant Jades. I answer, I acknowledge all this to be true, for I have known Horses, who upon their first View have been in extrinsecal Shew so hopeful, as that they have promised what a Man could expect from them; which notwithstanding when they have come to the Test, they have been a Scandal to their Sex: but this is not a thing frequent, for to every one of these who have thus miscarried, you shall have twenty prove right and answerable to your Minds.

Rules to be observed for putting a Horse to Grass, and for taking of him up again.

Before you put your Stable-Horse to Grass, eight or nine days before take blood from him; the next day after give him the Drink of *Diapente*, and a day or two after his Drink abate of his Cloths by degrees, before you turn him forth, lest by doing them on the sudden he take more cold: and after his Cloths are taken off, curry him not at all, but let him stand in his dust, for that will keep him warm. Neither would I have you put him forth till the midst of *May*, at the soonest, for till that time Grass will not have Bite enough, (and let the day wherein you turn him forth be a warm Sunshine Day, and about the Hour of Ten) for Horses pampered in warm Stables, and kept close, will be subject to take cold.

Taking of him up.

Secondly, let him be taken up from Grass very dry, or else he will be subject to be scabby, and that not later then St. *Bartholomew*'s Day, which is the twenty-fourth of *August*; for then the Season doth begin to let fall cold Dews, which causeth much harm to your Horse, and then beginneth the heart of Grass to fall, so as the Grass which he then feedeth upon

upon breedeth no good Nutriment, but groſs, phlegmatick and cold Humours, which putrefieth and corrupteth the Blood, and take him up very quietly, for fear of melting his Greaſe, for his Fat gotten at Graſs is very tender, ſo that every little Motion diſſolveth the ſame, whereby the Blood may be enflamed, and ſo be in danger of Sickneſs, if not of Death. A day or two after you have him in the Stable, let him be ſhod, let blood, and drencht, as before is ſhewed you; for this preventeth Yellows, Stavers and ſuch like Diſeaſes, which the Gall and Spleen occaſioneth, which the Heart and Strength of Graſs, (through the Rankneſs of Blood) doth engender in his Body.

But if you intend to be curious after you have taken him into the Stable, before you have either blooded or drencht him, you may clean him in this manner.

Of Cleanſing, or making a Horſe clean.

Firſt, therefore if it be a hot ſun-ſhiny Day, take him out of the Stable into a place convenient, and there trim him; then take ordinary ſoft waſhing Soap, and anoint his Head and every part of him all over therewith, and have a care that none of it get into his Ears or Eyes; then waſh him very well with warm Water all over, then wipe him with a warm Linen-cloth, and after rub him dry with woollen Cloths; then ſoap him all over again, eſpecially his Mane and Tail, and waſh him very clean with Buck-lee, with a Wiſp or woollen Cloth. And when you have ſufficiently cleanſed him, dry him as you did before, and ſo lead him into the Stable, and clothe him up with a clean, thin, ſoft Cloth. And by this kind of trimming and cleanſing him, you may ſo alter him, that the Owner can ſcarce know him.

General Notes concerning ſome Simples.

All manner of Marrows and Piths, of what kind ſoever they be, muſt be kept by themſelves in a dry cool place, and preſerved from all Filth or Uncleanneſs, and from the annoyance either of Wind or Fire; and ſo they will laſt full out a whole year.

Syrups, Powders, Pills, Electuaries and Ointments.

You ſhall keep no Syrups, no ſweet Electuaries, nor Pills, nor Powders, nor Conſerves of Flowers, nor any Ointments, Sewets or Emplaiſters, or Conſerve of Fruits or Roots, will laſt fully out two years.

Oil

Oils.

Of Oils, ſome will laſt long, ſome muſt be new made: Oils extracted out of Wood or Metals will laſt long.

Roots.

Gather Roots in Autumn, but take the ſmall Sprigs from them, and make them clean and dry.

Dry ſmall Roots in the Shade and Wind, and great ones either in the Wind or Sun, or by the Fire; lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keep long, provided that neither Sun nor Moiſture do injure them.

Herbs.

Gather all manner of Herbs when they do moſt flouriſh, and dry them in the Shade; except they be very moiſt and apt to putrefy, they laſt for the moſt part a whole Year.

Seeds.

Gather Seeds and Fruits when they be fully ripe, and they alſo laſt but one whole Year.

Rind or Bark.

Gather the Rind or Bark of any Simple when the Herb is ripe; dry them, and they will laſt many Years.

The Office of the Farrier.

In what Points conſiſts the Office of the Farrier.

IT conſiſts in four things, *viz.* Science, Experience, Knowlegde and Handy-work: but I ſhall let paſs the firſt three, and ſpeak to Handy-Work; and that is, to heat an Iron well, to turn a Shoe well, to make and point a Nail well, to pare the Hoof well, to cauterize well, to let blood well, to be light and well-handed, bold and hardy, and dreſſing of a Horſe well of ſuch Accidents as may happen unto him.

The Principal Members of a Horſe.

Some hold that there be four, and make the Stones or Gignitors one; but I ſay there are but three, the Liver, the Heart, and the Brain: and if he be offended in any of theſe, he

he will die; but if any other Member beſides theſe be hurt he may live; and therefore the Stones or Gignitors cannot be one of the Principal Members, for you cannot touch any of thoſe three, but you kill him outright, or deſperately endanger him. Now the Stones may receive hurt, and if I deſpair of curing them, I can cut them out, without peril of his Life.

Of the Sinews, and of the Number of them.

There are two Sinews, or Tendons, which are white, and begin at the end of the Noſe, and extend themſelves along the Neck, and along the Back, and make their extent to the four Legs, and take their Ligaments in the Fore-feet.

There are in every Horſe twenty nine or thirty, great and ſmall.

The two great Sinews which I named before.

Item, Two Branches which are main Sinews that proceed from the Brain, and run down the Cheeks to the Teeth.

Item, There are from the Shoulders to the firſt Joint of the Arms, or Fore-legs downwards, two great Sinews.

Item, From the Knees to the Paſterns are four great Sinews, with the ſame Number in the Hinder-part.

Item, In the Fore-part of the Breaſt, and above it, as well within as without, are ten Sinews, ſome greater and ſome ſmaller.

Item, From the Reins of the Back to the Stones are four great Sinews. Laſtly, one great main Sinew which runneth along to the End of the Tail. So as the full Number of the Sinews are twenty nine, or thirty, which are to be diſcerned. But to ſpeak properly, a Horſe hath but one only Vein, which is that we call the Median, or Life's Vein, which is in the Liver, being the true Fountain, Source and great Tun, from whence the Canes, Conduit-pipe and little Veins, (as the ſmaller Rivers) do ſeparate themſelves, which do run through all the Parts and Members of the whole Body. Thoſe Veins that do aſcend to the Head and Body, are called Veins aſcendent; and thoſe which do run low as to the Legs, and lower Members are called hollow or deſcendent Veins.

Of the Vital Blood.

Thoſe are Veins which are Veſſels of quick or running Blood, and is that, that when the Creature ſleepeth, his Blood is in continual Agitation, and never ceaſeth.

Of

Of the Number of the Veins that you are to take Blood from.

In the Neck, in the weeping Veins, under the Ears, and in six other Places, of and about the Head; as in the Palate-Veins, in the Tongue, in the Flank-Veins, in the Breast and Spur-Veins; in the four Members, to wit, the Legs, Thighs, Pasterns and Feet; also in sundry other Places according as necessity shall require it, and in Places which may the better kill the Malady of the said Horse.

For what use you open the Veins.

To open the two Temple-Veins easeth the Pain in the Head, coming of Colds, Rheums, Fevers, Yellows and Stavers, Drowsiness, Frenzy, the sleepy Evil, falling Evil, or any Grief in or about the Eyes or Brain. Secondly, we open the two Eyes or weeping Veins, being most sovereign for such Diseases whereunto the Eyes are subject; as watry or weeping Eyes, Blood-shotten, Pin and Web, Haw, or the like. Thirdly, we open the two Palate-Veins in the Mouth, and those do cure the Lampas, and any inward Sickness in the Body; as the Yellows, Stavers, Anticor, Surfeits, Drowsiness, Tiredness or Wearieness of the Body: or if he hath any Malady in the Throat, as the Strangle, Quinzy, Kernels, Pustles, either within or without; it many times helpeth Inflammations, Glanders, or the like; for the eating or swallowing of his own Blood, is most wholesome and sovereign in such Cases. Fourthly, we do usually open the two Neck-Veins, which helpeth Farcins, Yellows, Stavers, Scabs, Manges, Agues, Fevers, Colds, Surfeits, Glanders, or any other Malady, which may be any ways noxious to the inward Part of the Body. And it also preventeth sudden Sickness, if you do suspect it. Fifthly, the opening of the two Plate or Breast-Veins do help the Anticor, Sickness of the Heart, Morfoundring, which is the Foundring in the Body by over-riding, whereby the Grease of the Horse is molten; it also preventeth Diseases in the Liver, Lungs, and inward Parts grieved; and sometimes Hurts in the Shoulder, which causeth Lameness before. Sixthly, we use to touch the two Thigh-Veins before, which helpeth Foundring in the Fore-feet, Mallenders, Splint, Skrew, Ring-bone, and such like Infirmities in the Fore-foot, and such other higher Parts. Seventhly, we use to take Blood from the four Shackle-Veins before, and this is very good for the Crown-scab, Ring-bone, and such like Diseases.

Eighthly,

Eighthly, we uſe to ſtrike the two Spur-Veins, which c
reth the Farcin in the Sides, Morfoundring, ſwelling u
der the Belly, which is a Diſeaſe called the Feltrick, an
the like. Ninthly, we prick the two Toe-Veins, which
help Frettizing, Foundring, Hoof-bound beating of t
Horſe's Feet by riding upon hard and ſtony Ways, an
the like. Tenthly, we open the two Thigh-Veins behin
and this doth help the Grief of the Kidneys, ſwelling in t
Hinder-Legs, Foundring, Sellanders, Scratches, Kibes, &
And it alſo helpeth Diſeaſes in and about the Belly, a
piſſing of Blood, piſſing oft after great and extraordinar
hard Labour, and the Weakneſs of the Reins, the Back
Belly, Guts, or any other of the inward Parts, the Curb
Spavin, and ſuch Diſeaſes which come of Rankneſs of Blood
Eleventhly, we ſometimes do open the four Shackle-Vei
behind, and this is very good againſt Foundrings, and o
ther Pains in and about the Feet. Twelfthly, we let blood
in the two Flanks or Haunch-Veins, and this is moſt proba
ble for all kind of Fevers, the Stones, Poverty and th
Felter-Worm. Thirteenthly, we draw blood from th
two Tail-Veins, which cureth the Mange in the Tail, fal
ling off of the Hair, or Itch in the Tail. And theſe ar
for the moſt part all the Veins that are uſually open'd: b
that the full Sum or Number of Veins which Farriers com
monly open, are thirty. Other Veins there are, which ar
of a ſmaller proportion, and therefore not fit to be open'd
I will not ſay that theſe Veins ſo open'd do cure Diſeaſes ab
ſolutely, but they do ſometimes aſſuage the Malignancy o
the Malady, ſometimes they prevent Diſeaſes, and ſome
times again they prepare the Body the better to receive ſuch
phyſical Drinks which do inwardly cure them; and ſuch
Salves, Oils, Unguents, which do dry and heal up outward
Infirmities, *&c.*

How many Bones a Horſe hath, and where they are ſituated.

All the Bones which every Horſe hath, whereby to make
up an Organical Body, are theſe, *viz.* He hath in his Head
thirty-nine or forty Teeth: The Bones in his Head do com
prehend the Crocks and Handles of the Skull, albeit they be
compoſed of Parts and Parcels of other Bones; alſo the
two flat Handles, which from the Palate and the Fork of
Throat hath five; the Chine hath fifty-two, the Breaſt and
the Ribs have thirty-ſix, the Fore-legs and Fore-feet have
forty-four, and the Hinder-legs and Feet forty: ſo as the
whole

whole Structure of the Body of a Horſe, whereby to perfect a full Building of Bones, conſiſteth of about two hundred fifty ſeven, or two hundred fifty nine, if they be rightly computed; which do repreſent themſelves all together, at what time the perfect Anatomy of a Horſe is laid open.

Of the Elements.

The Elements are four, and they give Life and Nutriment unto Man, and all other living Creatures; they are theſe, Fire, Air, Water, and Earth.

Their Nature.

The Nature of Fire is to be hot and dry, Air to be hot and moiſt, Water to be cold and moiſt, and Earth to be cold and dry.

Signs of the Zodiack.

Aries, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, *Leo*, *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricornus*, *Aquarius*, *Piſces*; theſe do all govern the twelve Months of the Year, and are placed above the Zodiack.

Names of the Planets.

Saturn, *Jupiter*, *Mars*, *Sol*, *Venus*, *Mercury*, and *Luna*.

The Government of the Signs.

Aries governs the Head, *Taurus* the Neck, *Gemini* the Shoulders and Arms, *Cancer* the Stomach and Breaſt, *Leo* the Heart, *Virgo* the Belly and Guts, *Libra* the Reins and Buttocks, *Scorpio* the Privy Parts, *Sagittarius* the Thighs, *Capricornus* the Knees, *Aquarius* the Legs, and *Piſces* the Feet.

The beſt time to let a Horſe blood in.

If there be no extraordinary Cauſe, as in caſe of deſperate Sickneſs, or ſo; then *Jan.* 3, & 15. *Feb.* 4, & 9. *March* 17, & 18. *April* 10, & 16. *May* 1, & 13. *June* 15, & 20. But for *July* and *Auguſt*, by reaſon that the Canicular Days be then predominant, Blood-letting is not ſo good, but only in urgent Caſe of Neceſſity. In *Septemb.* 11, & 28. *Octob.* 8, & 23. *Novemb.* 5, & 16. *Decemb.* 14, & 26. And theſe Days we hold to be the very beſt, unleſs dangerous and ſudden Sickneſs do cauſe us to alter the ſame; for in Caſes of Neceſſity no days are to be regarded or obſerved.

More Obſervations of Blood-letting you may find hereafter.

Of the four Humours, Blood, Choler, Phlegm, and Melancholy.

Four Humours alſo there are, which be as it were four Children to the four Elements already ſpoken of; and theſe are, Blood, Phlegm, Choler, and Melancholy, without which a natural Body cannot be made: for Blood naturally (if it be perfect) is hot and moiſt, but taketh moſt from Heat, and therefore is ſubordinate to Air; Phlegm is cold and moiſt, but the Principality thereof is Coldneſs, and therefore hath reference to Water; Choler is hot and dry, but its chiefeſt Nature is Heat, and therefore is govern'd by the Element of Fire; Melancholy is cold and dry, but its chiefeſt Condition is Dryneſs, and therefore ſubjects itſelf to the Element of Earth. Now the Fountain of Blood is the Liver, which diſperſing itſelf by the help of the Veins into all the parts of the Body, nouriſheth and preſerveth the ſame. Phlegm preoccupateth the Brain, being a cold and ſpungy Subſtance, and the Seat of the ſenſible Soul. Choler inhabiteth the Liver, which being hot and dry maketh a pleaſing Harmony with the Blood. Melancholy reſideth in the Spleen, which is the Receptacle and Diſcharge of the Excrements of the Liver, from whence we may collect, that it hath its proper Uſe and End. As for demonſtration, Blood principally nouriſheth the Body, Phlegm occaſioneth Motion of the Joints and Members, Choler excited and provoketh the Belly to avoid its Excrements; and laſtly, Melancholy diſpoſeth the Body to an Appetite. Whereupon all the learned Philoſophers do with one unanimous Aſſent agree in this, That in every natural Body there are four principal inſtrumental Members, from which all the Parts of an organical Body are ſaid to be framed; and theſe are the Brain, the Heart, the Liver, and the Stones or Gignitors: and each one of theſe does perform its true Function to all the particular Members of the Body; for the Sinews do receive their Suſtentation from the Brain, and theſe are call'd Animal Spirits; the Arteries from the Heart, which are Vital Spirits; the Veins from the Liver, which are Natural Parts; and the Seed-Veſſels from the Stones or Gignitors, as the Place of Generation.

Of a Horſe's Complexion, which is the moſt neceſſary Phaſis that a Farrier can judge of his Infirmities.

To ſpeak of the Complexions of a Horſe in a particular manner, which is one of the moſt neceſſary Faces that a Farrier can behold, both for the judging of a Horſe's Infirmities, and alſo for the true compounding of his Medicines for every Diſeaſe: and therefore by the Colour of the Horſe you are to judge of his Complexion. For look which of the Elements is moſt predominate in him, from that Element you may draw his Complexion: as thus, If he participate more of the Fire than of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a cholerick Horſe, and his Colour is either a bright Sorrel, a Coal-black without any white, or an Iron-grey unchangeable, that is, ſuch a Grey as neither will ever turn a Dapple-Grey, a White or a Flea-bitten; and theſe Horſes are of nature light, hot, fiery, and ſeldom of any great ſtrength. Theſe Horſes are moſt ſubject to peſtilent Fevers, Yellows, and Inflammation of the Liver: therefore every Farrier ſhould be careful in his compoſing of any Medicine for ſuch a Horſe, to purge Choler, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary Strength in the Potion or Drench; becauſe the Horſe being in his beſt Strength, not reputed ſtrong, ſhould you apply any violent thing to him, that little Strength being abated, there were great danger in confounding the whole Body. If the Horſe participate more of the Air than of the other Elements, then he is of a ſanguine Complexion, and his Colour is either a bright bay or a dark bay, which hath neither ſcouling Countenance, meely Mouth, nor white Flank; or a white flea-bitten, white-lyard like Silver, or black with a white Star, white Raſh or white Foot. Theſe Horſes are of nature pleaſant, nimble, free, and of good ſtrength. The Diſeaſes to them moſt incident are Conſumption of the Liver, Leproſy, Glanders, or any Diſeaſe that is infectious: They are of a good ſtrong Conſtitution, and may endure Strength in their Medicines, eſpecially any thing that cooleth the Blood.

If the Horſe participate more of the Water than of the other Elements, then is he of a phlegmatick Complexion, and his Colour is either milk-white, a yellow, dun, kite-glew'd, or a py'd-ball, in whom there is an equal mixture of Colours. Otherwiſe, if the bay, the black, or the dun exceed the white, he is ſaid to be of that Complexion of

which the Colour is the greateſt. Theſe Horſes are of nature ſlow, and apt to loſe Fleſh. The Diſeaſes which are moſt incident to them, are Colds, Head-ach, Rheums, Staggers, and ſuch-like. They are able to endure the reaſonable Strength of any Medicine, becauſe the abundance of Phlegm which is in them ſufficeth both Nature and the Potion to work upon. All cold Simples are to them exceeding hurtful, ſo are alſo they which are violently hot in the third degree; the firſt, becauſe it bindeth too ſoon; the latter, becauſe it diſperſes too ſuddenly: therefore Simples of a moderate Mean are beſt.

If the Horſe participate of the Earth more than of the other Elements, then is he of a melancholy Complexion; and his Colour is a Mouſe-dun, Ruſſet, Cheſnut, Aſh-Grey, Dark-Bay, having long white Hair, like Goats Hair, growing on his Legs. Theſe Horſes are of nature heavy and faint-hearted: The Diſeaſes to them moſt incident, are Inflammations in the Spleen, Frenzy, Dropſy, and ſuch-like. They are commonly of better ſtrength than they appear by their Actions, and are able to endure the ſtrength of any reaſonable Medicine: All cicatrizing and dry Simples are hurtful unto them, the cold and moiſt are the moſt profitable.

Having thus ſhew'd you theſe four Complexions, Cholerick, Sanguine, Phlegmatick and Melancholy, together with their Qualities and Strengths: you ſhall underſtand now that amongſt Farriers there is another Complexion, or firſt Conſtitution, which is call'd the Compoſition, or Mixture of Complexions; that is, when a Horſe doth participate of all the four Elements equally, and in due proportion: and this is the beſt Complexion, and the Horſe that is of this Complexion is ever one of theſe Colours; that is to ſay, of a fair brown Bay, dappled, or not dappled, a Dapple-Grey, a Black full of ſilver Hair, or a fair Roan red or black. And theſe Horſes are of nature moſt excellent, moſt temperate, ſtrongeſt, gentleſt, and moſt healthful; tho they may have any Diſeaſe as the other have, yet are they naturally inclined to no Diſeaſe. But what Infirmity ſoever falleth unto them, is merely accidental, and not thro any Overflow of natural Diſtemperature. All Medicines muſt be compounded for them according to the Nature of the Sickneſs, and the Time of their Languiſhment; for if the Sickneſs be young and new-bred, then are they able to receive any well-compoſed Receipt; but if it be old, and the inward

inward Powers and Faculties feebled, then you must be careful to help Nature, by adding to every Medicine, of what nature soever, some Simple of Comfort; that as ill Humours be cleansed, so Strength may still be repair'd and maintain'd. And thus much for Complexions.

Twelve Causes of Health and Long Life.

1. The first is Nature, good Digestion, and good Nourishment.
2. The second is, Moderation in Feeding and Diet.
3. The third is, moderate Labour.
4. The fourth is, moderate Use of Sleeping and Waking.
5. The fifth is, moderate Spending upon Mares.
6. The sixth is, moderate Journeys.
7. The seventh is, wholesom Air.
8. The eighth is, not to be exercised too soon after Grass.
9. The ninth is, to be kept from raw and green Meats.
10. The tenth is, not to be suffer'd to eat or drink being hot.
11. The eleventh is, not to be either wash'd or walk'd at the end of his Journey.
12. The twelfth is, to give him with his Provender such Powders and Simples as are prescribed you in all those Chapters, which are by me mention'd, but more particularly in *pag.* 2. And tho he dislikes them at first, yet by mixing a little and a little at a time, they will become natural to him.

Dangerous Sickness how it cometh.

First, All Sickness cometh either by Heats in over-violent Exercise; as when the Horse hath his Grease moulten, the Heart overcharg'd, the vital Blood forced from the inward Parts, and the large Pores and Orifices of the Heart are so obstructed and stopt, that the Spirits cannot return back to their proper places, so as the Organs of the Body cannot rejoice, but by this means the Body must of necessity languish, founder, and mortify.

Secondly, Dangerous Sickness cometh also by Colds; as by indiscreet and negligent keeping, as well before as after long and violent Exercise; and then is the Head perplex'd, the Eyes dulled and pained, the Roots of the Tongue inflamed and swelled, the Lungs with Rheums tickled and offended, occasioning strong and laborious Coughing, and the Nostrils often distilling, and pouring forth filthy and corrupt Matter.

Thirdly, Dangerous Sickneſs cometh alſo by Surfeit of Food, either by eating too much or too little of what is good, or alſo of what is not wholeſom; ſo as the firſt killeth, or at leaſt debilitateth the Stomach, oppreſſeth the Heart, and ſendeth up thoſe evil Fumes into the Head, by which are engendred the Stavers, Frenzies, and other mortal Diſeaſes; the ſecond putrefies the Blood, and converts all its Nutriment into Corruption, from whence proceed the Yellows, Farcins, Fevers, Manges, and other ſuch-like peſtilent, leprous and loathſom Diſeaſes; which ſuffocating the Heart, and clogging the Stomach, dilate and ſpread themſelves univerſally over the whole Body, leaving no Member free, and confounding every Faculty and Member thereof.

Fourthly and Laſtly, Dangerous Sickneſs comes alſo by Accidents; as when a Horſe receiveth ſome deep or perilous Wound or Hurt, either in his Body, or elſewhere in ſome vital or dangerous part, by means whereof Nature is ſo far offended, as that incontinently a general Sickneſs ſeizeth upon him, which if not prevented, Death immediately enſueth.

Signs to know theſe dangerous Sickneſſes.

If his Sickneſs proceed from the firſt, which are Heat, then are the Signs theſe, *viz.* The Heavineſs of his Countenance, Swellings of his Limbs, eſpecially of his Hinder-legs, Scouring and Looſeneſs of his Body; in the beginning of his Sickneſs, ſhort and hot Breath, a loathing and forſaking of his Meat.

If from the ſecond, *viz.* Cold, then the Signs are, A dejected Countenance, Dulneſs or Sleepineſs of the Eyes, Puſhes or hard Knots under the Caul, yea, and many times inflamed Kernels and Swellings ſo high as to the very Roots of the Ear, a rotten, moiſt, inward and hollow Cough, he many times chewing betwixt his Teeth ſome looſe, filthy and phlegmatick Matter, immediately after his Coughing, which in ſome Caſes is not an evil Sign, by reaſon that thereby the Cold rotteth and goeth away: whereas on the contrary ſide, for a Horſe to cough clear and dry, doth demonſtrate a dry Cough, which hath long time lurked in the Body, which is difficult to cure, which will ſo diſcover itſelf at laſt, that his Belly will ſhrink up, and when he drinketh, Water will come forth of his Noſe, and his Eyes will be either watry or mattery, and run continually, thro Pain he hath in his Head, procured by means

of his Cold, and his Hair will be rough and ſtaring, *&c.*

If from the third, which is Surfeit, then the Signs of his Sickneſs are theſe; A Dulneſs of the Head, Eyes and Countenance, and that ſo violent, that he will not be able to lift up his Head from the Manger; A dull and dead Eye, and ſunk into his Head, his Ears prickt upright, and the tops of them cold, as alſo his upper Lips and his Sheath, his Pace reeling and ſtaggering; and if he be too far gone, he will be mad, which you may know by his biting the Rack and Manger, or any body that ſhall come nigh him; and ſometimes biting of himſelf, and beating his Head againſt the Wall, *&c.* But if the Malady be not got into the Brain, then you ſhall find by the Yellowneſs of his Eyes, Lips and Tongue, that it is turned to the Yellows, which will ſo infect his Blood all over, that if not prevented ſuddenly, he will ſoon come to the Dogs.

Accidental.

The fourth and laſt Ground of his Sickneſs is, if it proceed from accidental Means; the Signs then are a perplexed and troubled Body, ſweating at the Roots of his Ears, Flanks, behind the Shoulders, againſt the Heart, ſometimes trembling all over his Body, and ſometimes glowing and burning in his vital Parts as in the Temples of his Head, againſt his Heart, on the inſide of his Fore-legs, and on the inſide of his Hinder-legs; his Mouth will be dry and hot, his Tongue will be ſubject to be inflamed and furred, he will have loathing againſt Meat, and a great Drought to Thirſt, and drink cold Water, and keep his Mouth in the ſame when he hath done drinking.

To cure Sickneſs before it comes, and to prevent it when it comes.

Firſt, when you find it come, to let him blood, and for three Mornings together to give him the Drink of Diapente, and keep him warm, and let him faſt three hours after it, and then give him a Maſh, and Hay after that. But in caſe Diapente is not to be had, then take Celandine half a handful, as well Roots as Leaves, well waſhed and picked; Wormwood and Rue, of each half a handful; boil them in a Bottle of Ale or Beer to a quart, and ſtrain it well, and put into it half a pound of ſweet Butter, and two or three ſpoonfuls of Treacle, and give it him luke-warm.

But ſecondly, to prevent it before it comes, is when you turn him to Graſs, to let him blood likewiſe, and to give

him the next day the Drink of Diapente, and so to abate his Cloths (if he hath any) to harden him before you turn him to Grass, to prevent his taking of Cold.

The Drink of Diapente.

Take of Gentian, of *Aristolochia rotunda*, of Bay-berries, of Myrrh, and of the Shavings of Ivory, of each a like quantity; and let them be pounded severally, and finely searced, and after weighed, so as the quantity may be just and even, not any one less or more than another: and after you have mixed them very well together, put them into a Gally-pot, close stopped, as that no Air get into it, and so keep it for your use.

How to use it.

If you drench him for a Cold or Glanders, give it him in *Muscadine*; if for other Maladies, then in sweet Sack, and the quantity must be a Pint and an half. But if you cannot get either Sack or Muscadine, then give it in strong Ale or Beer; the quantity of this Powder of Diapente must be two or three Spoonfuls, unless to a small, sick, and feeble Horse, then according to your own Judgment, as you shall think requisite. The word Diapente is as much as to say, Composition of five Simples.

The Vertues of Diapente.

It is the most sovereign thing which can be given to a Horse by way of Drench, to cure him of very many Diseases. It is good against all infectious Maladies, as Fevers of what kind soever, all sorts of Pestilences, or contagious Colds, Coughs wet or dry, Glanders, Surfeits, Inflammations in the Blood or Liver, Frenzies, Yellows; it purifieth, it refineth, and purgeth the Blood from all Infection and Corruption; it easeth the overflowing of the Gall, and the working of the Spleen; in a word, it cureth whatsoever Diseases the Body of an Horse may be inwardly inclined unto.

The making of the true Diahexaple.

Take the Roots of round Aristolochia, wash them small, scrape them, and make them as clean as may be; then take Juniper-berries unexcorticated, and Bay-berries excorticated; take the purest and best Drops of Myrrh, and the finest Shavings of Ivory, of each an equal quantity; beat all but the Myrrh together, and searce them fine. Lastly, beat the

Myrrh

Myrrh and ſearce it alſo, then mix them all together, preſs it hard into a Gally-pot, and keep it for your uſe.

The Vertues of Diahexaple.

This Powder, or indeed Mithridate, is moſt excellent and ſovereign againſt all manner of Poiſon, either inward or outward; it cureth the biting of venomous Beaſts, and helpeth Short-wind and Purſineſs.

It mundifieth, cleanſeth, ſuppleth, and maketh thin old groſs Humours; it healeth all Diſeaſes of the Liver and Stomach, helps Digeſtion, and being given in a Pint of Sack, it cureth all Colds; it is good againſt Conſumptions, breaks Phlegm, helps Staggers, and all Diſeaſes of the Head. *Gerrard.*

It recovers Tiring and Wearineſs, and takes away Cramps and Convulſions, dries up the Scurvey, breaks the Stone, opens all inward Obſtructions, and helps the Yellows, the Gargil, and the Dropſy. *Diaſcorides.*

It cures all Diſeaſes of the Lungs, as Glanders and Rottenneſs, gives eaſe to all Gripings and Windineſs of the Belly, provoketh Urine, takes away Infection, and kills Worms.

A Drink to open an Horſe's Body, and to cleanſe it.

Take a Quart of new Milk, Sallet-Oil, Honey, of each half a Pint; an Ounce of *London*-Treacle, and the Yolks of ſix Eggs, beat all together; then put to it Liquorice, Sugar-Candy, Anniſeeds, (all in Powder) of each an Ounce; and infuſe all together, and ſo give it him; ride him after it, ſet him up warm, and let him faſt two hours or more.

How to make Diateſſaron, Mithridate *or* Horſe-Treacle.

Take of the Powder of *Diapente*, two Ounces; and put it into a clean Stone-Mortar, and put thereto clarified or Life-Honey the like quantity; let the Mortar be hot before you put them in, then with a Peſtle of Wood work it till it come to a Treacle; then take it forth, and keep it in a Gally-pot cloſe ſtopped for your uſe.

How to uſe it.

Take half an Ounce of this Confection, and diſſolve it in a Pint and a half of Muſcadine, or ſweet Sack, and give it him blood-warm; and as you ſee occaſion, you may add to it of *London*-Treacle an Ounce.

The

The Virtues of it.

It is good for all Poiſons and infectious Diſeaſes, and drives forth all manner of Sickneſs from the Heart, and is good for all ſorts of Fevers, and all other deſperate and dangerous Sickneſs; taking firſt Blood from him, if there be cauſe.

How to make the Electuary of Diateſſaron.

Take Gentian, Bay-berries, *Ariſtolochia rotunda* or Birthwort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to very fine Powder; put them into a ſtone Mortar (as you did the other) with two Pounds of clarify'd Honey, and work them together till they come to a Treacle: and when you have done, put it up into a Gally-pot, and keep it for your uſe cloſe ſtopt. Uſe it as you do the other.

The Vertues of it.

It reſiſts Peſtilence and Poiſon, and cures the biting of any venomous Beaſt; it is good for the Falling-Sickneſs, Convulſions, and all cold Diſtempers of the Brain; as alſo for Colds and Coughs wet and dry, Surfeits, Glaunders, Inflammation of the Blood and Liver, Yellows, and many other Diſeaſes which a Horſe's Body is inclinable unto.

A Drink given when you neither have Diahexaple, Diapente, *or* Diateſſaron.

Take of Tar two Ounces, of Honey an Ounce, black Soap two Drams, and Bay-Salt a Handful, incorporate them well together: then take two Egg-ſhells, the Crowns only being broken, ſo as you may get forth the Meat, and fill them full with this Medicine, and put them down his throat, and walk or ride him gently up and down a quarter of an hour or more, warm clothed: that done, ſet him up warm, and litter him well, and let his Drink be either Maſhes or white Water for four or five days after, and let him faſt three hours after his Medicine, and let his Hay and Provender be ſweet and good.

Signs of all Sickneſs in general.

If you find in your Horſe Heavineſs of Countenance, extreme Looſeneſs, or extreme Coſtiveneſs, Shortneſs of Breath, Loathing of Meat, dull and imperfect Eyes, rotten or dry Cough, ſtaring Hair, or Hair unnaturally diſcolour'd, a ſtaggering Pace, frantick Behaviour, Yellowneſs of the

the Eyes, of Skin, faint or cold Sweat, extraordinary lying down, or beating or looking back at his Body, Alteration of Qualities or Geſtures, not caſting off the Coat, Leanneſs, Hide-bound, and the like. All theſe are apparent Signs of Diſtemperature and Sickneſs.

The Diſeaſes of a Horſe are known by the Signs he makes.

If he be ſlower in pace than he uſe to be, if his Ears hang down more than they are wont, if his Flank be more than uſually hollow, if he burn between his Ears or about his Paſterns, if in Travel his Stomach fail him, or his Mouth, that in his Labour do uſe to foam, become dry; all theſe are ſigns of Sickneſs.

By hanging of his Head.

If he hang down his Head, which was wont to be of a chearful Countenance, it is a ſign of a Fever, Head-ach, the Staggers, or ſore Eyes.

By the turning of his Head backwards.

If he turn his Head backward to the place grieved, if it be to the right ſide, it is a ſign of Obſtructions in the Liver; but if he turn it down to his Belly, it is a ſign either of the Cholick, Bots or Worms.

By Water running from his Mouth.

When Water runs from his Mouth, it is either a ſign of the Staggers or wet Cough.

By his ſtinking Breath, or ſtinking Matter from his Noſtrils.

If his Breath ſtinks, or foul Matter iſſues from his Noſtrils, it is a ſign of an Ulcer in the Noſe or Head; but if the Matter be white, then it is a ſign of Glanders; if the Matter be black, then it is a ſign of the mourning of the Chine, if there be any ſuch Diſeaſe. But if it be yellow, then it is the Conſumption of the Liver: but if he caſt little Lumps out of his mouth, then it ſhews Conſumption and Rottenneſs of the Lungs.

By his Breath and Body being hot.

If his Body and Breath be hot, it is a ſign of a Fever and Heat of the Stomach; if therewithal he forſake his Meat, it is a ſign of the Inflammation of the Liver, and either of dry or moiſt Yellows.

By

By his hollow Temples.

If his Temples be very hollow, it is a ſign of the Strangle or Old-Age.

By Shortneſs of Breath.

Shortneſs of Breath, and beating of the Flank, is a ſign either of a Fever or the Strangle; but if the Paſſage of the Throat be ſtopped, it is a ſign the Film of the Lungs are broken, and the Spleen troubled, or elſe broken-winded.

By the ſwelling about his Ears.

If there be any ſwelling about his Ears, it is a ſign of the Pole-Evil: Swelling under the Ears is a ſign of the Vives; and Swelling in the Mouth, is a ſign either of a Canker, Flaps or Lampas.

By the ſwelling under the Throat.

Swelling under the Throat is a ſign of the Glanders, and ſwelling about the Tongue-Roots a ſign of the Strangle; but if there be about the Tongue-Roots nothing but little ſmall Knots, like Wax-kernels, then it is a ſign but of a Cold only.

By his ſwelling about his Body.

Swelling on the left ſide, is a ſign of a ſick Spleen; Swelling in the Belly and Legs, a ſign of the Dropſy; and Swelling in the Flank, of Cholick only.

By his offering to cough.

To cough, or to offer to cough, it is a ſign either of the Glanders, or of a wet or dry Cough, of a Conſumption or Foundring in the Body.

By his Staggering.

Staggering is a ſign either of a Fever, of the Staggers, or of ſwaying in the Neck: but if he ſtagger or roll behind only, then it is a ſign either of Foundring of the Body, or of Pain in the Kidneys.

By the Hollowneſs of his Back.

The Hollowneſs of a Horſe's Back is a ſign of a dry Malady, or the Dropſy.

By his Trembling.

Trembling is a ſign of a Fever, or Foundring in the Body: and here is to be noted, that if he trembleth after he

he hath drunk, he hath during the time of his trembling a Fit of an Ague upon him, and after he hath done trembling he will glow; and some Horses after their burning will sweat also

By the Staring of his Hair.

Hair staring is a sign either of a cold Stomach, or of Foundring in the Body, but generally of a cold or want of Cloths.

By his Staling with Pain.

If he stale with pain, it is a sign either of Foundring in the Body, the Wind-Cholick or the Stone; or if the Urine which comes from him be yellow, it is a sign of the Glanders; but if it be blackish and thick, it is a sign of the Pain in the Kidneys.

By his Leanness and Gauntness.

Leanness and Gauntness is a sign of Hide-bound, or of the Consumption, of the dry Malady, of Foundring in the Body, Inflammation of the Liver, the Yellows, Cholick or Worms.

By his Looseness of Body.

Laxativeness or Looseness of Body is a sign of a hot Liver.

By his Costiveness.

Costiveness in the Body is a sign of dry Yellows, or Diseases of the Gall.

By his stinking Dung.

If his Dung stink, it is a sign of a hot Liver; if it have no Smell, then of a cold Liver; but if it be undigested, then either of a Consumption, or of a dry Malady.

By his Lying.

If he desire to lie much on his left side, then is he troubled with the Spleen; if on the right, then it is a sign of Heat of Liver; and if finding no rest, it may be Bots, Worms, Cholick, or Griping in the Belly; if when he is down he spreads himself abroad, it shews the Dropsy; if he groans when he is down, it shews either a sick Spleen, moist Yellows, Cholick, Bots, or Film broken; if he be not able to rise when he his down, then either mortal Weakness, Foundring in the Body or Legs.

By his ſtriking at his Belly.

If he ſtrike with his Foot at his Belly, it is a ſign of the Cholick: but if when he ſtriketh, he fisk with his Tail alſo, then it is either Bots, or rough Worms.

By his being ſcabby.

If he be ſcabby and ulcerous all over his Body, and about his Neck, it is a ſign of the Mange; if it be an Ulcer full of Knots, creeping about the Veins, it is the Farcy: if ſpreading abroad only in one place, it is a Canker: if the Ulcer be hollow and crooked, it is a Fiſtula; but if it be a ſpungy Wart, full of Blood, it is then an Ambury.

By his Tongue.

If his Tongue hang out and is ſwoln, it is a ſign of the Strangle.

By his eating and drinking much.

If he eat much and drink little, it is a ſign of a cold Liver; but if he deſire to drink much and eat little, it is either a ſign of a Fever, rotten Lungs, Heat in the Stomach, Heat in the Liver, or the dry Yellows.

By his Dung.

It is neceſſary to obſerve his Dung, for it is the beſt Tell-troth of his inward Parts; and you muſt not judge it by a general Opinion, but by a private Diſcourſe with your ſelf how he hath been fed, becauſe Food is the only thing that breeds Alterations. As thus;

If he feed altogether upon Graſs, his Dung hath one Complexion, as green; if upon Hay, then another, as a little more dark; if upon little Provender, then inclining to yellow. But to avoid both Curioſity and Doubt, obſerve well the Complexion of his Dung, when he is in beſt Health, and the beſt Feeding, and as you find it alter, ſo judge either of his Health or Sickneſs. As thus;

If his Dung be clear, criſp, and of a pale yellowiſh Complexion, hanging together without Separation, more than as the Weight breaks it in the falling, being neither ſo thin nor ſo thick, but it will a little flat on the Ground; and indeed, both in Savour and Subſtance, reſembling a ſound Man's Ordure, then is he clean, well fed, and without Imperfection. If it be well coloured, yet falls from him in round Knots or Pellets, ſo it be but the firſt and ſecond

Dung,

Dung, the reſt good, as aforeſaid, it matters not; for it only ſhews he did eat Hay lately, and that will ever come away firſt. But if all his Dung be alike, then it is a ſign of foul feeding, and he hath either too much Hay, or eats too much Litter, and too little Corn.

If his Dung be in round Pellets, and blackiſh, or brown, it ſhews inward Heat in the Body.

If it be greaſy, it ſhews Foulneſs, and that Greaſe is molten, but cannot come away. If he void Greaſe in groſs Subſtance with Dung, if it be white and clear, then it comes away kindly, and there is no Danger: but if it be yellow or putrefied, then the Greaſe has long lain in his Body, and Sickneſs will follow, if not prevented.

If his Dung be red and hard, then he hath had too ſtrong Heats, and Coſtiveneſs will follow, if not prevented; if it be pale and looſe, it ſhews inward Coldneſs of Body, or too much moiſt and corrupt Feeding

Signs from the Urine.

Tho the Urine be not altogether ſo material as the Dung, yet it hath ſome true Phaſes: as thus;

Pale Colour.

That Urine that is of a pale yellowiſh Colour, rather thick than thin, of a ſtrong Smell and piercing Condition, is an healthful, ſound and good Urine; but if it be of an high red Complexion, either like Blood, or inclining to Blood, then hath he had either too ſore Heats, been over-ridden, or ridden too early after Winter-Graſs.

High Complexion.

If the Urine be of an high Complexion, clear and tranſparent, like old *March*-Beer, then he is inflamed in his Body, and hath taken ſome Surfeit.

White like Cream.

If it carry a white Cream on the top, it ſhews a weak Back, or Conſumption in the Seed.

Green.

A green Urine ſhews Conſumption in the Body.

Bloody Streaks.

An Urine with bloody Streaks ſhews an Ulcer in the Kidneys;

neys; and a black, thick, cloudy Urine shews Death and Mortality.

Of Sickness in general.

Whensoever upon any occasion, you shall find your Horse droop in Countenance, to forsake his Meat, or to shew any other apparent Sign of Sickness, if they be not great you may forbear to let blood; because where the Blood is spent, the Spirits are spent also, and they are not easily recovered. But if the Signs be great and dangerous, then by all means let blood instantly, and for three Mornings together, (the Horse being fasting) give him half an Ounce of the Powder (called by me) *Diahexaple*, and by the *Italians*, *Regina Medicinæ*, the Queen of Medicines, brewed either in a Pint of Muscadine or Malmsey, or a Pint of the Syrup of Sugar, being two degrees above the ordinary Molosses; or for want thereof, Molosses will serve the turn: and where all are wanting, you may take either a Pint of Dragon-water, or a Quart of the sweetest and strongest Ale-wort; or in Extremity, take a Quart of strong Ale or Beer, but then warm it a little before the Fire. This must be given with an Horn, and if he hath Ability of Body, ride him in some warm place after, and let him fast near two hours after the riding. At Noon give him a sweet Mash, clothe him very warm, and let him touch no cold Water. The making of the *Diahexaple* you may find in the Table.

General Observations in the Physicking of Horses.

Know then first, that whensoever you give your Horse any inward Potion or Glister, give it him no more than milk-warm, there being nothing more mortal to a Horse than the scalding of his Stomach; for a Horse of all living Creatures can worse endure to receive inwardly hot things. Besides, let his Drinks and inward Medicines be given him easily and gently, lest in making too much haste you suffocate him; which if it do, you must then let his Head loose and walk him up and down till the Passion be past. Now for the administring of Pills, Balls, and such-like Medicines, little Advice is required, if they be not made too great: only if you take forth his Tongue first, and then put them up into his Mouth upon the end of a stick, then let go his Tongue again, which when he draws into his Mouth he must needs force the Balls down his throat. You are to administer your Physick evermore fasting, unless upon urgent

gent occasion, (as in case of sudden and dangerous Sickness) and the longer he be kept fasting from Meat and Drink, as well before he taketh his Physick as after, it will be the better, for by that means his Medicine will work the more kindly in his Body; for he ought to be kept from eating and drinking, at least three hours before and after.

Purging Balls how made and given.

Take an Ounce, or an Ounce and a half of *Aloes Succotrina*, more or less, (according to the Strength and Constitution of your Horse) powder it very well, and mix it with a little fresh Butter: then divide it into three equal parts, and cover them all over with fresh Butter, to prevent the bitter Taste of the Aloes; make them about the bigness of a large Walnut, shaped thick in the middle, and sharp at both ends, and given him in the Morning fasting. If you think them not stiff enough with Butter alone, you may mix some Bran with it, and then they will be as stiff as Dough or Paste.

What Exercise is meet with Physick.

A little moderate Exercise is very necessary, whereby his Physick may work the better and the sooner; as to trot him easily about, or to walk him up and down under the Wind in the warm Sun about a quarter of an hour. Then bring him into the Stable, and clothe him up warm, and litter him well, and let his Keeper be with him three or four hours, observing his Postures, and as occasion may require, to help him with all things necessary for his use. No Creature hath a moister Body than a Horse.

Of mixing your Simples.

If your Horse's Sickness be a Fever, mix always your Simples with warm Water, with Honey, or with Oil; but if the Disease be Coughs, Rheums, or any thing that proceedeth of cold Causes, then mix them with good Ale or Wine; but if he be brought low with Sickness, then mix them with Milk and Eggs.

Observations upon raking a Horse.

Observe whensoever you rake your Horse with your hand, (which is, to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when he cannot dung) that you anoint your hand with Sallet-Oil, or Butter, or Hogs-grease; the like you must

ever do, when you put up any Suppository; but when you administer any Glister, you shall then but anoint the Glister Pipe.

Observations upon Blood-letting.

Observe in Blood-letting that you take not so much Blood from a Colt as an old Horse, and but the fourth part from a yearling Foal; you must likewise have regard to his Age and Strength, taking more or less according to his Ability of Body. Lastly, letting of Blood is either to divert Sickness and preserve Health, or to refresh and cool the Spirits or to diminish Blood, or to purge Grease and bad Humours. Before you let him blood, moderately chafe or exercise him and let him rest a day before his Blood-letting, and three days after; not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principal Seasons for that purpose, unless urgent Occasion requires. He will bleed the better if you let him drink before you blood him, conditionally you do not heat him.

When he is bleeding, put your finger into his mouth and tickle him in the Roof thereof, making him chaw and move his Chaps, and that will force it to spin forth; when he hath bled enough, according to your discretion rub the Horse's Body all over therewith; but especially the place where he is blooded on; for the antient Farriers hold that it is endu'd with a certain natural Virtue to comfort the weak and feeble Members of a Horse, and to dry up all evil Humours. And tie him up to the Rack for an hour or two, lest he bleed afresh; for that will turn his Blood.

Signs to know when he wanteth Bleeding.

If he stand in need of Bleeding, his Eyes will look red and his Veins will swell more than ordinary; also he will have a certain Itch about his Mane and Tail, and still continually rubbing them, and sometimes will shed some his Hair also; he will now and then pill about the Roots his Ears, or in those places where the Head-stall of the Bridle lies; his Urine will be red and high-colour'd, and his Dung will be black and hard: Also if he hath red Inflammations or little Bubbles on his Back, or doth not digest Meat well, or if the Whites of his Eyes be yellow, or the Inside of his Lips, either upper or nether. Many other Signs there are of Bleeding, but let these suffice, *&c.*

Of outward Sorrances, what they are, and of general Observations in the Cure of them.

Outward Sorrances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of ways: that is to say, either it is an evil State and Compoſition of the Body, which is to be diſcerned either by the Shape, Number, Quality or Sight of the Member evil affected and diſeaſed; or elſe it is the Looſening and Diviſion of any Unity, which as it may chance diverſly, ſo it hath divers Names accordingly. For if ſuch a Diviſion or Looſing be in the Bone, then it is call'd a Fracture; if it be in any fleſhy part, then it is call'd a Wound or an Ulcer; if it be in the Veins, then a Rupture; if in the Sinews, then a Convulſion or Cramp; and if it be in the Skin, then it is call'd an Excortication: And of all theſe ſeverally I intend to treat in the Chapters following. Now foraſmuch as in this general Art of Chirurgery, or Sorrance, there are certain general Obſervations or Caveats to be held inviolate, I will, before I proceed any further, give you a little taſte thereof.

Burning.

Firſt, You ſhall therefore underſtand, that it is the Duty of every good Farrier, never to burn or cauterize with hot Iron, or with Oil, or to make any Inciſion with a Knife, where there be either Veins, Sinews or Joints, but either ſomewhat lower or ſomewhat higher.

Corroſives.

Item, You ſhall never apply to any Joint or Sinewy Part, either Roſalgar, Arſnick, Mercury Sublimate, nor any ſuch violent Corroſive.

Cauterizing.

Item, It is ever better to lance with a hot Iron than a cold; that is, it is better to cauterize than to inciſe.

Blood.

Item, Blood doth ever produce white and thick Matter; Choler a watriſh and thin Matter, but not much; ſalt Phlegm great abundance of Matter; and Melancholy many dry Scabs.

Bleeding.

Item, You muſt never let blood, except it be either to divert Sickneſs and preſerve Health, or to refreſh and cool

the Blood, or elſe to diminiſh Blood, or to purge bad Humours.

Item, When you let blood, take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a grown Horſe.

Swellings.

Item, In all Impoſthumes and ſwelling Sores, call'd Tumours, you muſt obſerve the Beginning of the Grief, the Increaſe of the Grief, the Perfection and State of the Grief, and laſtly, the Declination and Ending of the Grief.

Item, In the beginning of every ſuch ſwelling Impoſthumes (if you cannot quite deſtroy them) uſe repercuſſive Medicines, if they be not near ſome principal Part of the Body, but then not for fear of endangering Life; and in augmentation uſe mollifying Medicines, and ſuppling, to ripen them: and when they are ripe, lance them, and let out the Corruption, or dry them up; and in the Declination of them uſe cleanſing and healing Medicines.

Hard and ſoft Swellings.

Item, All Swellings are either hard or ſoft; the hard will commonly corrode, the ſoft will continue long.

Item, If you thruſt your finger upon any Swelling upon a Horſe's Legs, then if it preſently riſe again and fill, then is the Hurt new and recoverable; but if the Dent do remain and continue ſtill behind, then is it an old Hurt, and cometh of cold Humours, and asks great Art in healing.

Sores.

When Sores begin to matter, then they heal; but if the Putrefaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

Cauterizing.

All Cauterizing or Burning with hot Irons, ſtraineth things enlarged, drieth up what is too much moiſtned, diſſolveth things gather'd together or harden'd, draweth back things which are diſperſed, and helpeth old Griefs; for it ripeneth, diſſolveth, and maketh them to run and iſſue forth Matter, as you may find more at large hereafter.

Burning.

Item, You muſt ſometimes burn under the Sore, to divert Humours; and ſometimes above, to defend and withhold Humours.

Item,

Item, It is ever better to burn with Copper than with Iron, becauſe Iron is of a malignant nature, Steel is of an indifferent virtue betwixt both.

Actual and Potential Burning, what it is.

Item, All actual Burning is to burn with Inſtruments, and potential Burning is to burn with Medicines, as are Caulticks and Corroſives.

Of blowing Powder into a Horſe's Eyes.

Item, If you blow Powder into a Horſe's Eyes often, it will make him blind.

Of taking up of Veins.

Item, By no means take up any Veins in the Fore-legs, unleſs great Extremity compel you; for there is nothing will ſooner make a Horſe ſtiff and lame. Many other Obſervations there are, which becauſe they are not ſo general as theſe be, I think it meet to omit.

Five things a Farrier ought principally to know.

Firſt, What Diſeaſes a Horſe is inclinable to.

Secondly, What be the Cauſes of every Diſeaſe in particular.

Thirdly, How and by what ways and means theſe Diſeaſes do accrue.

Fourthly, The Signs how to diſtinguiſh and know them.

And laſtly, The Means and Manner how to cure them.

Of Gliſters, and their Uſes.

The Nature and Property of Gliſters are divers, therefore every Farrier ought to know to what end they ſerve, and of what Drugs or Simples they ought to be compounded; for every Gliſter is to be made according to the Diſeaſe. Now ſome are to eaſe Griefs, and to allay the Sharpneſs of the Humours, ſome to bind, ſome to looſen, and ſome to purge, and ſome to heal Ulcers. Theſe Gliſters, by cleanſing the Guts, refreſh the Vital Parts, and prepare the Body, (if the Body be not at that time ſoluble) to make the Purgation work the better; which if you give your Medicine without giving a Gliſter before it, you may ſtir up and provoke the peccant Humours, which by reaſon they cannot find preſent way forth, being hindred by Oppilations in the Guts, through Coſtiveneſs and Ventoſity, and

other Impediments, do attempt to make their Paſſage a contrary way; which cannot be done but with great hazard to the Life of the poor Beaſt.

Now for the Compoſition of Gliſters, you ſhall underſtand that they be made of four things; that is, of Decoctions of Drugs, of Oil, of ſuch like unctuous Matter, as Butter or ſoft Greaſe; and fourthly, of divers Salts to provoke the Vertue expulſive. A Decoction is a Broth made of certain Herbs, as Mallows, Marſhmallows, Pellitory, Camomile, and ſometimes of White-Lilly Roots, and other ſuch like things, which we do boil in Water to a third part: and ſometimes we uſe, inſtead of Herbs and Water, to take the Fat of Beef-broth, of a Sheep's-head, Milk, Whey, and ſome ſuch kind of Liquor, mingled ſometimes either with Honey or Sugar, according to the Quality of the Diſeaſe: the Gliſter being either Lenitive, that is to ſay, eaſing of Pain; or Glutinative, which is joining of things together; or elſe Abſterſive, which is wiping away or cleanſing of filthy Matter. You ought to adminiſter according to the Age, Strength, Greatneſs, and Corpulency of the Horſe; for if he be a Horſe of a ſtrong and able Body, of large Growth and Stature, fat and luſty, we uſe to put into the Gliſter of the Decoction three Pints; but if he be of a ſmall Growth, weak, ſick, feeble or lean, then we do put in a Quart of the ſame at moſt. Of Oil we uſe to put in half a Pint, of Salt two or three Drams at moſt; and ſometimes we uſe to put Verjuice, ſometimes Honey, as we find cauſe. Drugs we uſe, are Sena, Caſſia, Agarick, Aniſeeds, Oil of Dill, Oil of Camomile, Oil of Violets, Sugar-Candy, *&c.* You ought not to exceed the quantity of three Ounces in one Gliſter at the moſt, neither muſt you exceed of Butter four Ounces, and let it not be above lukewarm when you give it him; let him be ſomewhat empty, and let him be raked before you adminiſter it. Give it him in a Gliſter-Pipe made for that purpoſe, which muſt be put home and having the Confection within the Bladder, wring it with a very good Strength into his Body; then draw the Pipe by degrees out of his Body, and not all at once, and clap his Tail cloſe to his Tuel, and ſo hold it with your Hand cloſe about half an hour at the leaſt, to the end it may work in his Belly the better.

A Glister for a Horse that is very costive of Body, and cannot dung.

Take the Fat of Beef-broth a Pint and an half, of *English* Honey half a Pint, adding thereto of white Salt two Drams; mix them well together, and administer it blood-warm, and clap his Tail close to his Tuel, and there hold it for half an hour at least; and if then it will not work, as I am confident it will, let him trot about easily about half an hour, and set him up warm clothed and littered, and let him stand upon his Trench four or five hours, during which time he will purge kindly: then unbit him, and give him sweet Hay, and an hour after he hath eaten give him a Mash of Malt, and an hour after that, white Water, and let him drink no cold Water in a day or two after.

The Vertues of it.

The Nature of this Glister is, to open and loosen the Body, to bring away with it all offensive Humours, to remove Obstructions ingendred in the Body by means of excessive Heat; it cleanseth the Guts, and slicketh away all slimy Substance which is residing in the Guts. The Horse that received this Glister was a small *Scotch* Nag, and was grown weak and poor, and low of his Flesh; but if he had been a great, large, fat, healthy or corpulent Horse, you might have made it stronger.

Another Laxative Glister.

Take the Decoction of Mallows, and mix therewith fresh Butter four Ounces, or Sallet-Oil half a Pint; and so luke-warm administer it, and order him as you did before.

The Nature of it.

This is of all the Glisters the most gentle, and is very lenitive, and a great Easer of Pain; it is good for a Horse that is taken with any Contraction or Convulsion, and generally for any Costiveness in a Horse whatsoever, proceeding from any Surfeits or Sickness.

Another Glister Laxative.

Take Pellitory two Handfuls, or for want thereof, Melilot two Handfuls; or if you cannot get any of them, then two Handfuls of Camomile, but Pellitory is the best; boil to a Decoction, and add to it of Verjuice and Sallet-Oil, of each half a Pint, of Honey four Ounces, of Cassia two

Ounces; mix all together, and apply it blood-warm Glister-wise.

The Vertues of it.

It will open the Body and Guts of the Horse very well, it will take from him noxious and offensive Humours; it will carry away all spungy Matter; it will allay the Sharpness of Humours; it will cleanse old Ulcers; it will refresh and comfort the vital Parts. But if you find you have given him too great a quantity, so that he purgeth or scoureth too much, then you may give him this Glister restringent.

A Restringent Glister.

Take of the aforesaid Decoction one Pint, and as much of Cow's Milk (as it cometh warm from her) and put to it the Yolks of three new-laid Eggs, well beaten and mixed with the said Liquor, and give it him blood-warm. This is only to be applied to a Horse that is very laxative, or that doth empty himself too much.

A Glister for a Horse that cannot be kept clean.

Take Mallows three Handfuls; Marshmallow Roots cleansed and bruised, and Violet-Leaves, of each two Handfuls; Flax-seed three Spoonfuls; as many of the Cloves of White-Lilly Roots as you can hold in your hand: boil all these in fair Water from a Gallon to a Quart, and strain it, and put thereto of Sena one Ounce, which must be infused or steeped in the Liquor three hours, standing upon the hot Embers; then put to it of Sallet-Oil, half a Pint, and being blood-warm administer it.

A Glister in case of desperate Sickness.

Take of the Oil of Dill, Oil of Camomile, Oil of Violets of Cassia, of each half an Ounce; and of brown Sugar-Candy in Powder, three Ounces; then take half a Handful of Mallow-leaves, boil them to a Decoction in fair Water, then strain it, and put to it all the fore-named Ingredients, and administer it blood warm. This helpeth all Fevers, it is good against the Pestilence, and all languishing Diseases, most excellent against Surfeits, either by Provender or otherwise; and it will occasion great Strength in a short time, if it be rightly made, and carefully given.

A Glister for the Pestilence and all Fevers.

Take the Pulp of Colloquintida, half an Ounce; (I mean

the Seeds and Skin taken away) of Dragantium three quarters of an Ounce; of Centaury and of Wormwood, of each half a Handful; of Caſtoreum a quarter of an Ounce; boil all theſe in three Quarts of Water to a Quart, then ſtrain it, and diſſolve into the Broth; of Gerologundinum three Ounces, and of white Salt three Drams, of Sallet-Oil half a Pint, and blood-warm adminiſter it.

A Gliſter for the Cholick.

Take ſalt Water or new-made Brine two Pints; diſſolve therein a pretty quantity of Soap, and ſo blood-warm adminiſter it.

Vertues.

This is very good for the Cholick, or any Sickneſs or Griping in the Guts or Belly. And let this ſuffice for Gliſters.

Advice given upon giving Gliſters.

1. Before you adminiſter any Gliſter, be ſure to rake him.
2. When you put in the Gliſter-Pipe, anoint it firſt with Butter or Sallet-Oil; and that you put it in and out gently, and by degrees; you muſt anoint likewiſe the Hand and Arm.
3. Let him keep it above half an hour, by holding his Tuel cloſe to his Fundament.
4. That you do adminiſter it but blood-warm.
5. That you do ſqueeze and preſs between your Hands the Bladder ſtrongly.
6. And laſtly, that you let him not drink any cold Water in a day or two after; but let it either be ſweet Maſh, or elſe white Water.

What things are put into a Laxative Gliſter.

Pellitory, Melilot, Camomile, (but Pellitory is the beſt) and of this would I make a Decoction, and to this Decoction would I put Sallet-Oil, Honey, Aloes and Verjuice of the Crab, Brank-urſine, Mallows or Marſh-Mallows, Fennel Roots, Parſly Roots, Jack by the Hedge.

The Nature of the principal Drugs.

Agarick purgeth the Brain, Aloes the Breaſt and Body, Rhubarb purgeth the evil Water, and it openeth the Liver, and helpeth Obſtructions and Oppilations, *Ariſtolochia rotunda* mollifieth the Breaſt, Liver and Lungs, and Baccalaury or Bay-berries do mortify the peccant Humours which do engender

gender in the Breaſt or Entrails, near about the Heart; and Saffron (if it be diſcreetly given) doth marvellouſly comfort and enlighten the Heart.

What the true Nature of Rhubarb is.

Rhubarb hath two contrary Natures, for if you either ſcrape, grate, or cut it, then it is a Looſner, for it diſſolveth and openeth the Liver, and expelleth the Obſtructions thereof; it expulſeth all bad Humours in and about the Heart, Liver, and Spleen; it cleanſeth the Body, and ſendeth away the peccant Humours among the Excrements, and all ſuch Things as may annoy or offend the Entrails: but if you ſhall pound or beat it in a Mortar, or otherwiſe, the Spirit whereof being a ſubtle Body, will tranſire and fly away, whereby the Operation thereof will be to bind, and be no way profitable.

The Nature of a Suppoſitory.

The Nature of Suppoſitorys are to help a Horſe that cannot well empty himſelf, for a Suppoſitory cauſeth him to diſcharge himſelf of many ſuperfluous and evil Humours which do diſturb, annoy, and diſtemper his Body with their peccant Qualitys and Conditions; for they breed bad Nutriment, which ofttimes good Diet cannot amend, and therefore muſt be ſent away by Purgation, that is to ſay, by Suppoſitory, or Gliſter, or Potion. A Suppoſitory is but a Preparative to a Gliſter or Potion, and is of all other things the gentleſt you can uſe; and it will looſen the Guts, which may be bound and clogged with dry, hot and hard Excrements, which a Gliſter will not ſo well do.

The firſt Suppoſitory.

Take a Candle of four or five in the pound, and cut off three Inches at the ſmaller end, and anoint the biggeſt part of it either with Sallet-Oil or freſh Butter, and ſo put it into his Fundament; then with your Hand hold his Tail to his Tuel about half an hour, by which time the Suppoſitory will be diſſolved; then take his Back, and trot him up and down till he begin to empty and purge himſelf, for by this means it will work the better and more kindly. This is the moſt gentle of all Suppoſitorys that can be given: This diſſolveth all hard, dry, and hot Excrements, and ſendeth them forth; and beſides, it ſuppleth the Guts. Another, if you find him ſo weak, that you dare not without

out the peril of his Life administer unto him any Potion, or purging Medicine, then give him this Suppository.

The second Suppository.

Take of common Honey six Ounces, of Salt-Niter one Ounce and a half, of Wheat Flower, and of Anniseeds in fine Powder, of each an Ounce; boil all these to a stiff thickness, and so make it into Suppositorys, then take one of them and anoint it all over with Saller-Oil, and your Hand also, and so put it up into his Fundament the length of your Hand, then tie his Tail betwixt his Legs, by fastning it to his Girts, and let it remain so half an hour, then ride and order him as before. This is good in case of Surfeits or inward Sickness.

Suppository the third.

Take a piece of Castle-Soap, and paring it, bring it into the fashion of a Suppository, and apply it, and order him as before is taught you; this is special good to purge Phlegm.

Suppository the fourth.

Take so much Savin as will suffice, and stamp it to a Mash, and stamp with it Staveſaker and Salt, of each two Ounces; boil these in common Honey so much as will suffice, till it be thick, and so make it up into Suppositorys, and administer one of them as you did before, and order him so likewise. This purgeth Choler.

Suppository the fifth.

Take an angry red Onion, and peel it, and jag it crossways with your Knife, and so administer it, and order him as before. This purgeth Melancholy.

Suppository the sixth.

Take common Honey a Pint, and boil it till it be thick, and make it up into Suppositorys as it cooleth, and administer it, and order him as before perscribed. This purgeth ill Humours, it cooleth and comforteth the Body very much, and causeth a good Appetite to Meat.

Observations to be observed in giving Suppositorys, Glisters or Potions.

First, you may do it in a Morning fasting, unless Necessity urgeth the contrary. Se-

Secondly, you must not at those times suffer him to drink any cold Water; no, not with Exercise, but either sweet Mashes or white Water.

Thirdly, it is very needful, before you administer either of them, to rake him. And,

Fourthly, that he be after kept warm.

Of Purgations and their Uses.

Purgation is an emptying and voiding of superfluous Humours, which do cumber, pester and disturb the Body with their peccant Condition; which ill Humours do breed bad Nutriment, which when it will not be concocted and amended either by fair means or by the Help of Nature, then it must be compelled, forced and driven away by Purgation, Vomit, Glister or Suppository: but to speak only of Purgations, purging of Horses are either by Pills or Potions. Pills are any solid or substantial stuff fixed together in one Body, and being made into round Balls are cast down the Horse's Throat. A Potion is when you give him any liquid purging Matter to drink, whether it be purging Powders dissolved in Wine or Ale, or that it be any other liquid stuff. Now Pills purge and make clean the Head and Brain, bringing Phlegm and other gross Humours down into the Excrements; and Potions cleanse the Stomach, Guts, and every other inward Member.

What a skilful Farrier ought to know: Before he goes about to purge a Horse, he ought to consider the Nature of the Simples.

Now the Art of the true Farrier is in chusing of the Simples, whereof these Pills or Potions are to be compounded, and in skilfully applying the same. First then, he ought to know what ill Humours he is oppress't with; as whether it proceeds from Choler, Phlegm and Melancholy, and where they do most abound, and then what Simples are best to purge those Humours, and with what Quality or Temperament they are endued: for some Simples are most violent and next Cousins to strong Poisons, as Scammony or Colloquintida; some again are gentle, as Manna, Cassia, Whey, Prunes, and such like; and some are neither too violent nor too gentle, but of a Mean, as Rhubarb, Agarick, Sena and Aloes.

The

The Nature of the Diſeaſe, the Strength of the Horſe, and the Climate he was bred in.

You ought to conſider the Nature of the Diſeaſe, the Strength of the Horſe, and with them join the Nature, Strength and Quantity of the Medicine; he muſt conſider likewiſe the Climate wherein he was bred; and you are to make a difference between delicate and tender Horſes, and ſtrong and ſturdy Horſes, and in ſuch caſes the Quality and Quantity is to be look'd into of every Simple: the Climate likewiſe is to be reſpected, whether it be too hot or too cold, and you are not to adminiſter as hot Simples in the Summer as in the Winter, nor ſo cold things in the Winter as in the Summer; you ought to have reſpect to the Day, and to chuſe that always that is moſt temperate, for too much Heat makes a Horſe faint, and too much Cold ſpoils the Working of the Medicine.

When he is to have his Potion.

Give him his Potion in the Morning, after he hath faſted from Meat and Drink all the Night before.

To ride him after it.

After he hath received his Potion, ride him gently after it, about an Hour, and ſet him up, and let him ſtand on the Bit two Hours after it, well littered and clothed: If he be ſick, let him lie down; but if that will do him no good, and that you find him ſo ſick that you fear his Life, then give him a Quart of warm Milk, with a little Saffron in it, and he will do well, and give him no other Meat than a Maſh of Malt, and white Water to drink, till his Medicine hath done working.

How to make a Maſh.

Take half a Peck of ground Malt, and put it into a Pail, then put in as ſcalding hot Water as will wet it very well; then ſtir it about half an Hour, till taſting the Water you find it as ſweet as Honey; then being lukewarm, give it to the Horſe to drink: this Maſh is only to be uſed after you have given him a Purge to make it work the better, or after hard Labour, or inſtead of Drink in the time of any great Sickneſs.

Now to come to particular Receipts and Medicines themſelves; and though the antient Farriers do make but two kinds, that is to ſay, Pills and Purgations; yet I divide them

them into three, that is to say, Scourings, Pills, and Pur
tions.

What Scourings are.

Scourings are those wholesome, natural, and gentle pur
ing Medicines, which stirring up no great Flux of Humou
do only keep the Body clean from such Evils as would ar
and grow, being every way as wholesome in Health as
Sickness, and may most properly be termed Preparati
or Preparers of the Body to entertain stronger Medicines.

Scouring by Grass.

To speak of the most gentle and natural Scouring, wh
is Grass, which you are to give but for fifteen Days togeth
and no more, for after that it fatteth; the best scouring Gr
is a New-mown Meadow, for that will rake his Guts ver
well, nor will he in such a place gather Flesh; but if y
intend to fat him, you are to take him out from thenc
and put him in some other Pasture, where the Scithe ha
not been. And this manner of Scouring will cause him t
empty himself well of all his evil Humours and Surfeits, cl
his Limbs marvellous well, do his Legs and Feet very mu
good, refine his corrupt Blood, and make him agile and li
of Spirit. Next unto Grass is Sorrage, which is only th
Blades of green Corn, as Wheat, Rye, Barley, and fi
like, being given him seven Days and no more, which cle
seth and cooleth the Body very much, so doth the Leaves
Sallows, and of the Elm-green Thistles, likewise being c
up and given him for about five Days is a good Scourer. A
the last of these gentle Scourings is the Mash of Malt
aforesaid; but as you are prescribed there to make it of
quarter of a Peck of Malt, you are to take a larger here (
you use it for a Scouring) a Peck of Malt, and to put to
a handful or more of beaten Hempseed.

A Scouring to be given after a Sweat.

Take half an Ounce of Rozin of Jallop in Powder, h
an Ounce of Cream of Tartar powdred, and half an Ou
of Liquorish in Powder, make these up into Balls with fre
Butter, about the bigness of a small Wallnut, and give h
four or five at a time, in a Horn full of Beer, one af
another.

Scourings of a little stronger Nature are these.

To mix with his Oats a handful or two of Hempseed,
to take a handful of the Powder of dried Box-leaves, and
mu

much of Brimstone, and mix it amongst his Provender. These are to be used after Labour when he hath sweat much.

They purge the Head and Stomach.

These two Scourings work upon no Matter but what Nature will excel; they purge the Head, Stomach, and Entrails, they kill all kind of Worms, and dry up Phlegm.

Scourings of a stronger nature.

Take of Sallet Oil half a Pint, of new Milk from the Cow a Pint, brew it together, and give it him lukewarm; or else take a Pint of Muscadine, and half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and give it him to drink; or the same quantity of Oil and Sack mix'd together, and give it him lukewarm.

Their Virtues.

These Scourings cleanse the Head, Body and Guts, from all Phlegm or molten Grease, which any violent Labour hath dissolved; they are exceeding good for any manner of Cold, or Stoppage of the Wind-pipes; and if you add to them good store of Sugar-Candy, it will be the better.

How to order a Horse before you give him Physick.

In Winter if his Body be purged, it must be prepared by Blood-letting with artificial Diet; you are to keep him a day or two without Hay, Straw, or such-like hard Meats, which will hinder the working of the Physick; and he must be kept for a time from all manner of Meat, because Emptiness is a great help to physical Operation, otherwise it may happen to do more hurt than good. Two or three days before you purge him, let his Meat be either Wheat or Rye-Bran, prepared like as has been taught you, or else good Bread made on purpose with Beans, Pease, and some Rye in it; or else good sweet Oats clean sifted: and let his Drink be white Water only. And that Morning you intend to give him his Purge, let him be fasting from either Meat or Drink.

The easiest sort of Pills.

The easiest Pills are these: Either take twenty Cloves of Garlick clean pill'd and bruised, then a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and so roll up the Garlick in four or five Balls, as big as two Walnuts a-piece, and throw them down his Throat one after another; or else take a quarter of a pound of Butter, and as much red Saunders, beat them very well together

together in a Mortar, and make them up in Balls, and give them as you did the other; or else take a handful of Rosemary-Leaves chopt very small, and mix them with a quarter of a pound of Butter, and make it into round Balls as the other, and give them the Horse; or else take five green Figs, and put them down his throat.

The strongest sort of Pill.

Take one Pound of Lard laid in Water two hours, and take nothing but two Ounces of the clean Fat thereof, and stamp it in a Mortar, and put thereto of Liquorice, of Aniseeds, and of Fenugreek beaten to powder, of each one Ounce; of Aloes beaten into powder one Ounce; of Agarick half an Ounce; knead them all together into Paste, and make three or four Balls of them, and give them the Horse.

This Pill is not to be given but to a Horse of great Stature, and strong in Health of Body.

Purgations that are the strongest Cleansers.

1. Take Myrrh and mix it with a Pint of White-wine, and it will purge all Sickness that proceedeth of Choler, the signs whereof are, his Belly will swell, he very hot, neither dung nor break wind. Or,

2. Take a Pint of Wine, and beat a raw Egg therein, and add to it a quarter of an Ounce of Brimstone, and half an Ounce of Myrrh beaten to powder, and give it him lukewarm, and it will purge all inward Diseases proceeding of Melancholy. Or,

3. Two Spoonfuls of the Powder of *Diapente* given with half a Pint of Swine's-Grease, purgeth all Diseases proceeding of Phlegm. Or,

4. Take as much black Soap as the bigness of a Walnut, a Quart of new Milk, and a Quarter of a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and give it him lukewarm, and it purgeth all cold Infirmities, but it will make him exceeding sick. Or,

5. Take the Guts of a Tench or Barbel cut into small pieces, and give it him in a Quart of White-wine, and it will purge him from all Costiveness and Pain in the Guts. Or,

6. Rye being boil'd so that it burst not, and dry'd again, and given him instead of Provender, purgeth and killeth all manner of Worms. Or,

7. Take

7. Take of *Aloes Succotrina* one Ounce, two Drams of Rozin of Jallop, Gentian, Ariſtolochia and Elecampane, of each a Dram, mix them well in a Quart of Ale, and two Ounces of Butter, with two Eggs Whites, and all well beaten; ſhake in the Aloes laſt, when it is a little warm, and give it him. Or,

8. Take of Radiſh-Roots one Ounce, of the Root called *Panax*, and *Scammony*, of each half an Ounce, beaten all together, and boiled in a Quart of Honey, and give him two ſpoonfuls of it to drink in a Quart of Ale warm; and this will purge all groſs Humours whatſoever. Or,

9. Take Elecampane Roots boiled in Milk till they be ſoft, and add to them half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and give it him lukewarm, and this will purge and cleanſe any kind of Glanders. Or,

10. Take of ſweet Soap a quarter of a Pound, made up into Balls, and give them the Horſe, and it will purge all Humours whatſoever, both violently and moſt abundantly. Or,

11. Take of White-Wine a Pint, or for want of that, a Quart of new Ale, ſo much of the Powder *Mechoacan* of the beſt and choiceſt, as you may take upon a Shilling at four times; give it him warm. This will purge away his Filth and Slime, and carry away his peccant Humours which Surfeits have ingendred. Or,

12. Take an Ounce or better of the beſt *Aloes*, and after you have beaten it to a very fine Powder, then work it up with a little ſweet Butter, and then divide it into three Parts, and cover them all over with clear Butter, as big as a ſmall Waſh-ball, and give them in a Morning faſting upon the point of a Stick, and give him a Horn-full of warm Beer after them, and ride him after them, and ſet him up warm. *Probatum eſt.* Or,

13. Take of the ſtrongeſt Ale-wort one Quart, of ordinary Honey a quarter of a Pint, of *London* Treacle two Ounces, mix and brew all together well, and ſo give it him blood-warm, and keep him upon the Trench warm clothed and well littered ſix Hours after, and let his Drink be white Water or a ſweet Maſh: This both purgeth and comforteth. Put into his Drink either the Powder of Brimſtone, or of Fenugreek, or Turmerick, or Elecampane, one or more together, according as he will be brought to like; which being well mixed, put into his Drink one Spoonful at once. Or,

14. Take of ordinary Honey, and mingle it with his Oats, which muſt be mixed by rubbing the Oats and Honey be-

twixt the Hands; let him eat his Oats thus mingled and you find him quite cured; which will be when he hath quite done running at the Nose. This is one of the best and most certain Cordials that I know, for this disperseth all Phlegm and Choler; it also purgeth the Head, Brain and Blood, it venteth evil Humours, it causeth good Digestion, and freeth him from Glanders, Colds, Catarrhs, Rheums, running at the Nose, and the like. Or.

15. When you let blood you may save it in a Bowl or Dish, keeping it stirring to keep it from clotting, and give it him to drink in a Drenching-Horn, mingled with a handful of Salt. This is good for a Cold. Or,

16. Take an Ounce of *Aloes Succotrina* beaten to Powder, and as much of the Powder of Rozin and Jallop as will lie on a Sixpence, mix them well with a little fresh Butter, then divide it into three parts, and cover each part all over again with Butter, about the bigness of a good handsome Wash-ball, and give them him in the Morning Fasting, with a Drenching-Horn full of strong warm Beer after every Ball; and order him as you have Directions for sick Horses. This is a very good Receipt to scour a hide-bound Horse that is full of moulten Grease, and that does not thrive, nor fill himself nor carry a good Coat. Or,

17. Take a handful of Groundsel, half a handful of dried (or less of green) Wormwood, and half a handful of red Sage chopped very small, and boiled in three Pints of strong Beer or Ale: Then strain the Beer from the Herbs, and put into it a good piece of Butter, with as much of the powder of *Mechoacan* as will lie upon a broad Shilling, and give it him lukewarm in the Morning fasting, and order him as you do sick Horses. This Drink purgeth Slime and mouldy Grease in Lumps, and makes a Horse thrive very well both in Winter and Summer. See the second Part for Purgations for another of this kind.

Bran, how boiled and prepared to give a Horse that has a Cold: As also what Seeds you are to give him among his Provender for the Cure of it.

Set a Kettle over the Fire almost full of Water, and when it is ready to boil, put in your Bran, and let it boil a quarter of an Hour; then take it off and cover it with a Cloth or Board, let it stand till it cool a little, and give it him so in the Morning as hot as he can conveniently eat it. At Night let his Meat be Oats and white Water, but be

you put into his Provender the quantity of an Egg-shell full of these Powders grosly beaten (lest he blow them away) *viz.* Linseed, Cummingseed, Nutmegs, Ginger, Cloves, Fenugreek, Sileris-Montani, of each of these two Ounces, and of Brimstone six Ounces; but before you give him his Oats and Powders, give him white Water, and rub him and litter him well: let him feed on Wheat-straw about an Hour before you give him his Oats, and afterwards give him some Hay. This way of Feeding about eight or nine Days together, will quite free him from his Cold, if it be not too violent.

Horse-Spice how to make.

These several Powders mixed together make it, *viz.* Rhubarb one Ounce, Turmerick two Ounces, Elecampane six Ounces, Brimstone four Ounces, a quarter of a Pound of Liquorice Powder, and a quarter of a Pound of Annifeeds, Fennel-seeds four Ounces, Grains of Paradise four Ounces, *&c.* Put all these together in a Glass or Gally-pot, and keep them till you have occasion to use them. The quantity that you are to give your Horse, is either greater or smaller, according to the Strength and Constitution of your Horse: you are not to exceed above an Onnce at a time, mixed with a Spoonful of the best Sallet-Oil, and a Spoonful or two of the Treacle of Jean, dissolved in a Quart of strong Beer, which is very good for a Cold, and to make a Horse thrive. Or you may give him an Ounce of them in three Pints of warm Beer or Ale, after Blood-letting, to prevent Diseases. If you leave out the Rhubarb, you may give him a greater quantity, for that is a great Purger.

Rules to know where a Horse halteth, either before or behind.

If he do halt before, his Grief must of necessity be either in the Shoulder, or Knee, or in the Shank, or in the Pastern, or in the Foot; if it be in the Shoulder, it must be either towards the Withers, or in the Pitch of the Shoulder, you may know it in that he will a little draw his Leg after him, and not handle it so nimbly as he doth the other: if he cast his Leg more outward than he doth the other, it is a sign that he is lame, and that the Grief lieth in his Shoulder; and if you take him in your Hand, or turn him short on either Hand, you shall find him to complain of that Shoulder he is lame of, and he will either favour that Leg, or trip in the turning: you may find him lame by his standing in the Stable, and he will hold out that Leg that is lame more than

the other; and if he complains more when you are on his Back than otherwiſe, then be ſure the Grief lies in the Withers, and gripe him hard, and you ſhall perceive him to ſhrink, and perhaps offer to bite. If he tread thick and ſhort before, then is the Grief upon the Pitch of the Shoulder cloſe to the Breaſt, which you may find by ſetting your Thumb hard to the place, and by thruſting him with it, as you would have him to go back, whereat he will ſhrink and put back his Leg, Foot and Body. If the Grief be in the Elbow, you may know it by pinching him with your Fore-finger and Thumb, and he will hold up his Leg and offer to bite; and theſe be all the Griefs that lie in the Shoulder of a Horſe. If the Griefs lie lower, they muſt be either in the Knee, in the Skin, in the Paſtern, or in the Foot.

When in the Knee.

If it be in the Knee, you may find it by his ſtiff going, for he will not bend it ſo nimbly as he doth the other. If it be in the Shank or Shin-bone, you may ſee it, and likewiſe feel the ſame, it being then a Back-ſinew Strain, Splint or ſome ſuch like Sorrance or Annoyance. If it be in the bending of the Knee, then it is a Mallender, which is alſo eaſily deſcried; when it is in the Paſtern or Joint, then you may know it by his not bending it ſo well as the other; beſides, if you put your Hand upon the place, you ſhall find it very hot: if it be in the Foot, it muſt be either in the Cronet or in the Sole; if in the Cronet, it is probable it came by ſome Strain or Wrench; if in the Heel, then it came by ſome Over-reach, or elſe by ſome Diſeaſe in or about the Fruſh: if in the Sole, then it came by ſome Prick, Accloy, Retoire, Nail, Stub, Stone or Gravel. And thus have ſhewed unto you the ſeveral ways that cauſe a Horſe to be lame before, and how to know and diſtinguiſh the place grieved, together with the occaſion of every particular Grief.

How to diſtinguiſh an old Grief from a new.

You have three ways to find out his Lameneſs, in what Joint, Limb or Member of the Body ſoever.

1. The firſt way is to cauſe him to be turned at the Farrier's end, on either hand, ſuddenly and ſwiftly, upon as hard a way as you can pick out; and if he have any old Wrench or Grief in his Fore-parts, it will appear: for when he turneth upon that Hand that the Grief is on, he will favour that Leg, and ſo run both towards you and from you, eſpecially done at a little yielding Hill; and if

have any Imperfection, he will soon shew it, for he will favour that Leg wherein the Grief resideth. But if you cannot find it out this way,

2. Then your second way must be to take his Back, and ride him till you have thoroughly heated him; then set him up for two or three Hours till he be cold, then turn him at the Halter's end, or ride him, and you may easily discover the least Grief that may be in him.

3. A third way there is, and that to know whether the Grief proceeds from a hot or cold Cause, for if it proceed from a hot Cause, he will halt most when he is hot; but if it be of a cold Cause, then he will halt least when he is hot, and most ridden and travelled, and most at his first setting forth, whilst he is cold: and thus much for Lameness and Halting before.

Now finding that his Lameness is not before, you may then conclude, if he be lame at all it must needs be behind, and then it must of necessity be either in the Foot or in the nether Joint, in the Pastern or in the Leg, in the Ham or in the Hoof, in the Stiffling-place or Joint, or in the Hip. If the Grief be either in the Leg, Pastern or Foot, you may know it by the same Signs as I have inculcated to you already in the Fore-Legs. If it be in the bending of the Ham, it must be a Selander. If it be in the Hoof, then it is either a Bone or Blood-spavin, which is easy enough to be discerned, or else it must come of some Blow, Wrench or Strain; neither then will the Swelling easily appear, which you may perceive either by the stiffness of the Joint, or you may find the place to be hot and burning. If the Pain lie in the Stiffling-place, you may know it by his Gait, for in his going he will cast the stiffle Joint outward, and the Bone on the inside will be bigger than the other, beside his Toe will hardly touch the ground. If it be in the Hip, which is upon the side of the Buttock; and if it be newly taken, you may know it in that he will go side-long like a Crab. And if it be an old Hurt, the Hip will be fallen lower than the other, and the Flesh shrunk; which to discover it the sooner, run him at the full length of the Rein, and he will be sure to favour that Leg the Grief is in: but if you find him to go upright without favouring any Leg, then take his Back and ride him till he be warmed, and then set him up till he be cold, and then lead or trot him in your hand as you did before, and if he be lame at all he will be sure to complain. And so much for Lameness before and behind.

Chap. I. *The true Art of Paring and Shoeing all manner of Hoofs, and in what Point the Art of Shoeing doth consist.*

The Art of Shoeing consisteth in these Points, *viz.* in paring the Hoof well, in making the Shoe of good Stuff, in well fashioning of the Web thereof, and well-piercing the same, in fitting the Shoe unto the Horse's Foot, in making Nails of good stuff, and well-fashioning of the same, and finally, in well-driving the said Nails, and cleansing of the same. But sith neither Paring or Shoeing is an absolute thing of it self, but hath respect unto the Foot or Hoof (for the Shoe is to be fitted to the Foot, and not the Foot to the Shoe) and there be divers kinds of Hoofs both good and bad, requiring great diversity, as well of Paring as Shoeing; it is meet therefore that we speak of the diversities of Hoofs, and then shew you how they ought to be paired and shod.

Chap. II. *Of Hoofs, and divers Kinds thereof.*

1. Of Hoofs, some be perfect, and some imperfect. The perfect Hoof is that which is round, smooth, tough and short, so as he may tread more on the Toe than on the Heel, and also right, and somewhat hollow within, but not over hollow, having a narrow Frush and broad Heels.

The imperfect Hoof.

The imperfect Hoof is that which lacketh any of these Properties before-said, belonging to a perfect Hoof. If the Hoof be not round but broad, and spreading out of the sides and quarters, that Horse for the most part hath narrow Heels, and in continuance of time will be flat-footed, which is a weak Foot, and will not carry a Shoe long, nor travel far, but soon surbate; and by treading more on his Heel than on his Toes, will go low on his Pasterns, and such Feet through their weakness be much subject to false Quarters, and to Gravelling, which is most commonly seen in *Flanders* Horses, and such as are bred in moist Grounds.

Brittle and rugged Hoofs.

2. If the Hoof be not smooth, but rugged and full of Circles, like Rams-horns, then it is not only unseemly to the Eye, but also it is a sign that the Foot is in no good Temper, but too hot and dry, and that makes it to be brittle; which Defect is often seen in our *English* Horses.

Long Hoofs.

3. If it be long, then it will cauſe the Horſe to tread all upon the Heels, and to go low on his Paſterns, and thereby to breed Wind-galls, whereunto the Jennets of *Spain* be much ſubject, by reaſon of their long Hoofs.

Crooked Hoofs.

4. If the Hoof be not right, but crooked, *viz.* broad without and narrow within, whereby the Horſe is ſplay-footed; then it will cauſe him to tread more inward than outward, and to go ſo cloſe with his Joints together, as he cannot well travel without interfering, or perhaps ſtriking one Leg ſo hard againſt the other, as he becometh lame. But if he be broad within, and narrow without, that is not ſo hurtful, notwithſtanding it will cauſe him to gravel ſooner on the out-ſide than on the inſide.

Flat Hoofs.

5. If the Hoof be flat and not hollow within, as is moſt commonly ſeen in *Frezons* and *Flanders* Horſes, then it breedeth ſuch Inconveniencies as are before declared in the firſt imperfect Hoof. And again, if it be over-hollow, then it will dry the faſter, and cauſe him to be hoof-bound; for the over-hollow Hoof is a ſtrait narrow Hoof, and groweth upright: for tho the Horſe treadeth upright, and not on his Heels, yet ſuch kind of Hoofs will dry over-faſt, unleſs they be continually ſtopt, and cauſe him to be hoof-bound, which lameth him, making him to halt; whereunto the Jennets and *Barbary* Horſes are much ſubject.

Broad Fruſhes.

6. If the Fruſh be broad, then the Heels be weak and ſo ſoft, as you may almoſt bend them together; and then he will never tread boldly on the Stones, or on hard Ground.

Narrow Heels.

7. Narrow Heels be tender, and he will at laſt grow to be hoof-bound, to which Defects the Jennets are moſt commonly ſubject.

Chap. III. *Of paring the perfect Hoof and Fore-feet.*

Firſt, Pare the Seat of the Shoe, as even and as plain as may be, that ſo it may ſit cloſe, and not bear more on one place than another; and take more of the Toe than the Heel,

for the Heels muſt be higher than the Toes, becauſe all the weight of the Horſe's Fore-body lieth upon the Quarters and Heels of the Fore-feet. And therefore thoſe Parts muſt be moſt maintained, and taken off with the Butteries as little as may be, for the Heels are naturally weaker than the Toes. But in the paring of the hinder Feet it is clean contrary, as you ſhall find hereafter in its proper place.

Chap. IV. *Of Shoeing the perfect Hoof and Fore-feet, and how the Shoe, Paring and Nail ſhould be made.*

Make your Shoe of *Spaniſh* Iron, with a broad Web fitting it to the Hoof, and let the Spunges be thicker and more ſubſtantial than any other part of the Shoe; yea, and alſo ſomewhat broad, ſo as the Quarters on both ſides may appear without the Hoofs a ſtraw's breadth, to guard the Coffin, which is the Strength of the Hoof: and when you come to the piercing thereof, pierce it from the Quarter to the hard Toe, but not backward towards the Heel, and that the holes may be wider on the out-ſide than on the in-ſide, and that the Circle of the piercing may be more diſtant from the edge of the Toe, than from the edge of the Quarter, whereas it beginneth becauſe the Hoof is thicker forward than backward, and therefore more hold to be taken. Make your Nails of the ſame Iron as aforeſaid, the Heads whereof ſhould be ſquare, and not fully ſo broad beneath as above, but anſwerable to the piercing holes, ſo as the Heads of the Nails may enter in and fill the ſame, appearing ſomewhat above the Shoe, and then they will ſtand ſure without ſhogging, and endure longer, and that which pierceth them be of the ſame Size as the Nails, that is to ſay, great above and ſmall beneath; which our common Smiths little regard, for they make the Holes as wide on the inſide as the out-ſide, and their Nails of ſo great a Shouldring by driving them over-hard upon the Nail-hole, as that the Heads, or rather Necks of the ſaid Nails, cannot enter into the Holes. For to ſay the truth, a good Nail ſhould have no Shouldering at all, but be made with a plain and ſquare Neck, ſo as it may juſtly fill the piercing hole of the Shoe; for otherwiſe the Head of the Nail ſtanding high, and the Neck thereof being weak, either it breaketh off, or elſe bendeth upon any light occaſion, ſo as the Shoe ſtandeth looſe from the Hoof, and is quickly loſt. Moreover, the Shanks of the Nails ſhould be ſomewhat flat, and the Points ſharp, without hollowneſs or flaw, and ſtiffer towards the Head above

than beneath. And when you drive, drive at the first with soft strokes, and with a light Hammer, until the Nail be somewhat entred: and in shoeing fine and delicate Horses, grease the Points of the Nails with soft Grease, that so they may enter the more easily, and drive the two Talon-Nails first. Then look whether the Shoe standeth right or not, which you shall perceive in beholding the Frush; for if the Spunges on both sides be equally distant from the Frush, then it standeth right; if not, then amend it, and set the Shoe right, and standing right drive in another Nail: that done, let the Horse set down his Foot again, and look round about it, to see whether it fitteth the Horse's Foot in all places, and whether he treadeth even or just on it or not; and if you see that the Shoe doth not furnish every part equally, but appeareth more on one side than another, then lift up the Horse's other Foot, that so he may stand steadily upon that Foot; and so standing, strike him on the Hoof with your Hammer on that side that the Shoe is scant, and that shall make the Shoe to come that way. The Shoe standing strait and just, drive in the rest of all the Nails, to the number of eight; that is to say, four on one side, and four on another, so as the Points of the Nails may seem to stand in the out-side of the Hoof, even and just one by another, as it were a circular Line, and not out of order like the Teeth of a Saw, whereof one is bent one way, and another another way. That done, cut them off and clinch them, so as the Clinches may be hidden in the Hoof, which by cutting the Hoof with a point of a Knife, a little beneath the appearing of the Nail, you may easily do. Thus done with a Rape, pare the Hoof round, so as the Edge of the Shoe may be seen round about.

Chap. V. *Of Paring of the imperfect Hoofs, every one according to their Kinds. And first of the broad Hoof.*

A broad Hoof, not being as yet grown to be too flat, may be holpen and kept from being flat, by the skill and diligence of the Farrier in well paring and shoeing it. And therefore to pare it well, let him take as much of the Toe with his Butteris as he can possibly, keeping it always under; but let him not touch the Quarters nor the Heels at all, unless it be to make the Seat of the Shoe plain, and let that be done so superficially as may be, so shall the Hoofs remain always strong.

Chap.

Chap. VI. *Of Shoeing the broad Hoof.*

Make a good ſtrong Shoe, with a broad Web, and broad Spunges, and pierced as is before ſaid, fitting it to the Foot, being firſt pared as is above ſaid; and from the Talon-Nail towards the Heel, let the Shoe appear a ſtraw's breadth without the Hoof, and ſet it on in ſuch order and with ſuch Nails as appertaineth unto the perfect Hoof; ſaving that you ſhall ſet five Nails on the outſide of his Hoof, and four on the inſide, becauſe he weareth more without than within.

Chap. VII. *Of paring the rough and brittle Hoof.*

This kind of Hoof is moſt commonly weaker without than within; and becauſe it is for the moſt part hotter than the other Hoofs be, the Heels may be the more open'd than the other, that ſo they may be the more eaſy ſtopt with Cow-dung, or other Ointment, to keep it moiſt: and alſo the raggedneſs on the out-ſide of the Coffin ſhould be filed away with a Rape, and made ſmooth, and alſo more often anointed than other Hoofs; and as for the reſt of the Hoof, it muſt be pared as the perfect one.

Chap. VIII. *Of Shoeing the rough and brittle Hoof.*

Make this Shoe neither too light, but ſo as it may well bear the Horſe, nor yet too heavy; for then the Hoof being weak, will ſoon caſt it, and pierce this Shoe, to be ſet on with nine Nails, five without and four within.

Chap. IX. *Of Paring the long Hoof.*

The long Hoof may be holpen by cutting away the Toe, for the ſhorter Foot a weak and ſlender Leg hath, the better. And to ſay the truth, it is the ſhort Foot that maketh the ſtrong Leg, and the long Foot maketh the weak Leg, being forced thereby to tread all upon the Heel, and on the Paſtern; and let the reſt of the Hoof be pared like the perfect Hoof.

Chap. X. *Of Shoeing the long Hoof.*

Make this Shoe as round as you can at the Toe, that the breadth may take away the evil ſight of the length; and if the Foot be very narrow, then let the Shoe disbord without the Hoof, and pierce the Shoe the deeper, and ſet it backward enough, becauſe ſuch kind of Feet do tread moſt on the Heels: and ſet the Shoe on with eight Nails, like the perfect Hoof.

Chap.

Chap. XI. *Of Paring the crocked Hoof.*

First, look on what side the Hoof is higheſt and leaſt worn, and then pare all that away, and make it equal with the lower side which is moſt worn; without touching the worn side at all, unleſs it be to make the Seat of the Shoe plain: and as for the reſt, pare it like the perfect Hoof.

Chap. XII. *Of Shoeing the crocked Hoof.*

Make an indifferent ſtrong Shoe with a broad Web, fitting it to the Foot, and pare it not until you have laid the Shoe unto the Foot, to the intent you may pare it to the Horſe's moſt commodity, which ſhall be done, if you pare the ſcant ſide, which moſt commonly is the inſide, more towards the Toe, than the fuller or ſtronger ſide. And whereas the Hoof is weakeſt, there alſo make the Shoe ſtrongeſt, and ſet on this Shoe with nine Nails, *viz.* five on the ſtronger ſide, and four on the weaker ſide.

Chap. XIII. *Of Paring the flat Hoof, otherwiſe called the Promiſed Hoof.*

Make the Seat of the Shoe plain, and take ſomewhat off the Toe, but touch not the Heel nor the Ball of the Foot, but leave both them ſo ſtrong as you can.

Chap. XIV. *Of Shoeing the flat Hoof, or Promiſed Hoof.*

Make this Shoe with a very broad Web, for the more it cover the weak Sole, the better; and let the mid-part of the Web that covers the Ball of the Foot be much thicker than the out-ſides where the piercings be, and let it be ſo hollow as it touch no part of the Ball of the Foot, and let it be large and long enough in all places, ſo as the Horſe may go at eaſe; and let it be pierced round about the Toe, to favour the Heels, and make ten holes for ten Nails, *viz.* five on each ſide.

Chap. XV. *Of Paring the over-hollow Hoof.*

Pare this Hoof round about, and eſpecially the Seat of the Shoe, *viz.* round about by the Edges, to the intent the Hollowneſs of the Hoof within may not be ſo deep, but more ſhallow than it was before; and let it be always kept moiſt with ſtopping it, for fear of Hoof-binding: obſerving in your Paring ſo even a hand as may be, in all points like unto the perfect Hoof.

Chap.

Chap. XVI. *Of Shoeing the over-hollow Hoof.*
Make a light Shoe in such order and form as was said before, to serve the perfect Hoof.

Chap. XVII. *Of Paring the Hoof that hath a broad Frush.*
Broad Frushes do cause weak Heels, and therefore had need of little or no paring at all; and for that cause pare only the Toe, and also the Seat of the Shoe, so much as shall be needful to the even standing of the Shoe, leaving the Heels so strong as may be.

Chap. XVIII. *Of Shoeing the Hoof that hath a broad Frush.*
Make this Shoe stronger towards the Heel than towards the Toe, and also let the Web be somewhat broad towards the Heels to save them from the Ground, and set on this Shoe with nine Nails, because most commonly it is a great Foot; and in all other points make it like the Shoe with the perfect Hoof.

Chap. XIX. *Of Paring the Hoof that hath narrow Heels.*
Pare the Toe short, and make the Seat of the Shoe fair and plain, and open only so much, as there may be some little space betwixt the Frush and the Heel; for the less you take of the Heel, the better.

Chap. XX. *Of Shoeing the Hoof with narrow Heels.*
Make a light Shoe with a broad Web, and let the Spunges be so broad as they may almost meet together, to defend the Heel from the Ground, and pierce it all towards the Toe, sparing the Heel so much as you can, and let the Shoe be long enough towards the Heels, and set it on with eight Nails, like the Shoe that fitteth the perfect Hoof.

Chap. XXI. *Of Paring and Shoeing the Hinder-Feet.*
The Paring of the Hinder-Feet, is clean contrary unto the Fore-Feet, for the weakest part of the Hinder-Foot is the Toe, and therefore in paring the Hinder-Foot, the Toe must be always more spared than the Heels; but in all other points observe the order of paring, according to the perfection or imperfection of the Hoofs before declared.

Chap XXII. *Of Shoeing the Hinder-feet.*
Make the Shoe fit for the Hoof, as is before said, and let it be

be ſtrongeſt at the Toe, and pierced nigher the Heel than the Toe, becauſe the Toe is the weakeſt part of the Foot, and let the outſide of the Hinder-ſhoe be made with a Calkin, not over high; but let the other Spunge be agreeable unto the Calkin, that is to ſay, as high in a manner as the Calkin, which Calkin is to keep him from ſliding: but then it may not be ſharp pointed, but rather flat, and handſomly turned upward, which is the beſt ſort of Calkin.

Chap. XXIII. *Of Shoeing the Hoof that hath a falſe Quarter.*

If the Horſe halts, then make him a Shoe fitting to his Foot, tacking it on the Quarter on that ſide that his falſe Quarter is on: if he do not halt, then make him a Shoe with a Button or Shouldering on the inſide of the Shoe, and next to the Sole of the Foot, ſomewhat diſtant from the falſe Quarter towards the Toe, and that ſhall defend the ſore place, ſo as the Shoe ſhall not touch it; and with this kind of Shoe you may travel your Horſe where you will.

Chap. XXIV. *For Paring and Shoeing for Interfering.*

Thoſe Hoofs that interfere, are moſt commonly higher on the outſide than on the inſide, and therefore you ſhould take off the outſide with a Butteris, to the intent that the inſide may be ſomewhat higher (if it will be) than the outſide; and then make him a Shoe fit for his Foot, which ſhould be thicker on the inſide than on the outſide, and let that Shoe never have any Calkin, for that will make him to tread awry, and the ſooner to interfere, and let it be prepared in ſuch ſort that it makes him not to interfere.

Chap. XXV. *Of Paring and Shoeing the Foot that is Hoof-bound.*

Firſt, pare his Toe as ſhort as may be, and pare the Sole ſomewhat thin, and open the Heels well, and make him a Half-Shoe like a Half-Moon.

Chap. XXVI. *Of making the Planch-Shoe, or Pauncelet.*

The Planch-Shoe maketh a good Foot and evil Leg, becauſe it maketh the Foot to grow beyond the Meaſure of the Leg; notwithſtanding, for a weak Heel it is marvellous good, and it will laſt longer than any Shoe, and it is borrowed from the Moyl that hath weak Heels and Fruſhes, to keep the Foot from Stones and Gravel; notwithſtanding, wo be unto that Horſe that hath need of ſuch a Shoe.

Chap.

Chap. XXVII. *Shoes with Calkins, Rings, Welts, and turning Vices, and of the Patten-Shoe.*

Beſides all theſe kind of Shoes before recited, there be di vers others, whereof ſome be made with high Calkins, ſome with Rings, ſome with Welts or Borders about, and ſome with Vices, ſome with Toes turned upward, ſome with Heels turned upward, and of many other Faſhions, which though they be not ſo needful, I thought good to ſpeak ſomewhat of them. And firſt, as touching Shoes with Calkins, that though they be intended to keep the Horſe from ſliding, yet they do him more harm than good, in that he cannot tread evenly upon the ground, whereby he many times wrencheth his Foot, or ſtraineth ſome Sinew, and eſpecially upon ſtony Ways where the Stones will not ſuffer the Calkins to enter, the Foot ſlippeth with more vi olence: yet ſome do not think him well ſhod, unleſs all his Shoes be made with Calkins, either ſingle or double, yet of the two Evils, double is the leſs, for he will tread evener with double than with ſingle Calkins; but then let them not be over long, or ſharp pointed, but rather ſhort and flat. And thus much for Shoes with Calkins.

Chap. XXVIII. *Of Shoes with Rings.*

Shoes with Rings were firſt invented to make a Horſe lift up his Feet high, but ſuch Shoes are more painful than helpful, and are an unhandſom Sight in Horſes; which thing is incident to moſt Horſes that have not ſound Hoofs; for having tender Hoofs, they fear to touch the Ground that is hard. Now ſuch kind of Horſes that have naturally their tender Heels, ſome for Want of Diſcretion do think to amend them by adding thereunto high Calkins, or elſe Rings, and thereby cauſe them to have weaker Heels than they had before; Therefore I ſhall adviſe you to lay aſide all theſe un profitable Devices, and make all your Shoes eſpecially your Fore-Shoes, with Spunges, as hath been before taught.

Chap. XXIX. *Of Shoes with ſwelling Welts, or Borders about.*

In *Germany* and high *Almany*, the Smiths do make their Shoes with a ſwelling Welt round about the Shoe, which be ing higher than the Heads of the Nails, do ſave them from wearing, which are the beſt ſort of laſting Shoes; for Mr *Blundevill* travelled in thoſe Countrys outright above 5 Nine

Miles upon very ſtony Ground, yea, and upon Mountains, without removing Shoe or driving Nail: for the Shoe being made of well-tempered Stuff, weareth equally in all parts, and the Horſe treadeth evenly upon them.

Chap. XXX. *Of Shoes with turning Vices, and alſo Joint-Shoes.*

Some who uſe to paſs the Mountains where Smiths are not eaſily to be found, do carry about them Shoes with Vices, whereby they faſten it to the Horſe's Foot, without the help of the Hammer or Nail, notwithſtanding they are more for ſhow than any good uſe. For though it ſaves his Feet from Stones, yet it ſo pincheth the Hoof as he goeth with Pain, and doth perhaps do his Hoof more hurt than the Stones do; therefore it is better upon ſuch needful times to uſe the Joint-Shoe, which is made of two pieces, with a flat Rivet-Nail joining them together in the Toe, ſo that you may both make it wide and narrow to ſerve any Foot: therefore the Rider ought to underſtand to drive a Nail, and to have his Inſtruments about him meet for Carriage, without the which there are but few Gentlemen of *Almany* that love their Horſes, but can uſe thoſe Inſtruments for that purpoſe as well as moſt Smiths.

Chap. XXXI. *Of the Patten Shoe*

Becauſe every Smith knoweth the Uſe of this Shoe, and how to make it, I ſhall not need to uſe many words, but only ſhew you that it is a neceſſary Shoe for a Horſe that is hurt in the Hip, or Stiffle, or Shoulder, which will make him bear upon that Leg the Grief is on, and conſequently make him uſe it the better.

In what Cauſes to cauterize.

Cauterization or giving of Fire is of two Natures, *viz.* Actual and Potential. Your Cautery Actual is made by hot burning Inſtruments, with which you ſear and burn thoſe Places which be requiſite for the perfecting of the Cure you have in hand, which cannot be peradventure well cured, but by giving of Fire; as in caſe of great Impoſthumation, ſtenching of Blood in Wounds, or in ſearing of Veins, Sinews, or the like, or elſe in caſe of diſmembring, if other Means be not at hand, whereby to ſtay the Flux of Blood without danger of bleeding to death: and if they that give Fire be not very skilful, I would adviſe them to practiſe upon Jades, and not Horſes of Price, to the end they may

the

the better come to know how to carry their hand either lighter or harder, and alſo that they do make their Circles round, and their Lines ſtreight and even.

An Iron with a Button.

The Drawing Iron.

For this Actual Fire is a Thing moſt neceſſary for them that do underſtand the Vertue thereof, and therefore ought to be very carefully apply'd, and never but upon very good Grounds; which in ſo doing, you ſhall find it to be a moſt Sovereign Remedy to hinder and ſtay all manner of Corruption, whereunto any Member may be inclined, provided that in handling your Inſtrument you touch not Muſcles, Arteries, Sinews, Ligaments, Chords, or the like; for ſo you may utterly lame, where you would ſet upright. For by this Actual Fire you ſhall join and conglutinate Parts and Members ſever'd, dry up ſuperfluous Moiſture, and ſick Members ſwelled, and bring forth all evil and putrefactious Matter, congealed and gathered into Knots; as Wens, Biles, Puſtles, Exulceration, and the like: you ſhall alſo aſſuage old Griefs, and make perfect all ſuch Parts of the Body as may be any way corrupted. Neither ſhall you need fear the Increaſe of any evil Humours, by reaſon that the Skin being ſever'd by means of the hot Iron, it doth ripen and digeſt all manner of Putrefaction and Materative Stuff, whereby it venteth and paſſeth away very eaſily; healing and qualifying all Grief and Pain, cauſing the Member which before was ſubject to Feſtering and to Gangreen, to become the ſounder and ſtronger: and the worſt that can be made thereof, will be but a little Eye-ſore by reaſon of a Scar which it leaves behind it. But then you muſt have a very great regard unto your Inſtruments, that they be made according to the Nature and Quality of the Place and Member which is to be ſeared; for one Faſhion will not ſerve in all Cauſes, for as the Places which are

be cauterized, are commonly different in ſhape and proportion, ſo ought the Shapes and Faſhions of your Inſtruments to be accordingly. You ought to have a care in the heating of them, for as they ought not to be too hot, ſo they ought not to be too cold, for by that means you may inflame the Place too much. Your Inſtruments are to be made of Iron or Steel, which are the beſt to work with, and to be preferred before Gold, Silver, Braſs or Copper, becauſe Steel or Iron will retain its own received Heat longer than any other Metal; for the others, as they are the ſooner made hot, ſo they are the ſooner cold. Now Steel and Iron Metals are much more ſubſtantial and harder than the other Metals are; and though they are the longer a heating, yet they retain their Heat the longer. Again, a Man cannot tell when thoſe other Metals are hot enough, as alſo when they be too hot; and if you put never ſo little Water to them to allay their Heat, they preſently become too cold, the contrary whereof you ſhall find to be in the Nature of Iron and Steel.

Cautery Potential.

Now I will in a Word handle Cautery Potential. As the Cautery Actual burneth the Fleſh by hot Inſtruments, even ſo doth Cautery Potential burn the Fleſh by Medicine, of which there are three Sorts or Degrees.

Namely, by Corroſive, by Cauſtick, or by Putrefaction.

Corroſive.

Corroſive, is that which is applied to the Wound, wherein is dead or Proud-Fleſh, to corrode or eat it away, by which means the Wound is prepared and made the more fit for Emplaſters, Waters or Unguents, which do carnify and make good Fleſh; by which means the Wound which before was foul, is now become clean, healed up and made ſound: and theſe corroding Things are commonly Precipitates, *Sublimatum*, *Arſnick*, *Reſalgar*, *Leads* white and red, *Copperas* white and green, *Verdegreaſe*, *Allom*, *Vitriol*, *Sandaracha*, *Chryſocollo*, *Origanum*, *Mercury*, *Aconitum*, *Capitellium*, *Roman Vitriol*, Shavings of Ox or Harts-Horn, *Red-Coral*, Spunge of the Sea ſomewhat burned, *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, *Unguentum Caraccum Magiſtra*, *Sal Niter*, *Cantharides*, *Apium*, *Aqua fortis*, *Siclamine*, *Melanachardium*, and many more that do burn, eat and corrode the Fleſh, putting the poor Beaſt to a great deal of Pain.

A Cauſtick.

A Cauſtick is a great Burner, for that being once put to the Skin, will in a ſhort Time make a Wound where none was before; for which we do uſe to make Iſſues, for Cauſticks are ſtronger and more violent than either Putrefactives or Corroſives; for whereas Corroſives do work only upon Skin broken, and do corrode and eat out dead, proud, ſpungy, and naughty Fleſh, and Putrefactives do ripen, mollify, and prepare the Wound for the Cauſtick, ſo Cauſticks do break Skin and Fleſh, and all; and therefore it is more violent, and burneth worſe than any of the two former.

Putrefactive.

Now your Putrefactives are ſuch Medicines as we do commonly apply to Swellings, which we do make for the moſt part of Medicines compounded, as Polteſſes, roſted Sorrel, white Lilly Roots and the like: for ſuch things are Drawers, cauſing Swellings which be hard and fleſhy to become ſoft and putrefactive, and to prepare Sorrances for the Cauſtick, whoſe Nature is to break and open what before the Putrefactive had ripened, which otherwiſe muſt have been done by Cautery Actual, or by Inciſion. And this I do think ſufficient to be handled upon this Subject.

How to make Bread for a Horſe to keep him in Heart and Strength of Body, and to keep him from fainting in his Labour and Exerciſe, be it never ſo ſore.

Take Wheat-Meal, Oat-Meal and Beans, all ground very ſmall, of each a Peck, Anniſeeds four Ounces, Gentian and Fenugreek, of each an Ounce, Liquorice two Ounces, beat them all to fine Powder, and ſearce them well, and add to them twenty new laid Egg's Whites, and all well beaten, and as much ſtrong Ale as will knead it up: then make your Loaves like to Horſe-Bread, but not too thick, and let them be well baked, but not burned: give it him not too new, and when you give it him, give it him five or ſix Mornings together, without any Provender, and thus you ſhall have him well winded, luſty, ſtrong, hardy and healthy, whereby to be able to hold out and retain his Metal to the laſt.

Another Sort of Bread.

Take of Wheat-Meal one Peck, Rye-Meal, Beans and Oat-Meal, of each half a Peck, ground very ſmall, And

seeds and Liquorice, of each one Ounce, and white Sugar-Candy four Ounces, beat all into fine powder, with the Whites and Yolks of twenty new laid Eggs well beaten and put to them, and so much White-Wine as will knead it into a Paste; make them into great Loaves and bake them well, and after they be two or three days old, let him eat of this Bread, but chip away the out-side. Now the reason I prefer Meal before Flower is, because Flower is much more hot and binding, and therefore the coarser the Bread is, the better it is for the Horse; and the Reason why I put Rye into the latter Bread, is because Rye is a Loosener and a Cooler, and therefore it will make him the more soluble.

For what causes Veins are to be taken up.

As touching taking up of Veins, you shall understand that it is a thing very behoof-full, as that many times the most exquisite Farrier living shall not be able to perfect this Cure, but by that way and means; for unless such Veins be either taken up, or some way stopped, which are noxious to the Cure, by feeding the Malady with its peccant Humours, the Farrier can never work by true Art. Again, Veins well taken up do prevent many Maladies, whereunto many Horses are much more propense than others are. And lastly, the taking up of Veins cureth some Diseases which could otherwise never be cured. For the taking up of the Thigh-Veins sendeth away Spavins, Splents, Curbs, Kibed Heels, swelled Legs, Scratches, Malenders, Farcin in the Legs, and the like Sorrances; besides, it cureth all Pains, Aches, Strains, Stiffness in the Limbs, *&c.* Take up the Shackle-Veins, and it preventeth the Quitter-bone, Ring-bone, Swellings in the lower Joints, Founderings, *&c.* Wherefore for as much as ignorant People, whatsoever Opinion they may have of their super-abundant Skill, yet they are very much to seek, in that they do so exclaim against taking up of Veins absurdly, affirming it to be a great means of Laming of Horses; but let them not mistake themselves, for assuredly it is the best and only Remedy against these and many more Maladies, and when they shall have made trial, they will not be of so prejudicate an Opinion.

Of Rowelling of Horses, and of the Use thereof.

The Rowelling of Horses is so common amongst our simple Smiths, that they will rowel him for any Disease almost, without any Sense or Reason; whereby they needlesly torment the Horse, and bring a Flux of naughty Humours

down to the place; which causes him to be lame, which might otherwise be sound. But this I must say of it, that if it be well used by a skilful Farrier, it is not only commendable, but causes great good to a Horse's Body and Limbs.

Helps got by Rowelling are these.

It separateth and dissolveth evil Humours which are gathered together in any one place, it looseneth those parts which are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakned; it strengthneth sick Joints, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold Phlegm. The use of it in general is for inward Strains, especially about the Shoulders or Hips, or else for great hard Swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward Medicine. Now if the Bruise be not taken away presently, by applying to it some comfortable hot Medicine, there will arise a certain Jelly between the Pot and the Bone which offendeth the tender Gristle, which covers the ends of every Bone, which makes the Horse halt most vehemently. Now nothing will take this away but Rowelling.

Now the Manner of Rowelling is this.

When you have found out the certain place of his Grief, after you have cast him upon some soft place, make a little Slit a handful below the place grieved through the Skin, no bigger than you can thrust in a Swans-Quill into the same; then raise the Skin a little from the Flesh with your Cronet, and then put in your Quill, and blow all the Skin from the Flesh upward, even to the top, and all over the shoulder; then stopping the Hole with your Finger and your Thumb, beat the place blown all over with a Hazel-stick, and spread the Wind with your hand into every place, and so let it go: then take some Horse-hair, or some red Sarsenet, half the bigness of a Man's little Finger, and put it into your Rowelling-Needle, which should be at least seven or eight Inches long: thrust it in at the first Hole, and put it upward, drawing it out above at least six inches, and if you please you may put in another above that, and then tie the two ends of the Rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the Skin; not forgetting, before you put them in, to anoint them with sweet Butter or Hog's-Grease, and every day after likewise, for that will make the corruption run out the better.

Now there are Farriers who think, that these long Rowels of Hair or Silk, do make a double Sore and a great Scar, therefore they make their Rowels of round Pieces of thin Leather

Leather, such as is on the upper part of an old Shoe, with a round Hole in the midst, according to the form in the Margin, and then double it when they put it in, and then spread it open, and lay it flat between the Flesh and the Skin, and that the Hole in the Rowel may be just against the Hole in the Horse's Skin, and once in two or three days to cleanse the Rowel, and to anoint it with Hogs-Grease or Butter, and so to put it in again.

Another French *way of Rowelling, which is reputed to be the best Way.*

Cut open the Skin with your Incision-Knife the length of an Inch or more downwards, on the lowest part of the Horse's Breast, close to the Side that he is lame on; then raise with your Finger or Cronet the Skin from the Flesh round about the Orifice, about the breadth of a Six-pence, which must be just the size of the Rowel you put into it, whether it be made of the upper Leather of an old Shoe or Horn of an old Lanthorn; but the upper Leather of a Shoe is best. The form of your Rowel must be in the Shape of the Figure in the Margin, with a little Hole in the middle of it, wherein you must put a Needle and Thred through it, as you find by the two Pricks on the top and bottom of the Hole. Then take a Quill and put it into the Hole, and do as you were taught in the Receipt before, *viz.* To blow and beat the Wind upwards all over the Shoulder; when you have blown it as much as you think fitting, draw a Needle and Thred through the Rowel and Skin, closing the Rowel in the Slit, and let the Hole in the Rowel be right against the Slit you have cut, so that it may not move. Then run another stitch or two thwart the cut, as you see the manner of it by the Figure in the Margin; When you have stitcht it up, anoint it all over with Butter or Hogs Grease, and let the Rowel remain in for about a Week or more before you take it out, and he will do well.

Instructions upon Rowelling.

If you Rowel him for any Swelling, then put in your long Rowel the same way that the Veins run, and seldom or never cross-wise; and the more you blow the Skin for a Swelling, the better, for the Wind is that that causeth Pu-

trefaction, and makes the feſtered Humours to diſſolve and diſtil down from the ſecret hollows of the Joints into thoſe open places, where it falleth away in Matter, and ſo the Breaſt becomes cured.

How to Geld Horſes or Colts.

You are to obſerve in the Gelding of Horſes; Firſt, the Age: Secondly, the Seaſon of the Year; And laſtly, the State of the Moon. For the Age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine days old, or fifteen if his Stones be come down; for the ſooner you geld him the better, for Growth, Shape and Courage. Now a Farrier may geld a Horſe at any Age whatſoever, if he be careful in the Cure.

The Seaſon of the Year to geld in.

The beſt Seaſon for gelding is between *April* and *May* or in the beginning of *June* at the furtheſt, or about the Fall of the Leaf which is the latter end of *September*.

The State of the Moon.

Now for the State of the Moon, the fitteſt time is ever when the Moon is in the Wane. As touching the manner of gelding, it is in this ſort; whether it be a Foal, Colt or Horſe, after you have caſt him upon ſome ſoft place, take the Stones between your foremoſt Finger, and your great Finger, then ſlit the Cod, and preſs the Stones forth; then with a pair of ſmall Nippers, made either of Steel, Box, Wood or Brazil, being very ſmooth, and clap the ſtrings of the Stones between them, very near unto the ſetting on of the Stones, and preſs them ſo hard that there may be no Flux of Blood; then with a thin drawing Cauterizing Iron made red-hot, ſear away the Stone: then take a hard Plaſter made of Rozin, Wax and waſh'd Turpentine, well molten together, and with your hot Iron melt it upon the head of the Strings; then ſear the Strings, and then melt more of the Salve, till ſuch time as you have laid a good thickneſs of the Salve upon the Strings. Then looſe the Nippers, and do ſo to the other Stone, and fill the two Slits of the Cod with white Salt, and anoint all the outſide of the Cod with Hog's greaſe, and ſo let him riſe, and keep him in a warm Stable looſe, that ſo he may walk up and down, for there is nothing better for him than moderate Exerciſe. Now if you do perceive that he doth ſwell in his Cod, and ſheath very much, then chafe him up and down and

and make him trot an hour in a day, and it will soon recover him, and make him sound.

To make a white Star either on your Horse's Fore-Head, or in any other part of his Body.

After you have with a Razor shaved away the Hair so wide as you would have the Star, then take a little of the Oil of Vitriol in an Oyster-shell, and dip a Feather or a piece of Silk into it, (for it will eat both Linen and Woollen) and just wet it all over the place shaved, and it will eat away the Roots of the Hairs, and the next that comes will be white. You need not do it above once, you may heal it up with your Copperas-water and green Ointment.

To make a black Star or white Hairs black.

Wash often the place you would have made black, with Fern-Roots, and Sage sod in Lye, and it will breed black Hairs in a white Horse: Or take Souter-Ink, Galls and Rust beaten well together, and anoint the place therewith, and it will turn white to black.

To make a Red Star.

Take *Aqua-fortis* one Ounce, of *Aqua-vitæ* a pennyworth, of Silver to the value of eighteen pence; put them in a Glass; and heat them well therein, and then anoint the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turn the Hairs to be of a perfect red Colour; but they will endure no longer than the casting of the Hair, which you must renew again if you intend it shall continue.

To make a Horse seem Young.

Take a small crooked Iron, no bigger than a Wheat-Corn, and having made it red-hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two outmost Teeth of each side the nether Chap before, next to the Tushes where the Mark is worn out; then with an Awl-blade pick it, and make the shell fine and thin, then with a sharp scraping Iron make all his Teeth white and clean. This done, take a fine Lancet, and above the Hollows of the Horse's Eyes, which are shrunk down, make a little hole only through the Skin, and put in the Quill of a Raven or Crow, and blow the Skin full of Wind, till all the hollowness be filled up; then take out your Quill, and lay your Finger upon the hole a little while, and the

Wind will ſtay in, and he will look as youthful as if he were but ſix years old.

To make a Horſe that he ſhall not neigh either in company or when he is ridden.

If either you be in the Service of the Wars, and would not be diſcovered, or when upon any other occaſion, you would not have him to neigh or make a Noiſe, then take a Liſt of Woollen Cloth, and tie it faſt in many folds about the midle of his Tongue, and he will not neigh nor make any extraordinary Noiſe with his Voice, as hath been often try'd and approved of.

To Help a Horſe that hath Laved or Bangle Ears.

Take his Ears and place them in ſuch manner as you would have them ſtand, and then with two little Boards or Pieces of Trenchers three fingers broad, having long ſtrings knit unto them, bind the Ears ſo faſt in the places where they ſtand, as that they cannot ſtir: then betwixt the Head and the Root of the Ear, you ſhall ſee a greet deal of empty wrinkled Skin, which with your Finger and your Thumb you ſhall pull up, and with a ſharp pair of Sciſſors clip away all the empty Skin cloſe by the Head. Then with a Needle and red Silk ſtitch the two ſides of the Skin cloſe together, and then with your green Ointment heal up the Sore. Which done, take away the Splints which held up his Ears, and you ſhall find, that in a ſhort ſpace his Ears will keep the ſame place as you ſet them without alteration: And this you ſhall find to be as certain and true, as the healing of a cut Finger.

The firſt Inventors of Riding.

Bellerophons, as ſome Men ſay, was the firſt that invented riding on horſeback: And the *Pelletrones*, a People of *Lapithia*, found out afterwards the manner of Bridles, Bits and Rings, to guide Horſes withal: But they of *Theſſalia* were the firſt that uſed the Service of Horſes in the Wars.

The Receipt of making the Cordial Balls.

The true manner of making thoſe Cordial Balls, which cure any violent Cold or Glanders, which prevent Heart-Sickneſs, which purge away all molten Greaſe, which recover a loſt Stomach, which keep the Heart from faintings with Exerciſe, and make a lean Horſe fat ſuddenly: Take Anniſeeds, Cummin-ſeeds, Fenugreek-ſeeds, Carthumus-ſeeds, Li-

Elecampane-roots and Colts-foot, of each of these two Ounces, beaten and searced very fine; two Ounces of the Flower of Brimstone; then take an Ounce of the Juice of Liquorice, and dissolve it on the Fire in half a Pint of White-wine: which done, take an Ounce of Chymical Oil of Aniseeds; then take of Sallet-Oil, Honey, and of Syrup of Sugar, or for want of it, Molosses, of each half a pint; then mix all these with the former Powders, and with as much fine Wheat-Flower as will bind and knit them all together, work them into a stiff Paste, and make thereof Balls somewhat bigger than French Walnuts, Hull and all, and so keep them in a close Gallypot, (for they will last all the year) Yet I do not mean that you shall keep them in the Pot in Balls; because they cannot lie close, the Air may get in, and do hurt; as also the Strength of the Oils will sweat outward, and weaken the Substance, therefore knead the whole Lump of Paste into the Gallypot, and make the Balls as you have occasion to use them.

The Form of the Balls.

If you give them upon the End of a stick, you must make them sharp at both ends, and thick in the middle; but if you give him them in a Horn of Beer, make them about the Bigness of a good big Walnut, and put down a Horn full of strong Beer after every Ball, to clear his Passage, and to prevent sticking.

The Use of these Balls.

Now for the Use of these Balls, because they are cordial and have divers excellent Virtues, you shall understand that if you use them to prevent Sickness, then you shall take a Ball and anoint it all over with sweet Butter, and give it him in the Morning in the manner of a Pill, then ride him a little after it (if you please, otherwise you may chuse) and feed and water him abroad or at home, according to your usual Custom. And thus do three or four Mornings together.

If you use them to cure either Cold or Glanders, then use them in the same manner for a Week together. If you use them to fatten a Horse, then give him them for a Fortnight together: but if you use them in the nature of a Scouring, to take away molten Grease and Foulness, then instantly after his Heat, and in his Heat. Again, if you find your Horse at any time hath taken a little cold, as you shall perceive by his inward rattling, if then you take one

of

of these Balls and dissolve it in a Pint of Sack, and so give him, it is a present Remedy. Also to dissolve the Ball in ordinary Water, being made lukewarm, it worketh the like effect, and fatneth exceedingly.

To give one of these Balls before Travel, it prevents Tyring; to give it in the heat of Travel, it refresheth the Weariness; and to give it after Travel, it saves him from all Surfeits and inward Sickness.

A Receipt to fat a lean Horse in twelve or fifteen Days.

First therefore, let him blood if he wants bleeding, then instead of Oats in the morning give him Wheat-Bran, prepared after this manner: Set over the Fire a great Kettle, and fill it almost full with fair Water, and when it boils put in your Bran, and let it boil a quarter of an Hour at least, then let it stand to cool, and in the morning early give him of this Bran so hot as he can eat it, and let his Drink be of the same Water, and at night give him Oats and white Water, and let him be well littered, and warm covered: but if it be in the Summer, his Stable ought not to be too hot; and at night with his Oats give him an Egg full of this Powder, with which you are to continue him for the space of eight Days, or according as you shall see cause. You must understand, that Bran thus prepared, drieth up his naughty, gross and corrupt Humours, and doth the better prepare the Body to assume Lust, Courage, Strength and Flesh, together with the Help of the Powder, which is this.

The Powder how to make a lean Horse fat.

Take of Cummin, Fenugreek, Sileris-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two Ounces; quick Brimstone six Ounces; make all these into Powder, and give him the Quantity of an Eggshell full with his Oats every Night, but first let him be watered with white Water, which is two or three Handfuls of Bran stirred amongst his Water; then rub him, litter him, and clothe him well, then give him some sweet Wheat-straw in his Rack, and let him feed on that for an Hour, then give him his Oats mixed with his Powder, and when he hath eaten them, give him Hay at your pleasure; remembring to keep him warm, but so as with Moderation, and you shall find him amend exceedingly: but you must put into his Oats every time two Handfuls of Nettleseeds, for that is the

thing that will principally cause him to battel. It will also greatly avail to his Amendment, if he be aired every Morning and Evening, an Hour after Sun-rising, and an Hour before Sun-set, if the Weather be warm, and the Sun doth shine. And this is the best Course you can take to set up a lean and poor Horse.

Another Receipt to make a lean Horse fat.

Take of Elecampane dried, Cummin, Turmerick, Aniseeds, of each two Ounces, Groundsel half a Handful; boil all these together in a Gallon of Ale, with three Heads of Garlick well bruised and picked, then strain it, and give him a Quart of it blood-warm in the Morning fasting, and ride him after it, but not to heat him, and thus for four Mornings together: and in a short time after (if the Year be seasonable) turn him to grass, and he will fatten suddenly. But if the Time of the Year will not serve, and that you have a mind to raise him in the Stable, then give him amongst his Oats this Powder: Take of Elecampane dried, and of Cummin both alike, well beaten and searced, and when you give your Horse Provender, then give him half an Ounce of them well mixed amongst it for fourteen days together, and you shall find him to amend and prosper after a strange manner; provided, that you give him seasonable Airing, moderate Exercise, and Mashes, and white Water.

Of the Drink called Acopum.

Take of Euphorbium half an Ounce; Castoreum one Ounce; Adraces half a quarter of a pound; Bdellium half an Ounce and half a quarter; Opoponax one Ounce; Fox-Grease half an Ounce; Pepper one Ounce; Laserpitium three quarters of an Ounce; Ammoniacum half a quarter of a pound; Pigeons Dung as much; Galbanum half an Ounce; Nitrum one Ounce and a quarter; Spuma Nitri three quarters of an Ounce; Laudanum a quarter of a pound; Pyrethrum and Bay-Berrys, of each three quarters of an Ounce; Cardamum two Ounces; Seed of Rue half a quarter of a pound; Seed of Agnus Castus one Ounce; Parsley Seed half an Ounce; dried Roots of Iris, or Flower-de-luce, one Ounce and a quarter and half a quarter; of Oil de Bay as much; of Oil of Spikenard three quarters of a pound; of Oleum Cyprinum three quarters of a pound, and half a quarter; the oldest Oil Olive a pound and a half; Pitch a quarter of a pound and two Ounces; Turpentine a quarter of a pound:

melt

melt of every of these that will be molten, severally themselves, and then mingle them together with the rest the Ingredients, being first beaten to fine Powder, and ter they have boiled a little on the Fire, take it off, strain it into a clean Gallypot, and so keep it for your And when yon give your Horse any of it at any time, must not give him of it above two spoonfuls in a Pint Sack or Muscadine, and if by long keeping you find it hard, then soften it with the Oil of Cypress, so that may be good and thick.

The Virtues of it.

It is both a Medicine and an Ointment, for it help Convulsions in the Sinews and Muscles; it draweth forth noisom Humours, and disburdeneth the Head of all Gr being put up with a long Goose-Feather anointed in it, to the Nostrils of a Horse: it healeth, I say, all manner Convulsions, Cramps, Numbness and String-halts, Colds Rheums; it dissolveth the Liver, being troubled with O lations and Obstructions, it helpeth Siccity and Aridity the Body; it banisheth all Weariedness and Tiredness, if Limbs be bathed with this Medicine: And lastly, it cure all sorts of inward Diseases, if it be administred by way a Drench, in Wine, Strong-beer, or good Ale.

The Nature of it.

It is hot in working, otherwise it could not hold good case of Surfeits, Tiredness and of Convulsions, and the like, wherein consisteth its chief Virtues, being administr outwardly; but being administred inwardly, it is not alt gether so hot, for it helpeth Fevers for the most part, and think it is most safe to give not above two spoonfuls of in a Quart of good Strong-Beer or Ale, tho Mr. *Markh* adviseth to give four or five spoonfuls in Sack or Muscadine which are hot things of themselves.

The Confection called Arman.

To make this Confection, take Honey of Roses a pou and a half, as much as will suffice of the Crumbs of th whitest Manchet made into fine Powder, then take of Co dial-powder of Nutmegs, and of Cinnamon, of each an Ounc and a half: mix all these together, being first made into fi powder, then put it into a Gallypot, and moisten it wi Rose-Vinegar, that it may be of a thick substance like unc Pa

Pap, and ſo keep it for your uſe. When you uſe it, put ſome of it upon the end of a Bull's Pizzle into his Mouth, and let him champ thereon; but if you give it for the Quinſy or Fever, give him down two Hornfuls of it, and do this in the Morning faſting, and let him faſt two or three Hours after it.

The Virtues of this Arman.

It provoketh a good Appetite to Meat, and cauſeth good Digeſtion, it taketh away all Annoyances that trouble the Stomach, it cooleth the inward Heat in the Body; it helpeth all Agues and Fevers, and is moſt excellent againſt Surfeits; it is good for the Quinſy in the Throat, coming of Cold taken; and very good againſt the Gripings in the Belly or Guts, proceeding of Wind. This Confection was brought out of *France.*

How to make the Cordial Powder, which we have likewiſe from the French.

Take Cinnamon and Sugar, of each four Ounces, and of fine Bole-Armoniack two Ounces: make them into very fine powder, and mix them well together, and keep it for your uſe in a Gallypot cloſe ſtopped.

The Virtues of it.

It is good for ſick Horſes that are far ſpent with a Conſumption in the Fleſh and Liver, *&c.* For it is a moſt reſtorative Cordial, comforting the Vital Parts, and Spirits Animal, and reſtoreth it to Sanity.

Another Cordial Powder, called Electuarium Theriacum, *by reaſon it hath much Treacle in it.*

Take Syrup of Violets, Syrup of Lemons, Syrup of Roſes, of each half an Ounce, adding to it an Ounce of *London* Treacle, (which is the beſt of all Treacles for Horſes) mingle them well together; and it is a moſt ſovereign Cordial to be adminiſtred to Horſes that are ſick and weak.

To make the black and red Ægyptiacum, *which are both Corroſives: For their Natures are to corrode and eat away all manner of dead, proud, rotten and naughty Fleſh, out of any old Sore or Ulcer, and they do alſo cleanſe and prepare a Sore, and make it apt to be healed with carnifying or healing Salves*

Take two pounds of coarſe *Engliſh* Honey, Verdegreaſe,

Dyers

Dyers Galls, and green Copperas, of each four Ou
make them all into powder, and mix them together, and
them into an Earthen Pot, and set it upon the Fire,
ing it stirring; but so soon as it begins to boil, take it
and let it cool, for if it boil too long it will become
which will not be so good. This black *Ægyptiacum* is g
to dissolve the Hoofs of a Horse, if they be too dry
hard, so as it will cause the Corruption, if any be in
Foot, to ascend above the Cronet, where the Hair is,
also to restore the Hoof of the Horse when the Sole is
ken out; and in this nature you must use this Unguent,
only at the third dressing after you have taken out the S

The red Ægyptiacum *is thus made.*

Take coarse Honey two Pounds, Verdegrease four O
ces, green Copperas two Ounces; beat the Verdegrease
the Copperas very small to powder, then put it into
Earthen Pot, and put unto it a little Vinegar, and so boi
very well till it become red, and keep it for Use.

General Drenches or Receipts for all inward Diseases,
Sickness.

The *Spaniards* have this Receipt for all inward Disease
Take Wheat-Meal twelve Pounds, Anniseeds four Ounces
fine Powder, Brimstone in Powder three Ounces, Fenugre
in Powder three Ounces and a half, Cummin in Powd
three Ounces, Honey two Pounds, good Sallet-Oil
Pound and a half, of good Sack as much: These are all
be put into a Pot well nealed, and boiled until it be thi
and when it is cold to make it up into Pills or Balls;
must keep it stirring while it is a boiling, otherwise
will burn to; and when they are thus made into Pills, g
him of them four or five Mornings together fasting. Th
kill Worms in a Horse's Body, help Diseases of the Lu
and inward Parts, and are a very good Plaster appli
outwardly. It is most useful in all cold Causes, and it is
Cordial, that it will bring a lean and poor Horse unto Fl
and good State in a little time.

Another excellent Receipt for all inward Diseases

Take Wheat-Meal six Pounds, or as much as will bri
the Ingredients unto a stiff Paste, Anniseeds two Ounce
Cummin two Ounces, wild or Bastard Saffron two Dra
and a half, White-Wine four Pints, Fenugreek one Ou

and two Drams, Brimstone one Ounce and a half, Sallet-Oil a Pint and two Ounces, *English* Honey one Pound and a half: Make those things into powder that will beat to powder, then compound them together, and make it into a stiff Paste, and keep it in a Gallypot close covered for your Use.

When you use it make a Ball thereof as big as a Man's Fist, and dissolve it in two Gallons of fair Water, till it be all molten; let him drink of this Morning and Evening so long as he please, and let him have no other Water to drink, to the end that he may be the better compelled to drink it; which in the end he will do and like it very well. This is good for many inward Infirmities, it raiseth and battleth a Horse much better than either Grass or Provender, and giveth him Life, Spirit and Stomach, and keepeth him in perfect Health.

Another Receipt for all inward Diseases.

Take Fenugreek, Turmerick, Grains, Anniseeds, Liquorice, long Pepper, Cummin, of each half an Ounce, and of Saffron one Dram; and of Herbs, take Celandine, Rue, Pelamontine, Hyssop, Thyme and Rosemary; and of all of them no more than will make half a handful, chopt small and boiled, first in a Quart of good Ale or Beer, then put in your Spices finely powdered, and boil them again: then strain it and put to it the Quantity of an Egg of sweet Butter, an Ounce of *London* Treacle, and give it him blood-warm, and ride him moderately after it, and set him up warm, and let him fast three or four Hours, and let his Drink be either a sweet Mash or White-Water, This is very good against Fevers, Colds and the Yellows.

Another Receipt for inward Sickness.

Take Aristolochia Rotunda, Bay-Berries, Gentian, Anniseeds, Ginger, and of Trifora Magna, of each half an Ounce; beat all the Simples to very fine powder, and mix them well together, then take of White-Wine or good Ale or Beer a Quart, then put into it one Spoonful of all of them, with half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and of Mithridate two Drams; warm these upon a Fire, and administer it blood-warm, and exercise him before and after his Drink, but not to sweat him, neither let him drink any cold Water in four or five days after, but either warm Mashes or White-Water.

This

This is moſt ſovereign for any inward Sickneſs, Drooping, forſaking of Meat, Fevers, Colds, Coughs or the like.

A Suppoſitory for inward Sickneſs.

If he be ſo ſick that you fear to give him any ſtrong Medicine, and that coſtive withal, then give him this Suppoſitory.

Take of Honey ſix Ounces, of Salt-Niter one Ounce and a half, of Wheat-Flower and of Anniſeeds beaten into fine Powder of each one Ounce; boil all theſe into a hard thickneſs, and make it into Suppoſitories, and after you have anointed your Hand with Sallet-Oil, and the Suppoſitory likewiſe, convey it into his Fundament a pretty way and tie his Tail betwixt his Legs to his Girts, elſe hold it close with your hand about a quarter of an hour till it be throughly diſſolved; and this will purge kindly, and looſen his Guts, so that you may be the more bold to adminiſter what Drinks, Cordials, or other things, you think requiſite for his recovery.

Other General Drenches to cure all inward Sickneſs in Horſes, which trouble the whole Body. Of Fevers of all ſorts, Plagues, Infections, and ſuch like.

Sickneſs in general is of two kinds, one offending the whole Body, the other a particular Member; the firſt hidden, and the ſecond viſible. Of the firſt then, which offend the whole Body, are Fevers of all ſorts, as the *Quotidian*, the *Tertian*, the *Quartan*, the *Continual*, and the *Hectick*; the Fevers in Autumn, in Summer, or in the Winter; the Fever by Surfeit, Fever Peſtilent, Fever Accidental, or the General Plague: they are all known by theſe Signs, much trembling, panting and ſweating, a ſullen Countenance that was wont to be chearful, hot Breath, Fainting in Labour, Decay of Stomach, and Coſtiveneſs in the Body, *&c.* Firſt, let him blood, then give him this Drink: Take of Celandine Roots, Leaves and all, a good handful; as much Wormwood and as much Rue; waſh them well, then bruiſe them in a Mortar, then boil them in a Quart of Ale or Beer; then ſtrain them, and add to them a pound of ſweet Butter, then give it the Horſe to drink lukewarm; or half an Ounce of the Powder of *Diapente*, given in Sack or Ale, two or three Mornings together. Or give him three or four Yolks of new-laid Eggs, beaten with ſeven or eight ſpoonfuls of *Aqua vitæ* or Brandy: This is good when he hath his ſhaking fit upon him. Or take four Ounces of *Diapente*, and mix with

with four Ounces of clarified Honey, and keep it in a close Glass, and give him half an Ounce thereof in Wine or Ale; or take of Liquorice an Ounce, of Anniseeds, Cummin-seeds, and Elecampane Roots, of each half an Ounce; of Turmerick and Bay-berries, of each a quarter of an Ounce; of long Pepper and Fenugreek, of each two Drams beaten small; and put five Spoonfuls thereof into a Quart of Ale, warmed with a little Butter or Oil, and it is very sovereign for any Disease coming of cold Causes: Or red Sage, Mint, Cellandine and Rue, boiled in Beer is good. *Diatessaron* is good simply of it self; so is *Diapente*, or *Diahexaple*.

There are several particular Receipts which I might give you for every sort of these Fevers I have named, but I think these in general may serve instead of a more particular Account; only observe this Note by the way, That you must in all hot Causes administer cooling things, and in cold Causes hot things.

Signs whereby you may know every sort of Fever.

Signs in general to know a Fever, is by holding down of his Head, he will quake and tremble, and when his trembling is over, he will burn, and his Breath be hot; he will breathe fast, and his Flank will beat; he will reel, he will forsake his Meat, his Eyes will swell and be closed up and watering; his Flesh will as it were fall from his Bones, and his Stones will hang down; he will desire to drink, yet not drink much, neither will he sleep. But more particularly,

A Quotidian *Fever proceeds from hard Riding, being set up too hot in the Stable without Riding.*

A *Quotidian* or every day's Fever is known by blood-shotten Eyes, short and hot breathing, panting, loathing of his Meat, and Stiffness in his Limbs; and his Sickness will not last above six or eight hours in a day, and then he will be well again.

Tertian *Fever proceeds from the same Causes as the* Quotidian.

The *Tertian* or every other day's Fever, is known by the Signs formerly spoken of, and this as the chiefest, that he will be sick as on Monday, and well on the Tuesday, and sick on the Wednesday following.

Quartan *Fever proceeds from the same Causes as the* Tertian *doth.*

The *Quartan* Fever, as some Farriers call a third day's

Sickneſs, is thus: If his Fit begin on the Monday, he will be well on the Tueſday and Wedneſday, and ſick again on the Thurſday. There is no other Sign to know it, than the coming and going of the Fits.

Continual Fever proceeds from Heats and Colds.

The Fever continual is that which continueth without any Intermiſſion; the Signs are want of Reſt, and falling away of the Fleſh, beſides certain Inflammations or Swellings which will appear about his Withers and Flanks.

Hectick *Fever proceeds from a ſick Stomach, being ſcalded with hot Drinks, hath loſt the power of Digeſtion.*

The *Hectick* Fever, which is the worſt of Fevers, is known by this, that he will never eat with Appetite, and when you draw out his Tongue you ſhall find it raw, his Fleſh will be looſe and flaggy, and his Body ſubject to trembling. All theſe Fevers do moſt commonly happen to a Horſe in the Spring, becauſe the new Blood is apt to be inflamed.

Autumn Fever proceeds from new Blood being inflamed.

The Signs of an *Autumn* Fever, are known by the ſame Signs I have declared; for they are the ſame Fevers, only altering the Time of the Year.

Summer Fever.

A Fever taken in the Summer is the worſt of all ordinary Fevers whatſoever, eſpecially ſuch as are taken in the Dog-days. The Signs of this Fever are, that his Arteries will beat moſt palpably; and whereſoever he ſtaleth, you ſhall perceive he ſheddeth his Seed alſo.

Winter Fever.

A Fever in the Winter is not ſo dangerous as the Fever before-mentioned, yet if you do not remove it ſpeedily, it will continue long. The Signs are no other than hath been declared.

Fever by Surfeit.

The Fever by Surfeit is known by theſe Signs; he will beat upon his Back, his Breath will be ſhort, hot and ſtrong, and his Wind will draw only at his Noſe with great violence.

Fever Peſtilential.

The Fever peſtilential is known by the holding down of his Head, forſaking of his Meat, ſhedding much Water at his Eyes; and many times Swellings, or Ulcers, riſing a little below his Ear-Roots.

Fever Accidental.

The Fever accidental comes by ſome Blow or Wound, by which any of the vital Powers are let or hindred, which may bring him to a Fever; then the Signs be, he will covet much to drink, but cannot, and his Fleſh will fall away in an extraordinary faſhion.

How to make the Oil of Oats.

Take of Milk two Gallons, and warming it on the Fire, put to it a quarter of a pound of burnt Allum, which will make it turn to Curds; then take out the Curd and ſtrain the Whey, then take a quarter of a peck of clean-husked Oats that were never dried, and put them in the Whey, and ſet them on the Fire till they burſt and be ſoft; then put them into a Cullender to let the Whey run through them, then put the Oats into a Frying-Pan over the Fire, keeping them ſtirring, till you ſee the Vapour or Smoke of them aſcend upwards, but as it were run about the Pan: then take them off, and put them into a Preſs, and preſs them moſt exceedingly, and what cometh from them is the Oil of them, which you muſt ſave in a cloſe Glaſs.

The Vertues of it.

This Oil of all Medicines and Simples whatſoever is the moſt excellent and ſovereign for a Horſe's Body, as being extracted from the moſt natural, wholeſom and beſt Food which doth belong unto a Horſe's Body. This Oil being given four or five Spoonfuls at a time in a pint of ſweet Wine, or a quart of ſtrong Ale, and ſome of the Whey poured into his Noſtrils, doth cure the Glanders before all other Medicines: it is alſo (given in the ſame manner) the beſt of all Purgations; for it purgeth away all thoſe venomous and filthy Humours, which feed the moſt incurable Farcy whatſoever.

How to make the Powder of Honey and Lime; which is a great a Drier, that it will dry up any Wound or old Sore.

Take such a quantity of unslak'd Lime as you shall think fit, beat it into very fine Powder, then take so much Honey as will make it up into a stiff Paste, then put it into the form of a thick Cake, or Loaf, and put it into an Oven, or burning Fire, till it be baked or burnt glowing red; then take it forth, and when it is cold, beat it into fine Powder, and then use it as occasion shall serve. If you mix amongst it the Powder of a burnt Shoe, it will be much the better.

A Comfortable Drench.

Make it of these Cordials, to wit, of Sugar, Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Liquorice, Anniseeds; beat all these into fine powder, adding thereunto White-Wine: and all these infuse in an Earthen Pot.

An Operative Drink.

Put in such a quantity of these things as you think requisite for the Strength of the Horse, *viz.* White-Wine, Sallet Oil, Aloes, Rhubarb, Agarick, Duke or Duck-powder, Honey, Cordial-powder, *&c.*

Several sorts of Charges.

Take of black Pitch half a pound, of Mastick two Ounces, of Galbanum four Ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each half a pound; melt them into a Pot together, and when it is half cold charge the place up to the Hanch, and so overthwart the Reins of the Back, and if it be not cured at the end of eight or ten days, take it off and apply this Ointment: Take of Oil de Bay, Althea, tried Hog's-Grease, of each half a pound; incorporate them all together, and therewith anoint and chafe the place grieved.

[*See the second Part for the Best of Charges*, I. W. *marked in the Margin.*]

A Honey-Charge for a Wrench or Slip in the Shoulder, Hip or other Member; for all sorts of Scratches, and for Stiffness of Sinews hurt, or any other way offended, to assuage Swellings and Tumours, and to draw away all bad Humours.

Take of Wheat-Meal two pounds, and put a little White-Wine unto it, and put it into a Kettle, as if you were to make a Poultice, and when it is well mixed, add to it

Boile

Bole-Armoniack in fine powder half a pound, of *English* Honey one pound; then ſet it upon the Fire and boil it, keeping it continually ſtirring, and put to it in the boiling half a pound of black Pitch, keeping it ſtirring, and when you think you have boiled it enough, put to it of ordinary Turpentine half a pound; of Oil de-Bay, Cummin, Althea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries and Fenugreek, beaten to powder, and of Linſeed-Meal, of each two Drams; boil them all together again, ſtill keeping them ſtirring till they be well incorporate, and therewith charge the grieved Member with it pretty warm, but not to ſcald him.

A Reſtringent Charge to be applied to broken Bones, or to Bones diſlocated or out of Joint, being firſt ſet; and alſo to take moiſt Humours from weeping Wounds, and ſo to dry up bad Humours, which do pre-occupate the Body.

Take of Oil de-Bay four Ounces, Orpin, Cantharides, and Euphorbium, of each two Ounces; make all theſe into fine powder, and mix them with your Oil de-Bay very well, and therewith charge the place grieved. This is alſo very good to charge the Swelling of a Back Sinew-ſtrain.

A cold Charge.

Take Bole-Armoniack, Wheat-Flower, the White of an Egg, and *Aquavitæ* or White-Wine; beat all theſe together pretty thick, and lay it to the place grieved upon a brown Paper, and when it is dry lay on freſh. You muſt keep that part out of the Water, if you intend the Plaſter ſhould ſtay on.

Of Salves, Unguents, Powders and Waters.

Take of Peroſen, and of hard Roſin, of each one pound; of Frankincenſe, Virgin-Wax, or for want thereof new Wax, and Sheep's Suet, of each half a pound; of old tried Hog's greaſe one pound and a quarter: boil the Gums and Wax in half a pint of White-Wine, and then put into it your Sheep's Tallow and Hog's-greaſe; and when all is molten and incorporated together, ſtrain it, and whilſt it is yet hot put in an Ounce of *Venice* Turpentine, and ſo work all well together, which when it is cold, pour in the Liquor from the Salve, which put up into a Gally-pot for your uſe.

The Vertues of it.

This is a moſt ſovereign Salve to heal any green Wound, (that is not come to an Ulcer) and ſo dry it up.

Another moſt excellent Powder.

Take unſlaked Lime, the dry Duſt of Tanners Oaken Bark, and an old Shoe-Sole burned to a Coal, of each alike; make them into fine powder, and mix them well, and keep them in a Box for your Uſe.

The Virtues of it.

This Powder healeth the Buds of the Farcin after they be broken, and skinneth them; and if they be waſhed with the Juice of Vervine and ſtrong Vinegar, mingled together, and this Powder caſt upon them, will heal and skin them. It healeth likewiſe and skinneth all other Sores.

Another Ointment.

Take half a pound of tried Hog's-greaſe, a pennyworth of Verdegreaſe beaten to fine Powder, give them two or three Walms on the Fire; then take it off, and put into it half an Ounce of *Venice*-Turpentine, and ſtir it well together till it be cold: this Ointment will heal any Wound or Sore in a Horſe.

Another Ointment.

Burn a good quantity of Roch-Allum, and as much Bay-Salt, and burn that alſo, make them both together into fine powder. Then take of common Honey, and of fweet Butter, of each alike, as much as will ſuffice; incorporate them all together, by melting them over a gentle Fire, and with a Taint or Plaiſter apply it: and this cureth any foul Sore.

A good Water.

Take a Pint of fair Water, and put into it of Bay-Salt, and of green Copperas, of each the Quantity of a Hazel-Nut, firſt made into fine Powder; let them boil a little up on the Fire: with this waſh your Sore before you do apply any of your Salves, Unguents, or Powders.

Another Salve.

Take of common Honey, two Ounces, Roch-Allum, Verdegreaſe and Vinegar, of each an Ounce; make your Allum and Verdegreaſe into fine Powder, then take of Sublimate finely powdered, two Ounces, boil them a little on the Fire; this laid Plaiſter-wiſe on the Wound once a day, or if the Wound be deep, taint it with it; but before you dreſs it, wa

the Sore with Water made of green Copperas and Bay-Salt.

The Virtues of it.

This doth not only cure all sorts of Wounds in the Body, but the Foot also, and it cleareth any Wound from dead and proud Flesh.

Another Salve.

Take the Buds or the tender Tops of the Leaves of Elder, (or for want thereof, the inner Rind of the Bark) one handful, and first shred, and after pound them very well, till you bring them to a Salve, and apply this to the Sore, binding a Cloth about it to keep it from falling off.

The Virtues of it.

This will cure any old or new Sore whatsoever in any Part of the Body, as galled Backs, Spur-Galls, Gravelling, Prick'd, being dressed every Day once; and it will cure a Fistula, if the Juice of it be injected into it unto the bottom.

An Ointment.

Take the White of a new-laid Egg, and Sallet-Oil, as much as will suffice, and beat them well together, and before you apply it unto the Wound, pour into the Wound burnt Butter, and then lay on your Medicines with Hurds Plaister-wise. And this will cure any green Wound.

Another.

An Ounce of black Soap, and as much Dog's-Grease, with as much burnt Allum as will lie upon a sixpence, melted upon the Fire together, is very good to heal or skin any Wound or Hurt: let the burnt Allum be put in last, when the others are melted.

How to give a Horse a Vomit.

Vomits are given to Horses newly taken from Grass, to bring away their gross and phlegmatick Humours, which do abound in their Stomach and Head, which if they be not taken away in due time, may impair greatly the Health of the Horse. I never knew that Vomits were useful to a Horse till I met with a *French* Farrier, which I saw administred it to sundry Horses, which did work very kindly.

The Receipt is this.

Take two of the greatest Roots you can get of Polypo-

dium of the Oak, washed and scraped very clean, and tye to his Snaffle, Trench or Bit; then let it be steeped in the Oil of Spike all Night, and in the Morning fasting put on his Bridle with the same Roots, and ride him about with about an Hour fair and softly, and if he be troubled with any rheumatick or phlegmatick Humour, or with any cold or filthy Matter, which may annoy his Stomach, this will force him to vent it at his Mouth and Nose, and it will cause him to cough and sneeze, where he will send forth a great Abundance of Filth and evil slimy Stuff from off his Stomach and Head, as that in a very short time he will become very clean in his Body; for this will both refine his Blood, and exhaust all his watry Humours, which will make him sound a long time after it. And this is not only to be applyed to a Horse newly taken from Grass, but to any other Horse that hath taken Cold, or to any ketty, foul, foggy or pursy Horse whatsoever. This may seem strange here amongst us, but let any man make tryal, and he shall find it to be most admirable.

Purging Pills.

Take of fresh Butter one Pound, Aloes and Fenugreek, of each an Ounce; Life-Honey and white Sugar-Candy powdred, of each four Ounces; Agarick half an Ounce; make all these into fine powder, and being well incorporated with the Butter and Honey, make Pills thereof, and give them to your Horse; and if he be but a small and weak Horse, you must give him but two parts of three, but if he hath a strong Cold and Cough withal, then

Take fresh Butter, and of Mel-Rosarum, of each four Ounces; of Aloes and Sena, of each an Ounce; of Rhubarb and Bay-Berries, of each three Ounces; Colloquintida and Saffron, of each two Drams; Cordial-Powder one Ounce, Duke or Duck Powder four Ounces; make them all into fine powder, and mix them with two Ounces of Mithridate and with your Butter and Mel-Rosarum beat and pound them together, and make them up into Pills, and give them your Horse. This Receipt will purge him very well, but it heat him for some time, and let him be ordered as in other Physical Cures of the like nature, and proportion your Pills according to the Strength, Greatness and Corpulency of your Horse.

A Plaister to dissolve and take away evil Humours, which shall at any time fall down in the Legs of your Horse

Take of common Honey a Pound; of Turpentine half a Pound; of Mastick in fine powder two Ounces; of Frankincense and Bole-Armoniack made into fine powder, of each four Ounces; of *Sanguis Draconis* three Ounces; six new-laid Eggs; of the strongest Wine-Vinegar one Pint; of the Flower of Rice seven Ounces; mix all these together, and hereof make a Plaister, and lap the Legs of the Horse from the Feet to the upper Joints, and do this but four or five times, and you shall find that it will perform a strange and rare Cure.

Of several sorts of Baths, and first of a Bath to dry up Humours.

Take Sage, Rosemary, of each a Handful; and of the Bark of the Root of Beach three Pounds, and of the Barks of young Elms, Oaks and Ash, of each a Handful; of Nep, Penny-royal, and of Chestnuts, the Rinds being taken away, of each a Handful; three or four white Onions clean pilled, and cut into small pieces or slices; Red-Wine three Pottles; strong White-Wine Vinegar two Pottles: boil all these together, and cause him to be walked a quarter of an hour till he be warm, then bathe him with this Bath good and hot, and set him up warm, and let his Drink be either sweet Mashes or White-Water; and thus bathe him for three or four Days together, and let him not be ridden in any Water for eight or ten Days after.

The Use or Virtues of Baths.

Baths are Fomentations, which are the most comfortable things of any to the Joints and Limbs of a Horse, for they dissolve all ill Humours, and give heat and warmth unto all the Members that are benumbed with Cold, or for want of Blood; it comforteth and strengthneth them, and giveth very great Ease to the pained Sinews. Besides it assuageth Swellings in or about any part of the Body; for Legs swelling, stiff or benumbed, or for any other Joint pained or grieved, or for any String-halt, Cramp or Convulsion. Which Bath to cure all such Maladies is this:

Bath 1.

Take Muscadine and Sallet-Oil, of each a Pint; Bay-leaves and

and Rosemary, of each two Handfuls; let them boil half an hour; and when you are to bathe your Horse therewith, rub and chafe the grieved place with a Wisp or Hair-cloth a pretty while: then put the Foot into some broad Bowl or Pail, whereby to preserve the Liquor or Herbs, and bathe him thus a quarter of an hour; which ended, bind upon the place a piece of Sheep's or Lamb's Skin, with the woolly side to the Leg, and let him stand so four and twenty Hours. Apply this five or six times, and it will be a perfect Cure.

Bath 2. *A Bath to cure all Gourdy and Gouty Legs, which come either by Farcin, Scratches, or the like,* &c.

Take a Quart or more of Chamber-lye, and put into it a Handful of Bay-Salt; a quarter of a pound of Soap; a pretty Quantity of Soot; a Handful or two of Mistletoe, chopped small: boil them together, and bathe the place very well therewith, and in three or four Days, bathing it Morning and Evening, it will not only take down the Swelling, but prevent the Farcin.

Bath 3. *Another Bath for the same purpose.*

Take the Grounds of a Beer-Barrel, with the Barm, Smallage, large Feverfew, Winter-Savory, Comfrey, Mallows, Rue, Set-vel, Penny-royal, Worm-wood, Archangel, of each a good Handful, and of the Leaves and Berries of Mistletoe, three or four good Handfuls; Sheep's Tallow one pound, tried Hog's Grease half a pound; three or four Handfuls of Rye or Wheat-Bran: boil them all together, till the Herbs and Mistletoe become soft; and be sure you have Liquor enough, and a little before you take it from the Fire, put into it some Hay: with this bathe his Legs; first one, then the other, as was before shewed; and when you have bathed that Leg sufficiently, make a Thumb-Band of the Hay in the Bath, and roll it about the Leg, above the uppermost or middle Joint, and put off the Herbs between the Thumb-band and his Leg, which done, pour on the Liquor remaining upon the Thumb-bands; and so bathe him for so many days once, as you shall think requisite, and it will bring down the Swelling quite, and make him sound.

Bath 4. *Another Bath very excellent.*

Take Smallage, Ox-Eye and Sheep's Suet, of each alike, to a good quantity; chop them small together, and after stamp them in a stone Mortar, then boil them with Man's Urine

Urine, and bathe the greived parts herewith warm, doing as before with Bowl or Pail. Then with Thumb-bands of ſoft Hay made firſt wet in cold Water, wrap up the Member, as well above as below the Grief, and uſe it as often as you ſhall ſee cauſe. This Bath is very good for ſwelled Legs upon Travel, or for any other Lameneſs which cometh either by Stroke, Strain, or other Accident.

Bath 5. *Another Bath.*

Take Savin and the Bark and Leaves of the Bay-tree, Pellitory, Roſemary, Sage, Rue, of each three Ounces; boil theſe in a Gallon of White-Wine until half be conſumed, and bathe your Horſe as before is ſhew'd.

To bathe a Horſe in ſalt Water, is very wholeſom, both for the Horſe's Skin, and for any Diſeaſe in the Stomach.

Bath 6. *A Bath for a Horſe that is tired or over-travelled.*

Take of Mallows, of Sage, of each two or three handfuls; and a Roſe-Cake; boil them together in Water till it be all conſumed, then add to it a good quantity of Butter or Sallet-Oil, and mix them together, and bathe all his Fore-legs therewith, and all the Parts of his Body alſo: or let him blood, and with that Blood, Oil and Vinegar mixed together, preſently anoint his Body, which helps moſt ſorts of Infirmities.

Of Perfumes or Purges of the Head of all filthy and groſs Matter.

Perfumes are neceſſary to be applied to Horſes in Caſes of Colds, Glanders, Rheums, Murs, Pozes, Catarrhs, *&c.* For they do not only break a Cold, but diſſipate congealed Humours which do annoy the Head, Brain and Stomach of the Horſe, and ſometimes they expel and cauſe him to vent at his Noſe and Mouth much Filth and Corruption, which doth ſtop, clog, and peſter his Head and Body; and ſometimes they do ſiccicate and dry up many bad Humours which are engendred in the Head and Brain. The Ingredients of which Simples, wherewith we perfume ſick Horſes, are many. As,

The Juice of Onions ſnuffed up the Noſe draweth forth raw phlegmatick Humours. The Juice of Coleworts ſquirted up his Noſe, or the Juice of red Beets. The Leaves of the Wind Flower ſtamped, and the Juice ſquirted up his Noſe, or the Juice of Dazies, purge the Head of filthy ſlimy Humours.

mours. The Juice of Sage draweth forth thin Phlegm. The Juice of the Primrose stamp'd, strain'd, and squirted up his Nose, is good to purge the Brain. The Juice of the small Cellandine purgeth the Head of foul and filthy Humours. The Juice of the Leaves or Berries of Ivy that grows upon Walls, doth infinitely purge the Head. Fennel-Giant or Ferula snuffed up the Nose, white Hellebore or Sneezing-Root beaten to Powder, after it is dry'd and blown up into the Nose, purgeth the Head and Brain from gross and slimy Humours: wild white Hellebore hath the same Virtues. The Juice of sweet Marjoram draweth forth much Phlegm. The Juice of stinking Gladdon squirted up the Nose, draweth down to the Nose great store of filthy Excrements. Mustard-Seed beaten to powder, and blown up the Nose, purgeth the Head. The Juice of Sneezewort squirted up the Nose, bringeth from the Brain slimy Phlegm. The Juice of the Leaves of Elder purgeth the Head of all gross and vicious Humours. Pellitory, Pimpernel, Rosemary, the Smoke taken up his Nostrils, or take a Feather and anoint it in Oil de Bay, and thrust it up his Nose, is good for any Cold or Obstruction in the Head.

The best Perfume of all.

But the best Perfume of all is to take the best Olibanum, Storax, Benjamin, and Frankincense, bruised grosly together, and strew'd upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, and let him receive the Smoke of it up his Nostrils through a Tunnel, which will bring away abundance of tough Matter into Water from the Head and Brain, insomuch that it will be almost ready to extinguish the Fire. It is a most excellent Comforter of the Brain, and brings a great Chearfulness to the Heart, and rejoiceth the whole Body.

The Green Ointment.

The Green Ointment, which cures Sores whether old or green, Ulcers, Fistula's, Poll-Evils, or what else; for where this Ointment cometh, no proud or dead Flesh will grow, no Flies will come near the place, or Fore-Horse or Mare-Filly that is gelt or spay'd: anoint but the places, and they will neither swell nor fester; for it doth not only heal soundly, but speedily also, provided you lay nothing upon the Wound or Sorrance, where the Ointment is administred, as neither Hurds, Lint, Plaisters, or the like: unless you have occasion to taint a Wound which is deep, neither that for

for any long time or too often. And besides, the seldomer the Wound is dressed, as once a day, or once in two days, it will heal the better and faster, especially if it be brought into good forwardness of healing. And together with this Ointment you may do well to wash the Sorrance with the Copperas-Water, which by reason it is always first to be used, you shall have it first, and the Green Ointment after it.

The making of the Copperas-Water.

Take two Quarts of fair Water, and put it into a clean Postnet, and put to it half a pound of green Copperas, of Salt a handful, of ordinary Honey a spoonful, and two or three Branches of Rosemary; boil all these till one half of the Water be consumed, and a little before you take it from the Fire, put to it the quantity of a Dove's Egg of Allum: then take it from the Fire, and strain it into a Pan, and when it is cold put it into a Glass close stopped, and keep it for your use. And when you are to dress any Sore, first wash it very clean with this Water; and if the Wound be deep, inject it with a Syringe.

The Virtues of it.

This Water will of itself cure any reasonable Sore or Wound, but the green Ointment being applied after it is wash'd, will heal any old Ulcer or Fistula whatsoever, if they come to the bottom, and for green Wounds they have not their fellow. If you think good you may boil it in Verjuice or Chamber-lye; one being a great Searcher, Cleanser, and Healer, the other a great Dryer.

How to make the Green Ointment.

Take a clean Skillet or Postnet, and first put into it of Rosin the quantity of a Walnut, which being molten, put to it the like quantity of Wax; and when that is also molten, put to them of try'd Hog's-grease half a pound; and when that is molten, put into it of common *English* Honey one Spoonful: and when all these are molten and well stirred together, then put in of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, and when that is dissolved, take it from the Fire, and put to it an Ounce of Verdegrease beaten to fine powder, and so stir it all together, but be careful it run not over, for that the Verdegrease will cause it to arise: then set it again upon the Fire till it begin to simmer; then take it off, for if you let it boil too much, it will turn red, and lose

loſe its Virtue of healing, and become a Corroſive. Then ſtrain it through a Cloth into ſome Earthen Pot, and keep it for your uſe cloſe covered.

The Virtues of it.

This is the moſt excellent Ointment that ever I knew: for *de Grey* hath done ſuch rare Cures with it, that he hath been offer'd ten Pounds for it. For it cleanſeth a Wound be it never ſo foul, or infected with dead, proud, ſpungy, or naughty Fleſh; it carnifieth and healeth abundantly, and withal ſo ſoundly and firmly, as that it doth never more break forth: it draweth forth Thorns, Splinters, Nails, and all ſuch things in the Fleſh; and in a word, it cureth all ſorts of Sores and Wounds.

Another excellent Green Ointment made only in the Month of May, *which cureth all ſorts of Strains, Aches, Burnings, Scaldings, and Swellings whatſoever, either in the Throat or any other part of the Body.*

Take half a pound of each of theſe things here undermention'd, *viz.* Rue, red Sage, Wormwood and young Bay-Leaves, beat them very well in a Mortar: then take four pounds of new Sheep's Suet, and work the Herbs and it very well together with your Hands, till they be incorporated and become as one Lump. Then put to them two quarts of Sallet-Oil, and work that alſo till it become all of one ſoftneſs and colour: then put it into a new Earthen Pan, and let it ſtand covered eight days; then boil it over a ſoft Fire the ſpace of two hours or more, keeping it ſtirring all the while: then put into it four Ounces of the Oil of Spike, and let that boil as long. The way to know whether it be well boiled, is to put a Drop of it upon a Plate, and if it be upon a fair Green, you may aſſure yourſelf it is enough. Then ſtrain it through a new Canvas, and keep it in an Earthen Pot for your uſe. This Ointment will hold very good ſeven or eight Years.

A very good Receipt to keep back Humours that flow too faſt to a Wound you have in Cure, which will make it heal much the ſooner.

Take two Pints of White-Wine Vinegar or Tartar, and put to it an Ounce or more of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and of common Salt well dry'd the like quantity, the Powder alſo of the Burdock-Root, or the Juice of the Leaves

Leaves: and wash the swell'd place round about with it, once or twice a day, and it will be a great help in order to its Cure.

Another for the same Use.

After you have beaten a Pennyworth or more of Camphire very small, dissolve it in a Pint of Verjuice, and boil it about a quarter of an hour; then put it into a Glass close stopped, to keep for your Use, and use it as you have Directions in the former Receipt.

To cleanse a Wound, old or new, before you dress it.

Take more or less of White-Wine Vinegar, according as you have occasion, and put into it the Powder of the Roots of Elder dry'd, or the Juice of the Leaves, with a Spoonful of Honey, and a little Powder of burnt Allum; and boil it about half a quarter of an hour, and use it warm.

Another sort of Green Ointment, which is good to heal any Wound, old or new.

Take a Handful of these Herbs here under-mentioned, *viz.* Rosemary, Wound-wort, red Sage, Mugwort, Comfrey, Rue and Southernwood, *&c.* Cut them small, and boil them in a Pound and a half of *May*-Butter, and the like quantity of Sheep's-Suet. When you have boiled it, according as you have Directions for the boiling of Ointments in the latter end of the Book, strain out the Ointment from the Herbs, and put it into a Pot, and keep it for your Use.

Of Purging or Scouring Things in general.

Turn-sole boiled in Water gently purgeth the Body, Feltwort or Baldmony, Aloes or Sea-Housleek is the most convenient Medicine for the Stomach, that is, the Seed of St. *Peter*'s-wort. The Seed of Tutsan or Park-Leaves do purge cholerick Humours; Dodder that groweth upon Savory, Hedge-Hyssop, purgeth mightily waterish, gross, and slimy Humours; Scammony or purging Bind-weed doth mightily purge, and it is very hurtful to the Body, if you do not mix it with Aloes; Colloquintida is a violent Purger, and is not to be used but upon some desperate Diseases, and then not to be given, unless it be mixed with some clammy things whereby the Vehemency thereof may be repressed. Black Hellebore or Bear's-Foot, Hog's-Fennel purgeth

geth by Siege both Phlegm and Choler; either of the Po
podies purgeth Choler and Phlegm.

The Entrails of a Carp or Barbel cut into pieces, a
given him in White-Wine or Ale, or Rye ſodden that
burſt not, and dry'd and given him inſtead of Provende
an Ounce of Aloes made up in Balls of Butter, after it
finely beaten to Powder, purgeth excellently; Spurge boil
in Beer and given him, Hempſeed, Fenugreek, Caſſia, H
ney, Sallet-Oil, in Sack given him; the Powder of Mech
acan boiled in Ale or Ale-wort, *London*-Treacle and Hon
brew'd together and given him; or Sena, Agarick, a
Liquorice boiled in Ale and given him; or Gentian ſlic
and boiled in a Quart of Beer till it come to a Pint, a
given him.

*Particular Scourings at large; and firſt of a Scouring fo
any Horſe, ſick or ſound, and eſpecially for Running
Hunting Horſes, whoſe Greaſe muſt neceſſarily be molte*

Take twenty Raiſins of the Sun with the Stones pick
out, ten Figs ſlit round-wiſe; boil them in a Pottle of ru
ning Water till the Water is conſumed and thickned: th
take the Powder of Liquorice, Anniſeeds, and Sugar-Cand
finely ſearced, and mix it with the Raiſins and Figs, ſtam
ing and working them together till they become a ſti
Paſte. Then making round Balls thereof, of a pretty bi
neſs, roll and cover them all over with ſweet Butter, a
give as many of them to the Horſe as you ſhall think mee
for his Strength; provided that the day before you giv
him ſuch Exerciſe as will raiſe up his Greaſe, and that imm
diately before you give him this Medicine you alſo war
him throughly, that the Humours being again ſtirred u
the Medicine may work the more effectually.

*Another Scouring to purge a Horſe from all Greaſe, Gl
or Filthineſs within his Body; which I think may go f
as good a Scouring as can be invented by Art.*

Take of Anniſeeds three Ounces, of Cummin-ſeeds
Drams, of Carthamus a Dram and a half, of Fenugree
ſeed one Ounce and two Drams, of Brimſtone one Ou
and a half; beat all theſe to fine Powder, and ſearce the
then take a Pint and two Ounces of Sallet-Oil, of Honey
Pound and a half, and of White-Wine four Pints; th
with as much fine Wheat-Meal as will ſuffice, make all in
a ſtrong ſtiff Paſte, and knead and work it well. This Pa
k

keep in a Gally-Pot close cover'd for your Use. When your Horse hath been hunted, and is at Night or in the Morning very thirsty, take a Ball of it as big as a Man's Fist, and dissolve it in a Gallon or two of cold Water, and it will make the Water look white as Milk. Then give it him in the dark, lest the Colour displease him; if he drink it, then feed him, but if he refuse it, let him fast till he take it, which assuredly he will do in twice or thrice offering: and when he hath once taken it, he will refuse all other Drink for this, and you cannot give him too much nor too oft of it, if he have Exercise. It is an excellent thing for all inward Infirmities whatsoever.

Another excellent Scouring after any sore Heat, or for any fat Horse after his Exercise, with Directions how he is to take it, and how you are to order him after it: with Cautions what to do when you give any Scouring.

Take a Quart of good Sack, and set it on the Fire in a Basin or Skillet, and when it is warm, take an Ounce of the cleerest Rosin, being bruised very small, and by degrees little by little put it into the Sack, and keep it stirring for fear of clotting; and when it is well incorporated into the Sack, take it from the Fire, and put into it half a Pint of the best Sallet-Oil, and in the cooling stir them all very well together. Then put into it an Ounce of brown Sugar-Candy beaten to powder, and being lukewarm, give it the Horse in the height of his Heat. As soon as you come home from Exercise, then rub him well and clothe him warm, and let him fast two hours after it, and keep him stirring in the Stable, for that will make his Spirits work, for Rest doth but dull the Spirits. When you give him any Scouring, be sure that day to give him no cold Water after it, for it is binding and knitting, and detaineth that Foulness which the Scouring should take away.

Another Scouring, when others will not work.

Take a Quarter of a Pound of sweet Butter, and so much of Castle-Soap, and half an Ounce of Aloes; beat them together, and add two Spoonfuls of beaten Hempseed, and of Rosin half a Spoonful, of Sugar-Candy an Ounce bruised: work them all into a Paste, and give it him in Balls immediately after his Heat, when you have warmed him, and stirred up the Grease and Foulness within him.

[*There is in my Second Part a very safe and easy Scouring.*]

If you have a desire to see more Variety of Purgations of all sorts, look back.

Of Loosening Things in general.

Brank-Ursin or Seed, Hempseed, Fenugreek-seed, the Juice of the white Beets, Coleworts, Spinage, Mercury, Succory, white Soap and Spurge bray'd together, and given him to drink; Sallet-Oil given him in Sack or Ale, or Aniseeds, Linseeds, and Piony boiled in Beer, or the Bark of the Elder-Tree bruised and mixed with old Ale and given him; or take of the Decoction of Mallows, Sallet-Oil, and fresh Butter, *Benedicta Laxativa* given him blood-warm, Glister-wise, or Rye thrown amongst his Provender, or Mustard-seed, or to anoint your Hand with Butter or Hog's Grease, and pluck away his Ordure, and then put into his Fundament a good piece of the great End of a Candle; or give him in Ale eleven Leaves of Laurel stamp'd, the Seed of horned Poppy given him in Ale. All sorts of Docks being boiled, are Loseners of the Belly; Marigold-Leaves, Borrage, Bugloss, the Leaves of Hound's-Tongue boiled in Ale do mollify the Belly, Syrup of Violets, black Hellebore or Bear's Foot, Hog's-Fennel looseneth the Belly gently, Sparage or Asparagus.

Things good to fatten a Horse in general.

Beans boiled in two Gallons of Water till they swell or burst, and mix them with a Peck of Wheat-Bran, and give it him in the manner of a Mash, and it will fat suddenly; or Coleworts sodden and mixed with Wheat-Bran, and give them instead of Provender; or give him, instead of his Provender, the Grain call'd Buck, or give him parched Wheat mingled with Ale, or Wheat-Bran mingled among his Provender: but be sure to keep him well dress'd and cleanly look'd after; for without clean keeping his Meat will do him but little good, and give him but a little Meat at once, for fear you cloy him. Or take Sage, Savin, Bay-berries, Earth-Nuts, Bear's-Grease mingled with a Quart of Wine or Ale, and give it him; or feed him a Month together with scalded Bran; or take Cummin-seed, Fenugreek-seed, *Siler is Montani*, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, each two Ounces; quick Brimstone six Ounces, made all into fine Powder: and give him an Egg-shell full of it every Night in his Provender, and white Water after it, and put into his Oats with his Powder a Handful of Nettle-

for that is a thing which will principally cause him to fatten. And when he is glutted with this Meat, then give him Bread; if he leave his Bread, then give him Malt, or any Grain that he will eat with a good Appetite: or give him many Mornings together half an Ounce of Brimstone finely beaten with a raw Egg, and a Penny-weight of the Powder of Myrrh in a Quart of Ale; or give him three-leaved Grass half green and half dry for many days together; or give him Pepper, Saffron, Anniseeds, Turmerick, Treacle, Liquorice, Pennyroyal and Archangel, mingled in Milk with the Yolks of Eggs. Barley dry'd or Barley boil'd till it burst, is a great Fattener, but most of these ways will not breed Fat that will continue. But the best way to make him fat, and to cause him to keep it, is to give him three Mornings together a Pint of sweet Wine, and two Spoonfuls of Diapente brew'd together; for that will take away all Infection and Sickness from the inward Parts. Then feed him well with Provender at least four times a day, *viz.* after his Water in the Morning, after his Water at Noon, after his Water in the Evening, and after his Water at Nine at Night; and if you find that he eat not his Provender well, then change it to another, and let him have most of that Food he loveth best, and there is no question but he will grow fat suddenly. But if you will have a more particular Account, then turn to the Mirrour of all Medicines, to make the leanest Horse that may be fat, sound, and fit either for Market or Travel, in the space of fourteen days, which you may find before, with several other such-like Receipts ensuing.

An Explanation of several hard Words belonging to Chirurgery.

What a Fracture is.

If there be a Loosening in the Bone, it is call'd a Fracture.

What a Wound is.

If it be in any fleshy part, it is called a Wound.

What a Rupture is.

If it be in the Veins, then it is a Rupture.

What a Convulsion is.

If in the Sinews, then it is a Cramp or Convulsion.

What an Excoriation is.

If it be in the Skin, then it is called an Excoriation.

Of giving of Fire; and there are two ways of it, the one Actual, and the other Potential. The first is done by Medicine, either Corrosive, Putrefactive, or Caustick.

Cautery Actual.

The actual Fire doth burn the Flesh by Instrument, which stoppeth Corruption of Members, and stancheth Blood, provided the Sinews, Cords, and Ligaments be not touch'd. The Instruments to cauterize are Gold, Silver, Copper, or Iron.

Cautery Potential.

The Potential Fire doth burn by Medicine, of which there are three sorts or degrees; namely, by Corrosive, by Caustick, or Putrefaction.

The Corrosive.

The Corrosives are simple or compound: the simple Corrosives are Roch-Allum, burnt or unburnt, red Coral, Mercury sublimed, Verdegrease, Copperas white and green; and these corroding things are call'd Precipitates, which are Eaters of dead Flesh. The Compounds are *Unguentum Apostolorum*, *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, and *Unguentum Coræceum*, with others.

Medicines Putrefactive.

Medicines Putrefactive are such Medicines which are applied to Swellings, which are made for the most part of Medicines compounded, as Poultices, roasted Sorrel, white Lilly-Roots, and the like.

What a Caustick is.

A Caustick is a great Burner, for that being once put to the Skin, will in a short time make a Wound where there was none before; and those things are Lye, Lime, Vitriol, Aquafortis, and the like.

Corrosives.

Corrosives are weaker than Putrefactives, and Putrefactives are weaker than Causticks. Corrosives work in the soft Flesh, Putrefactives in the hard, and Causticks break the sound Skin.

The

Thus you see the Use of these things, you may apply them at your pleasure; for these cure all sorts of Farcies, Cankers, Fistulaes, Leprosies, Manges, Scabs, and such like poisonous Infection.

Of the several sorts of Purgings, which are five; by Pills, by Potions, by Glisters, by Suppositories, and by Grass.

What Pills are.

Pills are solid or substantial stuff fixed together in one Body, and being made into round Balls are cast down the Horse's Throat, which purge the Head and Brain from Phlegm, and other gross Humours, down into the Excrements.

What a Potion is.

Potions are when you give him liquid purging Powders dissolved in Wine or Ale, or that if it be any other liquid Stuff: now Potions cleanse the Stomach and Guts from such naughty Humours, which Glanders, Colds and Surfeits have ingendred in the Body.

What Glisters are.

Glisters are given at the Fundament, and are made up of four things, that is to say, Decoctions, of Drugs, of Oils, and such like unctious Matter, as Butter or Grease; and fourthly, of divers Salts, to provoke the Virtue expulsive. Now they are of several Natures, some to ease and appease Griefs, and allay the Sharpness of Humours, some to bind and some to loosen, and some to heal, as in Cases of Ulcers and old Sores within the Body, *&c.*

What a Suppository is.

A Suppository is only a Preparative to a Glister, and but only to cleanse and make loose the great Guts which come to the Tuel; and they help the Disease of the Guts, being of nature more gentle than Glisters are, and may be applied when Glisters cannot.

Purging by Grass.

Purging by Grass, is either by green Corn, Wheat, Rye, Barley, Oats or Tares, which is a great Cleanser and Cooler of his Body.

What a Decoction is.

A Decoction is a Broth made of certain Herbs, as Mallows,

Marſhmallows, Pellitory, Camomile, and ſometimes of white Lilly-Roots, and other ſuch like things.

Simples that are good to conglutinate and knit things together, either inward or outward

Iris Illyrica beaten and ſifted, and mingled with Pepper, Honey and Currants, and given him to drink in Wine and Sallet-Oil, conglutinateth any inward Rupture or Burſtneſs; Dragant, Saffron, the Fruit of the Pine, with the Yolks of Eggs, given him to drink with Wine and Sallet-Oil, is good to conglutinate any inward Member or Vein broken; the Roots and Seeds of Aſparagus ſod in Water and given him, and after three days give him Opoponax with Honey and Myrrh, and it will conglutinate any inward Ulcer or Rupture whatſoever. The Bark of Aſh beaten with Wine, and plaſter it, is a great Knitter of broken Bones; or the inward Bark of an Elm laid in running Water, and bathe the place therewith; or the Roots of Rocket boiled in Water, and plaſter it; or wild Briony ſtamped and plaſtered alſo; Hazel tails and the Seeds of red Docks made into powder, and given him to drink, is good; or Bugle is a Knitter of Wounds inward or outward: ſo does Lion's paw, or Self-heal, the diſtilled Water of Sow-bread doth knit any broken Sinew in the Body. Bole-Armoniack beaten to powder, and finely ſifted and beaten with the White of an Egg, and ſpread upon the Leg, and covered over with Flax, is very good for a Sinew-ſtrain, and is a great Strengthner of the grieved place, where a Bone hath been out of joint, and put in again. The yellow Wall-flower ſtrengthens any weak part out of joint.

A Poultice made of Brank-Urſin and applied is good, ſo is a Decoction of the Root of Butchers-broom or Knee-Holly, with the Berries alſo made into a Poultice: the Root of the great Comfrey bruiſed and laid to them, doth conſolidate and knit them together: the Decoction of the Leaves, Bark or Roots of Elecampane, healeth them, being bathed therewith. The Roots of Eringo or Sea-holly boiled in Hog's-greaſe, and applied to them, draweth not only Bones out of the Fleſh, but alſo Thorns, and healeth them again. An Ointment made of the Roots of Oſmond-Royal or Water-Flag braiſed in a Mortar, with the Oil of Swallows, and the place grieved anointed with it, is very good; Flixweed doth conſolidate broken Bones, ſo do the Leaves of the Holly-tree uſed in Fomentations; ſo doth Knot-grass and

and Moon-wort: the Leaves of Mullen bruised and boiled in Wine, and laid to any Member out of joint, and newly set again, take away all Swellings and Pains thereof; the Leaves of Nettles also bruised and laid to them, refresh them; the Juice of Plantain applied to any Bone out of joint, hindreth the Inflammation, Swelling or Pain that shall arise thereon; *Solomon's* Seal knitteth any Joint, which by weakness useth to be often out of its place: or the Decoction of the Root being bruised and infused in Wine all Night, and given him, much helpeth towards the Cure; the Leaves of Turnsole bruised and applied to Bones out of joint, are very good for them, *&c.*

Simples that are good to cleanse the Blood.

Avens, Water-Cresses, or Brook-lime, Burrage or Bugloss, Butchers-broom or Knee-holly, *Carduus Benedictus*, the red Dock, which is commonly called Blood-wort, Fennel-seeds, Fumitory, Hops, Wall-Rue, or ordinary white Maiden-hair, Mustard-seed, the Root of the bastard Rhubarb, Sage, Succory, Scurvey-Grass, Smallage, Wood-sorrel, Star-Thistle, Ladies Thistle, the yellow Wall-Flower, *&c.*

Simples that are good in general to expel the dead Foal.

All-heal, the Herb Alkanet applied to her Shape draweth it forth; Angelica, Brook-lime, or Water-Pimpernel, Centaury or sweet Chervil given her in Wine is very good. The Powder of the Root of Cuckowpoint, or the Juice of it given in Wine, bringeth it away; Flax-weed or Toad-Flax is good; Flower-de-luce made up in a Pessary with Honey, and put up into her Body, bringeth it forth; Germander, Hore-hound, Filapendula or Drop-wort is good also given her; so is the Root of Master-wort; Ground pine is excellent good to expel it. The Decoction of the Leaves and Branches of Sage given is also good, so is the Juice of the yellow Wall-Flower, *&c.*

Simples good in general to provoke Lust in Horses.

The Decoction of *Asparagus* given him for some time, the Seed of the Ash-tree powdred with Nutmegs is a great Increaser of it; Beans, Chest-Nuts, Cream of Cich-pease, or Cicers boiled in Water and given. The Seeds of both the sorts of Clary, the Pith of the Stalk of the Burdock, before the Bur cometh forth; The weight of one Ounce of Cloves given in Milk provoketh it exceedingly; Bread made

of Potatoes and Bean-Flower, and given him, is a great Provoker of it; The Roots of Chervil, the Roots of Fennegiant, Spear-Mint, Muſtard-Seed, Nettle-Seed; The Seed of the wild Rocket increaſeth it exceedingly; Raiſins of the Sun, ſweet Almonds, Pine-Nuts, the Pizzle of a Bull or Hart, Boars Stones dried and powdred, and given him amongſt his Provender, *&c.*

Simples good in general to increaſe Milk in Mares.

The Seed or Leaves of Burrage or Bugloſs, Cicers boiled in Milk, Cocks Head, the Leaves or Seed of Fennel, the Seed of wild Rocket, Sow-Thiſtles, the Seed of Vipers, Bugloſs given him in Ale, Dandelion, *&c.*

Things good in general to waſh all manner of Sores and Ulcers.

Alehoof bruiſed with White-wine and Allum, is very good to waſh all ſorts of them, Flixweed made into a Salve doth quickly heal them, how foul or malignant ſoever they be; the diſtilled Water of the Herb worketh the ſame effect, but it is ſomewhat weaker. The Juice of Fox-Gloves doth cleanſe, dry, and heal them. The Juice of the Leaves or Roots of ſtinking Gladwin, by anointing any Scab or Sore in the Skin, will take them away. The Juice of Purſlain is good to allay the Heat in Sores and Hurts: Meadow-ſweet, Rag-wort, the Juice of the green Herb of Tobacco, wild Tanſy boiled with Vinegar and Honey, is good to heal moiſt, corrupt, and running Sores, *&c.*

Simples that are good in general for all manner of Swellings or Riſing in the Skin, viz. *hard Knobs and Kernels, alſo ſwelled Legs, Swellings under the Caul, hard or ſoft, and to ripen them.*

Archangel ſtamp'd with ſome Salt and Vinegar, and applied, diſſolveth them; Bdellium (a kind of Gum) doth ripen them; the Leaves of the Beech-Tree are good to diſcuſs hot Swellings; Barley-meal and Flea-wort boiled in Water and made into a Poultice with Honey and Oil of Lilies cureth Swellings under the Throat; Brine diſſolveth hard Swellings, Chick-weed boiled in Water very ſoft, adding to it Hog's-greaſe, with the powder of Fenugreek and Linſeed, and a few Roots of Marſh-mallows ſtamp'd in the form of a Cataplaſm or Poultice, and applied, taketh away the Swelling of the Legs, or any other part. Brook lime and Water-Pimpernel uſed in the like manner is alſo very good; the Decoction of Coleworts taketh away the Pain and

and allayeth the Swellings in swollen Legs, wherein any gross or watry Humours are fallen, the place being bathed with it warm. Oil of Camomile is good to dissolve hard and cold Swellings, Cummin put into a Poultice is also good for them; so is Chervile bruised and applied: Cinquefoil boiled in Vinegar helpeth all hard Swellings, so does Clary and Clivers boiled in Hog's-grease do the like; Cock's-head bruised when they are green, and laid as a Plaster, disperseth Knots and Kernels in the Flesh; the Juice of Colts-foot is good for all hot Swellings and Inflammations. Endive applied assuageth all Swellings and Tumours coming of a hot cause; an Oil made of the broad Flag Flower-de luce, mollifieth all manner of Tumours and Swellings in any part of the Body: as also of the Matrice, the Roots of stinking Gladwin boiled in Vinegar or the Grounds of Beer, and laid upon them, consumeth them. The Decoction of the Leaves of the Gooseberry-bush cooleth them; Frankincense mingled with Honey, and applied, dissolveth hard Swellings; the fresh Herb of Groundsel made into a Poultice, taketh away the Heat and Pains of them, and used with Salt dissolveth Knots and Kernels; Henbane assuageth all manner of Swellings in the Cods or elsewhere, if they be boiled in Wine, or the Grounds of Beer, and applied either of themselves, or by Fomentation warm. True-lo veor One-berry hath the same Virtues. Hore-hound boiled in Hog's-grease is also good for any Swelling in any part of the Body; St. *John's*-wort dissolveth Swellings, Knotgrass cooleth all manner of hot Inflammations breaking out by heat; Hedge-Mustard is good for Swellings in the Stones; the Decoction of Rag-weed, or Pellitory of the Wall, is good; Rye-bread, or the Leaves thereof, ripeneth and breaketh Imposthumes and other Swellings, so doth Wood-Sage, the Leaves of Southern-wood boiled till they be soft, and stamped with Barley-Meal, and Barrow's-grease applied to the place grieved is good for all cold Tumours. The Decoction of the Root of Scabious applied, doth wonderfully help all sorts of hard or cold Swellings in any part of the Body, *&c.*

Simples good in general to cause Sweat, given inwardly or applied outwardly.

Mountain Calamint given inwardly, or applied outwardly, being boiled in Sallet-Oil, and the Body anointed with it, the Juice of Scabious given him with Treacle; Camomile used

in

in Baths provoketh it, opening the Pores, and mitigateth the griping Pains in the Guts and Bowels; the Juice of Bugloss mixed with Brandy, and the Body rubbed therewith, is good; Master-wort or Herb-Gerrard is also good; Fennel-Giant mixed with Sallet-Oil, and the Body anointed with it. An Oil made of *Asarabaca*, with *Labdanum*, by setting it in the Sun, and the Back anointed with it, is good, Wood-sage, *&c.*

Simples, and other things that are good to expel the Heat in Beasts, which is the same as the After-Birth is in Women.

Thyme, Winter-succory, Pennyroyal boiled in White-Wine and given, common Hore-hound boiled also in the same Wine and given, Dittany given or put up in a Pessary, driveth forth the dead Foal, and expelleth the Secundine; Angelica driveth it forth also, so doth Parsley-seed, Alexanders, Hops, Fennel, Savin and Bay-berries, the Powder of the inside of the wrinkled Skin of the Gizzard of a Hen that lays, dried and given in White-Wine, is excellent, *&c.*

Simples good in general to provoke or expel Wind.

Alexander or House-parsley, Angelica-seeds, Bay-berries, the Seeds of the wild Carrots, Bishops-weed dissolveth it; Caraway-seeds, Cardamum-seeds, sweet Chervil, Cummin taken inwardly, or given in Glisters, is good for the gnawing of the Guts and Belly; Dill-seeds, the Herb Devils-bit boiled in Wine, Fennel-seeds, Filapendula or Drop-wort, Hemp-seed, the Berries of Holly, Juniper-Berries, the Root of Lovage, Lavender, Nep or Cat-mint, Nutmegs, wild Parsnips, or the Seeds or Roots of common Parsley, dissolve it both in the Stomach and Bowels; China-Roots, Winter and Summer-Savory, Pennyroyal, given in Sack; Burnet, Saxifrage, Stone-parsley, the Seed of Smallage, Thyme or Mother of Thyme, Valerian, *&c.*

Simples that are good in general for Cattel that are bewitched.

Two Drams of the Berries or Seed of True-love, or one Berry beaten to powder, and given him for twenty Days together, restoreth him: Mistletoe growing upon Peartrees and hung about the Neck is very good; *Amara Dulcis*, gathered in its Influency, is also good for it, used as before; Piony is good. The Branches of the Holly-tree are reported

to defend, not only from Witchcraft, but Lightning alſo, *&c.*

Simples that are Cordials and Strengthners of Nature.

Gentian ſtrengthens the Stomach exceedingly, and keepeth the Heart from fainting; Clove Gilly-Flowers are great Strengthners both of the Brain and Heart, and are very good to put into Cordials for ſick and weak Horſes; St. *Johns*-wort, Juniper-berries ſtrengthen the Brain, and all the Limbs of the Body; Marigolds ſtrengthens the Heart, ſo doth Saffron and Muſtard-ſeed; give not above two Drams of Saffron at a time when you uſe it: Mother of Thyme is a great Strengthner of it; Red Roſes do not only ſtrengthen the Heart, but Stomach and Liver, and the retentive Faculty, and mitigate the Pains that ariſe from Heat; Bugloſs, Balm, Motherwort, Mace, Cinnamon, Cloves, Anniſeeds, Canary, *&c.*

Simples that are good in general, either taken inwardly, or applied outwardly for the Biting or Stinging of any venomous Beaſt, viz. *Adders, Vipers, Spiders, Waſps, Bees, and Hornets, &c.*

The Decoction of Agrimony given him, or the Juice of Alexander or Horſe-parſley, Ariſtolochia rotunda or Birthwort, Aſarabaca, Balm, Woodbetony, thePowder of the dried Leaves of the Bluebottle given in Plantain-Water, Comfrey, Buckſhorn, Plantain given him, with ſome of the Leaves laid to the hurt Place, is good againſt biting of Adders; the Juice of the Root of the Burdock, given him inwardly, and applied outwardly to the place bruiſed, with Salt, is alſo very good for them to eaſe the Pain thereof; Water-Caltrops, Centaury, Campions, Flower-de-luce boiled in Vinegar and given is good, ſo is the Decoction of the Root of common Elder, the Seed of St. *John's*-wort given inwardly, and applied outwardly, is good for them; ſo is Sage, Rocket, Pennyroyal, Pimpernel, Ground-pine, Marjoram, Summer-Savory taketh away the Stinging of Bees or Waſps; the Root of Spignel, the green Herb of Tobacco applied to the place bruiſed; the Leaves of the Tamariſk Tree boiled in Wine and given him is good, ſo is Valerian and Viper's Bugloſs: the Flower of Barley or Wheat-Meal boiled in Vinegar, and applied to the place grieved, is very good to draw forth the Venom, the Juice of Mead or Trefoil is alſo good for them, *&c.*

A

A very large Account in general, of what Simples are good for all sorts of Sores or Ulcers, whether inward or outward, of what nature soever.

Agrimony, Ale-hoof boiled with a little Honey and Vi degrease, doth wonderfully cleanse them, and stayeth th spreading and eating of the Cankers in them; the Juice o the Water of Angelica is very good to wash them with, fo Anemony or Wind-Flower and Archangel: Arsmart is goo for putrid Ulcers, Alloes beaten to powder and strewed u on them is also good; so is the Juice of Broom and Wat betony, the Water or Juice of Bistort, or Snakeweed, o of the Leaves, Buds or Branches of the Bramble, is very goo to wash them with; the Juice of the Leaves of the Blu bottle helpeth all Ulcers or Sores in the Mouth; Bugl Burnet, wild Champions given inwardly, or applied out wardly, is very good; so is the Juice of Celandine and Ce taury; the red Berries of the Winter-Cherries given in wardly, cleanse the inward Impostbumes and Ulcers o the Reins and Bladder, and are also good for bloody an foul Urine; the Juice of the bruised Leaves of Chickweed Cinquefoil or Comfrey, is good to wash them with; Cucko point, the Root of it in powder, or the Herb boiled i Sheep's or Cow's Milk, healeth the inward Ulcers of th Bowels; the distilled Water of Cucumbers given inwardly is very good for Ulcers in the Bladder; the Powder o the Root of both kinds of Fern strewed upon them, drieth up the Moisture in them, and healeth them speedily; it doth the Powder of Sow-Fennel, or Fig-wort, the Juice o the Water of Flix-weed injected into them, doth cleanse and heal them up, Elecampane-Root beaten to powder and mixed with Honey is also very good: Dill burnt and laid upon moist Sores cureth them; Frankincense is good to fill up hollow Ulcers, Hemlock is good for all creeping Ulcers and Pustles that arise from hot and sharp Humours by cooling and repelling the Heat. Take this Receipt for the Cure of all manner of Ulcers:

Take the green Leaves of the yellow Henbane, three Pounds and a half of them, stamped in a Mortar, and boil it in a Quart of Sallet-Oil, in a Brass Pan, gently upon the Fire, keeping it stirring till the Herbs are black, and will not boil nor bubble any more: then you shall have a most excellent green Ointment, which being strained from the Dross, put it to the Fire again, and add to it half a Pound

Pound of Bees-Wax, four Ounces of Rosin, and two Ounces of common Turpentine; melt them together, and keep them for your Use. This will cure any inveterate Ulcer, Botch, Burning, green Wound, and all Cuts or Hurts in the Head.

The fresh Leaves of Ivy boiled in White-Wine doth wonderfully help to cleanse them; Juniper-Berries drieth up hollow Ulcers, and filleth them up with Flesh; Knot-Grass, or the Powder of the Herb or Seed, cools all Gangreens, Fistula's, and foul and filthy Ulcers: Nape-weed is a great Drier up of Moisture in them; Madder helpeth them in the Mouth, if unto the Decoction you put a little Allum and Honey of Roses; Herb Mouse-Ear is very excellent to stay the Malignity and Spreading of them; Pellitory of the Wall, Pennyroyal bruised and put to Vinegar, cleanseth them; the Juice of Plantain is good for old Ulcers that are to be healed; the Juice of Purslain is good for Inflammations in the privy Parts; the Powder of Savin mixed with Honey cleanseth them, but hindreth them from healing; the Juice of Rag-wort is very good also, *&c.*

Burning Compositions.

The gentlest is *Unguentum Apostolorum*, next to it is Verjuice and Hog's-Grease beaten together; next to this is Precipitate and Turpentine mixt together; next to it is Arsnick allayed with any Oil or healing Salve; next to it is Mercury sublimate, likewise allayed with some cooling Salve; and the worst is Lime and Soap, or Lime and strong Lye beaten together, for they will corrode and mortify the soundest part whatsoever.

To make Hair smooth, sleek and soft.

To do this, keep him warm at the Heart, for the least inward Cold will make the Hair stare; then make him sweat oft, for that will raise up the Dust and Sweat, which makes his Coat foul. When he is in his greatest Sweat, with an old Sword-Blade scrape off all the white Foam, Sweat and Filth that shall be raised up, and that will lay his Coat even and smooth. And when you let him blood, rub him all over with his own Blood, and so let it remain two or three Days; and then curry and dress him well, and this will make his Coat shine like Glass.

How to caſt and overthrow a Horſe.

When you intend to caſt your Horſe, bring him to ſome even, ſmooth and ſoft place, or in the Barn upon ſome ſoft Straw, then take a long Rope and double it, and cast a Knot a Yard from the Bought; then put the Bought about his Neck, and the double Rope betwixt his Fore-Legs, and about his hinder Paſterns, and underneath his Fet-locks; then put the ends of the Rope underneath the Bought of his Neck, and draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him; then make the ends faſt and hold down his Head, unto which you muſt be ſure to have always good ſtore of Straw. Now if you would at any time brand your Horſe on the Buttock, or do any thing about his Hinder-legs that he may not ſtrike, take up his contrary Fore-leg; and when you do you brand your Horſe, ſee that the Iron be not hot, and that the Hair be both ſeared away, and the Flesh ſcorched in every place before you let him go, and ſo you ſhall be ſure to loſe no Labour.

To make an unruly Horſe ſtand ſtill to be trimmed, that will not be trimmed with Barnacles.

Take off one of his Stirrop Leathers, and put it into his Mouth, and throw over his Head as you do a Bridle, and girt up his Chaps very hard, and he will ſtand quietly to be trimmed.

Another, to make an unruly Horſe ſtand ſtill to be ſhod.

The common way is to put a pair of Barnacles upon his Noſe, and tye them very hard; but if you find that will not do, then at the ſame time put ſome round Stones into his Ears, and tye them up hard that they fall not out.

How to make a ſtubborn Horſe to go.

Tye a ſmall Cord or Line about his Stones pretty hard, and bring it between his Fore-legs, and let it be of that Length that you may reach the other end of it with your Hand when you are upon his Back, and when you find that he will not go forward, jerk him with your Line, which is the only means I know of to break him of his ſtubborn Tricks. If he be a Gelding, then ſtrike him with a long Rod that is burnt at one end; and this will help.

To make a Horſe follow his Maſter, and find him out and challenge him amongſt ever ſo many People.

Take a Pound of Oat-Meal, and put to it a quarter of a Pound of Honey, and half a pound of Lunarce, and make a Cake thereof, and put it into your Boſom next to your naked Skin, then run or labour your ſelf till you ſweat; then rub all your Sweat upon your Cake; then keep him faſting a day and a night, and give it him to eat; and when he hath eaten it, turn him looſe; and he ſhall not only follow you, but alſo hunt and ſeek you out when he hath loſt you, or doth miſs you: and tho you be environed with ever ſo many, yet he will find you out and know you: and when he cometh to you, ſpit into his Mouth, and anoint his Tongue with your Spittle, and thus doing he will never forſake you.

How to make a black Star, or white Hair black.

If you deſire to make on a white Horſe a black Star, you ſhall then take a Scruple of Ink, and four Scruples of the Wood of Oliander beaten to powder: incorporate this in as much Sheep's Suet as will ſuffice, and anoint the place therewith, and it will make any white Hair black: or take the Decoction of Fern-Roots and Sage, ſod in Lye, and waſh the place therewith, and it will breed black Hair, but you muſt waſh the place very oft therewith. Or take the Ruſt of Iron, Galls and Vitriol, and ſtamp them with Oil; or elſe take Souter-Ink, Galls and Ruſt, and beat them well together, and anoint the place well therewith, and it will turn any white Hair to be black.

Certain Principles touching Simples.

As touching Simples, ſome are only to eaſe Pain, as Linſeed, Camomile, ſoft Greaſe, Suet of all ſorts, or any other Oil that is hot in the firſt degree; and whenſoever any of theſe Simples are compounded with their like, the Medicine is called *Anodyna* or *Lynos*.

There are other Simples which are aſtoniſhing, benumbing or bringing Sleep; as Opium, Mandrake, Poppey, Hemlock, and ſuch like, which are groſs and cold in the fourth degree: and whenſoever any of theſe Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is amongſt Leaches called *Narcotica*.

The

The third ſort of Simples are ſuch as incarnate, or bre
Fleſh, as Saffron, Frankincenſe, Flower, Yolks of Eggs, a
ſuch like, which are hot in the ſecond degree; and whe
ſoever any of theſe Simples are compounded with their lik
then the Medicine is called *Sarcotica.*

The fourth ſort of Simples are corroding, fretting an
burning, as Arſnick, Reſigallo, Mercury, Lime, and ſuc
like, which are hot in the fourth degree; and whenſoeve
they are applied ſimple or compound, then the Medicine i
called *Corroſive.*

The fifth ſort of Simples are thoſe which be called Moll
fying, and are four in Number; that is, green Mallow
white Mallows, Violets, and Brank-Urſin.

The laſt ſort of Simples are thoſe which are called Co
dials, and are three in Number, *viz.* Violets and Bugloſs
both kinds.

And thus much touching the Nature, Uſe, Property an
Operation of Simples.

The End of the Firſt Part.

THE SECOND PART OF THE Experienc'd Farrier:

SHEWING

I. The Nature, Temperature, and Virtue of moſt Simples, for the Cure of all inward and outward Diſeaſes. Never yet printed in this nature before.

II. You have things in general, ſet down one after another, for the Cure of all Diſeaſes, which you may uſe as your Diſcretion ſerves.

III. You have ſeverally particular Receipts for the Cure of all Diſeaſes.

IV. You have the Gathering, Drying, and Preſerving of Simples and their Juices.

V. You have the Way of making and keeping of all neceſſary Compounds.

VI. You have hot Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.

VII. You have cold Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.

VIII. You have the Properties of Purging Medicaments.

IX. You have the Properties of altering Medicaments.

X. You have a Table of all the Diſeaſes of a Horſe, either inwardly or outwardly, ſet down alphabetically, where they do grow in any part of a Horſe's Body, and how you may know them, and what was the Cauſe that bred them.

XI. And laſtly, you have in the Margin of theſe ſaid Diſeaſes, the Page quoted where to find the proper Cure for every of theſe Diſeaſes.

LONDON, Printed in the Year M.DCC.XX.

THE *Experienc'd Farrier.*

PART II.

Purging Simples.

RHUBARB, Caſſia, Tamarinds, Myrobalans, Aloes, Sene or Sena, Mechoacan-Root, Agarick, Polypody, Carthamus, Baſtard or *Spaniſh* Saffron, Dwarf-Elder, Enſula or Devil's-Milk, Hermodactils, Jalap, Turbith, Scammony, Hellebore or Bear's-foot, Colloquintida, Spurge-Olive, Spurge-Flax, Lawrel, Soldanella, Turn-ſole, *&c.*

Binding Simples.

[Look for them in the Table, at the latter end of the Book.]

Foreign Simples that are Heating.

Ginger, Zedoary or Set-wall, Galangal, Acorus or Waterflag, Calamus Aromaticus or the Aromatical Reed, Coſtus, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Mace, Pepper, Cloves, Cardamums, Cubebs, Kermes, Sanders, Saſſafras, China-Root, Guaiacum or Lignum Vitæ, Sarſaparilla, Aloes-Wood, *&c.*

Home-bred Heating Simples.

Pellitory of *Spain*, Muſtard common, and Treacle-Mu
tard, Rocket, Nettles, Flower-de-luce or Orrice, Elec
pane, Cyprus, Angelica, Lovage, Hartwort, Gentian, T
mentil, Piony, Madder, Reſt-harrow, Sea-holly, comm
Graſs, Liquorice, Sow-bread, Radiſh-Roots, Anemony o
Wind-Flower, Wall-flowers, Thyme, Marjoram, P
royal, Polium, Baſil, Origanum, Mint, Calamint, Wo
wood, Mugwort, Balm, Horehound, Betony, Speedwe
Dittany, Sage, Clary, *French* Lavender, Scordium, R
Gromwel, Saxifrage, Ariſtolochia or Birthwort, Aſarabac
Burnet, Germander, Groundpine, Feverfew, St. John's-wo
Hyſſop, Crane's-bill, Doronicum or Leopard's-bane, C
duus Benedictus, Mother-wort, black Cameleon Thiſtle,
lerian, Fumitory, Eyebright, Centaury, Rhaphonticum,
riander, Wood-bine, Broom, Aſhen-Keys, Miſletoe of
Oak, Poplar, Cummin-ſeeds, *&c.*

Cooling Simples.

Mandrake, Nightſhade, Winter-Cherries, Henbane, P
py, Houſleek, Purſlain, Dog's-Tongue, Plantain, K
graſs, Comfrey, Sorrel, Agrimony, ſour Dock, Pri
roſe, Cabbage or Garden Coleworts, Flea-bane, Co
foot, Hops, Biſtort, Strawberry-buſh, Cinquefoil, Goo
graſs or Clivers, Scabious, Catsfoot, Melilot, Fenugre
red Cicers, Lupins, Sumack, Myrtle, Yarrow, Tamari

Before you enter upon the Uſe of theſe Simples, (unl
you know them very well) look into the Table of Simp
to ſee the Nature of them, for ſome of them are very p
nicious, unleſs corrected by Art.

The Nature, Temperature, and Vertue of moſt Simples, ſet down Alphabetically. As alſo ſome Drugs, Liquors, Seeds, Roſins, and Juices, &c.

A.

Agaricum, or *Agarick*, is a kind of Muſhroom or Toad-ſtool. It is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree. It expelleth Humours, purgeth all Phlegm and Choler, and is good for the Liver and Kidneys: Correct it with the Powder of Liquorice.

Agripa is an Ointment that is good againſt all Tumours.

Allum, commonly call'd *Roch-Allum*, is hot and dry in the third degree: it is a Dryer up of Humours, and is good for ſore Mouths, and old Cankers and Fiſtulaes, and killeth the Worms, taken inwardly.

Aloes is hot, and that in the firſt and ſecond degree, but dry in the third; it is extreme bitter, yet without biting: it is the moſt natural Purger of Man and Beaſt that is, for it ſtrengthens the Heart, and revives the Spirits; it is alſo of an emplaſtick and clammy Quality, and ſometimes binding, being externally apply'd.

Sweet Almonds, when they be dry, be moderately hot; but the bitter ones are hot and dry in the ſecond degree: there is in both of them a certain fat and oily Subſtance, which is drawn out of them by preſſing of them. They Provoke Urine, and are veey good for the Lungs and Liver.

Ammoniacum is hot in the third degree, and dry in the ſecond; it looſeneth and diſſolveth Humours.

Anniſeeds are hot and dry in the third degree, ſaith *Galen*; but others, that they are hot in the ſecond degree, and much leſs then dry in the ſecond degree: they are good to expel Wind, provoke Urine, ſtir up Luſt, and are great Cleanſers of the Breaſt from phlegmatick Humours.

Ariſtolochia, which we call *Birthwort* or *Harts-wort*, is hot and cleanſeth; but if it be *Rotunda*, then it is ſo much

the ſtronger, being hot and dry in the fourth degree, and draweth and purgeth thin Water and Phlegm, and is good to open the Lungs, and is good againſt all manner of Poiſon whatſoever, or the biting of any venomous Beaſt.

Armoniack both draweth, cooleth, and ſofteneth.

Arſenick, of both kinds, is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt degree: it bindeth and eateth away proud and naughty Fleſh, and is a very ſtrong Corroſive.

Aſſafœtida, or *Devil's-Bit*, is a ſtinking Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the fourth degree: it cleanſeth evil Humours, it is good for the Yellows and Staggers in Horſe, a little piece of it being diſſolved in Brandy, and put into his Ears.

Aſphaltum is a Pitch that is mix'd with Bitumen; it is hot and dry, and comforteth any Swelling.

Aſponteo is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond; it cleanſeth and draweth, and is good to comfort the Stomach.

Aſhes are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanſe mightily.

Aſarabacca is hot and dry, with a purging Quality, yet not without a certain kind of binding; the Roots are hot and dry more than the Leaves, they provoke Urine.

The black *Aller-Tree*, the inner Bark of it is of a purging and drying Quality; it purgeth thick phlegmatick Humours, and alſo cholerick, downwards and by vomiting, which muſt be uſed with Care.

Aller or *Alder-Tree*, the Leaves and Bark of it are cold and dry, and aſtringent, and are uſed againſt hot Swellings and Inflammations, eſpecially of the Almonds and Kernels of the Throats. The Bark of it is uſed amongſt poor Country Dyers, to dye Cloth, Caps, Hoſe, and ſuch like.

The *Aſh-Tree*, the Leaves and Bark of it are dry and moderately hot, the Seeds are hot and dry in the ſecond degree, they ſtop the Belly, being boiled in Vinegar and Water: the Seeds provoke Urine, and ſtir up bodily Luſt.

Aſpodills are hot and dry in the third degree.

Anemones, all the kinds of them (which are Wind-Flowers) are ſharp, biting the Tongue, and are of a binding Faculty.

Adders-Tongue is dry in the third degree, and is good for Wounds in the Breaſt and Bowels, and for Ulcers and Inflammations.

Arſmart, or *Water-Pepper*, is hot and dry, yet not ſo hot as Pepper, is good for Ulcers, cold Swellings, Bruiſes, and to lay under the Saddle, to make tired Horſes go.

All

Allheal, all the kinds of them are dry, with little or no Heat, and are endued with a binding Quality; they are good for green Wounds, being bruiſed and boiled in an Ointment. It is good for the Worms, Gout, Cramp and Convulſions of the Sinews, provokes Urine, and is good for cold Griefs of the Head, Biting of mad Dogs, Lethargy, Cholick, Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, Stone, and expelleth the dead Birth.

Archangel or *dead Nettles* are hotter and dryer than Nettles, approaching to the Temperature of Horehound; and are good for the bleeding at the Noſe, Ulcers, old Sores, Bruiſes and Burnings, and to diſſolve Tumours.

Alkanet, the Root of it is cold and dry, and bindeth, and becauſe it is bitter, it cleanſeth away cholerick Humours. The Leaves are not ſo forcible, yet they do bind and dry, and are good for the Stone, Yellows, Leproſy, venomous Beaſts, Fluxes, and Bruiſes by Falls, Worms.

Angelica is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth and attenuateth, digeſteth and procureth Sweat, and is good againſt Poiſon, Plague, Cold, Wind, Cough of the Lungs, Strangury, Short-windedneſs, Stoppings of the Liver and Spleen, Biting of mad Dogs, Ulcers, and old Pains.

Alexander or *Wild Parſley*, the Seeds and Roots are leſs hot and dry than the Garden Parſley; they cleanſe and make thin, being hot and dry in the third degree. They are good to conſume Wind, provoke Urine, and are good for the Strangury, and open the Obſtructions of the Liver.

Amara Dulcis, which is *Woody Nightſhade*, the Fruit and Leaves of it are in Temperature hot and dry, and cleanſing and waſting away; it is good to remove Witchcraft, ty'd about the Necks of Cattel, and is good to remove the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, Difficulty of breathing, Bruiſes by Falls, congealed Blood, Dropſy, Yellows.

Water-Agrimony is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, it is good to ſcour and open, it maketh thin thick and groſs Humours, and expels and drives them forth by Urine, and therefore is good for the Dropſy; it opens Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, kills Worms, Itch, Scabs, Flies and Waſps: it is good to ſtrengthen the Lungs, and is good for a Cough and broken Wind in Cattel.

Alehoof or *Ground-Ivy* is hot and dry, and becauſe it is bitter it ſcoureth and removeth Stoppings out of the Entrails: it is good for inward Wounds, Pains and Gripings by Wind, Choler, Spleen, Plague, Poiſon, old Pains in

the Joints, ſore Mouth and Throat, Ulcers in the Privities, Itch, Scabs, Web in the Eyes, Redneſs, and Waterineſs in them, and Deafneſs.

Amaranthus, which is call'd *Flower Gentle*, is good for the running of the Reins and inward Bleeding.

Garden Arrach, or *Orrach*, is moiſt in the ſecond degree, and cold in the firſt; it is a Looſener of the Belly, and fortifieth the expulſive Faculty, and is good for Swellings of the Throat, being bruiſed and laid to it; and being taken inwardly, is good for the Yellows.

Wild Arrach, and ſtinking by Smell, is good given inwardly for the Farcin, and is good for any Diſeaſe of the Womb.

Avens, call'd *Coleworts* or *Herb-Bennet*, hath a drying and binding Faculty, with a certain ſalt Quality, whereby they cleanſe; the Decoction of them looſeneth the Belly, and is good for the Diſeaſes of the Cheſt and Breaſt: it is good for inward Wounds, the Heart, a cold Brain, Obſtructions, Cholick, Fluxes, Ruptures, Plague, Poiſon.

Agarick cometh of the *Larch-tree*, which is almoſt like a Pine-tree, and the Leaves and Bark are in Temperature like it, but not ſo ſtrong. It purgeth away groſs and phlegmatick Humours; it troubleth the Stomach, therefore Ginger is to be mix'd with it. It is hot in the firſt degree, and dry in the ſecond: it is good againſt Short-windedneſs, Cough of the Lungs, Conſumption, comforteth the Stomach, and is good againſt Worms.

Agnus Caſtus, the Leaves and Roots of it are hot and dry in the third degree, they are of very thin parts, and waſte and conſume Wind.

B.

BALM is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, and it mundifieth and cleanſeth, it chears up the Heart, openeth Obſtructions of the Brain, and is a Remedy againſt the ſtinging or biting of any venomous Beaſt, mad Dogs, the Bloody-Flux, Surfeit, Short-windedneſs.

The *Barberry-Buſh*, the Leaves and Berries are cold and dry in the ſecond degree, and as *Galen* affirmeth, are of thin parts, and have a certain cutting Quality; they are good to ſtop Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes. The inner Rind of the Tree is good to purge the Body of cholerick Humours, and is good for Agues, Scabs, Itch, Tetters, Yellows, Boils, Scalding, and the Farcin.

Garden

Garden-Bazil is hot in the second degree, but it hath adjoined with it a superfluous Moisture, and therefore not very good to be taken inwardly; but being apply'd outwardly to the stinging of any venomous Beast, Wasps or Hornets, it taketh away the Venom.

Wild Bazil, the Seeds are hot and dry.

Bazil Valerian is dry in the second degree.

Bayberries are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of Rheums, Shortness of Wind, especially for any Disease of the Lungs; they are good against Poison, Consumptions, Phlegm, helpeth Tiredness, Cramps, Stone, stopping of the Liver, the Yellows and Dropsy, and provoke Urine.

Bdellium is a Gum that is brought out of *Arabia* and the Holy Land, and is hot and dry; it softeneth and draweth away Moisture, and is good for all manner of hard Swellings whatsoever; it is most excellent for Mixture with a Poultice, against Hardness and Knots in the Sinews, and being drunk, breaks the Stone, and expels Urine.

Beans are moderately cold and dry, and are very windy.

Ladies Bedstraw is good for the Stone, and stays inward and outward Bleeding.

White Beets are in Moisture and Heat temperate, and are Looseners of the Belly, and are of a cleansing Quality, and provoke Urine.

Red Beets are of a binding Quality, and therefore good to stop the Bloody-Flux.

Water-Betony is hot and dry, and is good for Ulcers and Bruises.

Wild Running Betony, smelling like Marjoram, is hot and dry in the third degree: it bindeth Wounds and conglutinateth, and is good for Diseases of the Liver, for the Worms, old Sores and Wounds, and is commonly call'd Centaury.

Beech-Tree, the Leaves of it do cool, and the Kernels of the Nut are somewhat moist: the Leaves are good for hot Swellings, and the Water that is found in the hollow places of it, will cure Man or Beast of any Scurf, Scab, or running Tetters, anointed therewith.

Blites are of a cold moist Temperature, and are good to stay Fluxes of Blood.

Bilberries, call'd by some *Whorts* and *Whortle-berries*, are cold, even in the latter end of the second degree, and dry also, and are of a binding Quality: there are two sorts of them, a black and a red; the black are good for hot

Agues,

Agues, and to cool the Heat of the Liver and Stomach, and do bind the Belly; the red are more binding, and ſtay any Fluxes of Blood whatſoever, uſed outwardly or taken inwardly.

Byfoil or *Tway-blade* is often uſed for Wounds both green and old, and to conglutinate and knit Ruptures.

Bitumen is the Fatneſs of the Earth ſwimming above the Water, which caſt upon the ſhore condenſates and becomes hard, and reſembles dry Pitch: it diſcuſſes, mollifies, glutinates and defends from Inflammation; it takes away groſs Humours in all parts of the Body, and cures the Weakneſs of the Sinews, Palſy, and Diſeaſes of the Arteries from a cold Cauſe.

Birch-tree, the Juice of the Leaves is good to waſh a ſore Mouth or Throat, and is good to break the Stone in the Kidneys or Bladder.

Birds-foot, all the kinds of them are of a drying Quality, and therefore very good to be uſed in Wound-drinks, and to be apply'd outwardly for the ſame purpoſe; but the paler-flower'd Birds-foot is good to break the Stone in the Back and Kidneys, and helpeth the Rupture, taken inwardly.

Biſhops-weed is hot and dry in the third degree, of a bitter taſte, and ſomething ſharp withal; it provokes Luſt, cauſeth Urine, is good for the Wind, and for the biting of venomous Beaſts.

Biſtort or *Snakeweed* is cold and dry in the third degree, the Leaves and Roots are excellent good to reſiſt Poiſon or Plague, and are good for all manner of Fluxes of Blood whatſoever, and ſtay a Lask; are good for the Yellows, Ruptures or Burſtneſs, and ſtaling of Blood.

One-Blade is a very cordial Herb, and will cauſe Sweat, and is ſovereign againſt the Plague, by expelling the Poiſon; and is an excellent Wound-Herb for green and old Wounds and Sinews cut.

The *Bramble* or *Black-Buſh*, the Flowers and Leaves of the unripe Fruit do very much bind and dry, and are good for all kind of Fluxes: the Buds, Leaves, and Branches of it, while they are green, are of good uſe in Ulcers and putrid Sores; the Root is good againſt the Stone in the Reins or Kidneys; the Leaves of them are good for ſore Mouths and Throats, or Quinſey; the Powder of the dry'd Leaves ſtrew'd on Cankers does wonderfully heal them.

Burr-

Burrage and *Bugloſs* is in a mean betwixt hot and cold; the Leaves and Roots are good againſt peſtilential Fevers, Poiſon of venomous Beaſts, Yellows, Itch, Tettars, Worms, Weakneſs, Corruption, Cough, ſore Mouth or Throat.

Bluebottle is naturally cold, dry and binding; the Powder of the dried Leaves is good taken inwardly for broken Veins, and given with Plantain-Water expelleth Poiſon or the Plague; the Juice of it is good to ſodder green Wounds together, and is good to heal Sores in the Mouth; and the Juice of the Leaves dropped into the Eyes, taketh away the Inflammation of them.

Brank-urſin, *Bears-breech* and *Acanthus*, is betwixt hot and cold, being ſomewhat moiſt, with a mollifying and digeſting Quality, as are thoſe of the Mallow, and are good to put in Gliſters to looſen the Belly; the Decoction taken inwardly is good for the Bloody-Flux and Burſtneſs; and is good for Hectick Fevers; or applied made up in a Poultice, unites broken Bones, and ſtrengthens the Joints that have been put out, and is an excellent Remedy for Burnings by Fire.

White Briony is hot and dry in all parts in the third degree, both the white and the black are furious Martial Plants, and purge the Belly with great Violence, and therefore you are to correct it; and then it is very good for all manner of Griefs in the Head, as alſo for the Joints and Sinews, Cramps and Convulſions, Dropſy, provoketh Urine, and is good for the Stone.

Brooklime or *Water-Pimpernel* is a hot and biting martial Plant and is of the ſame nature as Water-Creſſes, and is good to cleanſe the Blood, provokes Urine and breaks the Stone.

Butchers-broom is hot in the ſecond and dry in the firſt, and is of a cleanſing nature; it openeth Obſtructions, provoketh Urine, expelleth Gravel and Stone, and is good for the Strangury, Yellows and Pain in the Head.

Broom and *Broom-rape*, the Twigs, Flowers and Seed of it are hot and dry in the ſecond degree, they are of a thin Eſſence, and are of force to cleanſe and open, and eſpecially the Seed which is drier, and not ſo full of ſuperfluous Moiſture; it is good for the Dropſy, Cleanſer of the Reins, Kidneys, and Bladder from the Gravel and Stone.

Bucks-horn Plantain is of a drying binding Quality, it is good againſt Poiſon, Stone in the Reins and Kidneys, ſtoppeth a Lask, and is good for a bloody Urine and bloody Flux.

Bucks-

Bucks-horn, it is called Harts-horn, Herb-Ivy, Wort-Creſſes, or Swine-Creſſes, their Virtues are the ſame with Bucks-horn Plantain.

Bugle is of a mean Temperature, and is good taken inwardly to diſſolve congealed Blood that is occaſioned by Bruiſes or Falls, and is effectual in all Wound-Drinks; it is good for Fiſtula's, Gangreens, the Leaves of it being bruiſed and applied to them.

Burnet is a Drier and a Binder, yet it is meanly cool, it is a moſt precious Herb little inferiour to Betony; it ſtancheth bleeding as well inwardly as outwardly, and is good to ſtay the Lask and Bloody-Flux; it is good for all old Ulcers or running Cankers and moiſt Sores, to be uſed either by Juice or Decoction of the Herb or Root; the Seed is alſo good for the ſame purpoſes aforeſaid.

The *Butter-bur* or *Petaſitis* is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, and of thin parts; the Root is good againſt the Plague and peſtilential Fevers, by provoking Sweat; the Powder of the Root given in Wine is good to reſiſt the Force of Poiſon: it is good for Wheezing and Difficulty of breathing; kills flat and broad Worms.

Bran is hot and dry, and diſſolveth very much.

Burdock is dry and waſting, the Root is ſomething hot, the Leaves are cooling, and moderately drying, and are good for old Ulcers and Sores; the Juice of the Leaves or Roots are good againſt the Biting of any venomous Beaſt, the Seed of it is moſt excellent to provoke Urine, being beaten to powder, and drank in White-Wine or Ale; and remedieth the Pains in the Bladder: it is good for Burnings and Cankers.

Bur-reeds are cold and dry of Complexion.

Vipers Bugloſs, all the kinds of them are cold and dry of Complexion.

Sea bind-weed is hot and dry in the ſecond degree.

Bearsfoot or *black Hellebore* is hotter in taſte than the white, and is in like manner hot and dry in the third degree: it is ſafer to be taken, being purified by the Art of the Alchymiſt, than given raw. The Roots are good againſt all melancholy Diſeaſes, as Quartan Agues and Madneſs: it is good for the Falling-Sickneſs, Leproſy, Yellows, Pains in the Hip. The Root beaten to powder, and ſtrewed upon Ulcers or putrefied Sores, conſumes the dead Fleſh, and inſtantly heals them. It will help Gangreens in the beginning, twenty Grains is a ſufficient Doſe for

for one time, and let it be corrected with half ſo much Cinnamon. The Root boiled in Vinegar is excellent good againſt Scabs, Mange and Leproſy, a piece of it being put into a Hole made in the Ear of a Beaſt troubled with a Cough, or that hath taken any Poiſon, and taken out in twenty four Hours, helpeth them; and is very good alſo to rowel Cattel withal that have the Gargel, and alſo for many other Uſes.

Baldmony or *Feltwort*, the Roots are hot, cleanſing and ſcouring; ſome ſay it likewiſe bindeth withal.

Balſam is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, and is good for new and green Wounds.

Biſhops-weed, *Herb-William*, *Ameos*, the Seed is hot and dry in the latter end of the third degree; it is given againſt the biting of any venomous Beaſt; it cauſeth Urine, it is good againſt Poiſon, the Plague and all peſtilential Fevers.

Sweet-Briar or *Eglantine-Balls* are binding, and are good for Bloody-Fluxes; and are good to ſtop a Lask or Looſeneſs.

Wild-Briar Balls are great Binders, and are good to ſtop a Lask and Bloody-Flux, and for ſtaling of Blood, and are great Driers up of evil Humours.

Buck-thorn or *Laxative Ram*, the Berries as they are in taſte bitter, ſo they are binding, and are alſo hot and dry in the ſecond degree, and do purge thick Phlegm and cholerick Humours.

The *Box-tree* is of a binding Quality, and is good againſt the biting of mad Dogs.

Biacca is cold and dry in the ſecond degree; it cloſeth things opened, it ſoftens Hardneſs, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all Excretions.

Brimſtone is hot and dry in the third degree, draweth and diſperſeth Humours, killeth the Itch given inwardly, and outwardly applied, it is good for Coughs and rotten Phlegm: it is good likewiſe for the Worms, being mixed with a little Salt in his Provender; it helps Lethargies ſnuffed up the Noſe, being beaten to powder. The Flower of it is beſt, uſed for any inward Uſe.

Bole-Armoniack is a certain red Earth, which is cold and dry, which draweth and driveth back evil Humours, and is alſo an excellent Defence againſt Fluxes of Blood, and all manner of bleeding whatſoever, either taken inwardly, or outwardly applied.

Brine

Brine, or Water and Salt, is of the same nature as Sea is; it is good given inwardly to kill Worms, or applied outwardly to dry Humours, and takes away Swellings.

C.

ALL *Cabbages* and *Coleworts* have a drying and binding Faculty, with a certain salt Quality, whereby they cleanse; and being boiled in Broth, open the Belly, but the second Decoction binds. The Juice of them drank is good against the Poison of venomous Beasts; they are good against a Consumption, Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, Stone, Swellings, Sores and Scabs, and the Juice being dropped into the Eyes with Honey is good to clear them.

The *Sea-Colewort* is of a biting Quality; the first Decoction looseneth and is more cleansing than the other kind; the Seed bruised and drank killeth Worms, the Juice of them cleanseth and healeth Sores, dissolveth Swellings, and taketh away Inflammations.

Calamint or *Mountain-Mint* is of a fervent Taste and biting hot, and of a thin Substance, and dry after a form in the third degree; it wasteth away thin Humours, cuts and maketh thick Humours thin; it is good for Ruptures, Convulsions, Cramps, Shortness of Breath, Torments and Pains of the Stomach, helpeth Yellows, killeth Worms given with Salt and Treacle, killeth Scabs either inwardly taken or outwardly applied, and killeth the Worms in the Ears, the Juice being dropped therein.

Camomile is hot and dry in the second degree, and of thin parts, and heateth moderately, and drieth little; it mollifieth and dissolveth all Griefs, and especially of the Liver; it is good for Swellings, Cholick, Stone, Pains in the Belly, Cold, Yellows, Dropsy and Cramps.

Water-Caltrops are of a cold Nature, and consist of a moist Essence; being made into a Poultice, are good for Inflammations, Swellings, Cankers, sore Mouths and Throats; they are good for the Farcin and Stone, especially the Nut being dried, they resist Poison, and the biting of venomous Beasts.

Wild Champions are referred to those of the Garden, they are good to stay inward bleeding, taken inwardly; and outwardly they do the like to Wounds; they expel Urine and Gravel, and purge the Body of cholerick Humours, and are good against the Poison of venomous Beasts, &c.

the Plague, *&c.* and are good for all Sores, Fistulaes and Cankers, to cleanse and heal them.

Carduus Benedictus is good for Pains in the Head, the Yellows and other Infirmities of the Gall, cleanseth the Blood, helpeth the Itch, biting of mad Dogs, and other venomous Beasts, and is good for Agues.

Wild Carrots are hot and dry in the second degree, expel Wind, provoke Urine and cause Lust; they are good for the Dropsy, Cholick, Stone, for running Sores and Ulcers: the Seed of them worketh the same effects as the Roots do.

Caraway-seeds are hot and dry in the third degree, have a moderate sharp Quality, whereby they break Wind, provoke Urine; the Seeds are good for Colds in the Head and Stomach.

Celandine is hot and dry in the third degree, the Juice of it put into the Eyes cleareth them from Films and Cloudiness, which darkneth the Sight; it is good in old filthy creeping Ulcers, to stay their Malignity of fretting and running, and to cause them to heal the more speedily: It heals also Tettars, Ring-worms, and spreading Cankers, the Powder of it mixed with Brimstone killeth the Mange; it is good taken inwardly for the Yellows, and openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall.

The lesser *Cellandine*, called *Pilewort*, is hot and dry, and more biting and hotter than the greater, and cometh neareſt in faculty to the Crow-foot; it is good taken inwardly for the Farcin, and to be applied ontwardly for the same Disease.

The ordinary *Centaury* purgeth cholerick and gross Humours, openeth the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall, helpeth the Yellows, killeth Worms, is good for Cramps and Convulsions, against venomous Beasts, it cleanseth foul Ulcers, and killeth spreading Scabs: all the Ceutaury's are much of one and the same nature, only take this Observation, That in Diseases of Blood use the red; if of Choler, use the yellow; but if of Phlegm or Water, the white is best.

Winter-Cherries, the Leaves are cool, and are used in Inflammations, but not opening as the Berries and Fruit are, which draw down the Urine, and expel the Gravel and Stone out of the Reins, Kidneys and Bladder; it is also good for all Impostbumes in them, likewise to cleanse them, and is good for bloody and foul Urine.

Chervil is of temperate Heat and moderate Driness, but

not

not ſo much as the Parſley; it warms the Stomach, and is good to diſſolve congealed Blood in the Body; it is good for the Stone: the wild Chervil applied, diſſolveth Swellings in any part of the Body.

Sweet Chervil or *ſweet Cicely*, the Roots warm the Stomach oppreſſed with Wind and Phlegm, and are good for the Conſumption of the Lungs: it is good againſt the Plague, the Juice of it is good to heal Ulcers.

Cheſt-nut-tree, the Fruit is dry and binding, and is neither hot nor cold, but in a mean between both; the inner Rind that covereth the Nut is of ſo binding a quality, that it will ſtop any Lask or Looſeneſs whatſoever, and likewiſe the Bloody-Flux.

Earth Cheſt-nuts are hot and dry in quality, and alſo binding in quality, but the Seed is hotter; they provoke Luſt exceedingly, the Seed provoketh Urine.

Chickweed is cold and moiſt, and of a wateriſh ſubſtance, it cooleth without binding, and is good for all Swellings and Impoſthumes whatſoever, Itch, Scabs, Cramps, and is good for Ulcers and Sores in the privy Parts.

Baſtard Chickweed is like to the other in Vertue and Operation.

Cinquefoil, or *Five-leaved Graſs*, the Roots of it are dry in the third degree, and without biting, for they have very little heatand ſharpneſs. It is good given inwardly for Agues, and to cool the Heat of Peſtilential Fevers; the Juice of it drank for certain days together, cureth the Quinſey and Yellows. It is good for the Falling-Sickneſs, Cough of the Lungs; the Roots boiled in Vinegar are good for all hard Swellings, Knots and Kernels, and Lumps growing in any part of the Fleſh, and all Inflammations and St. *Anthony's* Fire, and all ſorts of running and foul Scabs; and are good for Ruptures or Burſtings uſed with other things, taken inwardly or outwardly applied; and are good likewiſe to ſtay bleeding of Wounds, inwardly taken or outwardly applied.

Garden Clary, or more properly *Clear-Eye*, is hot and dry in the third degree; the Seed put into the Eyes doth clear them of Motes, and takes the red Spots out of them. It is good for Swellings, and draweth forth Splinters and Thorns out of the Fleſh; the Powder of the Root put up the Noſe purgeth the Head and Brain of much Rheum and Corruption: It is a great ſtrengthner in the Back, the Juice of it drank in Ale or Beer expelleth the Secundine.

Wi

Wild Clary is hotter and drier than the *Garden Clary*; the Seeds provoke Luſt, warm the Stomach, ſcatter congealed Blood in any part of the Body, and help Dimneſs of Sight, being put into the Eye, and there let it remain till it drop out of it ſelf, and it will cleanſe the Eyes from putrefied Matter, and by often uſing of it will take off a Flim.

Clivers or *Gooſe-graſs* is moderately hot and dry, and ſomewhat of thin parts; it is good for the biting of any venomous Beaſt, for the Yellows; it ſtayeth Lasks, Bloody-Fluxes and bleeding Wounds, being bruiſed and laid to them, as alſo cloſes up green Wounds: the Powder of the Herb dried and ſtrewed upon old filthy Ulcers helpeth them, and being boiled with Hog's-greaſe, helpeth all hard Swellings about the Throat, being anointed therewith. It is a great Cleanſer of the Blood, and Strengthner of the Liver.

Clown's Wound-wort is hot in the ſecond degree, and dry in the firſt, and is a moſt excellent Wound-herb for all green Wounds, and is a Stancher of Blood, and will dry up Fluxes and Humours in old fretting Ulcers and Cankers that hinder the healing of them: A Syrup made of the Juice of it is inferior to none for inward Wounds, Ruptures of Veins, and Piſſing of Blood.

Cock's-head, red Fitching or *Medick Fitch*, the green Leaves bruiſed and laid as a Plaſter diſperſeth Knots or Kernels in the Fleſh, and being dried and taken in Wine helpeth the Strangury, and being anointed with it provoketh Sweat; it is a good Food for Cattel to make them give good ſtore of Milk, ſo is *Alder* and *Medick Fitch*.

Columbines are thought to be temperate, between Heat and Moiſture; the Leaves are uſed in Lotions for ſore Mouths and Throats; the Seed openeth the Obſtruction of the Liver, and is good for the Yellows.

Colts-foot, the Leaves of it while it is green have a drying Quality, and are ſomewhat cold, but the dried Leaves are not ſo biting; they are good for Wheezings and Short-windedneſs, Agues, Inflammations and Swellings, St. *Anthony's* Fire and Burnings.

Comfrey is cold and dry, and of an earthly Quality; the Uſe of this is the ſame with *Clown's Wound-wort*: the great *Comfrey* helpeth a bloody Urine, and is good for all inward Wounds, Bruiſes, Hurts and Ulcers of the Lungs, is good for the falling or ſhedding of the Seed, and is good made into an Ointment for all Pains and old Aches.

Coral-wort cleanſeth the Bladder, and provoketh Urine,

expels the Gravel and Stone, and easeth Pains in the Sides and Bowels; it is good for inward Wounds, especially for those in the Breast and Lungs, and is good for outward Wounds made up into an Ointment; it stops Fluxes, and is good to dry up the watry Humour that is in Ulcers, that hinders their Cure.

Red Coral bindeth and meanly cooleth, and is very effectual against Issues of Blood, and easeth the difficulty of Breathing, and is good for the Falling-Sickness.

Costmary, or *Alecost*, or *Balsam-herb*, is hot and dry in the second degree, and provoketh Urine as well as Maudlin; it purgeth Choler and Phlegm, and is good for Agues, and dries up all thin Rheums from the Head and Stomach.

Cud-weed or *Cotton-weed*, their kinds are of a binding and drying Quality, and are good for Defluxions of Rheum from the Head, and to stay all Fluxes of Blood whatsoever; it helpeth the Bloody-Flux, and is good for inward and outward Wounds, Hurts and Bruises, and is good for Burstings, the Worms, and old and filthy Ulcers.

Crabs-Claws are great strengthners of the Reins; they are good for St. *Anthony*'s Fire, and all Inflammations and Swellings in Wounds; and an Ointment made of them is good to heal them: it is a most excellent thing for bruised Kidneys, and upon that account pissing Blood.

Winter-Cresses are hot and dry in the second degree, the Seed causeth Urine, and drives forth Gravel, and helps the Strangury; the Juice of them made up into the form of an Ointment, with Wax, Oil and Turpentine, cleanseth foul Ulcers.

Bank-Cresses, the Seeds are of a fiery Temperature, and do extenuate and make thin; they strengthen the Brain, and are little inferiour to Mustard-Seed, and are good to purge those Rheums that fall down from the Head upon the Lungs. They are good likewise for the Yellows, and the Pain in the Hip.

Sciatica-Cresses are hot and dry in the fourth degree, like to Garden-Cresses both in Smell and Taste; they are good to put into a Poultice to help all old Pains and Griefs in the Hips or Joints, and other parts of the Body that are hard to be cured.

Garden-Cresses are sharp and biting, and therefore they are hot and dry, whilst they are young and tender. The Seeds are much more biting than the Herb, and are hotter

dry almoſt in the fourth degree, and are good for Pains in the Hip, and hard Swellings and Inflammations.

Dock-Creſſes are of nature hot, and ſomewhat abſterſive and cleanſing, the Juice of them is good for ulcerated Sores.

Water-Creſſes are hot and dry, they cleanſe the Blood and Humours, ſerve in all other uſes in which Brooklime is available; as to break the Stone, and to provoke Urine, and cleanſe Ulcers.

Croſs-wort is of a binding and drying Quality, and is a moſt excellent Wound-herb, both inwardly taken and outwardly applied; it ſendeth forth Phlegm out of the Stomach, and is good for Ruptures and Burſtneſs.

Crow-foot is a fiery hot Herb not fit to be given inwardly unleſs it be corrected: it will draw a Bliſter as well as *Cantharides*.

Cuckow-point, or *Wake-Robin*, is hot and dry in the third degree, it is good given againſt the Plague or Poiſon; being mixed with Vinegar, it is good for Short-windedneſs and Cough of the Lungs, it is good to provoke Urine, for the Itch, Ulcers, and to take away the Pin and Web in the Eye.

Calamus is of a hot heating Quality, ſaith *Dioſcorides*; but *Galen* and *Pliny* affirm, that it has thin and ſubtile parts both hot and dry; it provoketh Urine, expelleth Poiſon, and is good for inward Bruiſes, and the Juice of it ſtrained with Honey taketh away the Dimneſs of the Eyes.

Corneflag is of force to waſte, conſume and dry, as alſo of a ſubtile and drying Quality; being ſtamped with Frankinceſe and Wine: it draweth forth Splinters out of the Fleſh: it is likewiſe good for hard Swellings.

Cowſlips of *Jeruſalem* are of the Temperature of great Comfrey, and are ſomewhat more drying and binding.

Calloquintida is hot and dry in the latter end of the ſecond degree, and therefore it purgeth, cleanſeth and openeth, and performeth all thoſe things that bitter things do; but that the ſtrong quality that it hath, is, as *Galen* ſaith, of more force than all the reſt of the Operations, therefore it is not raſhly to be uſed, but upon ſome deſperate Diſeaſes.

Crane's-bill is cold and ſomewhat dry, with ſome binding Quality; it hath power to join and ſodder together, and is therefore good for Burſtneſs and broken Bones.

The Seed of *Garden Cummin* is hot and dry in the third degree, and hath alſo a binding Quality, and is good for the

Wind, the Cheſt and Lungs, and all raw Humours, and to put into Plaſters and Poultices for Swellings.

The Seed of *Cockle* is hot and dry in the latter end of the ſecond degree, and is good againſt the Yellows.

Camock is hot in the third degree, it cutteth and maketh thin; the Bark of the Root given in White-Wine cauſeth Urine, breaketh the Stone, and drives it forth.

Cyprus-Roots, long and round, are of a hot nature; the Aſhes of them burnt is good for Ulcers in the Mouth, Cankers, *&c.*

Cypreſs, the Fruit and Leaves are dry in the third degree and aſtringent. The Nut being ſtamp'd and drunk in Wine, ſtoppeth the Lask and Bloody-Flux.

Caſſia Fiſtula or *Pudding-Pipe*, the Pulp is moiſt in the latter end of the third degree, it gently purgeth cholerick Humours and ſlimy Phlegm.

Cochineal is given alone, and mix'd with other things in malignant Diſeaſes, as peſtilential Fevers and the like, and is a great Cordial.

Cinnamon hath power to warm, and is of thin parts; it is alſo hot, dry, and aſtringent; it breaketh Wind, provoketh Urine, and is good againſt the fretting Pains of the Guts and Entrails, proceeding of cold Cauſes.

Cloves are hot and dry in the third degree, they ſtrengthen the Stomach, Liver and Heart, provoke Urine, the Oil of them taketh away the Pin and Web in the Eye.

China-Roots are thought to be moderately hot and dry; they ſtrengthen the Liver, remove the Dropſy, cure malignant Ulcers and Scabs, and are good in a Conſumption, and for the Farcin.

Copperas is of two ſorts, green and white; they are hot and dry, but the white is much the ſtronger: they are great Dryers up of evil Humours, being outwardly apply'd they kill likewiſe Scurfs and Scabs.

Coſtus hath a heating and attenuating Quality, it is good to help Strains, Convulſions and Cramps, killeth Worms, and is good againſt the biting of Vipers, and againſt Windineſs in the Stomach.

Calafonia or *Colofonia* doth incarnate Ulcers, and doth conglutinate things that are ſeparated.

Camphora is a kind of Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree, and preſerveth the Body from Putrefaction, and bindeth Humours; it is good againſt Poiſon, Plague and Fevers.

Cam-

Cantharides are certain *Spanish* Flies which are hot and dry in the third degree; they increase Lust taken inwardly, and being apply'd outwardly to any part of the Body, they will raise Blisters.

Cardamomum is hot, and extenuateth Humours; and being mix'd with Vinegar, killeth Scabs.

Castoreum is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

Cerusa is a white Ointment made of Oil and white Lead; it is cold and dry in the second degree, and is a great Healer and Sheller of Scabs.

Cito or *Cisto* is dry in the second degree, and bindeth much.

Citrons or *Cithrons* are cold and moist in the second degree, they do cleanse and pierce.

Comfrey is cold, and conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against Ruptures.

Castro or *Cosso*, being bitter, is hot and healeth Ulcers.

Cane-Reed is hot and dry in the third degree.

D.

Daises are cold and moist, being moist in the end of the second degree, and cold in the beginning of the same. They are good for Wounds in the Breast, and therefore fitting to be made into Oils, Ointments, and Plasters, as also into Syrups. The great and wild ones are very good Wound-Herbs, and the distill'd Water of them both is good to refresh the inward Parts, and to allay the Heat of Choler. They are good for Ulcers, Swellings, Kernels, Bruises by Falls, Ruptures, Burstings, and all Inflammations.

Dandelyon, vulgarly call'd *Piss-a-beds*, is like in Temperature with Succory, that is to say, of wild Endive; it is cold, but it drieth more, and doth withal cleanse and open, by reason of the biting Quality it hath, and therefore is good for the Obstructions of the Liver, Gall, Spleen and Yellows. The distilled Water of it is good to allay the Heat of pestilential Fevers, and to wash Sores.

Darnel is hot in the third degree, red Darnel drieth with sharpness. The Meal of it is good to stay Gangrenes, Cankers, and putrid Sores; it killeth Ringworms and foul Scabs. If it be used with Salt and Radish-Roots, with Brimstone and Vinegar, it dissolveth Knots and Kernels, and being boiled with Wine, Pigeons Dung and Linseed, dissolveth Humours that are hard to be dissolved. Darnel-Meal draweth

forth Splinters and broken Bones, being apply'd as a Poultice: the red Darnel boiled in Wine ſtayeth the Lask and Bloody-Flux, and all other Fluxes of Blood.

Dill is hot in the end of the ſecond degree, and dry in the beginning of the ſame, or in the end of the firſt degree: it provoketh Urine, and is good againſt Windineſs; it is good to eaſe Swellings and Pains.

Devils-bit is ſomewhat bitter, and is of a hot and dry Temperature, and that in the latter end of the ſecond degree: it is good againſt the Plague and all peſtilential Diſeaſes, as Poiſons, Fevers, and biting of venomous Beaſts; it is good for Bruiſes either inward or outward, to expel Wind, and drive forth Worms. The diſtill'd Water of it is good for green Wounds, old Sores, and cleanſeth the Body inwardly, and the Seed outwardly, from Sores, Scurfe and Itches.

Dock, all of them are generally cold a little, and moderately, and ſome more. They do all of them dry, but not after one manner, yet ſome are of opinion that they are dry in the third degree. The red Dock cleanſeth the Liver, but the yellow is beſt to take when the Blood is afflicted with Choler. The Seeds of moſt of the kinds do ſtay Lasks and Fluxes of all ſorts; they are good for the Itch and breaking out of the Skin, if it be bathed therewith.

Dodder is of the nature of the Herb on which it groweth, is more dry than hot, and that in the ſecond degree; it is a Purger of Choler and Phlegm from the Head, Obſtructions of the Liver, Gall and Yellows.

Dogs-graſs, *Quich-graſs*, or *Couch-graſs*, opens Obſtructions of the Liver and Gall, ſtopping of Urine, and eaſeth Pains of the Belly, Inflammations, and waſteth the Stones in the Bladder, and Ulcers thereof. Alſo being boiled, the Seed doth more provoke Urine, and ſtayeth the Lask; it is a good Remedy againſt all Diſeaſes coming of Stoppage.

Doves-foot or *Cranes-bill* is cold and ſomewhat dry, with ſome binding Quality; it is good for the Wind-Cholick and Stone: the Decoction thereof in Wine is a good Wound-Drink for inward Wounds, Hurts or Bruiſes, and is good to cleanſe and heal outward Sores, Ulcers, Fiſtulas and green Wounds, and is excellent for Ruptures.

Ducks-meat is cold and moiſt in a ſort in the ſecond degree; it is good for Inflammations and St. *Anthony's* Fire.

Dra-

Dragons is under *Mars*, and therefore the best way to use it is after it is distilled; and then the Water of it cleanseth all internal parts of the Body, and so it doth the external from Scurf and Scabs; and being dropt into the Eye, taketh away the Pin and Web, and is good against Pestilence and Poison.

Dogs-tooth is of a very hot Temperament, and of an excrementitious nature.

The Roots of all the *Daffodils* are hot and dry in the third degree.

Dyers-weed is hot and dry of Temperature: the Root, as also the whole Herb, heats and dries in the third degree; it cuts, attenuateth, opens, and digests; it is good for the biting of venomous Beasts and Poison, taken inwardly or apply'd outwardly.

Bastard-Dittany is hot and dry in the second degree, and of a wasting, attenuating, and opening Quality, and is good for the Stone in the Kidneys and Bladder.

Dropwort or *Filipendula* it hot and dry in the third degree, opening, cleansing, and a little binding. All the kinds of them have the same Faculty, unless it be the pernicious Dropwort: They are good against Pains in the Bladder, and break the Stone.

E.

Elder is of a drying Quality, gluing and moderately digesting; it purgeth Choler and Phlegm (both the inward Rind and the Berries) and the Dropsy. The Bark of the Root worketh more powerfully than either of them; it is good against the biting of any venomous Beasts, the Juice of it assuageth the hot Inflammations of the Eyes, and all manner of Burnings and Scaldings, being laid to the grieved place.

Dwarf-Elder, call'd *Danewort* and *Wallwort*; it is of Temperature hot and dry in the third degree: it doth waste and consume by purging of Choler, and Phlegm, and Water, and is more powerful than the common Elder, and hath all the Properties of it.

The *Elm-Tree*, the Leaves and Bark of it is moderately hot, with a cleansing Faculty; the Leaves bruised and applied heal green Wounds, are good to cure a Scurf, Ruptures, broken Bones, Swellings and Burnings.

Endive and *Succory* are cold and dry in the third degree, and withal somewhat binding; they are fine cooling and

cleansing Plants. The Garden *Endive* is colder, and not so dry and cleansing: the Juice or the Water of it is good to cool the excessive Heat of the Stomach and Liver, or any Inflammation in any part of the Body; and being applied outwardly, it is good for Ulcers, hard Swellings, and pestilential Sores.

Elecampane is hot and dry in the third degree, especially when it is dry; for being green and full of Juice, it is full of superfluous Moisture, which somewhat abateth the Heat and dry Quality thereof. It is good for Colds and Coughs, and to warm a cold Stomach, Wind, Short-windedness, Wheezing, Stone in the Bladder, resisteth Poison, the Plague, Cramps, Convulsions, Worms, Cankers, Fistulaes.

Ensula, or *Devil's-Milk*, is hot, sharp, and drying, and draws Choler from the Joints.

Eringo or *Sea-holly* breedeth Seed exceedingly, and is hot and moist; it is good for the Yellows, Dropsy, Cholick, provoketh Urine, expelleth the Stone: the Roots bruised and applied outwardly are good for the Farcin, or taken inwardly for the same Disease. It is good for broken Bones, and to draw Thorns out of the Flesh; the Juice dropped into the Ears helpeth the Imposthumes in them, the distilled Water of it is good for all the Purposes aforesaid.

Eyebright is hot and dry, but yet more hot than dry; the Juice or the Water of it is good to help all Infirmities of the Eyes that cause Dimness.

Elusa is a Herb like a Spunge, and is hot in the fourth degree; it drieth and cleanseth exceedingly, and of some call'd Wolf's-Milk.

Excrusion is that which we call *Oxicration*, it is a certain Composition of *Accto* and *Water*, and is good to allay Swellings and Tumours.

Eggs, the Whites are cold and the Yolks are hot, and do strengthen and incarnate. The Shells beaten to powder, and given in Beer or Ale, is very good to expel the Stone out of the Bladder.

F.

FERN, both the kinds of them, Male and Female, are hot and dry, and somewhat binding, their Virtues are both alike; the Roots of them are good to kill Worms, the green Leaves purge the Belly of cholerick Humours. An Ointment made of the Roots, bruised with Hog's-grease, is good for the Wounds in the Flesh; the Powder of them is good to dry up Moistures in malignant Ulcers. The

The *Water-Fern* or *Osmond Royal* is hot and dry, but lesser than the former, and hath all the Virtues the other hath, but more effectually, and is good for Wounds or Bruises, and the like. The Decoction thereof being drunk or boiled in an Ointment or Oil, as a Balsam or Balm, is very good for Bruises, or Bones broken and out of joint; it is good for the Cholick, for Ruptures. The Decoction of the Root in Wine provoketh Urine exceedingly, and cleanseth the Bladder and Passages thereof.

Feverfew heateth, it is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second; it expelleth the Secundine, being drunk. It is good for a Cough, and to cleanse the Reins of the Bladder, and to expel the Stone out of it. It purgeth Phlegm and Choler, is good for the Head-Ach and Wind-Cholick, and performeth all that bitter things can do.

Fennel-seed is hot in the third degree, and dry in the first; it openeth Obstructions and Stoppings of the Bladder, and maketh the Stone to void by Urine. It is good for all manner of gross Humours, and for the Liver and Lungs; and is of the same nature as Anniseeds are.

Sow-Fennel, or *Hogs-Fennel*, the kinds of the Herbs, especially the yellow Sap of the Root, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the beginning of the third: it is good against Wind in the Belly and Stomach; it looseneth the Belly gently, and purgeth by Siege both Phlegm and Choler.

Fennel-Giant is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second; it is astringent and binding, and good for the Bloody-Flux.

Filipendula or *Dropwort*, vid. *Dropwort*.

Green Figs serve to ripen Tumours, soften and consume hard Swellings, and are good for Pursiness, Coughs and Diseases of the Lungs. The Decoction of the Leaves (the place being wash'd with it) is a most excellent Remedy for the Leprosy, Scurf, Scabs, or Running Sores.

Fuss-balls do dry, and are good to lay to a gall'd Back.

The yellow *Water-Flag* or *Flower-de-luce*, and all the kinds of them, are very astringent, cooling and drying, and help all Lasks and Fluxes, whether of Blood or Humours. It helps all foul Ulcers, the Juice being apply'd to them.

Flax-weed or *Toad-Flax*, all the kinds of them are of the same Temperature with wild *Snap-Dragons*, whereof they are kinds. It provokes Urine, opens the Obstruc-

tions

tions of the Liver and Spleen, helpeth the Yellows, expel-leth the Poiſon, driveth forth the dead Foal, and is good to cleanſe foul and cankerous Ulcers and Fiſtulaes.

Fleawort, it is cold and dry; the fry'd Seed taken ſtayeth the Flux and Lask of the Belly. The Seed is good for hot Agues and burning Fevers and other Inflammations; it is good for the Diſeaſes of the Breaſt and Lungs cauſed by Heat, as alſo for the Head-Ach and all hot Impoſthumes and Breakings out of the Skin; it is good for old Pains in the Joints, *&c.*

Flixweed drieth without any manifeſt Sharpneſs of Heat; it is good for Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes, and for all Iſſues of Blood whatſoever; it is good for broken Bones to conſolidate them together, it heals all Sores and putrefied Ulcers.

Flower-de-luce is hot and dry in the third degree; it purgeth Choler and tough Phlegm, helpeth the Yellows and Dropſy; it eaſeth the Pains in the Belly, and is good for the Liver and Spleen; it is good for Cramps, all manner of Poiſon, provoketh Urine, helpeth the Cholick, and is good to comfort all cold Joints and Sinews, and for Ulcers and Fiſtulaes.

Fluellin or *Lluellin* is of a binding Quality, and is good for hot Swellings, Wounds, Ulcers and Cankers, and to ſtop a Lask and Bloody-Flux.

Fox-Gloves, in that they are bitter, are hot and dry with a certain cleanſing Quality. The Juice of it is good to heal green Wounds and old Sores, to cleanſe, dry, and heal them; it purgeth the Body of tough Phlegm, and is good to open Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, for the Farcin, and other Breakings out in the Skin.

Fumitory is cold and ſomewhat dry of Operation, and cleanſeth by Urine. It is good for the Liver and Spleen, Yellows, Stavers, Plague, ſore Mouths and Throat, and all manner of Breakings out in the Skin.

The *Furz-buſh*, or *Fuzen-buſhes*, are hot and dry of Complexion, and good to open Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen. The Seeds are good to cleanſe the Reins from the Gravel or Stones, provoke Urine, and are good against the Yellows.

Frankincenſe hath the power to bind, ſaith *Dioſcorides*; it is good for Wounds old and new, and alſo for Ulcers.

Flax or *Line*, the Seed thereof is hot and dry, and ripeneth and mollifieth.

Furſe

Fitches are hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, and they do open and cleanse. See *Oliganum.*

Herb-Frankincense, the Seeds and Roots are hot and dry in the second degree, and are of a digesting, dissolving, and mundifying Quality.

Feltwort or *Baldmony*, the Roots are hot, cleansing, and scouring; some say it is likewise binding and of a bitter taste.

Fenugreek is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, and is a Loosener of the Body, and is good for Colds, and a Killer of Worms.

G.

Gentian Feltwort or *Baldmony*, there are two sorts of them, and both under the Dominion of *Mars*: they both resist Poison and Pestilence, and strengthen the Stomach. The Powder of the dry'd Root is good against the biting of a mad Dog, or any other venomous Beast, opens Obstructions of the Liver: it is good taken inwardly against Bruises by Falls, provokes Urine exceedingly, is good for Cramps, it expectorates tough Phlegm, and kills Scabs, and all manner of fretting Sores and Ulcers, killeth Worms, is good for the Farcin and Yellows taken inwardly. The Root made into the form of a Tent is good to open Sores, being put therein.

Garlick is very sharp, and hot and dry in the fourth degree; it causeth Urine, is good against the biting of a mad Dog, or any other venomous Creature, purgeth the Head from tough Phlegm, killeth Worms, helpeth the Lethargy, is a Preservative against the Plague, is good for foul Ulcers, breaketh Imposthumes and other Swellings, and for all those Diseases the Onion is also effectual: but they are better apply'd outwardly than received inwardly, because they have their Vices as well as their Virtues.

Clove-Gilliflowers are so temperate, that no Excess, neither in Heat, Cold, Dryness nor Moisture can be perceived in them; they are great Strengthners both of the Brain and Heart, and are very good to be put into Cordials for hot pestilential Fevers, and expel Poison.

Stock-Gilliflowers are referred to the Wall-flower, altho in Virtue they are much inferiour.

Garden Germander is of thin parts, and hath a cutting Faculty; it is hot and dry almost in the third degree; it opens and cleanseth, for it opens the Obstructions of the Liver

Liver and Spleen, and Difficulty of Urine; it is good againſt Poiſon, Ulcers, Cramps, Agues, Falling-Sickneſs, Head-ach, Yellows and Worms.

Water-Germander is hot and dry, and hath a bitter taſte, harſh, and earthy.

Stinking Gladwin is hot and dry in the third degree, it purgeth Choler and Phlegm; the Powder or Juice of it put into the Head draweth forth much Corruption, and being given inwardly, is good for Cramps. It is good for the Strangury, provoketh Urine. The Roots are very good in Wounds, and draw forth Splinters or Thorns out of the Fleſh; boiled in Vinegar, they diſſolve any hard Swelling or Tumour. The Juice of the Leaves and Roots heal the Mange, and all other running and ſpreading Scabs.

Golden-Rod is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, and cleanſeth with a certain Aſtriction or binding Quality, and is good for the Stone in the Reins and Kidneys; it is good taken for inward Bruiſes, aud outwardly applied for outward ones. It ſtayeth bleeding in any part of the Body, and of Wounds alſo, the Fluxes of Humours, the Bloody-Flux, Ruptures. It is an excellent Wound-Herb, inferiour to none, either taken inwardly, or outwardly apply'd, and is good for all Sores and Ulcers whatſoever, whether they be in the Mouth or Throat.

Goutwort cures all manner of Pain in the Hip, or Joint-Aches.

Gromwel, the Seed of it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree; it is good to break the Stone, and to void it out of the Reins and Bladder by Urine, and helpeth the Strangury.

Gum Armoniack outwardly apply'd diſſolves hard Knots and Swellings in any part of the Body, and inwardly given cures hard Milts, and frees from Obſtructions, moves Urine, and fetcheth forth Stones.

Winter-Green is a very good Wound-Herb, and is good taken inwardly, being bruiſed, for Ulcers in the Kidneys or Neck of the Bladder; it ſtayeth alſo Fluxes, whether of Blood or Humours, as the Lask, Bloody-Flux, bleeding Wounds, and taketh away Inflammations, and is good for foul Ulcers, Cankers, and Fiſtula's.

Groundſel hath mix'd Faculties; it cooleth and digeſteth, it is a univerſal Medicine againſt Diſeaſes coming from Heat, whatſoever they be; it is good againſt the Yellows, Falling-Sickneſs, provokes Urine, expels Gravel in the Reins and Kidneys, is good for Griping in the Bowels and Cholick, and

and diſſolveth any hard Knobs and Kernels in the Body.

Engliſh Galangal hath a heating Quality, and ſome do reckon it to be hot and dry in the ſecond degree. The greater Galangal Roots are hot and dry in the third degree, but the leſſer are ſomewhat hotter. It is good for cold Griefs in the Stomach, ſtrengthens the Brain, and comforteth the Sinews.

Ginger heateth and drieth in the third degree, and is good for the Stomach, anſwering the Effects and Qualities of Long Pepper.

Glaſs-wort is hot and dry, the Aſhes of it are both drier and hotter, even to the fourth degree, and have a coſtick and burning Quality.

Green-weed or *baſe Broom* are hot and dry in the ſecond degree; they are thought to be in Virtue equal with Broom, the Dyers uſe it very much to dye withal.

Galls are dry in the third and cold in the ſecond: they cleanſe and mundify, they keep back Rheums and ſuch like Fluxes, and do dry up the ſame; and are good to ſtop Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes, and the falling out of the Fundament.

Grains of Paradiſe are hot and dry in the third degree; they comfort the weak, cold and feeble Stomach, and help the Ague, Farcin and Falling Sickneſs.

Gum Lacke is hot in the ſecond degree, and comforteth the Heart and Liver, and openeth Obſtructions, expelleth Urine, and is good for the Dropſy and Yellows, and expelleth the Stone out of the Reins and Bladder.

Freſh Greaſe is hot and moiſt in the firſt degree, and mollifieth, ripeneth and healeth Wounds, Impoſthumes and Ulcers.

Galbanum is a Gum which is hot in the third degree, and dry in the ſecond: it ſoftneth, ſtoppeth and draweth away evil Humours, and is good againſt Colds (the Fume taken up the Head) as alſo, for the Dizzineſs thereof.

H

Hearts-Eaſe is obſcurely cold, but more evidently moiſt and of a fat and ſlimy Juice, like that of the Mallow, for which cauſe it moiſtneth and ſuppleth, but not ſo much as that: it is good for the Inflammations of the Lungs and Breaſt, Scabs and Itch.

Harts-

Harts-Tongue is of a binding drying Faculty, strengthens the Liver, and is good for the Lask and Bloody-Flux, and is good againſt the biting of Serpents.

Hawk-weed, all the kinds of them are ſomewhat dry and ſomewhat binding, and good for the Heat of the Stomach, the Fits of the Ague, the Wind, provoke Urine, are good for the biting of venomous Beaſts, the Dropſy, the Wind-Cholick, and are good to digeſt thin Phlegm from the Cheſt and Lungs: they are good for Ulcers, Burnings, Inflammations and St. *Anthony's* Fire, and being made into a Poultice, are good for Cramps and Pains in the Joints.

The *Hawthorn-Berries* are very binding, therefore are good to ſtop a Lask; the Berries dried and drank in White-Wine are very good againſt the Stone and Dropſy. The Seed bruiſed after it is cleared from the Down and drank, is good for the tormenting Pains of the Belly.

Hemp is hot, the Seed conſumeth Wind: it is good for the Yellows, openeth the Obſtructions of the Liver and Gall, and is good for hot Inflammations. The Seed looſeneth the Belly, ſtrewed amongſt a Horſe's Provender, and allayeth the troubleſome Humours of the Bowels.

Hedge-Hyſop is drying, and is good outwardly applied to Pains in the Hips or Joints, and is good to cleanſe old and filthy Ulcers.

Herb-Robert is good for the Stone, and to ſtay all inward Flowings of Blood, and is a great Healer of green Wounds, and is good for old Ulcers.

Herb True-love, or *One-Berry*, is exceeding cold, and the Leaves or Berries are good to expel Poiſon of all ſorts, as alſo the Plague and Peſtilence; are good for the Cholick, green Wounds, and to cleanſe old and filthy Ulcers, and good to diſcuſs all Swellings in any Part of the Body.

Horehound, the White and Black, are hot in the ſecond and dry in the third degree; it helpeth the Obſtructions of the Liver, openeth and purgeth, and is good againſt Colds, Conſumptions, Short-Windedneſs, an Expeller of Poiſon, and a Cleanſer of old Sores and Ulcers, cleareth the Eyeſight, and ſnuffed up the Noſtrils, is good for the Yellows.

Horſe-tail is of a binding Faculty, and doth moderately dry, and is good to cure Wounds, nay, tho the Sinews be cut aſunder; and is good not only for all inward Ulcers of the Bladder, but all outward Sores, provoketh Urine, helpeth

helpeth the Stone and Strangury, and is good for all Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes, and pissing of Blood or bleeding at the Nose.

Houseek or *Sengreen* is of a cooling nature, and is good for all inward Heats as well as outward, as in the Eyes and other Parts of the Body, it cooleth all hot Inflammations, as St. *Anthony's* Fire, Scaldings, and Burnings, Cankers, Tettars, Ringworms, *&c.*

Hound's-tongue, but especially the Root, is cold and dry; is is good for Coughs and Short-Windedness, the biting of mad Dogs, and is good for green Wounds, and is good inwardly for the *Farcin.*

Holly-holm or *Hulver-bush*, the Berries are hot and dry, and of thin parts, they expel Wind, they purge the Body of gross and phlegmatick Humours eaten not dried, but if they be dried and beaten to powder and eaten, they bind the Body, and stop Fluxes, and the Lask. The Bark of the Tree and Leaves are good in Fomentations for broken Bones and Members out of joint.

Heath-bush hath a digesting Faculty, the Flowers and Leaves are good to lay upon the biting of venomous Beasts, and the Bark and Leaves may be used for the same Causes as Turmerick is.

Harts-horn is dry, yet it strengtheneth very much, and expelleth Poison.

Honey is hot and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth the Stomach and Entrails, stoppeth Humours and incarnateth Wounds, and cleanseth also the Reins and Bladder.

Hyacinths do little cleanse and bind; the Seeds are dry in the third degree, but the Roots are dry and cold in the first.

Hellebore, vid. *Bears-foot.*

I.

ST. *John's-wort* is hot and dry, being of Substance thin, and is a most excellent Herb for inward Bruises or Hurts, or outward Wounds; it is good to open Obstructions, dissolve Swellings, and strengthen those Parts that are weak and feeble; it is good for Bleedings inward or outward, for the biting of any venomous Creature, and is good to cast forth the Stone in the Bladder by Urine.

Ivy that groweth upon Walls or upon Trees, it hath a certain binding and cold Substance, and somewhat biting. The Flower of it is good for the Bloody-Flux and Lask.

The

The Leaves or Flowers outwardly applied, are good for the Nerves and Sinews. The yellow Berries of them are good for the Yellows, and kill the Worms; are good for the Plague, provoke Urine, break the Stone: they are good for to cleanse foul Ulcers, Sores and green Wounds or for Burnings and Scaldings. The Juice of the Berries and Leaves squirted up the Nose, purgeth the Head from Rheum, and cureth the Ulcers therein, and are good given for a Surfeit.

The *Juniper-Bush* is hot and dry in the third degree, the Berries are also hot, but not so dry; they are good against Poison, Plague, the biting of any venomous Creature, provoke Urine, are good for the Dropsy, strengthen the Stomach, expel Wind; they are good for the Cough, Shortness of Breath, Consumptions, Pains in the Belly, Ruptures, Cramps, and strengthen all the Members of the Body. A Lye made of the Ashes of the Wood, and the Body bathed therewith, is good for the Mange, and all manner of Scabs, the Berries break the Stone, and bring a Horse to a Stomach, and are good for the Falling-Sickness.

Jack-by-the-Hedge, or *Sauce-alone*, is hot and dry, but much lesser than Garlick; the Seed boiled in Wine is a good Remedy against the Wind-Cholick or Stone; the green Leaves are good to heal Ulcers.

Iris is a Root that is hot and dry; it cleanseth and penetheth and is good against Colds, and purgeth Ulcers.

Iron-Rust is hot and dry in the second degree, it comforteth and retaineth evil Humours.

K.

Knot-Grass, all the kinds of them are cold in the second degree, and dry in the third, and are of a binding Quality, it is good to cool the Heat of the Stomach, and to stay any Flux of Blood or Humours, as Lask, Bloody-Flux; it is good for the falling of the Seed, provoketh Urine, helpeth the Strangury, and expelleth the Gravel and Stone, it killeth Worms, is good to cool all manner of Inflammations, and to expel the Poison or Venom of any venomous Creatures; it helpeth Gangrenes, Fistula's, Cankers and Ulcers, and is good for fresh and green Wounds, and to strengthen broken Joints and Ruptures.

Kidney-wort, or *Wall-Pennyroyal*, or *Wall-Pennywort*, the

diſtilled Water of it given, is good to allay all hot Inflammations of the Stomach and Liver, or Bowels; and being outwardly applied, is good for outward Heats, Inflammations and St. *Anthony*'s Fire, and healeth ſore Kidneys, torn and fretted by the Stone; provoketh Urine, is good for the Dropſy, it helpeth the Bloody-Flux, and cureth green Wounds, and ſtayeth their bleeding.

Knapeweed helpeth to ſtay bleeding at the Mouth and Noſe, and other outward Parts, and all inward bleedings of Veins, and alſo the Flux of the Belly and inward Bruiſes; it is good for Ruptures taken inwardly, or outwardly applied, it drieth up the Moiſture of all cankerous and running Sores, and healeth them up gently.

Knee-holm or *Butchers-broom*, the Roots which are chiefly uſed are hot and meanly dry with a Thinneſs of Eſſence, the Decoction of it provoketh Urine, breaketh the Stone, and driveth forth Gravel: it raiſeth up tough Phlegm that ſticketh at the Cheſt and Lungs, and the Berries of it are good for the Yellows.

L.

Ladies-Mantle is good for Inflammations and to ſtay Bleedings, Fluxes of all ſorts, and helpeth Ruptures and Bruiſes; it is one of the beſt Wound-Herbs that is both inwardly taken and outwardly applied.

Lavender is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree, it is good for all the Griefs of the Head and Brain, that proceed of a cold cauſe: it ſtrengthens the Stomach, and frees the Liver and Spleen from Obſtructions, expelleth the dead Foal and Secundine. The Flowers diſtilled and ſo uſed, are good to cauſe Urine, and to eaſe the Pain of the Cholick; it is good for the Falling Sickneſs.

French-Lavender hath a cold and earthy Subſtance, by reaſon whereof it bindeth; it is of force to take away Obſtructions, to extenuate and make thin, to cleanſe and to ſtrengthen not only all the Entrails, but the whole Body alſo.

Sea-Lavender is very aſtringent or binding; the Seed beaten to powder, and given in Wine or Beer helpeth the Cholick and Strangury, and ſtayeth all Fluxes of Blood.

Lavender-Cotton is hot and dry in the third degree, it reſiſteth Poiſon, and helpeth the biting of any venomous

Creature. The Powder of it is good for the mattering of the Yard, it killeth the Worms and Scabs.

Ladies-Smocks or *Cuckow-Flowers*, all the sorts of them are hot and dry in the second degree; they differ not much from the Water-Cresses, they provoke Urine, break the Stone, and warm a cold Stomach.

Lettice is a cold and moist Herb, but not in the extreme degree of Cold; it loosens the Belly being boiled. It is good for the Pains of the Bowels coming by Choler, it is naught for Short-windedness and the Lungs.

Water-Lilly, the Seed of it hath a drying force, the Leaves and Flowers of it are cold and moist, and cool all Inflammations both inward and outward; the Seed as well as the Fruit stayeth Fluxes of Blood or Humours, either inward or outward, and is good for the mattering of the Yard.

Lilly of the Valley, called *Conval-Lilly* or *May-Lilly*, the distilled Water of it helpeth all Inflammations in the Eye, and the Pin and Web.

White Lillies, which are the *Garden Lillies*, are hot, and partly of a subtile substance; but the Root is dry in the first degree, and hot in the second: they expel Poison, and are very good in pestilent Fevers. An Ointment made of the Roots with Hog's-grease is good for Scabs, and unites Sinews when they are cut, and is a great Cleanser of Ulcers: the Oil of it is good to bring any Head-swelling to ripeness to break.

Liquorice is very familiar to the Body of Man or Beast. It hath a certain binding Quality, which warmeth and cooleth neareſt of all to a mean Temperature, and because it is sweet it is meanly moist. It is good for a Cough, Shortness of Breath, and for all the Griefs of the Breast and Lungs, and for the Diseases of the Kidneys and Ulcers in the Bladder: it is good for the Strangury, Heat of Urine; the Powder of it blown into the Eye, helpeth the Pin and Web.

Common Liver-wort is good for all the Diseases of the Liver, both to cool and to cleanse it, and helpeth all Inflammations in any part of the Body, the Yellows, mattering of the Yard; it is good for Tettars, Sores and Scabs.

Loose-strife or *Willow-herb* is good for all manner of Bleedings inward and outward, as Bloody-Fluxes and bleeding Wounds.

Lovage is hot and dry in the third degree: It openeth and digesteth Humours, provoketh Urine, warmeth a cold Stomach, is good for the Pain in the Belly coming by Wind,

resisteth Poison, is good for the Quinsey, taketh away the Redness of the Eyes.

Lung-wort which is a kind of Moss growing on sundry sorts of Trees, is good for Coughs, Diseases of the Lungs both in Man and Beast, and is a most excellent Remedy boiled in Beer for Broken-winded Horses.

Leeks, *Scallions* or *Onions* are hot and dry, and do attenuate and make thin, and loosen all evil Humours in the Body.

Unslak'd Lime is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it drieth and corrodeth.

Laurel and *Bays* are hot and dry, they cleanse and mundify.

Lee is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it is very adust cleansing, and piercing.

Litharge is of two kinds, one of the colour of Gold, the other of Silver; it is dry and bindeth, softneth, incarnateth, cooleth and closeth up Wounds. The golden Colour is the best.

M

THE Root *Madder*, which the Physicians and Dyers use, is disputed whether it bind or open: As it is of an obscure binding force, so it is of Nature and Temperature cold and dry; it is of divers thin parts, by reason whereof the Colour doth easily pierce; it is good for inward Bruises, or outward Bruises; it is good for the Bloody-Flux, provokes Urine, cures the Yellows, by opening the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen; and anointed with Vinegar cures the Tettar or Ring-worm.

White Maiden-hair, all the kinds of them are dry, and make thin, and are between Heat and Coldness. It is good for a Cough, of Shortness Breath, the Yellows, Diseases of the Spleen, Stoppage of Urine and Stone, (in all which Diseases the Wall-Rue is as effectual) stayeth both Bleedings and Fluxes of the Stomach and Belly; being green it loosenth the Belly, and voideth Choler and Phlegm from the Stomach and Liver, cleanseth the Lungs and Blood, and being boiled with Camomile, dissolves Knots, allayeth Swellings, and drieth up moist Ulcers: the Lye made thereof is good to cleanse the Skin from Scabs, and from dry and running Sores.

Golden Maidenhair hath all the Virtues of the former.

Mallows and *Marshmallows*, either of them hath a certain Heat and Moisture, and the Leaves and Roots of them boiled

in water with Parſley and Fennel-roots open the Belly, they are good for hot Agues; they are uſed in Gliſters, the Juice of them given is good for the Falling-Sickneſs; the Leaves bruiſed with Honey, and laid to the Eyes, take away the Inflammation, of them; it is good againſt Poiſon: A Poultice made of them, and applied, is good for all hard Tumours, Inflammations, Impoſthumes and Swellings; it is good for Scaldings and Burnings, and for St. *Anthony's* Fire. *Marſh-mallows* are more effectual in all the Diſeaſes before-mentioned, and in Decoctions and Gliſters, to eaſe all Pains of the Body, making the Paſſages ſlippery for the Stone to deſcend.

Maple-tree, the Decoction of the Leaves and Bark ſtrengthens the Liver, and opens Obſtructions of it and the Spleen, and eaſes the Pain proceeding thence.

Myrobalans purge gently Melancholy, and comfort the Heart and Liver.

Wild Marjoram doth cut, attenuate and make thin, dry and heat, and that in the third degree; ſtrengthens the Stomach, helps the Cough, Conſumption of the Lungs, cleanſeth the Body of Choler, expelleth Poiſon, and is good for the biting of venomous Beaſts, helps the Dropſy, Scab, Mange, Yellows.

Sweet Marjoram is excellent good for all the Infirmities of the Head, ſquirted up the Noſe; and taken inwardly, is good for to comfort a cold Stomach, and the Diſeaſes thereunto belonging; and being outwardly applied, is good for the Obſtructions of the Liver; and being put into an Ointment, it warmeth and comforteth the outward parts, as the Joints and Sinews, for Swellings, and for places out of joint.

Marigolds are hot almoſt in the ſecond degree, eſpecially when they be dry, and are much of the nature of Saffron; the Juice of the Leaves mingled with Vinegar, if you anoint a hot Swelling with it, aſſuageth it; they comfort the Heart and Spirits, and expel any peſtilent or malignant Quality that may annoy them.

Maſter-wort, the Root is hotter than Pepper, and therefore good in all cold Diſeaſes, or Griefs of the Stomach and Body; it is good for Rheum, Shortneſs of Breath, and expelleth the Stone by Urine, caſts out the dead Foal, it is good for the Dropſy, Cramps, Falling-Sickneſs, Poiſon, provokes Sweat, it cleanſeth and healeth all green Wounds.

Sweet Maudlin, the Virtues of it are the ſame with Co[mmon]

mary, or Alecost, and therefore I refer you unto Costmary for satisfaction.

Medlars are cold, dry and binding, the Leaves are of the same nature, they are good to stop all Fluxes of Blood inwardly given; and the dried Leaves beaten to powder, and strewed upon bleeding Wounds, stayeth the bleeding of them, and healeth them up quickly: the Stones of them made into powder, and given in White-Wine, wherein Parsley-Roots hath lain infused all Night, do break the Stone in the Kidneys, and help to expel it.

Melilot or *King's-Cliver* is hot and dry in the first degree, it hath a certain binding Quality, besides a wasting and ripening Quality; it is good for spreading Ulcers, it is used to be put into Glisters, the Flowers of it with Camomile; expel Wind, and put into Poultices to assuage Swellings, with the Juice of it with Oil, Wax, Rosin and Turpentine, is made a most sovereign drawing Emplaster. The Herb boiled in Wine breaketh the Stone.

French and *Dog's Mercury* are hot and dry in the second degree, and have a cleansing faculty; the Juice of it purgeth Choler and watery Humours, it is good for watersh Eyes; it cleanseth the Breast and Lungs from Phlegm. The Juice put up the Nostrils, purgeth the Head of Catarrhs and Rheums, helpeth the Yellows; it helpeth all running Scabs, Tetters, Ringworms, and being applied as a Poultice, allayeth all Swellings and Inflammations; and given in Glisters, it evacuates from the Belly all offensive Humours. The Dog's-Mercury, tho it is less used, may serve to the same purposes to purge watersh Humours.

Of all the *Mints*, *Spear-Mint* or *Heart-Mint* is the most wholesom; it hath a heating, binding and drying Quality. The Juice taken in Vinegar stayeth inward bleeding, dissolveth Impostthumes being laid to with Barley-Meal, and applied with Salt helpeth the biting of a mad Dog; it is good in all manner of breakings out of the Skin, and is good against Poison.

Nep or *Cat-mint* hath the same Faculties with the other.

Horse-Mint is hot and dry, it dissolveth Wind in the Stomach, helpeth the Cholick and Short-windedness; it is good against the biting of venomous Beasts; the Farcin, taken inwardly; and squirted up the Nostrils, purgeth the Head of evil Humours.

Mistletoe, the Leaves and Berries are hot and dry, and of subtile parts; the Bird-lime doth mollify hard Knobs, Tu-

mours and Impoſthumes, ripeneth and diſcuſſeth them, and being mixed with equal Parts of Roſin and Wax, heals old Ulcers and Sores. Miſletoe bruiſed, and the Juice put into the Ears, healeth the Impoſthumes in them in a few days.

The *Miſletoe* of the Oak being given inwardly, cures the Falling-Sickneſs, or hung about his Neck.

Money-wort, or *Herb-Twopence*, it is moderately cold, it ſtays Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes, Bleedings inwardly or outwardly, and is good for all Wounds inward or outward.

Moon-wort is cool and drying more than Adder's-Tongue, and is good for all manner of Wounds both inward and outward; it ſtayeth all inward Bleeding, as Veins broken, Bloody-Fluxes, and the like; it conſolidateth all Fractures and Diſlocations, it is good for Ruptures; it is reported that it will unlock Locks, and unſhoe Horſes that tread upon it.

Tree-Moſs is cold and binding, and is the more binding according to the Nature of the Tree it grows upon; that of the Oak is the moſt binding, and is good to ſtay Fluxes and inward Bleedings. *Moſs* boiled in Milk, with the Powder of Anniſeeds, Elecampane and Liquorice, is a most excellent Medicine for a Cold or Cough.

Mechoacan-Root is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, and purgeth filthy Humours; it is very ſafe, and is good for inveterate Coughs, Cholick, Dolour and the Farcin.

Ground Moſs is dry and aſtringent, without any Heat or Cold; it breaketh the Stone, and driveth it forth by Urine, being boiled in White Wine and given, and being boiled in Water and apply'd, eaſeth all Inflammations and Pains coming of a hot Cauſe.

Mother-wort is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, by reaſon of the cleanſing and binding Quality. It is a very great Comforter of the Heart, provoketh Urine, cleanſeth the Cheſt from cold Phlegm, and killeth the Worms in the Belly; it warms and dries up the cold Humours in the Body, and helps the Cramp and Convulſions of the Sinews.

Mouſe-ear is hot and dry, of a binding Quality; it is good for the Yellows, it is good for the Stone and Pains in the Bowels, and is a very good Herb for inward or outward Wounds; it is good for the Dropſy, and ſtayeth the Fluxes of Blood both outward and inward: the Juice of it is good to ſtay the ſpreading of all fretting Cankers and Ulcers whatſoever.

Mug-

Mugwort is hot and dry in the second degree, and somewhat binding; it expels the dead Foal, it breaks the Stone, and is good for Stoppage of Urine. The Root made up with Hog's-Grease to an Ointment, taketh away Wens and hard Knobs.

The *Mulberry-Tree* is of different parts; the ripe Berries, by reason of their slippery Moisture, doth cleanse and open the Body. The unripe Fruit is cold and dry in the second degree; the Bark, but chiefly the Root, is hot and dry in the third degree: the unripe Fruit being binding, is good to stop Lasks and Bloody-Fluxes; the Bark of the Root killeth the broad Worms in the Belly; the Juice made of the Berries is good for Inflammations and Sores in the Mouth or Throat.

Mullein doth dry, the Leaves are of a digesting and cleansing Quality; the Root is good against Lasks and Fluxes of the Belly; it is good for Burstness, Cramps, and Convulsions, for old Coughs. The Decoction of the Root in red Wine, or in Water wherein Steel hath been quenched, doth stop the Bloody-Flux, it opens the Obstructions of the Bladder and Reins; the Powder of the dry'd Flowers is good for the Pain of the Cholick; the Decoction of the Roots and Leaves are good to dissolve Tumours, Inflammations or Swellings. The Seed bruised in Wine draweth forth Thorns and Splinters.

Common Mustard-seed doth heat and make thin, and is a Loolener of the Belly; it also draweth forth, and is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it cleanseth the Blood, strengthens a weak Stomach, and heats it if cold, and is very good for the Head: it draweth forth Splinters and Bones out of the Flesh, provokes Urine, resisteth Poison; it is good apply'd outwardly to fetch out Cold or any other Pain of the Body or Joints, and is good for all Scurfs or wild Scabs.

Hedge Mustard is good for Diseases of the Chest and Lungs, and for Coughs, Shortness of Breath, Yellows, and is used commonly in Glisters: the Seed is good against Poison or Venom.

Millet is cold in the first degree, and dry in the third, and is of a thin Substance; the Meal of it mix'd with Tar, and apply'd to the biting of any venomous Beast, is good to take out the Venom.

The *Myrtle-Tree* consists of contrary Substances, a cold Earthliness; it hath a subtile Heat, and drieth. The Leaves,

Fruit, and Juice do bind outwardly apply'd; and inwardly taken ſtayeth all Iſſues of Blood.

Maſtich is good to draw forth Splinters and Nails out of the Fleſh, it bindeth and ſtrengthneth weak Parts, and is good for old and new Strains; and inwardly taken ſtrengthens the Stomach, and is good to ſtop the Diſtillation upon the Lungs.

Malva is cold and moiſt, it ſtoppeth, ſoftneth and mitigateth Pain.

Malva Viſcus is very dry, it ſoftneth, looſeneth, and mitigateth.

Mace is dry in the third degree, without Heat, and only bindeth, it is a Comforter of the Heart and Spirits.

Manna is of equal Temper, hot and dry; it openeth, mollifieth, and incarnateth.

Mariaton or *Martiaton* is a hot Unguent againſt all cold Humours; it helpeth the Grief of the Sinews, purgeth cold watry Matter, and ripeneth Tumours.

Marrow, of what kind ſoever, is cold and moiſt, and mollifieth Ulcers. Now the beſt Marrow is that of a Hart or old Stag, the next that of a Calf, the next that of a Sheep, and the laſt that of a Goat.

Myrrh is a ſovereign Gum, it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, it conglutinateth, bindeth, and cleanſeth Wounds; it is good againſt all Colds, it killeth Worms, and helpeth Purſineſs, for tho it doth cleanſe much, yet it doth not exaſperate the Arteries. Alſo it doth incarnate; it helps all Diſeaſes of the Lungs, the Cholick, ſtops Fluxes.

Morcoſita or *Marcaſita* is hot and dry, it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth Humours.

The Fruit of the *Myrtle-Tree* is dry in the third degree, it doth bind good, and looſen evil Humours.

N.

Narlwort or *Whitlow-graſs* is good for Impoſthumes in the Joints.

Nep, or *Catmint*, is good for the Head-Ach coming of cold Cauſes, all Catarrhs, Rheums; it is good for Windineſs of the Stomach and Belly, Colds, Coughs, and Shortneſs of Breath: the Juice given inwardly is good for Bruiſes, the Decoction of it is good to bathe Scabs with.

Nettles are of Temperature dry, a little hot, ſcarce in the firſt degree; they are of thin and ſubtile Parts. The Seed provoketh Urine, and expelleth Gravel and Stone out

of the Reins and Bladder; it is good against the biting of venomous Beasts, biting of mad Dogs. The Juice of them is good to cleanse Sores, Fistula's, and Wounds, such as are fretting and corroding; and against Scabs and Manginess: it is good to strengthen those places that are out of joint, and is good for Aches and Defluxions of Humours upon the Sinews. The Seed of them is a most excellent thing to fatten a Horse, being strew'd amongst his Provender.

Common Nightshade is wholly used to cool hot Inflammations, either inwardly or outwardly, and is no way dangerous to use, as the other Nightshades are. It is good to wash a sore Mouth with, as also all corroding and fretting Ulcers and Fistula's. A Cloth wet in the Juice, and apply'd to any Swelling, taketh it away. Have a care you take not the deadly Nightshade for this; if you know it not, you may let them both alone.

The Roots of *Narcissus* or *Daffodil* are hot and dry in the second degree, and are of such wonderful Qualities in drying, that they glue together great Wounds, either in the Flesh, Veins, Sinews or Tendons; they have also a certain cleansing and attractive Faculty. They take away the Aches and Pains in the Joints, and stamp'd with Hog's-grease and Leven, bringeth to Maturation hard Imposthumes; and stamp'd with Darnel-meal and Honey, draweth forth Thorns and Scabs out of any part of the Body. The Juice of the Root drunk is good for the Cough and Cholick.

Neesing-root or *Neesing-wort* is hot and dry in the third degree, and hath been taken for a wild kind of Pellitory of the Wall.

Navel-wort, or *Penny-wort* of the Wall, is of a moist Substance, somewhat cold, and of a certain obscure binding Quality. It cooleth, repelleth and driveth back, scoureth, consumeth, and wasteth away.

Nutmeg is hot and dry in the second degree, and somewhat astringent; it breaketh Wind, and is good for all cold Diseases of the Body.

Nutshells burnt are hot and dry, and do skin and stop the Flux of Matter.

Nasturtium is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it burneth, draweth, melteth, and killeth Worms.

Nitrum is of the same nature as Salt-petre is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O.

THE Leaves and Bark of the *Oak* and Acorn-Cups do bind and dry in the third degree, being somewhat cold withal. The Powder of the Bark or Cups stayeth all manner of Fluxes and Lasks, and stayeth the mattering of the Yard: the Acorns procure Urine, expel Poison. The distilled Water of the Oaken Buds are good taken inwardly, or outwardly apply'd, to assuage Inflammations, and stop all manner of Fluxes. It is good in pestilent and hot Fevers; it cooleth the Heat of the Liver, breaketh the Stone of the Kidney: the Water found in old hollow Oaks, is good to anoint foul Scabs.

Oats are naturally dry, they do dry, bind, cleanse and comfort all the inward parts; and are the only Simple that agrees with the Composition of a Horse's Body; and therefore the Oil of them is the only absolute and perfect Medicine that can be administred for any inward Sickness. You are taught how to make it in my first Part.

Oaken Apples are hot and piercing, and much of the nature of Galls.

Oneberry-Herb, *True-love*, or *Herb-Paris*, is very cold whereby it represseth the Rage and Force of Poison, both the Berries and Powder of the Herb.

One-blade, one Ounce of the Powder of the Roots is a sovereign Remedy against the Plague, and is a very good Wound-herb.

Orchis, which is call'd *Dog's-Stones*, they are hot and moist of Operation, and provoke Lust very much, and kill Worms.

Onions are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and do attenuate and make thin; they help the biting of a mad Dog and other venomous Creatures: used with Honey and Rue, they kill Worms. The Juice of them is good for Burnings and Scaldings.

Orpins are cold and dry, and of subtile parts, and are seldom used inwardly, but outwardly to cool all Heat of Inflammations upon any Hurt or Wound, and are good for Scaldings and Burnings. The Juice of it and Sallet-Oil being beaten together, and anointed therewith, and the Juice of it mix'd with Honey, and given down his throat, you shall find it a better and sooner Cure than a Dog's Turd.

Orpiment is a kind of Metal, of which the artificial call'd *Arsnick*, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the

second; it bindeth, corrodeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a Corrosive.

Opium is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a Liquor made with Poppy, dry'd and mix'd with Saffron, and doth astonish, and provoke Sleep.

Olibanum is hot and dry in the second degree, and warmeth, bindeth, closeth, and incarnateth Wounds.

Oil of Olives or *Sallet-Oil* is of a very temperate Nature, and changeth its Quality according to the Nature of the Simples mix'd with it; it is a Cleanser of the Body by a gentle way of purging from molten Grease, and expelleth Poison.

Opoponax is a Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree; it purgeth thick Phlegm from the remote Parts of the Body, *viz.* Brain, Joints, Feet, Nerves and Breast, and strengthens all those Parts if they be weak: it helps also old rotten Coughs, Gouts, Swellings of the Spleen, Strangury, Difficulty of pissing. You may give one Ounce of it corrected with Mastick, and dissolved in Vinegar.

P.

P*Arsley* is hot and dry, but the Seed is more hot and dry, which is hot in the second degree, and dry almost in the third. The Root is of moderate Heat, it provoketh Urine, and breaketh Wind in the Stomach and Bowels, and looseneth the Body by opening the Obstructions of the Liver; it breaketh the Stone, expelleth Poison, and is good for the Yellows.

Parsley-Piert or *Parsley-Breakstone* is hot and dry, and of a cutting Quality; it provokes Urine, and breaks the Stone, and helps the Strangury.

Parsnip-Roots are moderately hot, and more dry than moist; they procure Lust, tho windy, provoke Urine: but the wild Parsnip hath a more cutting, attenuating, cleansing and opening Quality, and is of more use in Physick; it helpeth the biting of venomous Creatures, or dissolveth Wind in the Stomach and Bowels. The Seed is of more use than the Root: The Country-People call them Madneps.

Cow-Parsnips, the Seed of them are of a cutting Quality, and good for a Cough, Short-windedness, Falling-Sickness, Yellows, the Root scraped upon a Fistula, taketh away the hard Skin growing thereon; the Seed given cleanseth the Belly from tough Phlegm.

Pelli-

Pellitory of Spain is very hot and burning, and is the best Purger of the Head that is from Pains, the Powder of it being blown up his Noſtrils.

Pellitory of the Wall cleanſeth and bindeth, it is good for an old and dry Cough, Short-windedneſs, Stone, Gravel, Worms, and is put into Gliſters to mitigate the Pains coming by Wind: it is good for the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, and for a ſore Throat; it aſſuageth hot Swellings, Impoſthumes, Burnings and Scaldings by Fire or Water, or all other hot Tumours or Inflammations; it cleanſeth foul rotten Ulcers and Scabs.

Pennyroyal, both the ſorts of it are of a drying Faculty and of ſubtile Parts; it maketh thin tough Phlegm, and warmeth any cold Place where it is apply'd; it expelleth the dead Foal and Secundine, it helpeth the biting of venomous Creatures, it cleanſeth foul Ulcers, it is good for Cramps, Convulſions of the Sinews, the Cough, Dropſy, and Yellows.

Piony Male and *Female* doth gently bind with a kind of ſweetneſs, it is a little hot, but it is dry and of ſubtile parts; it is good for the Falling-Sickneſs, the Root being hung about the Neck, and ſome of the Juice of it given inwardly, and is good for the Nightmare.

Pepper-wort or *Dittander* is good for old Pains and Griefs in Joints, and for Scabs.

Perwincle is hot in the ſecond degree, and ſomewhat dry and binding; it is good to ſtop Fluxes of Blood, and all manner of bleeding inwardly and outwardly.

St. Peter's-wort is of Temperature hot and dry, and is of the ſame nature as *St. John's-wort*, but ſomewhat weaker; it purgeth cholerick Humours, helpeth old Pains and Griefs, and Burnings by Fire.

Pimpernel, both the ſorts of it are of a drying Faculty without biting, and ſomewhat of a drawing Faculty, inſomuch that it will draw forth Splinters out of the Fleſh, and purgeth the Head put into the Noſtrils; they are great Cleanſers of Ulcers, and Sodderers up of Wounds. It is good for the Plague, and all Venom taken by venomous Beaſts and mad Dogs; it opens the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, provoketh Urine, expelleth the Stone and Gravel; the Juice of it cleareth the Sight.

Ground-Pine or *Chamepitys* is good for the Strangury, and all Diſeaſes of the Liver and Spleen, and gently openeth the Body, caſteth out the dead Foal; it is good for all Pains in

in the Joints, Dropsy, Yellows, Poison, Falling-Sickness, to cleanse foul Ulcers, and to fodder up the Lips of green Wounds.

Water-Plantain is cold and dry of Temperature, is good against Burnings or Scaldings, and is good to stay Fluxes of Blood.

Ribwort-Plantain is cold and dry in the second degree, as are the other Plantains; the Virtues are referred to the kinds of Plantain.

Land-Plantain is of a mix'd Temperature, for it hath in it a certain wateriſh Colour, with a little harshness and coldness, and is therefore cold and dry in the second degree. The Juice of it is good for all Pains in the Bowels, and stayeth the Distillation of Rheum from the Head, and is good for all manner of Fluxes of Blood, inwardly taken or outwardly apply'd: it is good for Shortness of Breath and Consumption of the Lungs. The Seed is good for the Dropsy, Falling-Sickness, Yellows, Stoppings of the Liver. The distilled Water of it is good to cool the hot Inflammation of the Eyes, and taketh away the Pin and Web; it is good for all manner of Burnings and Scaldings, is good for sore Mouths, and is good for all Ulcers and Cankers; it is good for all manner of Scabs, Tettars, and running Sores, and is a very good Wound-herb, either inwardly taken or outwardly apply'd.

Polypody of the Oak, *Polypody of Fern*, *Indian Polypody*, are dry without biting: it purgeth Choler and Phlegm, and is good for the Cholick; it is good against a Cough, Shortness of Breath, and Distillations of thin Rheums upon the Lungs.

Poppies of all sorts are cold, they are great Causers of Sleep, they stay the Flux of the Belly. The Leaves or Heads made with a little Vinegar, and brought to a Poultice with Barley-Meal and Hog's-greaſe, cooleth Inflammations and St. *Anthony's* Fire.

Prim or *Privet*, the Leaves and Roots of it are binding, and good to wash sore Mouths, to cool Inflammations, and to dry up Fluxes, and for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, and all Swellings and Impostbumes; and are good against all Fluxes of the Belly and Stomach, and Bloody-Flux.

Pepper is hot in the third degree. All the sorts of them heat, provoke Urine, digest, draw, disperse and cleanse the Dimness of the Sight, and are good to be put into Medicaments for the Eyes. It is an Expeller of Poison, and is

good

good for all Diſeaſes of the Breaſt and Lungs, helps Wind, is good for the Cholick.

Pitch is drawn from the *Pine-tree*, by the Force of Fire, and is the laſt running, and *Tar* is the firſt, which is the thinner; it is hot and dry, and *Tar* more hot, and ſtone Pitch more drying: it conglutinateth and gathereth together.

Petrolæum is a certain Oil made of *Salt-Peter* and *Bitumen*, and is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, healeth Wounds, and comforteth weak Members.

Philonium, of which there are two kinds, *Philonium Romanum*, and *Philonium Perſicum*, are excellent Poſitions, and moſt comfortable in the Loſs of Blood.

Pomegranat is cold and dry, provoketh Urine, and is good for the Stomach: the Rind, Seed or Flowers of them beaten to powder and given, ſtop the Lask and all Iſſues of Blood.

Pomecitron, the Rind of it is good againſt all Poiſons.

Q.

Queen of the Meadows, *Meadow-ſweet* or *Mead-ſweet*, is cold, dry and binding, and is good for all manner of inward or outward Bleedings; it helps the Cholick, ſtayeth the Flux of the Belly, healeth old Ulcers, Cankers and Fiſtula's: the diſtilled Water of it is good for the Inflammation of the Eyes.

R.

Radiſh, *Horſe-Radiſh* and *Garden Radiſh*, are hot in the third degree, aud dry in the ſecond: they drive forth the Gravel and Stone out of the Bladder by Urine.

Horſe-Radiſh is hot and dry in the third degree, and hath a drying and cleanſing Quality; it killeth Worms, and being bruiſed and laid to old Griefs, taketh them away, and is a Provoker of Urine, and likewiſe good for the Dropſy.

Ragwort is called St. *James-wort* or *Stagger-wort*, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree; it cleanſeth, digeſteth and diſcuſſeth. The Juice of it is good for Ulcers in the Mouth or Throat, for hard Swellings, Impoſthumations and Quinſey; it is good to ſtay Catarrhs, thin Rheums and Diſtillations from the Head into the Eyes, Noſe and Lungs. The Juice is good to heal all green Wounds, and to cleanſe

and heal all filthy Ulcers in any Part of the Body, it is good for all Pains and Aches in any Part of the Body likewise.

Rattle-Grass, there is two sorts of it, the red and the yellow; the red is good to heal up Fistula's and hollow Ulcers, and stay the Flux of Humours to them, and other Fluxes of Blood, being boiled in red Wine and given. The yellow *Rattle-Grass* is good for a Cough, and Dimness of Sight, the Seed being put therein.

Restharrow or *Chammoack*, is hot in the third degree; it cutteth and maketh thin, it provoketh Urine and driveth forth the Stone, which the Bark of the Root doth very powerfully. It is good to open the Obstructions of the Liver and Spleen, and is good for a Rupture.

The *Wild Rochet* is hot and dry in the third degree; it provoketh Urine exceedingly, expelleth Poison, killeth Worms, and other noisom Creatures that breed in the Body.

Winter-Rochet or *Cresses*, is hot and dry in the second degree. The Seed of them provoketh Urine, helpeth the Strangury, and expels Gravel and Stone. It is a good Wound-herb inwardly given, or outwardly applied; it cleanseth and healeth foul Ulcers and Sores by the drying Quality they have.

Roses of all sorts, the Leaves and the Flowers of them consist of divers Parts, as binding, yet moist and watry, they come very near to a mean Temperature; the white and the red are very binding, and those that are not full blown, do cool and bind more than those that are full blown. They being dried and beaten to powder, stay the Lask and pissing of Blood; the red strengthens the Heart and Stomach, assuages Inflammations, the Mattering of the Yard and Fluxes of the Belly; the Beards of them are binding and cooling.

Rosa-Solis or *Sun-dew*, the Water of it distilled helps a Salt Rheum distilling from the Lungs, Wheezing, Shortness of Breath, the Cough, and to heal Ulcers in the Lungs, comforteth the Heart.

Rosemary is hot and dry in the second degree, and of a binding Quality, and is good against all Fluxes of Blood and cold Diseases of the Head and Stomach: It is good for the Lethargy and Falling-Sickness, it opens the Obstructions of the Liver, and is good for Windiness of the Belly; it is good for dim Eyes, Yellows, Cough, Consumption.

Rhubarb

Rhubarb, the beſt, which is the *Indian*, hath two contrary Natures; for if you either cut, ſcrape or grate it, then it is a Looſener, for it diſſolveth and openeth the Liver, and expelleth the Obſtructions thereof; it expulſeth all bad Humours in and about the Heart, Liver and Spleen; it cleanſeth the Body, and ſendeth away the peccant Humours among the Excrements, and all ſuch things as may annoy or offend the Entrails. But if you ſhall pound and beat it in a Mortar, or otherwiſe, the Spirit thereof being a ſubtile Body, will tranſire and fly away, whereby the Operation thereof will be to bind, and no way profitable.

Garden-Patience or *Monk's-Rhubarb*, is a kind of Dock, bearing the name *Rhubarb*, for the purging Quality therein. It purgeth Choler and Phlegm. The Seed binds the Belly and ſtayeth any Lask or Bloody-Flux; the diſtilled Water of it is good to cleanſe and heal foul Ulcers, and to allay the Inflammation of them.

Baſtard-Rhubarb hath all the Properties of the *Monk's-Rhubarb*, but more effectually for inward and outward Diſeaſes; it cureth the Yellows. The Seed boiled in Wine helpeth the Farcin, the Stone, provoketh Urine, helpeth the Dimneſs of the Sight, it is a Cleanſer and Cooler of the Blood.

The Properties of the *Engliſh Rhubarb* are the ſame with the other, but much more effectual, and it hath all the Properties of the *Indian Rhubarb*, except the Force of purging, wherein it hath but half the Strength: It purgeth the Body from Choler and Phlegm; it cleanſeth the Stomach, Liver and Blood, opening Obſtructions, curing the Yellows, Dropſy, cleanſeth the Reins, being taken with *Venice* Turpentine.

Meadow-Rue bruiſed is good for old Sores; it is a Looſener of the Body, it is good for the Yellows and Plague.

Garden-Rue is hot and dry in the latter end of the third degree, and the *Wild* in the fourth; it is of thin Parts, it conſumeth Wind, and digeſteth groſs and tough Humours, provoketh Urine, is good againſt Poiſon, the Plague, the Pains and Gripings of the Belly. It is good for the Cough, Wind-Cholick, Worms, Dropſy, ſtops bleeding; it is good for the Farcin, Scabs, Tettars and Ring Worms.

Rupture-wort is dry, cloſeth up and faſtneth, it is good for the Ruptures, Fluxes, Mattering of the Yard, Strangury, ſtopping of Urine, Stone and Gravel. It is good for

or all griping Pains in the Stomach and Belly, Obſtructions of the Liver, Yellows, Worms, Wounds. It ſtayeth the Defluxions of Rheums from the Head, and drieth up the Moiſture of Fiſtula's and Ulcers.

Reeds are hot and dry in the ſecond degree, and are Drawers of Splints and Thorns out of the Fleſh.

Rye is hotter than Wheat, and is more forcible in waſting and conſuming away; it ripeneth Impoſthumes, Boyls and other Swellings.

All the *Roſins* are hot and dry, the Roſin of the Cedar-Tree is the hotter, the Roſin of the Pitch-Tree is not ſo ſharp and biting, and therefore not ſo hot; the Roſin of the Fir-Tree is in a mean between both; the liquid Roſin of the Pine is moiſter; the Roſin which is put in Plaſters, which is our common Roſin, ſtoppeth, ſoftneth, cleanſeth, draweth and purgeth Wounds, and is good againſt cold Cauſes.

Reſigallo is a Compoſition of old Sulphur, or Orpiment, and unſlak'd Lime, and is a moſt ſtrong Corroſive.

S

Saffron is binding, it is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree; it ſtrengthens the Heart, is good for the Conſumption of the Lungs, and Shortneſs of Breath; it is an excellent thing in Epidemical Diſeaſes, as the Plague, and is good for the Yellows.

Garden-Sage is hot and dry in the beginning of the third degree, or in the latter end of the ſecond; it is good for the Head and Brain, ſtrengthens the Sinews, reſtoreth Health: It is good for a Cough, Biting of Serpents, expelleth Wind, drieth the Dropſy, and is a Cleanſer of the Blood; it is good to put into Water to waſh a ſore Mouth withal, and is good for old Cankers and Sores.

Wood-Sage is hot and dry, yet leſs than the common Sage, being hot and dry in the ſecond degree; it digeſteth and diſcuſſeth Swellings and Knots in the Fleſh: it is good for Ulcers, Sores, Burſtneſs, green Wounds, and provoketh Urine.

Solomon's-Seal is binding; the Roots of it are good in Wounds and Hurts, to cleanſe them, and to dry and reſtrain Fluxes of Humours and Bloody-Flux and Lask: they are good for Ruptures and Burſtneſs taken inwardly, or outwardly applied, and are good for inward or outward Bruiſes.

Sanicle is bitter, and hath a certain binding Quality, so that it cleanseth and strengthneth, and is hot and dry in the second degree, and in some Authors hot in the third; it is a most excellent Wound-herb, either outwardly applied, or inwardly given, and is good for Ulcers and Impostumes in any part of the Body. It is good to stop a Lask and all Fluxes of Blood, either inwardly or outwardly. It is good for the Ulceration of the Kidneys, and Pains of the Bowels and Ruptures. It is good in binding, restraining, healing, drying and healing, as Comfrey, Bugle, Self-heal, or any other of the Consounds, or Vulnerary Herbs whatsoever.

Saracens Consound or *Saracens Wound-wort*, is dry in the third degree, with some manifest Heat; it is a good Wound-herb, and is good for the Obstructions of the Liver and Gall, Yellows, Dropsy, for all Ulcers of the Reins, or other inward Wounds and Bruises, and for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, and Pains in the Stomach.

Sauce-alone, vid. *Jack-in-the-Hedge*.

Winter-Savory and *Summer-Savory* is very good for the Cholick, the Summer-kind is the best; it expelleth Wind in the Stomach and Bowels, it provoketh Urine, it cutteth tough Phlegm in the Chest and Lungs: the Juice dropped into the Eyes cleareth the Sight, if it proceed of thin cold Humours, distilling from the Brain; and being used in a Poultice is good for old Aches and Pains in the Hips and Joints coming of Cold.

Savin is hot and dry in the third degree, of subtile parts, it cleanseth old Ulcers, being dried and mixed with Honey. It is good to break Carbuncles, Plague-Sores, Farcins, Worms, Scabs, Itch and running Sores, Cankers, Tetters, Ring-Worms; it kills the quick Foal, and expels the dead.

Common Saxifrage, the Root and Seed thereof is of a warm and hot Composition, it cleanseth the Reins and Bladder, and dissolveth the Stone, and expels the Gravel by Urine, helps the Strangury, cleanseth the Stomach and Lungs from Phlegm.

Burnet-Saxifrage, the Seed, Leaves and Roots of the great and small, are hot and dry in the third degree, and of thin and subtile parts; they have the same Properties as Parsley hath in provoking Urine, and ease the Pains of the Cholick, break and avoid the Stone by Urine, and are good against Venom, and for Cramps and Convulsions. The Juice of it dipped into Wounds drieth up the Moisture of them.

Scab-

Scabious, three ſorts there are of it, though there be many others, yet theſe be moſt familiar, and the Virtues of theſe and the reſt are much alike. It is hot and dry in the latter end of the ſecond degree, or near hand in the third, and of thin and ſubtile parts. It is good for Coughs, Short-windedneſs, and all other Diſeaſes of the Breaſt and Lungs, ripening and digeſting cold Phlegm, and other tough Humours, it ripeneth alſo all inward Ulcers and Impoſthumes, it is good for running and ſpreading Scabs, Tettars and Ring-worms.

Engliſh Scurvey-Graſs is evidently hot and dry, very like in taſte and quality to the Garden-Creſſes, it openeth and cleanſeth the Blood, the Liver and Spleen; it openeth Obſtructions, and evacuateth cold, clammy, and phlegmatick Humours, both from the Liver and Spleen: the Juice of it is good for foul Sores in the Mouth.

Self-heal is of the Temperature of Bugle, moderately hot, dry, and ſomething binding; it is a moſt excellent Herb for inward and outward Wounds or Bruiſes in any part of the Body, it ſtayeth the Flux of Blood in any Wound, and cleanſeth foul Ulcers and Sores.

The *Service-tree*, the Berries are cold and binding, it is good to ſtay Bleedings of Wounds, Lasks and Fluxes of Blood.

Shepherd's-Purſe is cold, dry, and very much binding, it helps all Fluxes of Blood, either cauſed by inward or outward Wounds, and alſo Flux of the Belly, and Bloody-Flux, or piſſing of Blood; is good for the Yellows, and being made into a Poultice helps Inflammations, and St. *Anthony's* Fire: an Ointment being made thereof, is good for all Wounds in the Head.

Smallage is hotter, drier, and much more medicinable than Parſley; it openeth the Obſtructions in the Liver and Spleen, cleanſeth the Blood, provokes Urine, helps the Yellows, Agues, the Juice is good for ſore Mouths and Throats, cleanſeth all the foul Ulcers and Cankers, being waſhed therewith. The Seed is good to expel Wind, kill Worms; the Roots are effectual to all the Purpoſes aforeſaid, and ſtronger than the Herb.

Soap-wort or *Bruiſe-wort* is hot and dry, and a little ſcouring; the Juice is good to heal up green Wounds, it provokes Urine, expels the Gravel and Stone, and is good for the Dropſy.

The *Sorrels* are moderately cold, dry and binding; the

common Sorrel is good to cool hot Diseases, Inflammations or Heat of Blood, for it purifieth it; it killeth Worms, and is a Cordial to the Heart, which the Seed doth more effectually, being more drying and binding, and therefore stayeth the Humours of the Bloody-Flux, and Flux of the Stomach. It is good to resist Poison, expelleth the Gravel and Stone, helpeth the Yellows. The Juice of it with Vinegar killeth the Itch, Scabs, Tettars, Ringworms and the like.

Wood-Sorrel is cold and dry, like Sorrel, and serves for all the Purposes that the other Sorrels do, and is more effectual in hindring the Putrefaction of Blood, and Ulcers in the Mouth and Body, and cooleth Heats, Inflammations, and pestilential Fevers, or other contagious Sickness.

Sow-Thistles are of a mixt Temperature, for they consist of a watersh Substance, cold and binding; the Milk of them is good for Short-windedness, and causeth the Stone and Gravel to be voided by Urine: it helpeth the Strangury, it causeth Milk in Cattel.

Southernwood is hot and dry in the third degree; the Seed is an Antidote against all deadly Poison, and is good to kill Worms; it is good to draw forth Thorns out of the Flesh; the Ashes of it drieth up old Ulcers that are without Inflammation.

Spignel provokes Urine, helpeth the Strangury, and all Joint-Aches, the Powder of the Root with Honey breaketh tough Phlegm, and drieth up the Phlegm that fasteneth upon the Lungs; the Roots are good against the biting and stinging of venomous Beasts.

Spleenworts are of thin parts, and are in a mean Temper. It is good for the Spleen, helpeth the Strangury, wasteth the Stone in the Bladder, and is good for the Yellows.

Strawberry-Leaves do cool and dry with a binding Quality, they are good for all hot Inflammations and Swellings, applied outwardly, and being inwardly given, after they have been boiled in Vinegar, cool the Liver and Blood, and assuage all Inflammations in the Reins, provoke Urine, and allay the Heat and Sharpness thereof, stay the Bloody-Flux. The Juice of the Leaves are good to make a Lotion for a sore Mouth or Ulcers therein.

Succory and *Endive* are cold and dry in the second degree, and withal somewhat binding; they cleanse phlegmatick and watersh Humours out of the Stomach, open the Obstructions of the Liver, Gall and Spleen, are good for the Yellows, Heat of the Reins, Urine and Dropsy. The Water or the Juice

Juice of the bruiſed Leaves applied outwardly, allays Swellings, Inflammations and St. *Anthony's* Fire, and is good to wath peſtilential Sores.

Wild Succory agrees in Nature and Temperature with the *Garden Succory*; and as it is more bitter, ſo it doth more ſtrengthen the Stomach and Liver.

Stone-crop, *Prick-Madam*, or *Small Houſleek*, grows upon the ground with divers Branches, with thick and whitiſh green Leaves; it is cold in quality, and ſomewhat binding, and therefore very good to ſtay Defluxions that flow from the Eyes: it ſtops Bleeding both inward and outward, helps Cankers and all fretting Sores and Ulcers; it abates the Heat of Choler, expels Poiſon, reſiſteth peſtilent Fevers, and is good for Agues: you may take it inwardly for all theſe Diſeaſes. It is good likewiſe for the Farcin.

Snap-Dragon, all the ſorts of them are hot and dry, and of ſubtile parts.

Star-wort is of a mean Temperature in cooling and drying; it is good for the falling of the Gut by the Inflammation of the Fundament, and is good for the Falling-Sickneſs.

White Sattin-Flower, the Seed of it is hot, dry and ſharp of Taſte, and good for the Falling-Sickneſs. There may be made an excellent Ointment of the Leaves of it and Sanicle ſtamped together, adding thereunto Oil and Wax.

Sea Star-wort is hot and dry in the third degree; the Roots of it given in White-Wine, driveth forth by Urine watry and groſs Humours, and therefore it is good for the Dropſy and Poiſon, and is good for all inward and outward Wounds.

Staves-Acre, the Seed of it is extreme hot, almoſt in the fourth degree; being beaten to Powder, and mixed with Oil or Lard, kills Lice, Itch or Mange in Man or Beaſt. It is dangerous to give it inwardly.

Sneeſe-wort all the kinds of them are hot and dry in the third degree.

Star of Bethlehem, the kinds of them are temperate in Heat and Dryneſs; the Roots of them roaſted and applied with Honey in the manner of a Poultice, healeth old eating Ulcers, and ſoftneth and diſſcuſſeth hard Tumours.

Spinach is cold and moiſt almoſt in the ſecond degree, but rather moiſt; it looſeneth the Belly, but maketh it windy.

Set-wall, vid. *Valerian*.

Senna is of a mean Temperature, neither hot nor cold,

yet inclining to Heat, and dry almoſt in the third degree, it is of a purging Faculty, and that in ſuch ſort that it is not troubleſom, having withal a certain binding Quality, which it leaveth after the Purging.

All *Spurges* are hot and dry almoſt in the fourth degree, of a ſharp and biting quality, fretting and conſuming; the Milk and Sap is in more ſpecial uſe than the Fruit and Leaves, the Root is of leaſt ſtrength, the ſtrongeſt is that of the Sea.

Scammony, the Juice of it doth mightily purge, and is the ſtrongeſt Purger whatſoever, and is very hurtful to the Stomach, if you mix it not with *Aloes*, or ſome other things to correct the evil Qualities of it.

Sycamore-tree, the Fruit of it is ſomewhat ſweet of Taſte, and of Temperature moiſt after a ſort, and cold, as be the Mulberries. The Liquor that iſſueth out of the Bark of this Tree in the beginning of the Spring, before the Fruit appeareth, taken up with a Spoon or Spunge, and dried or made up into a Cake, and kept in a Gally-pot, mollifieth and cloſeth Wounds together, and diſſolveth groſs Humours, and is good inwardly given, or applied outwardly againſt the biting of Serpents; it doth ſoon putrefy.

Storax or *Stirax* is a ſweet Gum, which is of a heating, mollifying and concocting Quality; it is an excellent Perfume for the Head, and draweth many evil Humours from thence, as Colds and other Sickneſſes in the Head.

Sanguis Draconis is ſuppoſed to come from the Dragon-tree, it hath an aſtringent Faculty, and is good to ſtay Fluxes of Blood.

Sloes, vid. *Black-Thorn*.

Scallions are hot and dry in the ſecond degree, they are good for Scabs, and for the Lungs.

Saſſafras or *Ague-tree*, the Boughs and Branches thereof are hot and dry in the ſecond degree; the Rind is hotter, the Root is the beſt part of it, it procureth the ſame effects as Cinnamon doth.

Sanders white, red and yellow, are all cold and dry in the ſecond or third degree; they are of an aſtringent and ſtrengthning Quality; they drive back Humours, and ſtay Defluxions from any part, help Inflammations, and cool the Heat of Fevers. The yellow is accounted the beſt.

Snails with Shells are of the ſame Nature as Snails without Shells are.

Snails without Shells do conglutinate very much, and are good

good to put in Medicines for Ruptures; the distilled Water of them is good for a Consumption.

Sandevoir is most excellent for dim or rheumatick Eyes, being laid asteep in running Water.

Soap is hot, it draweth forth Splinters and Nails; it mollifieth, drieth, cleanseth and purgeth.

Sal-nitre, some use for this *Salt-Peter*, it is hot and dry, and evaporateth; it comforteth Sinews, and taketh away Tiredness and Weariness.

Sal-gemma is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry, it cleanseth and bindeth.

Sallows or *Willows* bind and dry vehemently.

Salt is hot and dry in the second degree, cleanseth and killeth Worms.

Sagina, or *Saggina*, or *Sorge*, of some called *Pannicum Indicum*, is only hot and dry.

Salmoniack is hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanseth.

Sarcocolla is a Gum of the kind of *Euphorbium*, and is hot and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth, incarnateth and comforteth Wounds.

Sevadalce is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree; it cleanseth and openeth.

Serapino is a Gum of *Ferula*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree; it mollifieth, looseneth and is good for Colds.

T.

TAR is drawn out of the Pine-tree, and is the first running, Pitch is the second, it is hot and dry in the second degree; it is good against a Cold or evil Humours gathered together in the Breast, and draweth Wounds. It is outwardly applied with other Ingredients to the Scratches, and is good to anoint a Horse's Nose with, to keep the Infection of the Plague from him.

English Tobacco killeth Worms, a little of it chopped small or beaten to Powder, after it is very dry, and put amongst other Medicines. It is good for the Stone in the Kidneys, to help the Pain, and to expel the Gravel; it is good boiled in Chamberlye with Brimstone, Allum and green Copperas, to kill the Mange or all manner of Scabs; the Oil of it is good for all manner of Aches, Cramps and Convulsions; a Pipe filled with it, and put into a Horse's Fundament, which the Wind of his Body will draw out, is a very good Glister

for all manner of Worms there, and to cleanse his Body.

Tamarinds are cold in the third degree, and dry in the second; they are very temperate, and gently purge adust Humours.

The *Tamarisk-tree* hath a cleansing and cutting Faculty, manifest Dryness; it is somewhat binding, it is good for inward Bleedings, Cholick, Yellows, biting of venomous Beasts: the Decoction of it with some Honey is good to stay Gangrenes, and fretting Sores and Ulcers, and to kill Nits and Lice, being washed therewith. The Wood or Bark is good for all the Purposes aforesaid, as well as the Branches; it is good given to a Horse to kill the Farcin.

Garden-Tansy that smells sweet, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the third; and that without smell is hot and dry, and of a mean Temperature: it is good to consume phlegmatick Humours. The Decoction of the common Tansy opens all stoppings, is good for the Strangury, it expels Wind; the Seed is good for the Worms, being boiled with Oil is good for shrunk Sinews and Cramps.

Wild Tansy is cold and dry almost in the third degree, having a binding Quality; it stayeth the Lask and all Fluxes whatsoever, it is good for Burstness, and for all Joint-Aches or Pains; it is good for inward or outward Wounds, and to heal running Sores; it cooleth the hot Fits of the Ague, be they ever so violent. The distilled Water of it dropp'd into the Eyes, or a Cloth wet therein, taketh away the Heat and Inflammation of them.

Thistles in general, all of them provoke Urine, the Juice of them will cause Hair to grow where it is fallen off.

Treacle-Mustard and *Mithridate-Mustard* both purge the Body upwards and downwards; they break inward Impostumes, are very good Antidotes against Poison, Venom and Putrefaction; they are also available in many Cases the common Mustard is used, but somewhat weaker.

The *Black-Thorn* or *Sloe-Bush*, all the parts of it are cooling and binding, and drying, and good to stay bleeding at the Mouth and Nose, stop the Lask of the Belly or Stomach, Bloody-Flux, and to ease the Pains of the Bowels and Guts, that come by overmuch Scourings. The Leaves are good to put into Lotions, to wash a sore Mouth or Throat with, wherein are Sores or Kernels, and to stay the Defluxions of Rheums to the Eyes or other parts, and to cool the Heat of them.

Thorough

Thorough-wax or *Thorough-leaf* is of a dry Complexion, and is good for all sorts of Bruises and Wounds inward and outward, and old Ulcers and Sores likewise. The Decoction of the Herb, or the Powder of it taken inwardly, and the Leaves bruised and apply'd outwardly, is good to cure Ruptures and Burstings.

Thyme is hot and dry in the third degree, it is a great Strengthner of the Lungs, it purgeth the Body of Phlegm, and is good for Short-windedness. An Ointment made with it is good for hot Swellings, it comforteth the Stomach, and expels Wind.

Wild Thyme or *Mother of Thyme* is of Temperature hot, and dry in the third degree, it is of thin and subtile parts, cutting and much biting, provokes Urine, easeth the griping Pains in the Belly coming by Wind; it is good for Cramps, Ruptures, Inflammations of the Liver, the Lethargy, Pissing of Blood, Coughing, strengthens the Stomach, expels Wind, and breaks the Stone.

Tormentil or *Setfoil* is binding, and therefore good to stay all Fluxes of Blood or Humours, whether at the Nose or Mouth, or any Wound in the Veins or elsewhere; it resisteth Poison, Plague, pestilential Fevers, and contagious Diseases, and expelleth the Venom from the Heart by sweating. There is not found any Root more effectual to help any Flux of the Belly, Stomach, Spleen or Blood, than this taken inwardly or apply'd outwardly; it opens the Obstructions of the Liver, helpeth the Yellows, it is good made into a Plaster to strengthen the Reins of the Back, and for Ruptures and Bruises by Falls, taken inwardly or apply'd outwardly; and 'tis a most excellent Wound-herb, apply'd outwardly to rotten Sores and Ulcers in any parts of the Body, or for any inward Wound: it dissolves hard Knots and Kernels any where about the Body.

Turnsole or *Heliotropium* purgeth Choler and Phlegm boiled with Water and given, and being boiled with Cummin helpeth the Stone of the Reins or Bladder, provoketh Urine. The Herb bruised and laid to any old Pain in the Joints, taketh it away: the Juice of it is good to take away Wens, and to dissolve hard Kernels or Knobs in the Flesh.

Meadow-Trefoil, or *Honey-suckles*, is cold and dry, and good to put into Glisters; it is good in a Poultice for Inflammations and Swellings. The Juice dropt into the Eye taketh away the Pin and Web, and taketh away the bloodshotten of them.

Heart-

Heart-Trefoil is a great Strengthner of the Heart, fortifieth it againſt Poiſon and Peſtilence, and defends it from the noiſom Vapours of the Spleen.

Pearl-Trefoil, it differs not from the common ſort, ſave only it hath a white Spot in the Leaf like a Pearl, and is of great Virtue againſt the Pin and Web in the Eyes.

Turbith is a Root that is hot and dry, and purgeth by moderate drawing (if it be corrected) groſs, viſcid, and putrid Phlegm from the Brain, Breaſt, and remote Parts and Junctures.

Tutſan or *Park-leaves*, the Faculties are ſuch as St. *Peter's*-wort, which declares it to be hot and dry; it purgeth Humours, is good for Burnings by Fire; it is a very good Wound-herb, either inwardly given or outwardly apply'd.

Tartar is the Excrement of Wine, which ſticks to the Veſſel, and is hot and dry in the third degree, and only cleanſeth.

Turpentine is hot in the ſecond and dry in the firſt, it doth draw, skin, incarnate and conglutinate things together, and is good for the mattering of the Yard given inwardly, being made up by Art into Balls, with Flower and Bole-Armoniack.

Thuris Cortex is dry in the ſecond degree, and bindeth.

Trifora Magna is a certain Compoſition which will provoke Sweat, helpeth Griefs in the Stomach, and taketh away all cold Rheums.

Tutia Præparata is a certain Mineral that is cold in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree, and is very good for ſore Eyes.

Turmerick is hot in the third degree, and openeth Obſtructions; it is good againſt the Yellows, and all cold Diſtempers of the Liver and Spleen, and fattens by a certain hidden Quality.

Taſtil Wild is cold in the third and dry in the firſt degree, and comforteth and bindeth.

V.

Garden Valerian is hot, but not much, provoketh Urine; being dry'd and given, helpeth the Strangury: it is good for Short-windedneſs; the Roots of it being boiled with Liquorice, Raiſins and Anniſeeds, helpeth to open the Paſſages, and expectorates the Phlegm eaſily. It is good for the Plague, and thoſe that are bitten and ſtung by any venomous Creature; it expelleth Wind, and being boiled in

in White-Wine, and dropt into the Eyes, taketh away the Dimneſs of Sight, or any Pin and Web: it healeth any inward Sores and Wounds, and alſo all outward Wounds and Hurts, and draweth Splinters and Thorns out of the Fleſh, the Herb being bruiſed, and laid to the place grieved.

Wild Valerian, ſome hold, that being dry'd and beaten to powder, purgeth upwards and downwards.

Both the *Vervains* are very dry, and do meanly bind and cool. It is an excellent Herb for the Womb, and all the cold Griefs belonging thereunto, as Plantain doth the hot. It is hot, dry, and bitter, opening Obſtructions, cleanſing and healing; it is good for the Yellows, Dropſy, the Defects of the Reins and Lungs, and all inward Pains and Torments of the Body: it is good againſt the Plague, and the Venom of venomous Beaſts, againſt Agues, the Worms, the Diſeaſes of the Liver and Spleen, and all Diſeaſes of the Stomach and Lungs, Coughs, Shortneſs of Breath, and to cleanſe the Bladder from all evil Humours that engender the Stone; it healeth all Wounds both inward and outward, ſtayeth Bleeding, and healeth old Ulcers in any part of the Body, being uſed with Honey; it is good for Swellings uſed with Hog's greaſe; the diſtilled Water of the Herb or Juice dropt into the Eyes, cleanſeth them from Films.

The Branches of the *Vine* and the Leaves do cool and mightily bind, and ſtay Bleeding in any part of the Body, and are good to ſtop a Lask and Bloody-Flux. The Leaves are put into Lotions for ſore Mouths, and being put into a Poultice with Barley-Meal, cool Inflammations of Wounds.

All the *Violets* are cold and moiſt while they are freſh and green, and will cool any Heat and Diſtemper in the Body, either inwardly given or outwardly apply'd, Impoſthumes alſo and hot Swellings. They purge the Body of cholerick Humours: the Powder of the purple Flower helpeth the Quinſey and Falling-Sickneſs, it is good for the Liver, Yellows, and hot Agues.

The ſorts of *Viper-Graſs* are hot and moiſt, as are the Goats-beards. It is very good for the Plague, Poiſon of venomous Creatures, Falling-Sickneſs.

Wall or *Viper-Bugloſs*, the ſeveral ſorts of them are cold and dry of Complexion. It is good againſt the biting of Vipers or any other venomous Beaſts, and alſo againſt Poiſon or any poiſonous Herbs. The Roots comfort the Heart, temper the Blood, allay the hot Fits of Agues.

Vinegar,

Vinegar, especially if it be of *Wine*, is cold and piercing; to wit, cold in the first, and dry in the third degree: it cuts Phlegm.

Vermilion is a certain Metal drawn from Quick-Sulphur and Quick-Silver; it draweth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth and comforteth Ulcers.

Verdegrease is hot and dry in the third degree, and is a Corrosive that eateth away dead and proud Flesh, and is good to be put into Ointments for green Wounds, or for the Scratches.

Green and *White Vitriol* may be taken inwardly, a few Drops of it with other things, for the Farcin; and outwardly apply'd to take away Wens or hard Kernels, or to eat away a Quitter-bone or Splint, or to take off Warts from the Hands; if you will stay the eating of it, or that you will have it eat no further than where you lay it, wet all round where you lay it with Water. You must take it out of the Glass with a Feather, or a piece of Silk ty'd to a Stick, for it will eat both Linen and Woollen. The white is the strongest, but the green is most safe for any use.

Vitriola Calcanthum is reckoned amongst Metals, and is a kind of inky Earth; it draweth and fretteth.

Vitriola Herba is an Herb that groweth on the Wall, and is taken for Pellitory of the Wall.

W.

Wall-flower or *Winter-Gilliflower*, all the kinds of them are of a cleansing Faculty, and of thin parts. The yellow kind works more powerfully, and is of more use in Physick; it cleanseth the Blood, and freeth the Liver from Obstructions, expelleth the Secundine and dead Foal, stays Inflammations and Swellings, comforteth and strengtheneth any weak part out of joint, cleanseth the Eyes from Films, and cleanseth also filthy Ulcers in the Mouth, and is a good Remedy for all Aches and Pains in the Joints and Sinews, and is good for the Farcin.

The *Walnut-Tree*, the Bark of it doth bind and dry very much, and the Leaves are much of the same Temperature; they kill the Worms in the Belly, with other things put to them; they help the biting of a mad Dog, or the Venom or Poison of any Creature. The Kernels of them when they are old are very astringent, and will stop a Lask. The Oil of the Kernels taken inwardly helpeth the Cholick, and expels Wind. The distilled Water of the green Husks,

Husks, before they be ripe, is good to cool the Heat of Agues, as also to resist the Infection of the Plague, being apply'd to the Sores; it cooleth also the Heat of green Wounds and old Ulcers, being bathed therewith.

Wold, *Weld*, or *Dyers-Weed*, is hot and dry of Temperature; also the whole Herb heats and dries in the third degree, it cuts, attenuates, resolveth, opens, digests: it is good taken inwardly, or apply'd outwardly, against the Venom of venomous Beasts, as also for the Plague or Pestilence, and is good for green Wounds.

Wheat is hot and dry in the first degree; it hath a certain clammy stopping Quality. The Oil of it prest out between two thick Plates of Iron, healeth all Tettars and Ringworms, used warm. The green Corn chew'd and apply'd to the place bitten by a mad Dog, healeth it. Sliced Wheat-Bread, soaked in Red Rose-water or Spring-water, and apply'd to the Eyes that are hot, red, and inflamed, or blood-shotten, helpeth them: and hot Bread apply'd to the Kernels of the Throat, healeth the Kernels thereof. The Flower of it mix'd with the Juice of Henbane, stayeth the Flux of Humours to the Joints; and being boiled in Vinegar, helpeth the shrinking of the Sinews. The Flower of it mixed with the Yolk of an Egg, Honey, and Turpentine, doth draw, cleanse and heal any Boyl, Plague-Sore, or foul Ulcer. The Decoction of Wheat-Bran is good to bathe those Places that are burst en by a Rupture, and the said Bran boiled in Vinegar helpeth all Swellings and Inflammations; it helpeth the biting of Vipers and all other venomous Creatures. Wafers put in Water and given, stay the Lask and Bloody-Flux.

The *Willow-Tree*, the Leaves, Flowers, Seed and Bark, are cold and dry in the second degree, and binding; they are used to stay bleeding of Wounds, and all other Fluxes of Blood; they help to stay all thin, hot, and sharp Distillations upon the Lungs. The Leaves bruised with some Pepper, is good for the Wind-Cholick. The Water of the Willow-Tree received of a Branch cut, is good for Dimness of Sight, for Films, and to stay the Rheums that fall into them, provokes Urine being stopped. The Flowers of it boiled in White-Wine have an admirable Faculty in drying up of Humours: the Bark worketh the same effect.

Woad is dry and without sharpness; the wild *Woad* drieth more, and is more sharp and biting; it is so dry and binding that it is hardly fit to be given inwardly: an Ointment made

made thereof ſtancheth bleeding, and is good in ſuch Ulcers as abound with Moiſture, for it takes away the corroding and fretting Humours; it cools Inflammations, quenches St. *Anthony*'s Fire, and ſtayeth Defluxions of Blood in any part of the Body.

Wood-bind or *Honey-ſuckles* are cleanſing, conſuming and digeſting; the Flowers are good for the Lungs, provoke Urine, help Cramps, Convulſions, Palſies, and whatſoever Grief comes of Cold or Stopping. The Flowers are more effectual than the Leaves, and the Seed is as effectual as the Leaves.

Pond-Weed doth bind and cool like as doth Knot-graſs, but its Eſſence is thicker than that; it is good againſt conſuming and heating Ulcers, and all hot Inflammations.

Wormwood is hot and dry in the firſt degree, juſt as hot as the Blood; it remedies Choler, provokes Urine, helps Surfeits, Swellings in the Belly, and is the beſt Herb for the Yellows that is. Take of the Flowers of Wormwood, Roſemary, and Black-Thorn, of each a like quantity; half that quantity of Saffron boiled in Beer or Ale, and this now and then uſed will keep a Horſe in perfect Health. Wormwood is good againſt Poiſon, Quinſey, biting and ſtinging of venomous Creatures, Cholick, Worms, and to keep Clothes from the Moths; it helps the Spleen, ſtrengthens the Heart, and heats the Stomach.

Willow-Herb, vid. *Looſe-ſtrife.*

Wall-wort, or *Dane-wort*, vid. *Dwarf-Elder.*

Woodroff is of Temperature like unto our Ladies-Bed-ſtraw, but not ſo ſtrong, being in a mean between Heat and Dryneſs; it prevaileth in Wounds, as *Cruciata* and other vulnerary Herbs do.

The Leaves and Berries of the *Wafering-Tree* are cold and dry, and of a binding Quality; the Decoction of the Leaves is good to ſyringe a ſore Mouth with, and is good for the Diſeaſes of the Gums, and faſtneth looſe Teeth.

Worms do congultinate and comfort Sinews.

White Lead is a great Dryer and Sheller of Scabs, and is good put into Medicines for Scratches, and for Sellanders and Mallenders.

Y.

Y*Arrow*, called alſo *Noſe-bleed*, *Milfoil* and *Thouſand-Leaf*, it cleanſeth and is meanly cold, but it moſt of all bindeth. An Ointment of it cureth Wounds, and is good

good for Inflammations; it is good for the Bloody-Flux. The Ointment is good not only for Wounds, but Ulcers likewiſe and Fiſtula's, eſpecially ſuch as abound with Moiſture. The Hair being waſh'd with the Decoction, ſtayeth the ſhedding of it; taken inwardly, it is good for the mattering of the Yard: and the Juice of it is moſt excellent, or the Decoction of it injected into the Yard with a Syringe, to ſtop the extreme flowing of the Seed, altho the Iſſue doth cauſe Inflammation and Swelling of the Secret Parts, and tho the Spermatick Matter do come down in great quantity, as hath been very well proved.

Water-Yarrow is of a dry Faculty, by reaſon it taketh away hot Inflammations and Swellings.

Z.

Zuche, which are call'd *Gourds*, are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree, and allayeth all manner of Inflammations or hot Swellings.

Softening or diſſolving Herbs are four, viz.
Mallows, Marſhmallows, black Violet, and Bear's-breech.

Remedies for all Diſeaſes, which may be uſed according to Diſcretion. Together with particular Receipts, &c.

Before you enter upon the Drenching and Phyſicking of Horſes, take theſe Directions with you.

I. THAT all Diſeaſes are cured by their Contraries, and all Parts of the Body are maintained by their like, *viz.* If Heat be the Cauſe of the Diſtemper, then appropriate thoſe Medicines that are cold to it; if cold, then give hot. If Wind be the Cauſe of Illneſs, then find out in your Table of Simples proper Medicines for that Diſeaſe, and uſe them according to Directions.

II. Apply not the Medicines to one part of the Body, that are appropriated to another part, *viz.* If the Brain be overheated, uſe not ſuch Medicines as cool the Heart and Liver.

III. If you give diſtilled Waters for the Diſeaſe you intend to cure, give ſuch Water as is diſtilled out of the Herb proper for that Diſeaſe, and ſweeten it with the ſame quantity of Syrup as you give Water, made alſo of the ſame Herb, or ſome other proper for the Diſeaſe.

IV. If the Diſeaſe of the Body lie remote from the Stomach and Bowels, then uſe Pills or Balls, which is the moſt proper Phyſick for the Diſtemper, becauſe they are longeſt in Digeſtion, and therefore the moſt fit to carry off the Diſeaſe by degrees.

V. Rather be found faulty on the ſafer ſide, by giving your Phyſick too weak than too ſtrong.

VI. Conſider the natural Temper of your Horſe's Body that is afflicted, and ſupport it in that, or elſe you weaken

and deſtroy Nature, inſtead of repairing it; as the Heart is hot, the Bran cold, ſo apply your Simples accordingly.

VII. Thoſe Medicines that are hot in the firſt degree, are juſt of the Heat and Temper of the Blood, and therefore moſt wholeſome and proper for the Body.

VIII. All Medicines that are opening and provoke Urine, are beſt given in White-Wine or Ale, for they are of an opening nature, and great Strengthners of the Reins.

IX. All Medicines that are given to ſtop any Looſeneſs or Scouring, let him faſt three Hours or more before he receive them.

X. Let your Medicines be proper to the Humour offending, or elſe you will weaken Nature, not the Diſeaſe.

XI. If the Humour offending be thin, that you intend to remove, then let your Medicine be gentle; but if it be thick and tough, then give him ſome cutting and opening Thing the Night before, to prepare his Body the better to his Purge the next Day.

XII. Have a care how you uſe binding Medicines, when you purge tough Humours.

XIII. If your Horſe be bound in his Body, either rake him with your Hand, (being firſt anointed with Sallet-Oil, Hog's-Greaſe or ſweet Butter, before you pull his baked or hard Dung from him) or elſe give him a Gliſter before you give him a Purge.

XIV. You muſt conſider the Strength and Stature of your Horſe, and accordingly prepare your Medicines, either ſtronger or weaker.

XV. If you give your Horſe a Drench for a Cold, you uſually give him of three ſorts of Powders. *viz.* Fenugreek, Liquorice, Bay-Berries, Anniſeeds, Cummin-Seeds, Grains of Paradiſe, Long Pepper, Elecampane, Turmerick, *&c.* But be ſure you exceed not above three Ounces of them in his Drench at one time.

XVI. If you give a Horſe a Scouring that is very ſtrong and luſty, you may venture to give him with ſafety an Ounce or more of the beſt *Barbadoes* Aloes, (which are the ſtrongeſt ſort of Aloes that are) powdered and made up into Balls with freſh Butter, as you have Directions afterwards.

XVII. If you give Aloes *Succotrina*, you may give an Ounce and a half of them, (becauſe they are of a weaker Nature than the other) diſſolved on the Fire in half a Pint of White-Wine, and brewed afterwards in a Quart of

ſtrong Beer, with about two Ounces of freſh Butter put into it, which by reaſon of the looſening and opening Quality it hath, will cauſe the Aloes to work ſo much the ſooner and better. This Proportion is to be given only to a large conſtitutioned Horſe, a leſs Quantity will ſerve a ſmaller.

An Advertiſement about the ſeveral ſorts of Aloes, and how you may know not only their Goodneſs, but alſo diſtinguiſh them one from the other.

There are four ſeveral ſorts of them, and differ only in Purity, *viz. Aloes Caballina, Aloes Hepatica, Aloes Barbadoes*, and *Aloes Succotrina.*

1. *Aloes Caballina* is a yellowiſh ſort of Alloes, much of the Colour of a boiled Liver, and is ſomewhat dearer, ſtronger and better than *Aloes Hepatica.* This is ſeldom ſold by itſelf, but kept only to mix amongſt the black and coarſer ſort of Aloes, to give them a good Colour.

2. *Aloes Hepatica* is much of the ſame kind with the *Caballina* (for they come over mixt together) but is of a blackiſh roſiny Colour when refined, which is accounted the beſt Colour.

3. *Aloes* of *Barbadoes* is found out but of late Years, but is accounted the ſtrongeſt ſort of all the kinds of them. If it be of a duskiſh ſad brown, and hath an Eye of yellow amongſt it, you may conclude it to be good, but the moſt common Colour is black like unto Pitch. An Ounce of either of theſe three is a Purge ſtrong enough for moſt reaſonable Horſes.

4. *Aloes Succotrina* is the weakeſt, but beſt of all the kinds of them: If you break it thin, and find it of a clear roſiny Colour, and tranſparent, you may be ſatisfied 'tis the very beſt. This is four times dearer than the other ſorts, and is alſo given to Horſes (but in a larger Quantity) by thoſe that value not their Purſes.

XVIII. If you make your Balls of the Powder of Aloes and Butter, mix it not all at once with the Butter, but work it up in a little at firſt, and then divide it into three equal parts, and cover every part over with freſh Butter, about the bigneſs of a ſmall Waſh-ball; which will prevent the bitter Taſte of the Aloes from offending him when you give them: give him a Horn-full of warm Beer after every one of them, not only to prevent ſticking, but to clear his Paſſage the better for the remaining Balls. But the beſt way

of making of Balls of Aloes for a Scouring, you may find after the best Receipt for the Glanders, within a Leaf of the latter end of the Book.

XIX. If you put *London*-Treacle at any time into your Horse's Drinks, put not above one Ounce of it at a time where there are other Ingredients; but if you give it by itself, you may give him two Ounces of it dissolved in a Pint of Sack, or for want of that a Quart of good Ale or Beer.

XX. When you physick your Horse at any time, give him his Hay so sparingly over night, that he may stand two or three Hours at the Rack-staves, and let him fast three or four Hours after he hath taken it.

XXI. 'Tis good to stir him a little after he hath taken his Drink, which will make his Physick work so much the better.

XXII. If you are about the Cure of any outward Wound or Sore, the best way to expedite it, is to keep the place warm, which is done by clapping a Plaster of *Burgundy* Pitch over the Medicine, which will be a means to defend the grieved part from the Air or Wind.

XXIII. If a Horse hath swoln or gourded Legs, and hath been poisoned with the Medicines of other Farriers, and is fallen into your hands to cure; then be sure before you undertake to meddle with him, to wash his Legs very well with warm Whey, (or for want of that, Milk, but Whey is best) for this will clear off the Venom and Poison of their Medicines, and make the Cure more facile and easy to be effected.

Directions how to order a sick Horse.

1. Whensoever you find your Horse sick at any time, either of a Fever, Farcin, molten Grease, Cold, or any other Distempers, *&c.* and that you have given him something in order to his Cure, and yet you find his Stomach so bad that he falls from his Meat; then to recover it again, and to strengthen and keep up his weak and feeble Spirits, give him first, (to bring him to a Stomach) half a Pint of White-Wine Vinegar or Verjuice luke-warm, sweetned with two or three Spoonfuls of Honey, well dissolved in it over the Fire; and about three or four Hours after it, give him the common Cordial for Horses, which is made of a Quart or three Pints of strong Beer, with a good big Toast of Houshold Wheat-Bread crumbed into it gross and

well boiled. Before you give it him, while it is cooling, put into it two or three Spoonfuls of Honey, and about two Ounces of fresh or salt Butter, and let him have it lukewarm: give him at night a Mash of Malt or Oats, that are boiled till they are burstten. After he hath eaten them, let him feed upon Hay for about an Hour or more, then give him warm Water to drink, with a Handful or two of Wheat-Bran stirred amongst it; the next Morning give him his Cordial again, and at nine or ten of the clock warm Water and Bran, and boiled Oats, and now and then a Cordial of White-Wine and Honey, and moderate Excercise once or twice a day, (if he be not too weak to walk.) This is the only Method that I know of that you can use for the Recovery of a sick or weak Horse, and for to remedy his Costiveness which does usually attend Sicknesses.

2. The longer he fasts after you have given him his Drink, (conditionally he be in good Heart and Strength) the better effect it will have in working upon the Disease for which it was given; for three or four Hours is time long enough to fast, but if he be a sick, feeble and weak Horse, then two Hours are enough.

3. After he hath fasted according to his Strength, give him some comfortable thing to recruit his Spirits; as a Mash of Malt, boiled Oats, scalded Bran, *&c.* which will be a means to put Heart and Strength into him again, which his Drench and Fasting may in some measure have weakned.

4. If you use your Horse to scalded Bran, Mashes of Malt, or boiled Oats, and half boiled Fenugreek amongst them, or given him at any time amonst his Provender, he will be the more ready and willing to take his Oats thus prepared, (which is very good after any Drench you have given him) *viz.* To boil a quarter of a Pound of Fenugreek with half a Peck of Oats till they burst, and throw them into the Manger scalding hot; and tho he cannot well eat them till they be somewhat cold, yet the Steam that doth arise from thence is very wholesome to open and comfort his Head and Brain, and to free him from Colds and Stuffings therein. If you find him nice, and not willing to eat them, decoy him with a little Wheat-Bran strowed upon them, which by the liking he may have to that, possibly may cause him to lick them up both together. The Water that is drained from his Oats put into a Pail of cold Water by itself, and

and give it him to drink lukewarm, after he hath fed a little while upon Hay.

An Advertiſement, not only touching the Uſefulneſs of the general Simples, ſet down in order one after another, in the firſt and ſecond Part for the Cure of all inward and outward Diſeaſes, but alſo of the Table of Simples.

Wherever you meet with ſuch Simples in the firſt and ſecond Part, imagine not that they were put there to no other end nor purpoſe, than to blot or blur Paper with, or that they were intended only to make the Book ſwell large and big, to bring Profit and Advantage to the Bookſeller. I confeſs to the Ignorant and Unskilful it may appear ſo, by reaſon of their want of Knowledge and Judgment, to diſcern and apprehend the ſeveral Uſes for which they were written. But if the Ingenious and Skilful in the Art of Farring, (to whom theſe things were principally intended) conſider them, and ſeriouſly weigh the Nature and Virtue of every one of them, they will quickly come to underſtand their Uſefulneſs, and readily employ them to the ſame end they were firſt deſigned and intended for, *viz.* not only to improve their Knowledge and Underſtanding in the Nature of them as to the Theorick, but alſo as to the Practick, in bettering their Skill in the phyſical Uſes of them; conditionally they will be ſo ingenious as to compound and fit up their ſeveral Juices or Powders into Medicaments according to Art, as their Genius and Inclinations may lead them. Neither are they placed here becauſe there wants Receipts for the Cure of all Diſeaſes, either inward or outwards, but for the general good of all (as I have ſaid before) that will be ſtudious to divert and recreate themſelves in compounding and making up of new Medicines proper and ſuitable to the Diſeaſes they intend them for; ſo that here you ſee that ſo long as you have this Magazine or Storehouſe of Nature to come to, this Book will never be old, but be always freſh and new, unto thoſe that will reſort unto it for their Improvement.

To make Oil of Camomile, which is very ſovereign for any Grief in the Limbs, which proceeds from a cold Cauſe.

Take a good Handful of Camomile, and bruiſe it in a Mortar, then put it into a Quart of Sallet-Oil in ſome convenient Veſſel fit for your Uſe, and let it remain therein

three Days and three Nights, then ſtrain out the Oil from the Camomile, and put into it ſome freſh Herbs, and let them ſtand alſo the ſame time; then change it twice more as you did before, and your Oil is made.

To make Oil of Spike, which is good for all manner of Sinew-ſtrains, or Pains or Aches in the Limbs.

Take the Flowers of Spike, and waſh them in Sallet-Oil, then ſtamp them well, and put them into a Canvaſs-bag, and preſs out what Oil you can get; then put it into a Glaſs and ſet it by, and it will clear of it ſelf, and wax fair and bright, and ſmell very ſtrong of the Spike.

You may make Oil of other Herbs after this manner.

To make Oil of Maſtick, which is good for any cold Grief.

Take two Ounces of Maſtick, and two Ounces of Olibanum, and boil them in a Quart of Sallet-Oil to a third part; then put it into a Canvaſs-Bag, and preſs out what Oil you can get as you did the other, and let it ſtand by you about twelve or fourteen Days, and it will be perfect.

Comprehenſive Terms explained.

1. The five greater opening Roots are, Fennel, Smallage, Parſley, Sparrowgraſs and Knee-holly. To which may be added, Garlick, Onions, Angellica, Liquorice, Gentian, Succhory, Endive, Celandine, Squills and Maſter-wort.

2. The five leſſer opening Roots, are Eringo, Graſs, Capers, Reſt-harrow and Madder. To which you may add, Turmerick, Birthwort, Elecampane, Horſe-radiſh, and Polypodium.

3. The five ſoftning Herbs, are Marſh-mallows, Mallows, Mercury, Violet-leaves and Beets. To which you may add, Pellitory of the Wall, Coleworts, Arrach, Melilot and white Lillies.

4. The hairy Herbs are, Maiden-hair, Wall-Rue, Spleenwort, Hartſhorn and Trichomanes. The greater are Piony, Lavender, Roſemary, Sage and Poppy.

5. The four Cordial Flowers are Borrage, Bugloſs, Roſes and Violets. To which you may add Saffron, Marigolds, Spikenard, Roſemary, Clovegilliflowers and Poppy.

6. The four greater hot Seeds are Anniſe, Cummin, Carraway and Fennel. To which you may add Cardamoms, Grains of Paradiſe, Pepper and Muſtard-ſeed.

7. The four leſſer hot Seeds are, Amomus, Biſhops-weed, Parſley

Parſley and Carrots. To which you may add, Cubebs, Dill, Rocket, Smallage and and Eryſimum.

8. The four greater cold Seeds are, Cucumber, Gourd, Citrul and Melon. To which you may add, Poppy, Henbane, Nightſhade and Hemlock.

9. The four leſſer cold Seeds are, Endive, Lettice, Succory and Purſlain. To which you may add, Chickweed, Dandelion and Plantain.

10. The three hot Flowers are, Camomile, Melilot, Iris or Flower-de-luce. To which you may add, Saffron, Lavender and Roſemary.

11. The four hot Ointments are, Martiarum, Aragon, Althea and Agrippæ. To which may added, Nervinum, Laurinum, Anodynum and Amarum.

12. The four cold Ointments are, Roſarum, Album Camphorinum, Populeum, Refrigerans Galeni. To which may be added, Sumach, Nightſhade, Pomatum and Diaphompholigus, which are all bought at the Apothecaries.

The Cold and Hot Ointments repeated over again, with the Virtues belonging to them.

1. *Martiarum* is good for all cold Diſeaſes of the Body, as Palſys, Convulſions, Cramps, Stiffneſs of the Nerves and Joints, Falling-Sickneſs, Lethargy, *&c.*

2. *Aragon* hath all the Virtues of *Martiarum.*

3. *Althea* ſoftens, diſſolves and aſſuages Pains in any part of the Body, and is good againſt Stiffneſs and Contracting of the Nerves, helps Palſys and Convulſions, and is good to conglutinate and cloſe up the Mouth of Wounds.

4. *Agrippæ* is very excellent for all watry Tumors in the outward parts, by anointing them there with; it kills Worms, and expels Water by Purging.

5. *Nervinum* is good for the Nerves, to comfort, ſtrengthen and amend their Defects, proceeding from Cold and dead Palſys, Convulſions, Cramps, Numbneſs, Bruiſes and old Aches, *&c.*

6. *Laurinum*, is good for all cold and moiſt Diſeaſes of the Brain, Nerves, Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Reins and Joints; it helps Wearineſs, and is good for all old Aches and Pains, and other Diſeaſes.

7. *Anodynum* is good to aſſuage Tumors, Inflammations, and eaſeth Pain in any part of the Body.

8. *Amarum*, anointed on the Belly and Cheſt, and between the Shoulders, expels Water, and kills Worms,

opens Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, provokes Urine; the Shape being alſo anointed with it expels the Heam.

9. *Roſarum* is of a fine cooling Nature, very uſeful for all Gallings of the Skin, and Frettings accompanied with cholerick Humours, Tettars, Ring-worms, and is good to mitigate Diſeaſes of the Head coming of Heat.

10. *Album Comphoratum* is an excellent cold Ointment to aſſuage Pain, and is a great Dryer, and is good for Scabs, Burnings and hot Inflammations, Chafings, Frettings or Gallings of the Skin; it dries up Ulcers, and takes away their itching in the time of healing.

11. *Populeum* is a very cooling Ointment, which ſoftens and eaſes Pains.

12. *Refrigerans* cools and moiſtens, and is good to cure Inflammations, Tumors, Wounds and other Maladies, proceeding from hot and dry Diſeaſes.

13. *Sumach* is good for the Falling of the Fundament, and helps Pains and Weakneſs in the Back, conſolidates Ruptures, *&c.*

14. *Night-ſhade* is a very cooling Ointment.

15. *Pòmatum* is ſoftning, cooling and aſſuaging, and comforteth weary Limbs.

16. *Diaphompholigos* cools, dries, heals and skins Wounds, Sores and Ulcers, *&c.*

Theſe are all very coſtly Ointments, and are to be uſed only by the Rich, who value not their Purſes; yet the honeſt and plain Farrier hath far more cheap, and every whit as good, proper and uſeful Medecines for the Cure of the ſaid Diſtempers as the other are, conditionally he takes the pains to look them out, which he may here and there find ſcattered throughout the whole Work.

Of the Uſe of Antimony.

Crude Antimony is a Mineral much like unto Lead, the beſt coming from *Tranſylvania* and *Hungaria*, and is known by its bright and long Flakes. 'Tis an excellent thing to put into a Horſe's Provender, to cleanſe and purify his Blood, and to free his Body from Colds, or other Diſtempers, that lie hid and lurking therein to deſtroy him. The manner how you are to uſe it, is to beat it very ſmall, and then ſift it through a fine Sieve; then ſtrew about a quarter of an Ounce of it Morning and Evening, (for about a Month together) in a quarter of a Peck of his Oats, being firſt wet with good Ale or Beer. 'Tis ſold at the Druggiſts for 6 *d.* the

the pound. The Filings of Steel-Needles is also very good for the said Distempers, used after this manner.

General things good for the Joints and Sinews, that have in them any Ach or Numbness, Weakness or Swelling.

If it proceed from a hot Cause, you must apply cooling things to it; but if from a cold Cause, hot things.

The Oil that is pressed out of Almonds is a great Mitigater of Pain and all manner of Aches, Aquavitæ, Archangel, Allheal, Balsam; *Burgundy* Pitch spread upon Leather, and laid to the Place grieved, draweth forth all manner of Pain. Burnet, Brandy, Bay-leaves, Brank-ursin, the Oil of Camomile, the bruised Roots of Comfrey, Cowslips, Chickweed, Centaury, Cow-Parsnips, Germander, Hawk-weed, Mallows or Marshmallows, Mug-wort, Mullen, Pennyroyal, Purslain, the Great-leaved Dock, Saxifrage, *English* Tobacco, Graden-Tansy, wild Mother of Thyme, Sow-Fennel, Flower-de-luce, Turpentine, Rag-weed stamped very small, and boiled with some Hog's-grease, to the Consumption of the Juice, and at the end of the boiling it, add to it Mastick and Olibanum, and anoint the Place with it. Pepper, Saffron, Garlick, Rosemary, Frankincense, Myrrh, Sciatica-Cresses, wild Tansy, Spignel, yellow Wall-Flower, Nep, Catmint, Herb Gerrard, Mustard-seed, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for Aches.

Take Acopium and mix it well with Sack, and chafe it very well in with your Hand; and if it be of a cold Cause, it will take it away at three or four times doing.

Another.

Take Brandy or Aquavitæ, and chafe and bathe the place grieved very well with it, and dry it in with a hot Fire-shovel; then take a Rag, and dip in the Brandy or Aquavitæ, and strew the inside of it all over with Pepper, finely beaten and searced, and bind it to the place grieved, and swathe it up with a dry Roller, and do it thus once every day till he become sound.

Another.

Take of sweet Butter half a pound, of Aquavitæ a Gill, of Saffron half a Dram, Pepper finely beaten and searced three Drams, three Heads of Garlick bruised; mix them all together, and let them stew on the Fire, and not boil, till it come to a Salve. This being chafed in very warm to

the

the place grieved, and a brown Paper wet in the same, and bound to it, with a dry Cloth upon that, and so used Morning and Evening, will cure it,

Things good in general for St. Anthony's *Fire.*

The Juice of Housleek tempered with white Lead, the Juice of the green Leaves of Garden Nightshade mixed with Barley-Meal, is good for it and all hot Inflammations. Allum put to the Juice of white Beets, the Roots of Cinquefoil boiled in Vinegar, the distilled Water of Colts-Foot with Elder-flowers and Nightshade, and applied; Crabs-claws, the Juice of Wall-pennywort, with the Leaves and Flowers of Fever-few, are good for it, and all hot Inflammations and Swellings. The Roots of Buglos mixed with Sallet-Oil and Barley-Meal, Water-Sengreen or Fresh-Water-Soldier, Ducks-meat, the Leaves of the Gooseberry-bush, or Hawk-weed bruised and applied with Salt. The Juice of Kidney-wort applied also taketh away all outward Heat and Inflammations; the Juice of Mallows or Marshmallows boiled in Sallet-Oil, and applied, is very good; a Poultice made of Barley-Meal and Hog's-grease, with the green Heads of Garden-poppy bruised and applied with Vinegar, is also very good, so is the Juice of Purslain. An Ointment made of the Juice of Garden-Rue, with Oil of Roses, Cerus and a little Vinegar, and applied, is most excellent; the Juice of the bruised Leaves of Succory is good, so is an Ointment made of Woad, and the place anointed with it. But because it is a Disease very rare to be found in Horses, you shall have as strange a Cure. 'Tis this:

A particular Receipt for St. Anthony's *Fire.*

After you have cast him, slit the Skin of the Fore-head of the Horse under the Fore-top, and open the same round about with your Cornet, rounding it about an Inch every way; which done, take a Worm, which you shall find in a Fuller's Teasel, and blow it in alive with a Quill into the place, and have a care you kill not the Worm in stitching up the Skin again, for in twenty days the Worm will die, and in that time the Horse will be throughly cured. If you would know the Nature of the Disease, you may find it hereafter, in a Table set down alphabetically, shewing where the Diseases of a Horse do grow, and the Causes of them.

Things

Things good in general for the Anticor *or Heart-Sickness.*

To let blood, if you know he wants it, and to give him a Purgation of Sack, Sallet Oil and Sugarcandy, or Sugar and Cinnamon given him in Sack or Diapente, or Dr. *Stephen's* Water, Butter-burr, Avens, *&c.*

A particular Receipt for the Anticor *or Heart-Sickness.*

After the Swelling appears, and you have taken a good quantity of Blood on both sides of the Neck, give him the Drink of Diapente with Beer or Ale, which you may find in my First Part, putting therein one Ounce of brown Sugarcandy, and half an Ounce of *London* Treacle, which will drive the Sickness and Grief from his Heart; which done, anoint the Swelling with this Ointment:

Ointment.

Take Hog's-grease, Boar's-grease and Basilicon, of each three Ounces; incorporate them well together, and anoint and rub the Swelling every day till it become soft; then open it, and let forth the Corruption, and wash the Sore with the Copperas-Water, which you may find in my first Part; and taint it with your green Ointment, which you may find as aforesaid, and it will be soon whole.

Things good in general for an upper or nether Attaint, or any Hurt by Over-reaching.

Before you apply your Salve, lay the place bare without hollowness, and wash it with Beer and Salt, or Vinegar and Salt; and then what will cure a Mallender or Sellander, will cure this.

Particular Receipts good for an upper Attaint.

Take *Venice*-Turpentine one Ounce, and Brandy three Spoonfuls, beat them well together till they come to a Salve, and anoint the Sore very well therewith, and heat it well in with a hot Iron; and do this three or four times, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take of *Sanguis Draconis* three quarters of an Ounce, Bole-Armoniack one Ounce, Sallet-Oil as much, Mastich three Ounces, Suet as much, and as much Hog's-grease; melt and mix all these together, and lay it to the Swelling, and it will take it away.

Ano-

Another.

Take one or two Handfuls of *Saxifrage*, and all the Suet of a Loin of Mutton, and a Pint of White-Wine; chop the Herb, and mince the Suet very ſmall, and boil them all very well together; then take a good quantity of Horſe-dung newly made by a Horſe that goes to graſs, and mix with the other Ingredients, and work it to a Salve, and apply it plaſter-wiſe hot to the place, renewing it every day ſo long as you think convenient: and this is a very excellent Cure.

Another for the nether Attaint.

Take a piece of Filleting, and bind it about the Paſtern-Joint pretty hard, which will cauſe the Bliſter or Swelling the better to appear; then let out the corrupt Jelly with your Inciſion-Knife, and cruſh it all out; then heal it up with your Copperas-Water, and anoint it with the green Ointment.

Things good in general for the Stavers, Head-Ach, or Farcin.

To let blood, to hang about his Neck the Root of *Amara dulcis*, the Juice of Sow-Fennel or Hog's-Fennel ſquirted up his Noſe, or the Seed and Root of Cow-Parſnip boiled in Oil, and his Head anointed therewith; the Seeds of Brank-Creſſes blown up his Noſtrils, or Ducks-Meat apply'd to his Forehead made into a Poultice, or his Head bathed with the diſtilled Water of common Elder, take it away if it cometh of a cold Cauſe. Flea-wort bruiſed and apply'd after the ſame manner, doth the like, ſo doth Germander and Henbane bruiſed with Vinegar, and apply'd. The Duſt of Tobacco blown up his Head with a large Quill or Kix, cauſeth him to ſneeze, which eaſeth him from the Pain; the Root of Pellitory of *Spain* dry'd and beaten to Powder, and uſed in the ſame manner, doth the like. The Juice of Cellandine put into his Ears, or Aſſafœtida diſſolved in Brandy, and put into his Ears, or Vervain juice and Salt put into his Ears, or Groundſel and Aqua-vitæ ſtamp'd together and put into his Ears, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Stavers.

After you have taken blood from him, take the quantity of a Hazle-Nut of ſweet Butter and Salt, diſſolve it in a Saucer full of White-Wine Vinegar; then take Lint or fine Flax

Flax dipt therein, and ſo ſtop both his Ears therewith, and ſtitch them up, and let it remain there about twelve hours, and he will be cured.

Another.

Take of bitter Almonds an Ounce and a half, of the Gall of an Ox two Drams, of black Hellebore made into fine Powder a half-pennyworth; of Grains, Caſtoreum, Vinegar, and Varniſh, of each five Drams; boil all theſe together till the Vinegar be conſumed, then ſtrain it and put it into his Ears, and do as you did before.

Another.

Aquavitæ and Garlick ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſtamp them together and put into his Ears, doing as before.

Another.

Take the Seeds of Creſſy, of Poppy, of Smallage, of Purſly, of Dill (the Seeds only of theſe Herbs) and take alſo Pepper and Saffron, of each two Drams; make them all into fine Powder, and put to them of Barley-water two Quarts, boiling hot from the Fire, and let it infuſe therein three hours, and ſtrain it and give him one Quart thereof, and his Hay ſprinkled with Water, and the next day give him the other Quart faſting; and let him drink no cold Water for four or five days after, but only white Water, unleſs ſometimes a ſweet Maſh, and this will cure him. You muſt note, that in this Diſeaſe of the Stavers you muſt be ſure to let him blood before you give him any Medicine.

Another.

After you have ſharpned a ſmall and tough Oaken or Aſhen Stick, and made a Notch at one end like a Fork, (to keep it from running ſo far into his Head) put it into his Noſtrils, and job it up and down to the top of his Head, which will cauſe the Blood to deſcend freely: then in the Morning faſting give him this Drink well brew'd together, viz. One Ounce of the Powder of Turmerick, with as much of the Powder of Anniſeeds in a Quart of Strong-beer or Ale, with a Pint of Verjuice, and a Quarter of a Pint of Brandy; and ſtop his Ears with Aquavitæ and Herb-graſs beaten very well together. Put an equal quantity into each Ear, and ſtop Flox or Hurds over it to keep it down, and ſtitch them up with a Needle and Thred, and let it remain in for about twenty four Hours; then unſtitch them

them and pull forth the Hurds, and the next day blood him in the Neck, and give him his Blood with a Handful of Salt put therein well ſtirred together to keep it from clotting, and he is in a fair way to be cured.

Things good in general for the Yellows.

Agrimony, Water-Agrimony, the Bark of the black Elder-Tree, Hops, Fennel, Smallage, Endive, Succory-Roots, Garden-Arrach, Orach, Aſarabacca, Aſh-tree, the Juice of Coleworts, the inner Rind of the Barberry-Tree, or Berry, Bay-berries, Burdock-Roots, Wood-Betony, Biſtort or Snakeweed, Red Beets, Burrage or Bugloſs, Butchers-broom, Calamint or Mountain-Mint, Camomile, Carduus benedictus, Celandine, the Juice of Cinquefoil, the Juice of Clivers, the Seed of Columbines and Saffron boiled together, and given him; Dandelion, Dodder of Thyme, Eringo, Flax-weed or Toad-flax, the Juice of the Flower-de-luce, Fumitory, the Furz-buſh, Garlick, Gentian, Fellwort or Baldmony, the Seed of Germander, Ground-el, the Roots of black Hellebore, the yellow Berries of Ivy, Liver-wort, Madder, Maidenhair, Wall-Rue, the Seed both of the Male and Female; Mercury, Wild Marjoram, Wormwood, Mouſe-ear, Hedge-Muſtardſeed, Cow Parſnips, the Roots of Pennyroyal, the Seed of Plantain, Baſtard-Rhubarb or the great round-leaved Dock, Rupture-wort, Saracens Conſound or Saracens Woundwort, Shepherds-Purſe, the Seeds and Roots of Sorrel, Spleenwort, Tamariſk, Tormentil or Setfoil, Vervain, Ground-pine, Myrrh, Ivory or Hartſhorn, Long Pepper, Liquorice, Anniſeeds, Ganders or Geeſe Dung, Miſletoe, White-Thorn, the Roots of Parſley, Pimpernel, Chickweed, Sheeps Dung ſteeped in Beer. You are to let him blood in the firſt place.

A particular Receipt for the Yellows.

Take an Ounce of Mithridate, and diſſolve it in a Quart of Ale or Beer, and give it him lukewarm. But if you have no Mithridate, give him two Ounces of *London* Treacle, and for want of that two or three Spoonfuls of common Treacle.

Another particular Receipt for the Yellows.

Take of Turmerick, Burdock-Roots, long Pepper, of each about half an Ounce; Anniſeeds and Liquorice in fine Powder and ſearced, of each a Spoonful; Celandine, the Leaves and Roots, one Handful, chopt ſmall, and ſtrain the Cela-

Celandine, and put them into a Quart of Strong-beer, and boil them a little on the Fire, and in the Cooling ſweeten it with *London* Treacle, and put into it a good piece of Butter, and give it him bloodwarm, and give him white Water, and he will do well.

Another.

Take of the beſt live Honey, half a Pound of Saffron and Fenugreek made into fine Powder as much as will ſuffice; incorporate theſe with your Honey to a ſtiff Paſte, and ſo make thereof three Pills, and dipping them in Sallet-Oil give him them, and ride him and walk him gently an hour, and ſet him up warm.

Another.

After you have let him blood, take a Quart of Ale, and put an Ounce of Saffron and an Ounce of Turmerick into it, being firſt made into fine Powder, and with the Juice of Celandine ſo much as will ſuffice, and give it him bloodwarm.

Another for the Yellows.

After you have blooded him on both ſides the Neck, and third Bar on the Palate of the Mouth, give him Camomile, Elder-Leaves and Celandine, of each a ſmall Handful chopt indifferent ſmall, with a little of the inner Rind of the Barberry-Tree boiled in three Pints of Strong-beer or Ale till they come to a Quart. Then ſtrain the Herbs from the Liquor, and give it him lukewarm faſting in the Morning, with a piece of ſweet Butter melted in it, and ſweetned with two Spoonfuls of Honey or common Treacle; and order him as you have Directions in the phyſicking of Horſes.

Another for the Yellows.

To let blood as before; then give him Turmerick and Anniſeeds beaten to powder, of each an Ounce, with half an Ounce of the Powder of the inner Bark of the Barberry-Tree, or for want of that a Gill of the Juice of Celandine. Give him all theſe either in a Pint of White-Wine Vinegar, or in a Quart of ſtale Beer, and half a Pint of Brandy lukewarm, faſting in the Morning. Give him with it a Spoonful of the Flower of Brimſtone, at the Mouth of the firſt Horn you give him, but none with the reſt; and order him as you do uſually ſick Horſes.

Ano-

Another for it.

After you have let blood, as you muſt always do in this Diſeaſe, mix two pennyworth of Saffron beaten well to powder, a Thimble-full or two of the Powder of Turmeric with freſh Butter, and make it up into a ſmall Ball, and give it him for three or four Mornings together faſting, and it will cure him.

Simples that are good in general for the Cure of the Black Jaundice or Yellows.

The Decoction of the Flowers of Sorrel made in White-Wine or ſtale Beer, and ſweetned with Honey, helpeth to given him often. The Powder of the Leaves and Bark of the Tamarisk-Tree is alſo good given him in Beer, ſo is the Juice of the Leaves of Broom, as alſo the Seeds given him ſeveral Mornings together in Beer till you ſee Amendment. A Horn-full of it is enough to give him at a time.

A particular Receipt which is very good for the Cure of it.

Take the Roots of red Docks, the Roots of Burdocks, and ſlice a good quantity of them, and put them into a Bottle of Beer, with a little Mithridate, cloſe ſtopt, and give him a Horn or two full of it in the Morning faſting.

Things good in general for the Falling-Evil, Planet-ſtruck, Nightmare, or Palſy.

Fifteen of the Seeds of the ſingle Piony given him in ſome Wine; to hang a Flint-ſtone over his Head, or ſome old Scythe or old Iron, or to give him Exerciſe before and after Water, and to mix Hemp ſeed in his Provender, and to enforce him to ſweat; Miſletoe of the Oak given, Muſtard-ſeed, the Seed of the black Poplar, Cinquefoil, Germander, Hyſſop, St. *John*'s-wort, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Nightmare.

Take a Handful of Salt, half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, brown Sugarcandy four Ounces; mix them all very well together, and warm them on the Fire, and give it him blood-warm two Mornings together, and it will cure him.

Another.

Give him this purging Pill, take of Tar three Spoonfuls, of ſweet Butter the like quantity, beat them well together with

with the Powder of Liquorice, Anniſeeds and Sugarcandy, till it be like Paſte: then make them into round Balls, and put into each Ball two or three Cloves of Garlick, and ſo give it him, obſerving to warm him before and after, and let him be faſting likewiſe two or three Hours before and after.

Things good in general for Cramps or Convulſions of the Sinews.

Rhubarb taken inwardly, the Seed of Baſtard St. *John*'s-wort given, the Oil drawn from ſweet Marjoram, and the grieved place anointed with it is good for all manner of Aches coming of a cold Cauſe, Calamint given inwardly, Betony, Elecampane, Maſter-wort or the Herb *Gerard* given inwardly, the Roots of Valerian given, Southern-wood or the Seeds of the Lady's Thiſtle given, Juniper-berries given, Bay-berries, China-roots, Brank-Urſin taken inwardly or apply'd outwardly, the Leaves of the Burdock bruiſed and laid to the place grieved, Oil of Camomile, Centaury apply'd to it, Coſtus, the Juice of Chickweed made up with Hog's-greaſe, if you anoint the place grieved with it, is very good; or to force him to ſweat by Cloths, or to bury him in a Horſe-Dunghil only with his Head out. Allheal or Centaury bruiſed and apply'd to them is very good, ſo is Sow-Fennel bruiſed with Sallet-Oil and Vinegar, and apply'd; ſo is Gentian and Germander bruiſed and apply'd. The Powder of ſtinking Gladwin boiled in Ale or Beer, and given, is good: a Poultice made of Hawkweed and Barley-meal, and laid to the place offended, is alſo good. Lavender is good for them given inwardly; the Roots and Seeds of Marſhmallows boiled in the Grounds of Beer, and apply'd, is alſo good for them: ſo is a Decoction of Mugwort with Camomile and Agrimony, and the grieved place bathed therewith warm. Penny-royal apply'd with Salt, Honey and Vinegar, is alſo good; Hermodactyls and *Venice*-Turpentine given inwardly are alſo very good. The Juice of the green Herb of Tobacco made into an Ointment and apply'd, is alſo very good, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Cramp.

Chafe and rub the Member contracted with Vinegar and common Oil, and then wrap it all over with wet Hay or

rotten Litter, or else with wet woollen Cloths; either of which is a present Remedy.

Another.

After you have sweated him well in a Horse Dunghill, anoint him with this Ointment: Take of Hog's-grease one Pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a Pound, of Pepper half a Dram, of new Wax half a Pound, of Sallet-Oil one Pound; boil them all together, and anoint him with it.

Another.

Take Pimpernel, Primrose-Leaves, Camomile, Crowfoot, Mallows, Fennel, Rosemary, of each six Handfuls, steeped forty eight Hours in fair Water, and boil them in it till they be tender, and bathe him therewith four days together, Morning and Evening, and apply the Herbs to the place with a Thumb-band of Hay wet in the same Liquor, and anoint the said Member every day about Noon, with Petroleum, Nerval, and Oil of Spike mixed together.

Another.

Take two Quarts of Strong Ale, and of black Soap two Pounds, and boil them together till they look like Tar, with some Brandy, and anoint the place grieved therewith.

Things good in general for all Colds or Coughs wet or dry, or for any Consumption or Putrefaction of the Lungs.

Agrimony, Bay-Berries, Elecampane, Liquorice, Anniseeds, Long-Pepper, Moss of an Oaken Pale or Timber-Stick boiled in Milk, Briony, a great Purger which must be corrected; the Gum of the Cherry-Tree dissolved in Ale; Coltsfoot, Hawksweed, Horehound, Juniper-Berries, Pellitory of the Wall given him with Honey and brown Sugarcandy; Pennyroyal boiled in Milk, Groundpine, the Juice of Purslain, the Juice of Jack by the Hedge, Scabious, Vervain, Fennelseeds, Fenugreek, Cardamom, Cummin, Florentine-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, Brimstone, Germander is good for all moist Colds, Hempseed, Raisins of the Sun, Sallet-Oil, Garlick, Tar given him in an Eggshel, Celandine, Mustard and Allum boiled in Ale or Beer, Rhubarb, Cassia, Myrrh, Herb-grass, Caraway Seeds, Marjoram, Currants, Melilot, Lions-Foot, Lac, Manna,

Mantle, Opoponax, Galbanum, Storax, a Hedgehog dried in an Oven and beaten to powder, and mixed with his Provender, or Groundsel shred small with the Powder of Anniseeds boiled in Beer, Hyssop, Water and Salt brayed together and given him, is good for a new Cold; or Oil de Bay, Anniseeds and Liquorice, of each alike made into fine Powder, and sewed in a Linen Cloth and fastned to his Bit, and to ride him upon it, is good to break a new Cold; Ivy-Berries dried and beaten to powder and given in Beer, the Seed of Bank-Cresses, Feltwort or Baldmony, the Root of Centaury boiled in Beer and sweetned with Treacle, the Root of Mullin or Longwort, Ferula, Rosemary, bitter Almonds, Grains of Paradise, Lungwort, or Wood Liverwort; or take a Hen-Egg after the White is taken out, and fill it up with Butter, Tar and Salt, and put it down his Throat for three Mornings together, is very good for an old Cough: the Powder of Angelica taken in the distilled Water of Agarick and Wood-Betony mixed with common Treacle or Honey is very good, the Root of Burrage or Bugloss made into an Electuary and given, is also good; the Juice or the Decoction of Cinquefoil with Honey cureth the Cough of the Lungs; Feversew with the Juice of Sow-Fennel put into an Egg, (the White being taken out) with brown Sugarcandy, or a little *London* Treacle, and given, is excellent: a Syrup made of the green Leaves of the Fruit of the Figtree is good for all the Diseases of the Breast and Lungs, Hyssop boiled with Rue and Honey is good, so is Lungwort, Maidenhair, wild Rotchet, Sugar and Sallet Oil is also very good; the Liquor of the wounded Beachtree given in the Decoction of Coltsfoot is also very good for him, so is also Polypody with Sugarcandy. Or any of these Juices with Honey and Sugarcandy made into a Paste, with the Flowers of Brimstone and Liquorice, are very good, *&c.*

Paticular Receipts for Colds.

Take the Moss that is growing upon an Oaken Pale or Timber-stick, one Handful or better, and boil it very well in three Pints of new Milk, with a green Root of Elecampane cut into thin and small Slices with some Liquorice, and let it boil till the Milk be half consumed, then strain it and press it thoroughly, and as it is a cooling put into it a good piece of sweet Butter, and of ordinary Treacle so much as will suffice, and so give it him blood-warm. This

is good also for the Head-Ach, Frenzy, Stavers, Pose, Cold, Cough wet or dry, Shortness of Breath, rotten Lungs, Glanders, Lax, Looseness, Bloody-Flux, or the like Diseases. You may boil them in Ale or Beer, I mean the Ingredients you make up your Drink with. Let him have this Drink three Mornings together, and it will cure both his Cold and Cough wet and dry.

Another to take away a Cold, Pose or Ratling in the Head, how violent soever, without giving any inward Medicine.

Take a small quantity of fresh or sweet Butter, and of Brimstone made into fine powder; work them together till they be one entire Body, and of a deep yellow Gold-Colour, then take two long Goose-wing Feathers, and anoint them herewith to the very Quills on either side: which done, roll them into more of the Powder of Brimstone, and so put one into either Nostril, and at the butt-end of the Quill put a strong Packthred, which must be fastned over his Pole, like to the Head-stall of a Bridle, and ride him moderately after it about an Hour; and this will provoke him to snort and snuffle out of his Nose and Head, much of congealed Filth which is in his Head. Then tye him to the Rack for an Hour after, and this will purge his Head very clean; then draw forth the Feathers, and he will do well, keeping him warm, and giving him Mashes or White-Water for four or five Mornings together. This you may safely use to a Horse, that is ready to hunt or run for any great Wager, and the day is so near that you durst not give him any inward Drench.

Another very good, tho short.

Take of Thyme one Handful, boil it in a Quart of strong Ale till it come to a Pint, then strain it; add thereunto of ordinary Treacle two Spoonfuls, and give it him blood-warm.

Another for a new taken Cold.

Take Water and Salt, and brew them well together, and give it him bloodwarm.

Another for a Cold newly taken.

Take a Hen's Egg, and make a little hole on the top to take out the White and Yolk; then take Tar and Butter, of each alike, and put it into the Egg after you have work'd it very well together, and give it him three Mornings together.

Another

Another which will cure a long taken Cold, yea, tho it be accompanied with a dry Cough, and Shortneſs of Breath or Purſineſs; and it hath done Cures that have been held very impoſſible to have been effected.

Take of the Conſerve of Elecampane three quarters of an Ounce, and diſſolve it in a Pint and a half of ſweet Sack, and give it him in the morning faſting, and ride him gently a little after; and thus do ſeveral times, till you find the Infirmity does decreaſe.

The kinds of this Conſerve, and how to make it.

There are two kinds thereof, one is called particularly a Preſerve, and the other an abſolute Conſerve. The firſt is ſimple, the other compound, both very ſovereign, but the Conſerve is the beſt: they will keep a whole Year cloſe ſtopped. The ſimple you muſt preſerve as you do all other green Roots, and keep it cloſe in a Gallypot, in its own Syrup, and when you uſe it, beat it in a Mortar together with its Syrup and refined Sugar made firſt into fine powder. Now your Compound or Conſerve is thus made; Firſt let your Roots of Elecampane be neatly candied, and made very dry and hard, and get the youngeſt Roots you can, which muſt be kept alſo in a Gallypot or Glaſs, cloſe ſtopped in a dry and warm place, where they may not give again; and when you uſe it, beat ſo much of it in a Mortar as you ſhall uſe, with the Syrup of Coltsfoot, and the Powder of refined Sugar, ſtill working it till you have brought it to a perfect Conſerve, and give it him in ſweet Sack. The firſt of theſe two, which is the ſimple, helpeth an ordinary Cold or Stopping, it comforteth the Lungs, enlargeth his Wind, purgeth the Head from all filthy Matter, and diſſolveth many other Obſtructions as well in the Body as the Head. But the Compound or Conſerve worketh better Effects in the Body of the Horſe, eſpecially if the Malady be old and dangerous, or if there be any Taint in the Lungs, Liver, or inward Parts. This Conſerve in time, by the frequent Uſe thereof, will cure all dry Coughs which are held to be incurable. But if you have not theſe Conſerves, take this other Receipt.

Another.

Take of the Syrup of Coltsfoot one Ounce, of Elecampane Roots dried, Anniſeeds and Liquorice, of each half

an Ounce, all made into fine powder; an Ounce of brown Sugarcandy, which muſt be divided into two parts: then take ſweet Butter as much as will ſuffice, and ſo make this up into three Balls good and ſtiff, which done roll them in your other Moiety of your powdered Sugarcandy, and ſo give it him faſting, and ride him gently for half an Hour, and ſo ſet him up warm, and let him faſt three Hours after it, and let him drink no cold Water, unleſs it be with Excerciſe, and ſprinkle his Hay with Water, and his Oats with Beer or Ale.

A Fume for a Horſe that is ſtopped in the Head, and that voideth Filth and ſtinking Matter out of his Noſe.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of Coltsfoot made into powder, of each two Drams, with *Venice*-Turpentine; work them into a ſtiff Paſte, and make them into ſmall Cakes the breadth of a Sixpence, and dry them a little, and put one of theſe Cakes into a Chafingdiſh of Coals covered with a Tunnel, and ſo fume him; and this not only during his Phyſick, but at other times after.

For a new Cold give him this Caudle.

Take the Yolks of four new-laid Eggs, and beat them well together, and diſſolve them with a Quart of good Ale; then take three Nutmegs, with a little Anniſeeds and Liquorice, made all into fine powder, and as much Pepper in fine powder as you can put upon a Sixpence, and put theſe in alſo with a piece of ſweet Butter, and two or three Spoonfuls of ordinary Treacle, and of brown Sugarcandy four Ounces; warm them all upon the Fire till the Treacle and Butter be molten, and give it him bloodwarm four or five Mornings together, and this is an infallible Cure.

Another for a Cold.

Take four Ounces of Horſe-Spice, half an Ounce of Diapente, one Ounce of the Powder of Elecampane-Roots, half an Ounce of the Flower of Brimſtone, one Pennyworth of common Treacle, one Pennyworth of Honey, half a quarter of a Pint of Sallet-Oil; take all theſe together with a little Wheat-Flower to a Paſte, made up in a ſmall Ball every morning ſo long as it laſts, wrapped up in ſweet Butter.

A

Another, which cures any Cold or dry Cough, Shortneſs of Breath, Purſineſs, or Broken-wind.

Take of Tar and ſweet Butter of each three Spoonfuls, and work them well together, with the fine Powder of Liquorice, Anniſeeds and Sugarcandy, till it be brought to a hard Paſte; then make it into three round Balls, and put into each Ball four or five Cloves of Garlick, and ſo give him them, and warm him before and after he hath receiv'd them, and be ſure that he be faſting before he takes them, and let him faſt three Hours after them.

Another for the ſame Purpoſe.

Take of the white Fat or Lard of Bacon, a piece four fingers long, and almoſt two fingers thick both ways, then with your Knife make many holes in it, and ſtop it with as many Cloves of Garlick as you can conveniently get into it; then rolling it in the Powder of Liquorice, Anniſeeds, Sugarcandy and Brimſtone, of equal Proportions alike, and give it him in a morning faſting, twice a Week, till you find Amendment, and ride him after it, and ſprinkle his Hay with Water.

Another.

Take a Red-Herring, and take out the Bones, and roll it up in Tar, and give it him down his Throat, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take of the Juice of Liquorice, *London*-Treacle, Anniſeeds, Turmerick, Fenugreek and Long Pepper, of each an Ounce; beat the hard Simples into powder, then put to them two Ounces of *Engliſh* Honey, and as much of Sugarcandy, and incorporate all together, and make thereof Balls as big as Pullets Eggs, and give him two or three in a morning faſting, and give him two new-laid Eggs after them, and at Noon give him a Maſh; keep him warm, and do this twice or thrice.

Another for a deſperate dry Cough.

Take a Pint of burnt Sack, Sallet-Oil, and Red Wine-Vinegar, of both a quarter of a Pint; of Fenugreek, Turmerick, Long-Pepper and Liquorice, of each a Spoonful in Powder, and give it him half at one Noſtril, and half at another, and do this twice a week, and ride him after it

and let him faſt two Hours, and keep his Head and Breaſt warm.

Another for a Horſe that hath a rattling Cold in his Head.

Take a quarter of a Pint of Muſtard made with White wine-Vinegar, and put to it more when it is made, another quarter of a Pint, to make it liquid; then put to it an Egg well beaten, and two Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil: then let it be lukewarm and work it very well together till it foams again, and give it him in three Parts, one down his Mouth, and the other two at each Noſtril.

Another for a Cold long ſettled.

Take three Heads of Garlick and roaſt them in Embers, then mix them with three Spoonfuls of Tar, as much Powder-Sugar, and half a pound of Hogs greaſe; then with Anniſeeds, Liquorice, Elecampane, Fenugreek and Cumminſeeds made into Paſte, and give as much at once as a Duck's Egg.

Another for a dry Cough or Rotten Lungs.

Take Elecampane, the Flower of Brimſtone, Liquorice, Fennel-ſeeds, Linſeed, of each an Ounce, and of clarified Honey one pound; work the Powders and thoſe together, and to a Pint of ſweet Wine put two Ounces of theſe, and give it him Morning and Evening, and ride him after it, and let him faſt one Hour after Riding.

A Cordial Powder for any ordinary Cold, and to prepare a Horſe before Travel, and to preſerve him from Miſchief after Travel.

Take of *Engliſh* Liquorice, Elecampane-Roots, of each an Ounce; of Sugar-Candy an Ounce and a half; and beat them into fine Powder, and ſearce them. Keep it in a Box, and when you uſe it for a Cold, give him an Ounce in a Pint of Sack: if it be in Travel, then give it in ſweet Wine or ſtrong Ale; but if in Ale, then take a Quart, and give it both before Travel and in your Inn, or at home immediately after Travel.

Another to break a feſtered Cold, or dry up Glanders, and to heal the Ulcer and Canker in the Noſe.

Take a Pint of Verjuice, and put to it ſo much ſtrong Muſtard made with white Wine-Vinegar as will make it ſtrong; then take an Ounce of Roch-Allum in Powder, and

as you give this to the Horſe, as you fill the Horn, put in ſome of the Allum, and give him part at both Noſtrils, but eſpecially at that Noſtril that runneth moſt, and ride him after it, and ſet him up warm, and give him no cold Water but with Exerciſe. Thus do divers Mornings.

If you would ſee the manner of making thoſe Cordial Balls, which cure any violent Cold or Glanders, or for other Diſeaſes; look in my firſt Part for Cordial Balls.

Another for a Cold and Surfeit.

Take two handfuls of Mallows, one of Celandine, one of Herb of Grace or Rue, one Pint of Hemp-ſeed beaten in a Mortar very fine, chop the Herbs, and boil them in two Quarts of Water to one Quart: then put into it a piece of Butter, and give it him lukewarm, and order him as a Horſe ſhould be ordered after Drenching.

Another for a Cold, or for any inward Diſeaſe.

Take two Spoonfuls of Bay-ſalt, two Spoonfuls of *Engliſh* Honey, two Spoonfuls of Tar, as much black Soap as a Nut-meg, as much Diapente as will lie upon a Six-pence, and as much Tumerick beaten to powder, as will work altogether until the Salt be molten; then fill two Egg-ſhells with it, and give it him, cracking the Shells a little firſt, and ride him a little after it, and let him faſt two or three Hours after it; then let him eat Hay, after you have firſt given him a Maſh.

Another.

Take a Quart of Whitewine-Vinegar, four Heads of Garlick pilled clean, five new-laid Eggs, ſet it in a Dunghill twenty four Hours; then take out the Eggs and wipe them clean, and ſtrain the Vinegar from the Garlick, and put to it two Spoonfuls of Honey, three Ounces of Treacle of Jeane. Theſe being thus mixed, give him of it every Morning two Horn-fulls, and one Egg ſo long as it laſts.

Another.

Take an Ounce of Elecampane beaten to powder, a Spoonful of Treacle, a Spoonful of *Engliſh* Honey; put all theſe into a Quart of new Milk bloodwarm. This uſe twice a Week till the Cold is gone.

Another.

Take of the Powder of Diapente one Ounce, of the Powder of Liquorice one Ounce, of Aloes beaten to powder half

half an Ounce, eight Cloves of Garlick bruised and peeled, and two Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil; put all together in a Quart of Beer, and give him them in the Morning fasting, and keep him warm for a day or two after it.

Another.

Take a Quart of new Milk, and a Handful of Celandine with the Roots; seethe the Milk, and cut the Celandine as small as you can; then boil them a little while together, and put into it a good piece of sweet Butter, and give it him lukewarm.

Another.

Take an Ounce of Rhubarb, half an Ounce of Cassia, half an Ounce of Mirrh, one pennyworth of *English* Treacle; make them up into three Balls with fresh Butter, and after roll them in Bran, and give him them fasting.

Another for a Cough or Glanders.

Take a little Handful of Box, cut it very small, then take an Ounce of Liquorice beaten, an Ounce of Anniseeds beaten, boil them all in a Quart of Ale or Beer to a Pint and a quarter; then put a quarter of a Pint of good Sallet-Oil, and a quarter of a Pint of Treacle and give it him all at once, and ride him moderately a mile or better; keep him warm covered four or five days, and give him a Mash two Hours after the Drink, and after five days you may ride him moderately, and if you find he requires the same Drink again, give it him.

Another.

Take a Handful of Rue, and shred it very small, and boil it in a Quart of new Milk, till a quarter part be boiled away, then put into it two Spoonfuls of Anniseeds beaten very small and the like quantity of Liquorice, and two Spoonfuls of Treacle, and give it him luke-warm, but put first a piece of sweet Butter into it Let him fast two Hours after it; then give him a Mash of good sweet Malt, and after that Hay.

A Receipt for a dry Husking Cough, which will make him throw out the Filth at his Nostrils.

Take a whole Head of Garlick, and peel all the Cloves clean, then put them into a Linnen-Cloth, and boil them in a Quart of Milk till they become tender; then take out the Garlick and squeeze out the Substance of the Milk, and put

put it a cooling, then put to it a pound of Honey, and half a pound of freſh Butter, and give it him blood-warm.

Another.

If he run at Graſs, and hath got a Cold, and you are minded to drench him, take him up over Night, for fear of catching Cold, and give him the Drink the next Morning, and keep him in the Houſe that day; and if it be warm Weather turn him out the next, and take him up at Night, and the next Day after turn him out both Night and Day.

Another.

Take Bay-berries, Fenugreek, Elecampane-Roots, long Pepper, Liquorice, Anniſeeds, Cummin-ſeeds, about three Ounces of them all beaten very well, and boil'd a little in a Quart of ſtrong Beer; then ſweeten it with Treacle, and put a good piece of Butter into it, and give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take three or four red Onions ſoft roaſted, chop and bruiſe them very ſmall, and mix them with about two Spoonfuls of Muſtard, and four Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil with theſe Powders well beaten, *viz.* Elecampane, long Pepper, Liquorice and Fenugreek, of each a Spoonful, made up in Balls with freſh Butter, and give him three of them at a time for three Mornings together and ride him after it.

Another.

Mingle as much Tar, Honey and Powder of Liquorice, of equal parts alike, as will make two pretty big Balls, and diſſolve them in a Pint and a half of ſtrong Beer, and give him luke-warm, and exerciſe him after it.

Balls for a Cold.

Take about a quarter of an Ounce of Cloves, one Ounce of the Flowers of Roſemary or Leaves dried, made into Powder, two Ounces of red Tar, two Ounces of Fenugreek, two Ounces of Diapente, two Ounces of Syrup of Colts-foot, two Ounces of *Engliſh* Honey, with a little Malt-flower, and work them up into a Paſte, and make Balls of it, and give him two of them at a time faſting, for three Mornings together, with Exerciſe after it, and it will cure him.

Another

Another most excellent for a dry Husking Cough, or Consumption of the Lungs.

Take about three Ounces of the Fat of rusty Bacon, two Ounces of Tar, one Ounce and a half of good Honey, and half an Ounce of the Flower of Brimstone, work all these up together into a stiff Paste, with a little Wheat-Flower, and give him a Ball or two of it for three Mornings together, and rest him two or three Days if there be occasion; repeat them again, and it will certainly cure him.

Another for a Cold old or new, or for a Cough wet or dry.

Stamp or chop a Handful of Herb-Grace or Rue very small, and put to it an Ounce of the Powder of Anniseeds, with a little of the Flower of Brimstone, and make it up into Balls with fresh Butter and a little Honey, and give him a large Ball of it dissolved in a Pint of warm strong Beer every third Morning, for three Mornings together, and throw down after it two or three Hornfuls of clear Beer, to take away the ill taste.

Another for a Summer-Cold, or when you find that he doth not fill himself, but looks gaunt and thin.

Dissolve about a quarter of a pound of red Stone-Sugar, in a Pint of Sack, over the Fire, and when it is indifferent cold, put into it two Spoonfuls of the best Sallet-Oil you can get, and give it him lukewarm, and ride him after it, and order him as you do sick Horses, with Mashes, bursten Oats and warm Water.

Another very good for a Cough of the Lungs.

After you have kept him very sparingly with Meat over night, give him this Drink in the Morning lukewarm, with Exercise after it; *viz.* One Spoonful of the Flower of Brimstone, with half so much of the Powder of Mechoacan, mixed with a Spoonful of the Syrup of Horehound dissolved, in near a Quart of Strong-beer or Ale lukewarm.

The Virtues of it.

'Tis a great Enlarger of the Wind, and a Clearer of his Pipes, and drives away his Cough from the Lungs.

Another for a Cough of the Lungs, Strangling in the Guts, and to clear his Pipes, and to enlarge his Breast.

If you intend your Horse either for Hunting or Running, and

and that you deſire to free him from thoſe Infirmities above-written; then about a Week before you deſign him for theſe Exerciſes, give him this enſuing Drench: *viz.* Two Balls made up in this manner; Take as much of ſweet or ſalt Butter as contains the bigneſs of a large *Turkey*-Egg, and mix and bray together with it a quarter of an Ounce of the Powder of Anniſeeds, with the like quantity of the Powder of Liquorice, and a little of the Flower of Brimſtone. Then divide it into three equal parts, and hollow every part in the nature of a Pye, and put into each part half a Spoonful of the Syrup of Horehound, and cloſe them up cloſe to prevent the Syrup from getting forth, and they are made.

How you are to give them, and how to order him after given.

Warm a Quart of Strong-beer, and fill a Hornful of it, and put into it one of your Balls, and throw it down his throat with two Hornfuls more of Beer after it, to prevent ſticking, and to clear his Paſſage for the remaining Balls. Give the reſt after the ſame manner.

Obſervation.

As Coughs and Colds do generally come by Heats and Colds, ſo the beſt way to ſend them away packing, is by the ſame means they came: therefore I adviſe you, that after you have given him his Balls, you ride him upon a gentle Hand-Gallop till he ſweat; but bring him home cool, by riding him ſoftly a mile or two before you come home. When he is in the Stable, tie him up to the empty Rack, and clothe and litter him up warm, and order him as you do commonly ſick Horſes. But in caſe you find that this Drink hath not wrought the wiſh'd Effects you expected, then about a Week after give him as you did before the ſame Balls again. Theſe Balls are very good to give your Horſe a Week before you turn him to Graſs, and a Week after you have brought him home; and if you give him them three or four times a year, they will keep him in good and perfect Health, making him very thriving and luſty. If this Drink at any time, or any other, make him ſick, give him a Pint of warm Milk from the Cow, or warmed over the Fire, and he will be well again.

Things good in general for broken-winded Horſes.

To ſprinkle Water upon all the Hay he eats is good,

Maiden-

Maidenhair, Iris, Aſh, Liquorice, Fenugreek, Anniſeeds, Cummin, Pepper, bitter Almonds, Burrage, Ariſtolochia, Galingal, Cardamom, Nutmegs, Saffron, Colloquintida, Carduus Benedictus, Fluellin, Dragons, Lung-wort, Angelica, Mullet, Mullen or Horſe Lung-wort, Nettleſeed, the Aſhes of a Hedgehog ſtrew'd amongſt his Provender, Bayberries, Saffron, Yolks of Eggs, Water-Agrimony, Briony, Lung-wort which grows upon rotten Oaks or Beech-Trees; or let him drink ten days together of the Water wherein Liquorice hath been ſodden, mix'd with Wine; or let him drink of the Water wherein hath been boiled Carduus Benedictus, Dragons, Elecampane, Pennyroyal.

Particular Receipts for a broken-winded Horſe.

Take the Guts of a Hedgehog, and dry them and beat them to powder, and give him two or three Spoonfuls thereof in a Pint of Wine or ſtrong Ale; then the reſt mix with Anniſeeds, Liquorice and ſweet Butter, and make round Balls or Pills thereof, and give him two or three after his Drink, and let him faſt two or three hours after. Water-Agrimony is excellent good for it.

Another very good.

Take Wheat-Meal, the Powder of Lungwort *alias* Mullet, Gentiana, Anniſeeds, Cumminſeeds, of each three Drams; make them into fine Powder, and make them into Paſte with Honey and ſweet Butter, of each a like quantity, and put to it the Yolks of two new-laid Eggs; make this Paſte into Balls, and every Morning faſting give him three or four of them rolled up in the Powder of Elecampane and the Powder of Liquorice, of each alike. Theſe Pills preſerve the Wind of a Horſe marvelouſly, and keep him always in breath.

Another.

Take the Excrements of a ſucking Child, and put into it a Pint of White-Wine; let it boil till the one half be conſumed, and ſo give it him bloodwarm. This will cauſe him to forſake his blowing for fifteen days, ſo as when he begunneth again to blow, give him the ſame Medicine, and ſo keep him with this from time to time, as you ſhall find cauſe; and by this means you ſhall have his Wind good. Put not too much of the Excrement in, for it will make him very ſick.

Ano-

Another, which is the best of all.

Take the Leaves of Mullet, *alias* Mullen, *alias* Horse-Lungwort, and dry them, and make them into fine Powder, and make them up in Balls with ordinary Honey, the bigness of a Pidgeon's Egg, and give him three at a time fourteen or fifteen days together, or longer, as you shall see cause, and let him not drink any cold Water during the time, and let his Exercise be moderate, and his Hay sprinkled with Water, and his Oats wet with good Ale or Beer, and in short time he will be well and sound again.

Another very good.

Boar's or Barrow's-Dung dry'd and beaten to powder, and a Spoonful of it, with about two Thimble-fuls of the Powder of Brimstone, put into a Quart of warm Milk, and given him fasting in the Morning for four or five times, resting a day between each taking (to recruit his Spirits) will very much help, if not altogether cure him. If you find that this Drink does not make him sick, you may give him a larger Proportion, not exceeding two Spoonfuls.

Some of the general things for this Distemper mix'd amongst his Provender, will further it very much.

Things good in general for Shortness of Breath, Pursiness, or Preservers of the Wind.

Saffron, Wood-Betony, Butter-bur, Colts-foot, Elecampane, Fennel, Anniseeds, the Juice of Sow-Fennel dissolved in Wine, and put into an Egg given him; Horehound, Juniper-Berries, Lung-wort that groweth upon Oaks or Beeches, which is a kind of Moss, with greyish tough Leaves; Horse-Lungwort, the Roots of Marshmallows, the Roots of Masterwort, Hedge-Mustardseed, the Seeds of Cow-Parsnips, Pellitory of the Wall, the Juice or Seeds of Pursslain, *Rosa-Solis* or Sun-dew, Scabious, the Milk of Sow-Thistles given in Wine or Beer, Vervain, Antimony, Southernwood, the Kernels of Grapes, the Blood of a sucking Pig, *Venus*-Hair, Iris, Ashen Keys, Fenugreek, Raisins, Pepper, Almonds, Burrage, Nettleseeds, Aristolochia, Colloquintida, Powder of Gentian, Nutmegs, Cloves, Galingal, Grains of Paradise, Calamint, Hounds-tongue, Filapendula or Dropwort, Thyme, the Root of Valerian boiled with Liquorice, Raisins and Anniseeds, and given him; Caraway-seeds, White-Wine and Yolks of Eggs, the Juice of Water-cresses,

creſſes, Frankincenſe, a Snake boiled and the Broth given him, Agarick, Cardamom, Lightwort, Angelica, the green Bark of Elder-Tree, red Mints, red Fennel, Primroſe-Leaves, Brimſtone, Salt Nitre, Balm, Violet-Leaves, Hyſop, the Lungs of a Fox boiled or laid in Roſe-water, or dry them and beat them to Powder, and give him them in Beer, or ſtrew them amongſt his Provender; Bay-berries, white Hawthorn-Leaves, the Guts of a Hedgehog dried and beaten to powder, and boiled in Beer and given, or mixed amongſt his Provender with Anniſeeds and Liquorice, or wet his Hay with Water, and his Oats with Ale or Beer. Oil of Frankincenſe, Fern-Roots, Nightſhade, Caſſia, Mithridate, Diacarthamus, Sena, Aloes, *French* Beans enlarge the Breaſt much: the Powder of Feverfew given him in Ale or Beer, is alſo very good, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for Shortneſs of Breath or Purfineſs, or Preſervers of the Wind.

Take Anniſeeds, Liquorice, and Sugarcandy, all beaten into very fine Powder, and take four Spoonfuls thereof, and brew it well in a Pint of White-Wine and half a Pint of Sallet-Oil; and uſe this ever after your Horſe's Travel, and a day before he is travel'd.

Another.

Take Wheat-Flower four Pounds; Elecampane and Gentian, of each an Ounce; Anniſeeds, Fenugreek, Cummin, Brimſtone and Liquorice, of each half a Pound: make them all into very fine Powder and ſearced; then put into it of common *Engliſh* Honey half a Pound, and ſo much White-Wine as will make all theſe into a Cataplaſm. Boil them till they become ſo thick, that they are fit to make up into Balls, and give him three or four at a time, for ſix or eight Mornings together: uſe it often, for it will keep him in health, and make him ſound of his Body, Wind, and Courage. But if you do perceive a Taint in his Wind, then

Take a cloſe earthen Pot, and put thereunto three Pints of the ſtrongeſt Wine-Vinegar, and four new-laid Eggs unbroken, and four Heads of Garlick clean pilled and bruiſed; then cover the Pot very cloſe, and bury it in a Dunghill thirteen hours; then take it up, and take forth the Eggs, and uſe it as you do the ſame Receipt before recited.

Toings

Things good in general for the Glanders.

Cummin-ſeeds, Grains of Paradiſe, Fenugreek, Diahexaple, Sallet-Oil, Aquavitæ, the Bark of Elder, Sugarcandy, Garlick, Urine, White-Wine, Bay-Salt, Liquorice, Anniſeeds, Hog's-greaſe boiled in Water, and take the Fat off; Ginger, Yolks of Eggs, Saffron, Cloves, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Moſs boiled in Milk, Cardamomum, Spikenard of Lavender, Galingal, Honey, Euphorbium, Pepper, Brimſtone, Spikenard of *Spain*, Myrrh, *Iris Illyrica*, Smallage, Pennyroyal, Ariſtolochia, ſalt Water, Oil of Oats, Tanners Oil, *Auripigmentum* and *Tuſſilaginis* beaten into Powder, four Drams of each beaten with Turpentine, and make them into little Cakes; then put them upon a Chafing-diſh of Coals, and a Tunnel put over it, ſo let him take the Perfume of it up his Noſe; Agarick, Gentian, Bayberries, Horehound, *Gumma Guaiacum*, Amber, Coral, Arkanet, Blackberries, the Duſt of Oaken Bark, Bramble-Leaves, Knotgraſs, wild Dazy-Roots, Muskadine Figs, Elecampane, Treacle, Box-leaves, Coals of Aſhen Wood quenched in Ale, and poured down his Noſe.

Particular Receipts for the Glanders.

The firſt thing that is to be done in this Diſeaſe, is to let him blood; then for four or five days together give him ſcalded Bran, which will dry up the moiſt and bad Humours abounding in him, and prepare him the ſooner for his Cure. Take Honey as much as will ſuffice, and mingle it with his Oats, rubbing the Oats and the Honey together betwixt your hands, ſo as the Honey may be very well mixed with your Oats: continue him with this manner of feeding Morning and Evening, till you find him leave running at the Noſe. This Receipt *de Grey* declares he hath cured very many Horſes with.

Another.

Take Sallet-Oil and White-Wine Vinegar, of each ſix Spoonfuls, beat them well together, and put it into both his Noſtrils if they both run, and continue this three Mornings together; and preſently after you have given him this Medicine, you are to put up into that Noſtril that runs a long Gooſe-Feather dipped in Oil de Bay, ſtirring it up and down in his Noſtrils, which will cauſe him to ſneeze and ſnuff ſo, that the viſcous Corruption which remaineth

in his Head may be voided. Keep him warm all the while, let his Drink be ſweet Maſhes.

Another.

Take new-made Chamberlye, and of the beſt and ſtrongeſt White-Wine Vinegar, of each half a Pint; then take of Muſtard-ſeed two or three Spoonfuls, and make Muſtard thereof with Vinegar, and let it be very well ground. That done, put your Vinegar and Chamberlye to the Muſtard, and ſtir them well together; then take of Tar and Bay-Salt, of each alike: incorporate them well together, and convey ſo much thereof as three Egg-ſhells will hold, the Meat firſt taken forth. And having firſt prepared theſe things, let the Horſe be taken forth of the Stable (being kept that Night to a ſpare Diet) and ride him firſt till he begin to ſweat; then give him the three Egg-ſhells fill'd with the ſaid Tar and Salt, and throw down preſently after it a Hornful of the Chamberlye, Vinegar and Muſtard, and half a Horn of it at each Noſtril, then ride him again as you did before, then clothe him warm and litter him well, and let him ſtand upon the Trench until three or four of the clock, then give him a warm Maſh, and order him as you do Horſes in Phyſick. Give him this Medicine every other or third day three or four times, and you ſhall find it an infallible Cure. Before you uſe this Medicine, you muſt prepare his Body with Bran prepared, and after with a Gliſter and your Gooſe-Feathers.

Another.

Take better than two Handfuls of the cankerous Moſs which groweth upon an old Oaken Pale, and boil it in two Quarts of Milk to one; then ſtrain it, and ſqueeze the Moſs well, and give it him lukewarm to drink. Then take two Gooſe-Feathers, and take as much ſweet Butter as contains a Walnut, and with the Powder of Brimſtone finely beaten and ſearced, work them well together with your Knife, till the Butter be brought to a high Gold-colour; then take two Feathers, the longeſt you can get in a Gooſe's Wing, and firſt at the Quill's end with a Needle faſten two long Threds, then with your Salve anoint your Feathers all over: when done, roll them well in the Powder of Brimſtone, and thruſt them up into his Head; then faſten the Thred on the top of the Horſe's head, and ride him abroad for an hour or two, airing him in this manner Morning and Evening. And when he hath ſtood a pretty while in the Stable, after you have brought him home again, untie the Threds, and

draw forth the Feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next occasion to use them. This Disease cometh not suddenly, but grows out of long process of time, and therefore the Cure must be done by leisure: on which account you must continue the Medicine as your leisure will serve, either every day, or at the least thrice a week, if it be for four or five Months together, and be sure it will in the end yield your desire.

Another, which will cure any high running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine.

Take Elecampane Roots, and boil them in Milk till they be soft, that you may bring them to Pap; then with a Horn give them to the Horse with the Milk lukewarm, being no more than will make the Roots liquid: and having anointed your Goose-feathers, use him and ride him as you did before.

Another.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of *Tuffilaginis*, beaten into powder, of each four Drams; then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a Paste: then make them up into little Cakes as broad as a Groat, and dry them. Then lay two or three of them on a Chafing-dish of Coals, and cover them with a Tunnel, so that the Smoke may come up only at the end thereof, and so without any loss ascend up into the Horse's Head through his Nostrils, then ride him till he begin to sweat. This do once every Morning before Water till the running be stopt, which will be in a very short space, considering the Greatness of this Disease.

Another.

After you have purged him two days, give him this Drink: Take of Tanners Ouze new made, wherein never came Hides, one Pint; of Sallet-Oil four Spoonfuls; two Heads of Garlick pilled and bruised; Feverfew and Celandine, of each one Handful chopt very small; Annis-seeds, and Liquorice, and Bay-berries, all finely pulverized, of each one Spoonful: boil all these a little, and give it him blood-warm twice a week fasting; and being thus four times drenched, he will be perfectly cured, which seldom or never fails. The best Receipt for this Disease is at the latter end of the Book.

Another.

Take Cummin-seeds, Grains of Paradise and Fenugreek in powder, of each half an Ounce; of Diahexaple a quar-

ter of an Ounce, beat this in a Mortar with a quarter of a Pint of Verjuice, three Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil, and two Spoonfuls of Aqua Vitæ; then put all together to a quart of old Ale, with a good Slice of sweet Butter, and set it on the fire till it be ready to boil: then being lukewarm, give it him part at his Mouth, and part at both Nostrils; then ride him pretty roundly for an Hour, and set him up warm; let him fast an Hour, and if you perceive Sickness to grow, give him a Pint of new Milk.

Another for the Glanders.

Keep the Horse fasting for four or five Hours, then give him this Drink here under written; *viz.* Ten Cloves of Garlick peeled and bruised, half a Handful of Oaken Moss, and one Handful of Polypody of the Oak; boil all these together upon a gentle Fire in three Pints of new Milk till half be consumed; then strain out the Milk from the Moss and other Ingredients, and put into it three quarters of an Ounce of the Powder of Elecampane-Roots, one Ounce of the Flower of Brimstone, half an Ounce of the Juice of *Spanish* Liquorice, and half an Ounce of the Powder of Fenugreek well mixt together: then take two Handfuls of the innermost Bark of green Elder, and boil it in a Quart of Spring-water, till more than half be consumed; then strain it forth and pour it into the other Ingredients, and stir them well together, and give it him lukewarm, some at his Mouth, and some at his Nose, exceed not above a Pint of it at a time. Warm him very well after it, but bring him home cool, and clothe and litter him up warm, and let him fast three or four Hours after it, and order him as you do sick Horses, with Mashes of Malt, boiled Oats and White-Water, *&c.*

For want of the Leaves take the Root.

Observations upon it.

This Disease is very difficult and hard to cure, and therefore you must not think that at once or twice giving it will get a perfect Conquest over this sturdy Disease, but it must be the Work of a longer time, a Month or more at least, *viz.*

Give it him two or three days together, and intermit a day or two between to recruit his Spirits, and so continue it till you have recovered him. But the best and most certain Receipt for the Cure of this filthy and loathsome Dis-

ease,

eaſe, is by a Receipt at the latter end of the Book, which I refer you principally unto: *vid. The beſt Receipts for the Cure of the Glanders.*

Another to ſtay it for a time, being incurable.

Take the green Bark of Elder, and beat it in a Mortar, and ſtrain it till you have a Pint thereof; then put that Juice to a Pint of old Ale, and warm it on the Fire with a good Lump of ſweet Butter, and an Ounce of Sugarcandy, and ſo give it lukewarm; ride him after it, and let him faſt an Hour, and keep him warm: do thus divers Mornings. If you are minded to take a general Receipt to cure all Colds, Glanders, Heart-Sickneſs, and to purge away molten Greaſe; look in the firſt Part for Balls Cordial to cure any, *&c.*

Things good in general given inwardly to a Hide-bound Horſe.

White-Wine, Sallet-Oil, *Venice*-Turpentine, Mithridate, Loaf-Sugar, Caſſia prepared, Milk of ſweet Almonds, Verjuice given him, Muskadine, ſtrong Ale, Groundſel, Rue, Smallage, Roſemary, Betony, Gum-Dragant, Garlick, ſweet Butter boiled to a Pint and given him three ſeveral mornings together, the Pint being divided into three Parts, and keep him very warm, and feed him with Maſhes and White-Water, or Fennel-Seeds, Anniſeeds, Liquorice, Bay-Berries, Elecampane, Fenugreek, Turmerick, all made into fine powder, infuſed in Ale and Sallet-Oil, given him four mornings together; or Hog's-Greaſe, Dragonwort, Incenſe, Syrup of Roſes diſſolved in Tutſan, and given him blood warm, with moderate Exerciſe till he ſweats.

General outward Applications.

To let him blood either on both ſides the Neck, or on both the Side-Veins; then to take fair Water, Mallows, Smallage, Roſemary, Bay-Leaves boiled in Water till they be ſoft, and bathe his Body with it warm: and after he is dried, anoint him with this Ointment; Hog's-Greaſe, Camomile, Mallows, Groundſel, Smallage chopped ſmall and boiled in the Greaſe, and anoint his Body with it, which will looſen his Skin; or rub him againſt the Hair all over, and lay upon him a Sack well ſoaked in Water, and when it is well drained a while, lay it upon him, and over that as many Cloths as will bring him to a Sweat, which will

be the beſt Cauſe to reſtore him; but let him not ſweat above an Hour at moſt, and cool him by degrees.

Particular Receipts for a Hide-bound Horſe.

After you have let him blood, give him three or four mornings together a Quart of new Milk with two Spoonfuls of Honey, and one Ounce of *London*-Treacle, and let his Food be warm Grains and Salt, or ſodden Barley, or ſweet Maſhes.

Another.

Firſt, let him blood in the Neck-Vein, then give him this Drink: Take two Handfuls of Celandine if it be in the Summer, the Leaves and Stalks will ſerve, but if it be in the Winter, take Leaves, Stalks, Roots and all, chop them ſmall, then take a Handful of Wormwood, and a Handful of Rue, chop them likewiſe, put them all into three Quarts of Ale or Beer, and boil them to a Quart; then ſtrain and ſqueeze the Herbs, and diſſolve into it three Ounces of Treacle, and give it him lukewarm, and for a Week together once a day rub the Horſe's Body all over with Oil and Beer, or Butter and Beer, againſt the Hair, and feed him with warm Maſhes of Malt and Water, and for his Provender let him have Barley ſodden till it begin to break, provided you keep it not until it ſour.

Another.

Take Anniſeeds, Liquorice, Fennel-Seeds, Bay-Berries, Elecampane dried, Fenugreek, Turmerick, of each alike, made into fine powder; give him two Spoonfuls of this powder mixed in Ale or Beer one Quart, with two Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil, and give it him four mornings together, and the firſt morning you are to give him two Spoonfuls of the Powder, and the other three mornings but one: keep him warm, and order him as a ſick Horſe, and he will certainly be cured.

Things good for a tired Horſe in general, either taken inwardly, or applied outwardly.

Powder of Elecampane, Cinnamon, Ginger, Nutmegs, Grains, Cloves, Anniſeeds, Fennel-Seeds, Sage, Roſemary, Mint, Rue, Camomile, Thyme, half an Ounce of either of them, or all of them given him in a Quart of Beer or Ale, or apply'd outwardly to his Back; Arſmart laid under his Saddle, and his Back rubbed therewith, and if he hath any Life in him, this will make him go: or take three or four

four round pebble Stones, and put into his Ear, and tye them fast in, and the Noise of them will make him go: or make a hole in the Flap of his Ear, and thrust a long Stick full of Nicks through the same, and saw and fret him with it, and while he hath any Life in him he will go: or tye a bunch of Pennyroyal to his Bit, and it will keep him from tiring. An Ounce of the Powder of Betony mixed with Honey and Vinegar, given him, is very refreshing.

Simples that are good in general to comfort the Sinews, Arteries and Joints, after Travel, Cold or Pain.

A Poultice made of Pellitory of the Wall, with Mallows or Marshmallows, boiled in the Grounds of strong Beer, with the Flower of Wheat and Bran, and some Oil of Roses put thereto, and laid upon them hot, restoreth any bruised Sinew, Tendon or Muscle to their Strength. A Decoction of Mugwort with Camomile and Agrimony, and his Limbs bathed therewith while it is warm, is a very good Help for them, so is the Herb Ladies-Bread, or the Flower made into a Bath, and used as before, is very good; so is Oaken Moss boiled in the Grounds of Beer, and applied to them, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for a tired Horse.

Take half an Ounce of Elecampane powdred, and give it him in a Quart of Ale, and tye his Head to the Rack, and provender him well at night; or a bunch of Pennyroyal tied to the Bit or Snaffle, is very comfortable to him, and will cause him to travel lustily.

Another.

Take the Powder of Bay-Berries, and mix it with Hog's-Grease, and bathe his Limbs very well with it, it will wonderfully refresh him.

Of Purgation and their Uses, *vid.* my first Part.

Scourings in general and in particular, *vid.* my first Part.

Things good in general for a hot Stomach.

Bilberries, Barberries given inwardly, or to wash his Tongue with Vinegar, or to give him cold Water mingled with Vinegar, or to give him Milk and Wine mingled together, with some *Mel Rosarum*, the Decoction of Endive, Groundsel, Hawkweed, Kidneywort, Garden-Sorrel, Sow-Thistles, *&c.*

Things good in general for a cold Stomach.

Bay-Berries, Angelica, Caraway Seeds, Garden-Chervil, Clary, Mace, Cinnamon, Grains of Paradiſe, Saffron, Pepper, Cloves, Ginger, Elecampane, two Drams of the dried Roots of Lovage is good for it.

Particular Receipts for the Stomach.

If his Stomach be cold, give him Wine and Oil mixt together, divers Mornings together; or other Farriers give Wine, Rue, Sage and Oil boiled together: or to add to the former Compound, White Pepper and Myrrh, or to give him peeled Onions chopt, and Rochet-Seed boiled in Wine. But to clude, for general forſaking and loathing of Meat, proceeding from hot or cold, then give him Blades of Corn in good quantity.

Things good for a Blood-ſpavin.

To cure it, firſt ſhave away the Hair on both ſides the Swelling ſo far as it goes, then take up the Thigh-Vein and let it bleed well; which done, tye the Vein above the Orifice, and let the Vein bleed from below what it will, whereby the Blood which was aſſembled about the Spavin place, is by this means ſent away; then with your Fleam or Inciſion-Knife, make two Inciſions in the lower Part of the Swelling, and after prick two or three Holes in each ſide of the Hough where the Spavin is, that ſo the Medicine may take the better effect: and when the Blood and Water hath vented away ſo much as it will do, bind round about it plaſterwiſe the Whites of Eggs and Bole-Armoniack very well beaten together, either upon Hurds or Linen-Cloth, and make it faſt about the Hough, to keep on the Plaſter; the next day take it off, and waſh and bathe the Sorrance with this Bath, *viz.* Take Mallows and the Tops of Nettles, and boil them in Water till they be ſoft, and therewith bathe him. Then take Mallow-Roots, Brancha Urſina, Oil, Wax and White-Wine, ſo much as will ſuffice, and boil them, and bind this warm to the Sorrance round about the Hough, and ſew a Cloth about it, and ſo let it remain three Days more, and every Morning ſtroke it downwards with your hand gently, to the end the bloody Humour may iſſue fourth: the fourth Day bathe and waſh it clean with the former Bath. That done, take Gum-Creana and Stone Pitch, of each an Ounce, and of Brimſtone a quarter of an Ounce, made

made into very fine powder, melt these on the Fire together, and when it is almost ready to take off, put into it half an Ounce of *Venice* Turpentine, and make a Plaster thereof, spreading it upon Leather, and apply it to the Place warm round about the Hough, and let it remain till it fall away of its own accord; but if it come off too soon, make another Plaster of the same Ingredients, and lay to it, which is the best Cure I could ever know for this Malady.

Another for it.

When the Swelling doth appear upon the inward Part of the Hough, take up the Thigh-Vein, and let it bleed from the nether Part of the Leg, till it will bleed no longer; and after give Fire to the Spavin both long-ways and cross-ways, and then apply a restringent Charge to the place.

Things good to cure a Bone-Spavin.

Take up the Veins that feed it, (whether Spavin or Curb) as well below as above, then give it Fire; then charge the place with Pitch made hot, and clap Flax upon it: then four Days after you must dulcify the Sorrance with the Oil Pampilion and fresh Butter molten together upon a gentle Fire, and when the Scar shall be fallen away, apply unto it a kind of Stuff which is called Blauco or White, made of Jessoe, and so continue it until it be whole.

Another.

Take the Root of Elecampane well cleansed, and lap it in a Paper and roast it soft, and after you have rubbed it and chafed it well, clap it on and bind it on hard, but not so hot as to scald away the Hair, and at twice dressing it will take it away; or if you anoint the Place with Oil of Origanum Morning and Evening, it will take it away. This is good for Curb, Spavin, Ring-Bone, or any bony Excrescence.

Another.

Upon the top of the Excrescence, make a slit with your Knife the length of a Barley-corn or more, then with a fine Cornet raise the Skin from the Bone, and hollow it round the Excrescence, and no more; then dip some Lint in the Oil of Origanum, and thrust it into the hole and cover the Knob, and so let it bridle till you see it rot, and that Nature casteth out both Medicine and Core.

Ano-

Another to abate the Pain of the Bone-Spavin.

Take two pennyworth of the Oil of Camomile, and two pennyworth of the Oil of Turpentine, and mix them well together in a Glaſs viol, and anoint the place grieved with it.

Another.

Take a Pint of Anniſeed-Water, and put into it one Ounce of Houſhold Pepper beaten to powder, with an Ounce of Roch-Allum, and boil them together to the Conſumption of one half; then ſtrain it and put it into a Glaſs to keep for your uſe, and apply it once or twice a day, when you have occaſion.

Another for it, which will not only take that away, but alſo a Splint, Curb, Ring-bone, or any Bony Excreſcence.

Tye up the Horſe's Head, for fear of biting it away.

Firſt, clip away the Hair as far as the Excreſcence goeth, and a little more, then take a piece of allum'd Leather, made as big as the place you have cured; then take a little Shoemakers Wax and ſpread round about the very edge or verge of the ſame, leaving all the inward part empty and not touched with the Wax: then take the Herb Spear-graſs, or Spear-wort; which hath the Vertue to raiſe Bliſters, and bruiſing it, lay ſome thereof upon the Leather in the empty place, and bind it faſt thereon, ſuffering it ſo to lie, (if it be in the Summer-time, when the Herb hath his full ſtrength,) near half a day; but if it be in the Winter, then it is not amiſs (to renew the ſtrength of the Herb) if you add to it a drop or two of the Oil of Origanum, and let it lie half a day fully, and be ſure to tie up his Head, for fear of biting it away. When you take away the Herb, rub the place well, and anoint it with Train-Oil warm, or elſe lay on a Diminium Plaſter. But becauſe this Diſeaſe is not eaſily to be cured, unleſs you ſee ſome skilful Farrier do it before you; I ſhall ſhew you therefore, for the prevention thereof (when you find a Swelling begin to ariſe) what you ſhall uſe.

When you take off the Plaſter, anoint the place with Train Oil warm.

Take Natural Balſam, and having firſt ſhaved away the Hair, anoint the place with it for two or three days, and after you ſhall repreſs the Humours with this Charge: Take three Ounces of the Oil of Roſes, Bole-Armoniack one Ounce,

Ounce, Wheat-flower half an Ounce, and the White of an Egg; make all theſe into one Body, and every day after you have anointed it with Balſam, lay on the ſaid Charge.

Things good in general to take away a Splint.

Oil of Vitriol, unſlak'd Lime, Oil of Origanum, an Elecampane-Root roaſted and laid to it, Oil of Peter, Spear-Graſs, *alias* Spear-wort, Verdegreaſe, Oil-de-bay, Powder of Mercury, Powder of Arſnick, Crow-foot laid to it, *&c.*

Particular Receipts to cure a Splint.

After you have waſhed the place and ſhaved away the Hair, as you muſt do in the cure of all Splints and bony Excreſcences; knock and rub it with your Blood-ſtaff, or a Hazel-ſtick, then prick it with your Fleam. Then take Vervain and Salt, of each a Handful, pound them together to an Ointment, and apply it to the place, and bind it up with a Roller, and ſtitch it on faſt, and let it ſo remain twenty four Hours, and then unbind it, and it is cured.

Another.

Take Nerve-Oil one Ounce, Cantharides the weight of ſixpence, and as much of the Oil of Vipers, boil them eaſily; then anoint the Splint with this croſs the Hair, and heat it in with a hot Iron, then tie up the Horſe's Head to the Rack for twenty four Hours, then ſqueeze out the Corruption; and do this twice or thrice,

For a Splint, and to dry up Wind-Galls.

Firſt, heat the Sorrance with a hot-preſſing Iron, then vent it in ſeveral places with your Fleam; then take a Spoonful of Salt, half a Spoonful of Nerve-Oil, a Penny-Weight of Verdegreaſe, and the White of an Egg; beat all to a Salve, and dipping Flax-Hurds therein, apply it to the Grief.

Another to take off a Splint.

Take of the Oil of Vitriol, and dip a Stick or Feather into the Glaſs, and touch the Place with it, and it will eat it away. If you find it eat too much, you may ſtop it by bathing it with cold Water; or if you boil ſome green Copperas in Water, and waſh the Sore with it, it will not only cleanſe the Sore from any piece of the remaining Splint, but ſoon heal it up likewiſe.

To

To take away a Splint, and leave no Scar behind.

Take a red Hazel-Stick about the bigneſs of your Thumb, about a quarter of a yard long, and after you have beaten and knockt the Splint very well with it, then take and cut one end of it very ſmooth, and ſtick a Needle into the pith of it, leaving ſo much of the point of it out as will prick through the Skin, pricking it full of holes; then take ſome of the Oil of Peter, and rub all over it, and bathe it in with a hot Fire-ſhovel, and do thus four or five days together, and it will cure it.

Another.

Firſt, waſh the place with warm Water, and ſhave away the Hair, then ſlit a hole in the Skin more than the length of a Barley-corn, and then convey into the hole ſo much Arſnick as the fourth part of a Hazle-nut, and bind it on with a Bolſter and Roller of Linen, and make it faſt with a Needle and Thred, and ſo let it remain for three whole Days and Nights, in which time the Arſnick will eat and corrode clean away the Splint: then to kill the Fire anoint the place with ſweet freſh Butter eight or ten days after, being firſt molten, and it will be whole.

Another.

Take the Root of Elecampane well waſhed and cleanſed, and lap it in a brown Paper, wet it and roaſt it in the hot Embers, as you do a Warden; then after you have rubbed and chafed the Excreſcence, bind it faſt on, but not ſo hot as to ſcald away the Hair: this will conſume it away in two or dreſſings. Or if you anoint the Splint with the Oil of Origanum, Morning and Evening, it will take it away, but not preſently.

Obſervation.

You muſt ſtay the falling down of new Humours to the place troubled, by binding Plaſters, as Pitch, Roſin, Maſtick, red Lead, Oil, Bole-Armoniack, and ſuch like; then to draw forth matter which is gathered, with drawing Simples, as Wax, Turpentine, and ſuch like; and laſtly, to dry up the Relicks with drying Powders, as Honey and Lime, Oyſter-ſhells, Soot and ſuch like, And alſo you muſt know, that all Splints, Cravins or Knobs, muſt either be taken away at the beginning, or after the Full of the Moon.

Another

Another Receipt to take off a Splint, which though it seem difficult, de Grey *declares that he hath taken off more then* 100 *Splints.*

Take two Heads of Garlick and peel them, and cut them small, and do neither stamp nor bruise them; then take the like quantity of Salt, and mix with them, and divide them into two equal parts, and put them into two fine Li n Clouts, and bind them upon the ends of two sticks, about a Foot in length, of the fashion of two short wooden Foils, but not so long, being not above twelve inches a piece: Take then your Blood-stick, and rub, knock and beat the Splint therewith very well, to soften it; then prick it through the Skin with your Blood-staff and Fleam: then take of the Oil of Nuts one Pint, and put it into a small Pipkin, and set it upon the Fire with a Chafing-dish of Coals, and make it boiling hot, and when it is ready to boil put in your short Sticks or Foils, which have the Garlick and Salt fastened unto them; and first with the Foil, and then with the other, (I mean by turns) apply them hot to the Splint, and between whiles rub and stroke the Splint downwards with your Thumb, whereby to bring forth the Blood; till having with the Foils very well mollified the said Splint, you may the more easily crush forth the Blood whereof the Splint is engendred and formed, and thus it is cured: only you must remember to anoint the place two or three times after with sweet or fresh Butter.

Things good in general for a Curb.

Oil of Vitriol, Arsnick, Verdegrease, an Elecampane-Root roasted and laid to it, an Onion roasted with unslack'd Lime and laid to it, Mercury, Turpentine, Nerval, green Copperas, Tartar, *&c.*

Particular Receipts to cure a Curb.

First, shave away the Hair, then bind the Hough strait above the Joint; then with a small Stick beat, rub and chafe the Curb, like as you do in the cure of a Splint, then pierce the Skin with your Fleam in two or three places, and so with your Thumb thrust forth and crush out the corrupt Blood, and after convey so deep as you can get, into every Hole, the bignels of two Barley-corns of Arsnick, and so bind up the place, and let it remain for the space of twenty four Hours; then open the place, and anoint it every day with fresh Butter till it be whole. Oil of Vitriol used as you do to take away a Splint, will take off a Curb also.

Note,

Note, That whatsoever cureth the Splint or Spavin, cureth the Curb also.

Another Receipt.

Take White-wine Lees one Pint, a Porringer-full of Wheat-Flower, of Cummin in fine Powder half an Ounce; mix all these well together, and being made warm upon the Fire, charge the place therewith, renewing it once for three or four days together: and when the Swelling is almost gone, draw it with your hot Iron, and charge the Burning with Pitch and Rosin molten together, which must be applied warm, to the end the charge may stick on the better; then presently clap on Flox, and let it remain until it fall away of it self, and let it come in no Wet or Water for the space of fourteen days.

Another.

Take a Bar of Iron, heat it red-hot, and hold it near to the place till it become warm, then with a Fleam prick six or seven holes through the Skin, and anoint the Sorrance with Nerval; then take a Spoonful of Salt, and a Penny-weight of Verdegrease in fine Powder, with the White of an Egg, incorporate them well together, and wet some Flox in this Medicine, and bind it to the place, renewing it every day once, and in a short time he will be perfectly cured. Or calcinate Tartar, and dissolve it in Water, and congeal it like Salt, and mingle it with Soap like an Ointment, and dress it therewith; and this will in forty Hours heal any Mules, Pains and Scratches whatsoever.

Things good for the Mules, *vid.* Scratches.
Things good for the Pains, *vid.* Scratches.
Things good for Kib'd-Heels, *vid.* Scratches.
Things good for Crepances and Rats-tails, *vid.* Scratches.
What cures the Scratches cures all these Diseases.

Things good in general for the Scratches.

These things boiled in Hogs-grease and Train-Oil, are good *viz.* Tar, White Lead, Bole-Armoniack, Verdegrease, green Copperas, Allum, Brimstone, Briar-Apples all beaten to powder; the Powder of Galls, Rue, Rosemary, Gun-powder, burnt Oyster-shells, Turpentine, Ginger, red Herrings chopped small, Elecampane, *&c.* Or Lime, Honey, Bay-salt, Urine, Vinegar, the Sperm of Frogs, Pepper, Garlick, Mustard, Plantain, Rib-wort, Sage, Tobacco, Elder, Man's-dung, Burdock-roots and Snails are good for them, *&c.*

Offer-

Obſervations how to order him in this Diſeaſe.

You are to take notice, that in all the Cures of the Scratches you muſt keep his Legs from Wet during the Cure; and likewiſe you muſt clip away his Hair from off his Heels very cloſe, or elſe that will poiſon his Leg. And likewiſe before you dreſs him with any of the Receipts following, you muſt ſcrape off his Scabs firſt, and waſh off the Blood that follows them with Chamberlye and Salt, or Brine.

When you have dreſs'd him with any of the Receipts following, waſh it clean off with ſcalding Chamberlye and Salt, or ſcalding Brine, before you dreſs him again.

Particular Receipts for the Scratches.

Take Brimſtone, and make it into fine Powder, and mix it with ſweet Butter, and anoint him therewith once a day.

Another.

Take unſlak'd Lime, Salt and Soot, of each alike, all made into fine Powder, boiled in the ſtrongeſt White-wine Vinegar you can get, till it be as thick as a Poultice; then ſoften it with try'd Hogs-greaſe, and ſo work it to an Ointment, and anoint the places grieved till they be cured.

Another.

Take the tender Tops of Elder-buds, and the Berries of the Brambles while they be red, and before they be ripe, of each a Handful; boil them in two Quarts of Wort, and put to it the quantity of an Egg-full of Allum, and waſh the Sorrance very hot twice a day.

Another.

Take Verdegreaſe and make it into fine Powder, and work that and common Honey together till they come to an Ointment: anoint the Sorrance with it, and it will cure it.

Another.

Take try'd Hogs-greaſe and Gunpowder, of each as much as will ſuffice: incorporate your Gunpowder very well with it after it is well beaten to powder, and anoint the place grieved with it once a day.

Another.

Take Honey, Verdegreaſe, Brimſtone bruiſed ſmall, green Copperas and Bay-ſalt, of each a like quantity; boil all theſe with a double quantity of Hogs-greaſe, and put to it a big Root of Elecampane bruiſed in Red-Wine Vinegar; apply

apply this to the Sore very hot, and ſupple it by bathing it with new Milk from the Cow.

Another.

Take a hundred and twelve Snails, and put them in a Linen Bag, and put to them a Handful of Bay-Salt, and hang them againſt the Heat of the Fire, and catch the Oil that ſhall drop from them, and keep it cloſe in a Glaſs, and chafe it into his Legs when he is dry, and three or four Dreſſings will cure him. This muſt be made in *May*.

Another.

Take the Spawn of Frogs, and diſtil it, and keep the Water cloſe ſtopt in a Glaſs for your uſe, and waſh and bathe the places with it every day warm, and it will cure him.

Another.

Take Honey and Pepper made into very fine Powder, and boil them together, and anoint the Sorrance therewith, and they will ſoon heal and dry up.

Another for them being held incurable.

Firſt, let him blood in the Shackle-Veins, the Spur-Veins, and the fore Toe-Veins, only let it be three days between the bleeding of the one Toe and the other; then with a Thumb-Rope of Hay rub the Sores till they be raw and bleed: then take a Quart of old Urine, and a Quart of ſtrong Brine, and put to them half a pound of Allum, and boil it to a Quart. With this hot waſh the Sores well, then take the Sperm of Frogs (in *March*) and put it into an earthen Pot, and in a Week's time it will look like Oil; then take the Oil and the round things you ſee in the Sperm, and ſpread it on a Cloth, and bind it to the Sores, and do this divers times.

Another.

A piece of Bread ſod in Vinegar to a Poultice, and laid to them, will draw out the Cores; then take half an Ounce of Verdegreaſe, as much Brimſtone in quantity and bigneſs, not in weight, and as much Honey as will fill an Egg-ſhell; boil them together till they look black, and anoint the ſore places with it, and this will heal them and cure them. Or ſeethe three or four Ounces of Brimſtone in a Quart of White-wine Vinegar till a fourth part be waſted, and with a Clout put upon the end of a ſtick waſh the ſore Legs therewith as hot as your Horſe can endure it, the Hair being

being first cut close, and the sore Places and Chops of his Heels made as clean and dry as you can.

Another.

Take two Ounces of green Copperas, and beat it to powder; then take half a pound of *English* Honey, and half a pound of black Soap, an Ounce of burnt Oyster-shells, an Ounce of beaten Brimstone; boil them all together to a Salve, and anoint your Horse's Heels with it cold.

Another.

Take two Quarts of strong Ale, a Pint of old *Malaga* Sack, a Handful of dry'd Rosemary beaten to powder, a Handful of dry'd red Sage, two Handfuls of dry'd Bay-leaves, and half a pound of Allum; boil them all together till it be half consumed, then strain it, and when you use it anoint your Horse's Feet with it every day warm till they be whole. Keep him in the Stable during the Cure.

The Mirrour of all Medicines for the Scratches, which never yet failed to cure them, tho their Legs were as big as two Legs, and tho they run ever so much at the heels, provided you follow these Directions; First, to draw Blood from him, and a Week after to give him these Balls, which will purge away the evil Humours out of his Body.

The Purge.

If he be a strong-body'd Horse, and of a good Stature, you may give him an Ounce and a half of the best Aloes you can get, and pound it to a very fine Powder; then put some Butter to it, and work and mix it very well together with your Knife: then divide it into three parts, and cover every part of them over again with fresh Butter, and make them as big as a good Wash-ball; then fasting in the Morning give him them upon the point of a stick, and ride him a little after it, to warm them in his Body, which will make them work the better: then bring him into the Stable and keep him warm, and let him fast two or three hours after it; then give him his Mash of Malt, and let him eat a little Hay, and so ride him softly after that. After you have given him his Balls, put down a Hornful or two of warm Beer after them. If you find him purge too much, so that it takes him quite off his Stomach, give him two or three Wild-Briar Balls beaten to powder in a Quart of warm Beer, and it will soon stay him; or for want of them, boil some Cinnamon, Pepper, Nutmegs, Ginger and Bay-berries

in it. But if you find that he will not purge at all, which is very unlikely, then ride him to ſome green Cornfield that is not eared, (or for want of that, ſome ſour Graſs) and let him feed thereon about a quarter of an hour: then ride him gently home, and ſet him up warm, and you ſhall find him purge very kindly without any danger.

The Receipt for the Scratches.

After you have thus purged him, clip off the Hair as cloſe from his Heels as you can; then ſcrape off all the Scabs till they bleed, and waſh them with Brine, or Chamberlye and Salt ſcalding hot. Then take a quarter of a pound of Brimſtone, half a quarter of a pound of green Copperas beaten to powder, or a quarter of a pound of Gooſe-greaſe, a pennyworth of Tar; boil all theſe together in a very large Pipkin, or elſe they will boil over. Let them boil about a quarter of an hour, then take a Rag and tie it to a ſtick, and dip it into it, and put it all over the raw places ſcalding hot, and dreſs it every other day; making his Feet firſt clean by waſhing off the Stuff with ſcalding Brine, or Chamberlye and Salt, and the Scabs pick'd off, and in three or four Dreſſings it will cure them, be they ever ſo bad, provided you keep him out of the Water during his Cure. If you find his Legs not very much ſwelled, you need not purge him.

Another very good, but not ſo certain, but more proper for the killing and ſhelling of all manner of Scabs growing about a Horſe's Legs.

After you have clipped off the Hair of his Legs very cloſe, and rubbed off the Scabs with a Thumb-Rope of Hay, and waſhed them with ſcalding Chamberlye and Salt, or with ſcalding Brine, and when he is dry, anoint him with this Ointment here-under written. When you come to uſe it, mix with it as you uſe it ſome Oil of Turpentine, for it will be much the better. 'Tis this: Take a Pound of try'd Hog's-greaſe, with a quarter of a Pint of Train-Oil, and boil theſe things in it very well, after they are beaten to fine powder, *viz.* Dyers-Galls five, Verdegreaſe, Bole-Armoniack, green Copperas, Allum, Brimſtone, two Wild-Briar Balls, a Red Herring chopped ſmall, three or four Sprigs of Roſemary, and as many of Rue; mix them as equally as you can, (I mean, the reſt of the Ingredients) only Brimſtone excepted, which you ſhould have moſt of: about

about half a pound weight of all of them together is enough. After your Hog's-greaſe is melted, and the reſt of the Ingredients boiled for ſome time in it, then put in two or three pennyworth of Tar, and boil that with it, which will take away the ill Scent of all the reſt of the Ingredients. When you have well boil'd it, ſtrain it out into a Pot, and keep it for your uſe.

Obſervation upon it.

When you dreſs his Legs with it, anoint him well with it over night, and rub it off with a Thumb-Rope of Hay the next Morning very eaſily, for this Ointment will ſhell them off extraordinarily; then waſh it with ſcalding Brine, and at Night anoint him again with the ſame Ointment. Keep him dry during the Cure.

Another that cureth not only the Scratches, but alſo all rotten and broken Cuts and putrefied Sinews.

After you have order'd him, as in Obſervations how to order him in this Diſeaſe, take half a Pound of *Engliſh* Honey, one Ounce of black Pepper beaten, about thirty Cloves of peeled Garlick; bruiſe and mix them very well together in a wooden Bowl or ſtone Mortar till they come to a Salve, and apply it to the grieved place ſpread upon a brown Paper doubled two or three times double, and put over that a Linen Cloth, ſew'd faſt to keep it from coming off. Bind alſo over that a Thumb-band of wet Hay, and about two or three days after take all off, and make clean the grieved place very well with warm Beef-broth. Do this three or four times after this manner, and it will certainly cure them, conditionally you give him a Drench or two of the Drink, that is call'd, *A Drink to cure the moſt malignant Farcin that is.*

The Vertues of this Salve.

It will not only kill this Diſeaſe, but alſo draw, cleanſe and knit Sinews together in a very ſtrange and wonderful manner.

A moſt Excellent Water, not only good for this Infirmity, but alſo for ſore Heels, Sellander, or Mallender, and to cleanſe and heal any Wound or Sore, by drying up the evil Humour that abounds therein.

After you have boiled a Quart of Conduit or Spring-water, and ſcummed off the Filth that ſhall ariſe on the top, take it off the Fire, and put it up into a Bottle, with two

Ounces of white Copperas, and three Ounces of the Powder of burnt Allum. When you use it, shake the Glass to make it all alike, and apply it warm to the place grieved, and wrap a Linen Rag dipt in Water about the Mallender three or four times double This Water will keep many Years, for the older it is, the better.

Things good in general for Foundring.

First pare all his Soles so thin, that you may see the quick, then let him blood at every Toe, and let them bleed well; then stop the Vein with Tallow and Rosin, and having tack'd hollow Shoes on his Feet, stop them with Bran, Tar and Tallow as boiling hot as may be, and renew it once in two days for a Week together; then exercise him much, and his Feet will come to their Use and Nimbleness: or after he is pared thin, and let blood at his Toes, stop his Feet with Cow's-Dung, Kitchin's-Fee, Tar and Soot boiled together, and poured boiling hot into them. If you travel your Horse, you must stop him with it cold, and add unto it the White of an Egg or two, for that will take away the Heat of the former Day's Journey: or stop his Feet with Tow dipt in an Ointment made of Turpentine, Sallet-Oil, Verdegrease, Wax and Hog's-grease. If he be newly foundred, give him with a Horn a Pint of fair Water with a Handful of Salt in it; but if you stay three or four days, or longer, then give him of Hellebore a Spoonful, of Saffron a Pennyworth, of Assa-fœtida and of Soap of *Venice* two Drams, a little of the Seed of Bay, all made into Powder, and given him in a Pint of Vinegar blood-warm, and cover him with a wet Cloth, and clothe him warm, and tye him up to the Rack, that he neither lie down nor vomit, and let him sweat an hour, and cool him by degrees.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a foundred Horse in the

For a Horse foundred in his Feet, let him blood its of Neck, Breast, and Spur-Veins, and take two Quarts Blood from him, with which make this Charge as follows Take the Blood, and put into it eight new-laid Eggs, Shell and all, beat them well together, and put to it half a pound of Bole-Armoniack beaten to powder, strong White-Wine Vinegar one Pint, *Sanguis Draconis* three Ounces in fine powder; make this up with Wheat-Meal good and thick, with this charge his Back, Reins, Breast, Thighs, Fetlocks and

and Soles, and spread two Cloths plaster-wise, good and thick, and apply them to the Coffin of his Feet, and bind the fore Legs about the Knees good and streight, with broad Filleting or Lists; then ride him two hours upon a hard Way, which if it be paved or pitch'd, it is the better, his Feet being pared reasonable near before-hand: and when you do bring him into the Stable, let his Feet be stopt with this Charge; Take Rye or Wheat-Bran, Ox or Cow's-Dung, Sheep's-Suet or Turpentine (which must be put in last;) mince your Sheep's-Suet small, melt and heat all these upon the Fire, stirring them very well; then put in your Bran, to make it into a stiff Paste; then put in your Turpentine, and incorporate them all very well together, and stop your Horse's Feet with it: which being thus charged and stopt three or four days together, ridden and kept warm, and not suffered to drink cold Water, but either Mashes or white Water, he will be found in four or six days. If it be a dry Foundring by standing too long in the Stable, then pare him somewhat near, and let him bleed well in the Toe-Veins. Then take Eggs, and roast them blue hard, and together with the Powder of Cummin stop his Feet therewith so hot, as they may be taken out of the Embers, and put over the Soles a piece of Leather, with Splints cross, to keep the Eggs from coming out.

Take then a great Onion, peel and stamp it, and let it infuse twenty four hours before in the strongest Whitewine-Vinegar you can get, and give it the Horse presently after you have stopt the Horse's Feet, and cover him up warm, and let him stand upon the Trench three hours, and then give him Meat and white Water.

Another for Foundring a Month or more.

You must take out the Soles of his Feet, and have in a readiness these things, *viz.* Take the tender Tops of Hysop three Handfuls, pound them together in a Mortar to stench his bleeding, then have this Receipt in a readiness:

Take Snails in the Shells, and take them forth and reserve them; then take a Handful of Bay-Salt, and two or three Handfuls of the tender Tops of the angriest Nettles you can find; beat them with your Snails and Salt to a Salve, then take out the Sole, and stench the bleeding with your Hysop, and when it leaveth bleeding, apply this Medicine to it, and bind it up with Cloths, and let it remain twenty four hours: then open it and heal it up with your green

Ointment, which you may find in my firſt Part, and in two days you ſhall ſee a new Sole coming. But if he be but hoof-bound, then take Turpentine and Sheep's-Suet, of each half a pound; Wax a little, Sallet-Oil half a Pint; boil all together, but put in the Turpentine laſt, and as they boil keep them with a continual ſtirring, and anoint his Hoof once a day well.

For an ordinary Heat in his Feet.

Take Wheat-Bran and Hog's-greaſe, and make them into a Poultice, and apply it as well to the Coffin as the Soles, and it will be well again.

Another for a Founder or Frettize wet or dry.

Firſt, pare thin, open the Heels wide, and take good ſtore of blood from the Toes; then tack on a Shoe ſomewhat hollow, broad at the Heels, and the Inſide of the Web, from the firſt Nail to the Heel, turned inward towards the Frog, yet not to touch any part thereof, or the Hoof, ſo as he may tread on the Out-verge of the Shoe, and not on the inward. Then take *Burgundy* Pitch, or Frankincenſe, and rolling it in a little fine Cotton-Wool or Bombaſt, with a hot Iron melt it into the Foot, betwixt the Shoe and the Toe, till the Orifice where the Blood was taken be filled up; then take half a pound of Hog's greaſe and melt it, and mix it with Wheat-Bran till it be as thick as a Poultice: then boiling hot ſtop up his Feet with it, then cover it with a piece of an old Shoe, and ſplint it up, and ſo let him ſtand for three or four days; then if occaſion ſerve you may renew it, otherwiſe the Cure is wrought.

Obſervations on the Cure.

Firſt, You ſhall not need to remove or ſtir his Shoes; then after twenty four hours rub off the Charge from his Back.

Item, Take away his Garters after twelve hours, and rub his Knees and Hoof with your hand, and with Wiſps, to take away the Numbneſs.

Item, If you cannot get Wheat-Meal, take Oat-Meal.

Item, If he will not bleed in the Veins before-named, then bleed him in the Neck-Vein.

Laſtly, If you take him in hand to cure within twenty four hours after he is foundred, he will be cured in twenty four hours; but if he go longer, the Cure will be longer in doing. Now

Now if he be foundred through Streightness of his Shoe, which is not a Founder but a Frettizing, which is a degree less than Foundering; then let him blood on the Toes, and stop the place with bruised Sage, and tack his Shoe on again, and stop it with Hog's-Grease and Bran boiled together, as hot as possible you can, and do this twice in a Fortnight, and give him rest and it will help him.

An odd kind of Receipt to cure a Foundred Horse.

Ride him so hard as to sweat, then ride him up to the Knees in Water, and there let him stand about half an hour, which will cause the Humour to ascend out of his Feet, into his Body; then an Hour after you come home, give him a thorough Scouring, and ride him gently after it, and so bring him home, and clothe him up warm, and this will carry it out of his Body again. *Probatum*, by Mr. *Goodman*; give him the Purge as aforesaid.

Another for the taking out of his Sole.

If you find that none of the Receipts for this Disease have had their wished Effects in order to his Cure, then follow these Directions for the taking out of his Soles; and though it be not the common way that is practised amongst our Smiths, yet 'tis looked upon to be the best and safest: 'Tis this; First, tye about his Pastern a List or Cord so hard as will keep up the Blood into his Leg, that it fall not down to trouble you, then pare the Foot thin, and cut the Hoof round with your Incision-Knife to the quick, as near to the inside of the outward Shell of the Hoof as you can raise the Sole at the Toe, then take hold of it with a Pair of Pinchers, and pluck it gently upwards towards the Heel, for fear of breaking the Vein in the Foot. When you have so done tack on the Shoe again somewhat hollow and broad; then untye the Cord, and knock round the Hoof with a Blood-staff, and the Blood will descend very freely, which when you think he hath bled enough, stanch it with two or three Handfuls of Hyssop bruised with Salt, and put over it Flox, Hurds, or Tow, and over them a piece of stiff Leather between the Hurds and the Shoe, to keep them in; or you may put two or three flat Sticks cross them in the room of the Leather. About twenty four Hours after or more, take away the Flox or Hurds, and bruise a Handful or two of the angriest red Nettles you can get, with Bay-Salt, and apply them, and cover them over with the Hurds and Splinters as

you did before. About a Month after or more open it again, and new dreſs it with Salt and Hog's-Greaſe well bruiſed and mixed together, and ſplint it up as you did before with Tow or Flox, or ſome ſuch like thing. Continue this laſt Medicine during the Cure, which will be perfected in two or three times dreſſing more at fartheſt: If you find him ſomewhat ſound, tack on the Shoe with a broad Web, and let it ſtand wide and eaſy, and in twelve or thirteen days he will be fit to ride an eaſy Journey. When you ride him at any time, when you bring him home at Night, apply all over his Foot, both inſide and outſide, a Poultice made of about four Ounces of Sheep's Suet cut ſmall and White-Wine Vinegar boiled together, and keep it on with Hurds and Splints as you did before: Let this remain about forty eight hours or more. This laſt Poultice uſed three or four times will very much ſtrengthen his Hoof, and make him ſtand again.

Directions for the Ordering of him.

1. To let blood, and keep him in during his Cure.

2. If he be foundred of both his Feet, take not out both his Soles together, for then he will not be able to ſtand, nor riſe when he is down.

3. Some Smiths do take out the Fruſh and Sole, and ſome but only the Sole: your often Practice in this Cure will be the beſt Director.

4. The common way of taking out of Soles is known by every Country Smith.

5. The Poultice that I ordered to be laſt applied to the Sole and Coffin of the Foot, is very good applied to it when it hath been bruiſed by Stub, Stone, or any other Accident.

Another for the Foundring in the Cheſt.

About five or ſix Pennyworth of the Oil of Peter, with the like Quantity of Ale or Beer mixed with it, and well rubbed in with your Hand, holding a hot Fire-ſhovel at the ſame time before it, while you are doing it, is a very good Help in order to his Cure. If you intend to have the right Oil of Peter, do not ſtint yourſelf in the Price of it; for if you do, they will mix Oil of Turpentine with it.

Things good in general for the Mallender and Sellender.

You are always in theſe Diſeaſes firſt to waſh and ſhave away the Hair, and rub the Sorrance with a Wiſp till it be raw;

raw, and dry up the yellow Matter that comes out of it, before you apply any thing to it.

What cures the Scratches, will cure this Disease.

Gunpowder bruised in Hog's-Grease, and anoint the Grief therewith; a soft-rowed Herring out of the Pickle, beaten with Soap and Allum, and laid to it, and renewing it for three Days together, and pluck off the Scabs before you lay it on again; Hen's Dung and Gilly-Flowers beaten together, or Soap and Lime laid to it; or the Dung of a Man, or Sulphur, Vitriol, Salt-Nitre, Sal-Gemmæ mixt with Oil-de-bay, or green Copperas, Allum and Tobacco boiled in Urine, or Oil of Turpentine, Oil of Hempseed, Mustard, Verdegrease, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Cure of these Diseases.

Take Glovers Shreds which he cutteth from his white Leather, and boil them in Whitewine-Vinegar till they be soft, and bind this to it hot; and if you find that once or twice dressing it take not away the Scurf or Scab, renew it daily till it doth, for by this means the Roots of the bristly Hairs which grow in it, which feedeth the Mallender, will be taken away by this Receipt, which will cause it soon to be cured.

Another.

To anoint the Sorrance with the Oil of Turpentine, will both kill and heal it, and make it marvellous sound. And this will likewise cure the Scratches.

Another.

Take an Ounce of Gunpowder, bruise it to dust, and mix it well with Hog's-Grease and Allum, and chafe it in well, two or three Dressings will cure it.

Another.

Take Verdegrease and soft Grease, and grind them well together to an Ointment, put it into a Box by itself: Then take Wax, Hog's-Grease and Turpentine, of each alike, and being melted together, put that Salve into another Box; and when you come to dress the Sore, after you have taken off the Scab, and made it raw, anoint it with your green Salve of Verdegrease and fresh Grease, only for two or three Days. It is a sharp Salve, and will kill the cankerous Humour: then when you see the Sore look fair, you shall take two Parts of the yellow Salve, and one part of the green Salve, and mix them well together, anoint the Sore there-

therewith till it be whole, making it ſtronger or weaker, as you ſhall find occaſion.

Another.

Take of the ſtrongeſt Whitewine-Vinegar, and boil it, and ſo boiling hot rub the Mallender therewith twice every day until it do bleed; that done, put upon it the Powder of Verdegreaſe good and thick, and ſo bind it on with a Clout, and let it ſo remain till a Cruſt come thereon: and when you ſhall find the Cruſt to be dry, and withal to chop, anoint the grieved Places with try'd Hog's-Greaſe, and that will cauſe the Cruſt to fall off.

Another.

After you have rubbed off the Scabs, and waſhed it well with ſclading Chamber-lye and Salt, anoint it with this Salve made of green Copperas, Galls, Verdegreaſe, Gunpowder, and Allum, all made into fine powder, and made up in Hog's-Greaſe and Tar.

Things good in general to eat away proud Fleſh.

Ink, Quick-Sulphur, Orpiment, Lethargy, unſlak'd Lyme, Roch-Allum, Galls, Soot, Verdegreaſe, green Copperas, white Copperas, Precipitate, the Juice of Burrage, Scabious, Fumitory, a little Oil and Vinegar boiled with a ſoft Fire, and put to it Tar, and it will eat away any dead Fleſh; Oil of Vitriol, black Hellebore, the Root of it beaten to powder, Arſnick, *&c.*

An excellent Ointment to eat away all dead Fleſh, and to heal the ſame.

Take of common Honey two Ounces, Roch-Allum, Verdegreaſe and Vinegar, of each an Ounce, Sublimate two Drams: let all be made into fine Powder, and boil it a few Warmths, keeping it ſtill ſtirring, and then take it from the Fire, and keep it in a Gallypot cloſe ſtopped for your Uſe. Apply it upon Lint or fine Hurds to the Sorrance once a day, and it cureth ſpeedily and ſoundly; but before you dreſs the Sore, cleanſe, waſh and inject the Wound with this Water.

A Water to waſh and cleanſe a Sore or Wound, before you uſe the Ointment above.

Take Red-Sage, Plantain, Ribwort, Yarrow, Bramble-Leaves, Roſemary, Hyſop, Honeyſuckle-Leaves, of each half a Handful; boil them in one Pint of White-Wine, and as much

much of Smith's or cold Trough-Water; then add thereto the boiling of common Honey one Spoonful, and as much Allum as a Wall-nut, and a bright black piece of a Sea-coal, the bigneſs of an Egg unbroken; then let it boil till half be conſumed, then ſtrain it hard and waſh the Sore therewith, and if the Wound be deep, inject of this Water with a Syringe into it every day when you dreſs him, and by this doing you ſhall cleanſe the Wound, and take away all bad and dead Fleſh, and heal it up ſoundly.

Another Water to cleanſe and heal a Sore.

To a Gallon of Smiths-Water and a Quart of Ale, add two Handfuls of Sage, a Pint of Honey, an Ounce of common Allum, and half an Ounce of white Copperas; boil them very well together till they be all conſumed, and put them into a clean Veſſel, and keep them for your uſe. Or take Spring-water, and put to it Roch-Allum and Madder, and boil them till they be both conſumed, and put them up for your uſe. Or take Sage, Cinquefoil and Fennel, of each a good Handful, and boil them in a Gallon of Spring-water till they be tender; then ſtrain the Liquor from the Herbs, and put to it a quarter of a Pound of Roch-Allum, and let it boil again a little while, till the Allum be diſſolved: then take it from the Fire, and make uſe of it after this manner, *viz.* Dip Lint in it warm, and lay it upon the Sore, and if it be hollow apply more Lint; then make a Bolſter of Linen-Cloth, and wet it well in the Water, then wring out the Water, and bind on the Bolſter cloſe.

A Receipt for a Puncture or green Wound.

If it be in the Foot, or any other part of the Body, if you can come well unto it, or if it be an Impoſthumation unbroken, ſcald it firſt with this Medicine: Then waſh it with the Water above.

Medicine.

Take red Tar a pennyworth, of the reddeſt and beſt, of Hog's greaſe half a pound, of green Copperas and Bay-ſalt of each a Handful, both made into fine Powder; boil all theſe very well, and with a Clout faſtened upon a Stick, apply it ſcalding hot four Mornings together, for this ſcalding doth ſo kill the Malice of the Fiſtula, that it can never break to annoy the Horſe any further. It cureth the Impoſthumes and foul Ulcers, being thus applied.

Things

Things good to take a Wen, or any other Excrescence arising in the Flesh, or hard Swellings.

Balm used with Salt taketh away the hard Swellings in the Throat, or Wens or Kernels therein. The Decoction of the lesser Celandine wonderfully cureth all hard Wens or Tumours applied to them; the Seed of Darnel, Pigeons-dung, Sallet-Oil and the Powder of Linseed boiled to the form of a Plaster, consumeth them; the Seed of Turn-Sole laid upon them, Archangel, or rather the Hedge-Nettle, stamped with Vinegar and applied as a Poultice, taketh away any hard Swelling, and also fiery hot Inflammations. To tie a double Thred about it to eat it off, then with your Incision-Knife cut it across in four equal parts or quarters to the very bottom, but beware you touch not either Vein or Sinew; then with your Oil of Vitriol eat it away, or with Mercury, or else burn them off with yonr hot Iron, then heal the place with your green Ointment. The Leaves of Bucks-horn bruised and applied will consume them. The Milk that issueth out of the Fig-tree Branches when they are broken and applied, is also very good; so is the Juice of Housleek or Mercury: the Juice of the Leaves and Flowers of Mullin, with the Powder of the dried Root rubbed upon them, taketh them away. The Water that droppeth from the hollow places of the Poplar-tree anointed with it doth the like; Garden-Rue bruised with a few Myrtle-leaves, made with Wax, and applied, taketh away all sorts of them, so doth an Ointment made of burnt Ashes of the Willow-tree, mixed with Vinegar, and the place anointed therewith, *&c.*

Things good to cure an Anbury, which is a great spungy Wart full of Blood.

To tie it about with a Thred or Hair so hard as you can pull it, and in few days it will fall away of it self; then strew upon it the powder of Verdegrease to kill it at the Root, and heal it up again with your green Ointment. But if it be so flat that you cannot bind any about it, then take it away with your Incision-Knife close to the Skin, or else burn it off with a hot Iron, and then first kill the Fire with Turpentine and Hog's-grease molten together, and heal it up as before prescribed: but if it grow in such a finewy place that it cannot be conveniently cut away with a hot Iron,

Iron, then eat it out with the Oil of Vitriol, and heal it up as you do other Wounds.

Head purged, *vid.* Perfumes in the first Part.

Things good for to put in Ointments and Salves, for the Cure of all manner of Wounds in general.

The Juice of ordinary Centaury is good to cleanse old Sores, and to heal up Wounds, the Juice of the Leaves of Clivers do close up the Lips of green Wounds, or the Powder of the Seed of the Herb doth the same; Clown's Wound-wort, Coral-wort, Cole-wort, the powder of the Root of Sow-Fennel, or Hog's-Fennel, Fox-gloves, Golden-rod, Winter-green, True-love or One-berry, Hounds-tongue, St. *John's*-wort, Kidney-wort, Knape-weed, Ladies-Mantle is the best Wound-Herb that is, and is good for inward and outward Wounds, Loosestrife; the dried Leaves of Medlers strewed upon a Wound, heal it quickly, Money-wort-or the Herb Twopence. The Juice of Nettles is good to wash a Wound with, and if it be bound to it but three days you need no other Medicine; Pimpernel, Ground-pine, Plantain, Rag-wort, wild Sage, Saracens Consound, Solomon's-Seal, Sanicle, Burnet, Saxifrage, Scabious, Self-heal, Southernwood, the Juice of wild Tansy, Tutsan, Vervain, Blue-bottle, Elder, Couch-grass or Dog's-grass, Daffadil, Cranes-bill, Comfrey do so conglutinate things together, that it is reported that it will sodder Meat together, being cut into peices and put into the Pot; Celandine, Broom, Turpentine, Mastick, Frankincense, Balsam, the Leaves of Elm, Flix-weed is good for Ulcers and Wounds, Byfoil, Costmary, Cowslips, Cross-wort, Yarrow is good for Fistulaes and Ulcers, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for Salves or Ointments, for Wounds old or new.

Take common Honey and Verdegrease finely pulverized, of each as much as will suffice, boil them together till the Medicine wax red, and this will heal up any old or green Sore in short space.

Another.

Take Turpentine, black Soap, Hog's-grease, green Treat and Pitch a like quantity; mix and boil them together, and apply it warm, either Plaster-wise or Tent-wise.

Another.

Take a quarter of a pound of Butter, of Tar and black Soap

Soap of each half as much, and a little Turpentine, boil all but the Soap together, and when you take it off the Fire, put in the Soap; with this Ointment dreſs any Cut, and it will heal it, or Hog's-greaſe and *Venice*-Turpentine melted together.

Another.

Take eight Drams of *Venice*-Turpentine, four Drams of new Virgins-wax, melt them in a Pewter-Veſſel, and ſtir them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the Fire, and put into them half a Pint of White-wine, and when it is cold, pick holes in it, and let the White-wine run out; then anoint your Hands with Oil of Roſes, and work the Wax and Turpentine well together; then put them into the Pewter Veſſel again, and put to them half an Ounce of the Gum of the Fir-tree, and three Drams of the Juice of Betony; then ſeethe them well together till the Juice of Betony be waſted, and put to it three Drams of Womens Milk, or the Milk of a red Cow, and ſeethe them once again until the Milk be waſted, and ſo keep it for your uſe in a Gally-pot.

Another.

Take Wormwood, Marjoram, Pimpernel, Calamint, Olibanum, beat them all into powder, and boil them in Wax and Barrow's greaſe till they be as thick as an Ointment or Salve: with this anoint any Wound, and it will heal it.

Others.

The Powder of Honey and Lime, or Turpentine ſimply of it ſelf, will dry up and skin any Wound. If your Horſe be gored upon a Stake, then pour into the Wound Butter ſcalding hot, and let him lie after he is caſt ſo long as you think the Ointment is gone down to the bottom, and do thus once a day till it be whole. If you deſire to keep a Wound open, put in the Powder of green Copperas; but if to heal it up ſpeedily, then Wheat-flower and Honey well beaten together will do it.

Another for any new Wound or Hurt.

A quarter of a pound of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack put into the beſt Whitewine-Vinegar as you can get, and boiled well upon the Fire, and a piece of Butter put into it when it comes off the Fire, and the Wound waſhed therewith warm once every day, will be ſoon well. Or Linſeed-Oil is very good put into a Wound to heal it up, and to kill a Gangreen if it be well waſhed and cleanſed with Butter and Vinegar:

Vinegar: Or Train-Oil and the Powder of Verdegrease melted together, will heal and skin any Wound well and quickly.

If you desire to see more Variety of Ointments, Salves, Powders and Waters, look for them in the first Part.

Observations upon dressing of Wounds.

If he hath a Wound in his Head newly made, or in any other part that is full of Sinews, Bones or Gristles; wash it well with White-Wine warmed, and keep it while you are in dressing covered warm with wet Cloths: then search the bottom of the Wound with a Probe, and let it take as little Wind and Air as you can, and having found the bottom of it, stop the Wound close with a Clout till your Salve be ready. If the Wound be a Cut, make a handsome Roll of soft Tow, so long and so big as may fill the bottom of the Wound, which for the most part is not so wide as the Mouth of the Wound; then make another Roll somewhat bigger, to fill up the rest of the Wound, even the hard Mouth, and anoint them with such Ointment as you shall think fit for the Cure, lukewarm: only observe this, that if the Wound be large, stitch it a little together with crimson Silk, it will heal the sooner, and make the Scar less. But if the Hurt be like a Hole made with some Prick, then make a stiff Tent either of Tow or Lint, so long as will reach the bottom, and anoint it with your Ointments, and bolster the same with a little Tow, and clap a sticking Plaster over it made of Pitch, Rosin, Mastick and Turpentine, melted together. If the Mouth of the Wound be not wide enough to let out the Matter, if it be in such a place as you may do it without hurting the Sinews, give it a slit from the Mouth downwards, that so the Matter may have the free passage out; and be sure to keep in the Tent by one means or other, and that it be not drowned within the Wound, and to tie some Thred at the upper end thereof, that it may be taken out at pleasure. Now if the Hole be deep, and in such a place as you cannot cut it, then make your Tent full as big as the Hole of a dry Spunge that was never wet, so long as it may reach the bottom; and the Tent being made somewhat full with continual turning and drying of it, you shall easily get it down, and dress the Wound twice a day, and cleanse it every time with White-Wine lukewarm: for the Spunge anointed with the Ointments will both draw and suck up all the evil Matter, and

make

make it very fair within. And as it beginneth to heal every day, tent it leſſer and leſſer, until it be ready to cloſe up; and never leave tenting it ſo long as it will receive a Tent, be it never ſo ſhort: for haſty healing of Wounds breedeth Fiſtula's, which properly be old Sores, and therefore muſt be healed like Fiſtulaes. Now if the Wound proceed from ſome antient Impoſthumation, then take two or three great Onions, and taking out the Cores, put therein a little Bay-Salt and a little whole Saffron, and roaſt them in hot Embers, then plaſter-wiſe lay them hot to the Wound, renewing it once a day till it be whole. Now if the upper Skin of the Wound be putrefied, to take it away, lay a Plaſter of Cow's-dung to it ſod in Milk, and there let it remain for twenty four hours, and it will leave nothing vile about the Wound.

An Excellent Receipt for any green Wound.

Take Pennyroyal, Camomile, Brooklime, Ragwort or Ragweed, Sage, Groundpine, Ivy, Plantain, Yarrow, Feverfew, Maidenhair, of each a Handful; ſhred and bruiſe them very well in a Mortar together, then ſet them over the Fire in a Pound and a half, or more, of Hogs-Seam or Lard, with half a Pound of Deer's-Suet; let them gently ſimmer for about an Hour: then take it off the Fire, and ſtrain the Herbs from the Liquor, and ſet it over the Fire again, and make it boil up; then take it off, and put into it a quarter of an Ounce of Verdegreaſe finely powdred and ſearced, with a quarter of an Ounce of burnt Allum, and an Ounce of common Bees-Wax, and a good quantity of the Oil of Deer's-Shank; ſtir them very well together, and put it into a Pot, and keep it for your uſe. If you cannot get Maidenhair, uſe Chickweed, and for want of Deer's-Suet, or Oil of Deer's-Shank, put in a Pound of Seam or Lard, half a Pound of *May*-Butter, and half a Pound of Sheep's-Tallow.

How to make Adders-Tongue Ointment, which is a moſt ſovereign and excellent Ointment for any Beaſt that hath been ſtung or bitten by any venomous Creature; or for any Wound by Stake, Bite, or any other Accident: As alſo for any hard Swelling in any part of the Body. And is alſo very good for the Garget in a Cow's-Bag, chafed in very well with your Hand twice a day.

Take as much of the Herb Adders-Tongue as you have occa-

sion to use, with a third part of Male Plantain, and bruise them very well in a Mortar together; then put to it fresh Butter new from the Churn, well beaten from the Butter-Milk, and mix it very well with your Herbs, but put not in so much of it as to make it lose its green Colours. After you have so done, put it into an earthen Pan, and let it lie about three or four Weeks in some cool place till it grow mouldy; then melt it down upon a gentle Fire till the Herbs grow crisp: then strain it out into some convenient thing fit for your purpose, and keep it for your use. You may dissolve into it, if you please, (when it comes off the Fire) some fine and clear Turpentine, which will make it much the better. You may make an excellent green Balsam for the said Distempers, if you boil the Herbs in Sallet-Oil, and dissolve into it, when it comes off the Fire, some fine clear Turpentine. This Ointment is made only in the Month of *April* or *May*, the Herb being then to be found, and in its prime, for it soon perisheth with a little Heat.

Another for a Sore or Swelling.

Black Soap, common Turpentine, green Treat (which is a green Ointment bought at the Apothecaries) Pitch and Hogs-grease, of each a small quantity boiled well together, and apply'd, is very good.

Another to dissolve any Sore or Swelling without breaking.

Take half a pound of black Soap, (or for want of that, common Soap) as much Bole-Armoniack powder'd, with a little of the Powder of unslak'd Lime, and put to them a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, with a small Gill of the Oil of Roses and Oil of Linseed, and anoint them with it, and it will help them.

Things good to cure a galled or swelled Back in general.

Take the White of an Egg and beat it to an Oil, then take Flower, Honey, and Bole-Armoniack finely beaten, and mix them well together, and spread it upon a piece of thin Leather, and lay it over the place galled, and it will not come off till it be well. Or take the Soot of the Chimney, and mix it with Cream till it become a Salve, and make a Plaster thereof, and lay it to the Gall and Swelling, and it will cure him. Or take some two or three Spoonfuls of Aquavitæ, and put to it some Soap, and boil them well together, and anoint the place well with it, as

hot as it can be well apply'd to the Swelling, and it will take it down; or Loam boiled in Vinegar to a Poultice, and apply'd to it very hot, taketh it down.

Or take a Loaf of wheaten Bread, and cut a slice of it, and toast it very well, and when it is toasted, spread it all over with Honey on both sides, and prick it full of holes, and toast it till the Honey is well soaked into it, and the Toast is become dry: then put it into a Mortar, and beat it to powder, and keep it for your use. When you use it, strew it upon the galled place, and it will dry it up in a short space.

To take away any Swelling, and to heal any Galled Back whatsoever.

Take only the Oil of Turpentine, and lay it upon the raw Back Morning and Evening with a Feather, and it will heal it up; and so use it to a swelled Back, it will either sink it or break it.

Another for a galled Back, Interfering or Shackle-Gall.

Take three parts of Sheep's-dung newly made, and one part of Rye or Wheat-Flower, and dry the Flower and mix it well with the Sheep's-dung, kneading it to a Paste, and make it into a Cake and bake it, and apply the Powder warm unto the place, and it will heal it very well, or anoint it with Turpentine and Verdegrease mixed together finely powder'd.

Another.

Take Water and Salt, and boil them well together, and wash the place therewith: Then take Pepper made into fine Powder, and strew it upon the place, and it will heal it in a very short time; or bruise a new-laid Egg between his Legs, and rub the place with it, and it cureth the Gall there.

Another.

Take the Leaves of Arsmart, and wash them, and lay them all over the place, and tho you ride him every day, yet they will heal very fast; but if he remain in the Stable, put the Water of the Leaves upon it.

Another, which cureth not only galled Backs, but any other Wound whatsoever.

Take Rosin and common Pitch, of each six Ounces; Mastick and Incense, of each one Ounce; Turpentine, Galbanum, Bole-Armoniack, of each three Ounces: melt and incor-

incorporate all these together upon a gentle Fire, and as they begin to cool make them up in Rolls, and when you use it, spread it upon a Cloth or Leather somewhat thin, but if you use it without either Cloth or Leather, to any outward Part that is not yet broken, then lay it on much thicker than you use to do Plaster-wise, and whilst it is warm clap Flox of the same Colour upon it. This is a most excellent defensative Plaster for the staying and drying up of all evil Humours, and also very sovereign for assuaging of Swellings.

Another for a sore Back.

Take the Juice of Celandine and live Honey, of each two Spoonfuls, beat them with the Yolk of an Egg, and as much Allum and Wheat-Flower as will serve to bring it to a Salve; dress the Sore with this once a day, and it draweth and healeth. Now tho these Medicines are enough, yet because Farriers hold divers Opinions, and think what they know to be the best; I shall give you a Catalogue of their Receipts in general.

The Powder of Bryar-Leaves, Rye-Flower, the Powder of burnt Oyster-shells, the White of an Egg, Honey, Barley, Straw burnt, and Soot will dry up and heal a sore Back. The Powder of Honey and unslak'd Lime will skin any Gall, provided the Sore be first washed with Vinegar; and Onions boiled in Water, and laid hot to a swoln Horse's Back, will assuage the Swelling, and the Yolk of an Egg, Salt and Vinegar will heal it up when it is broken, provided you wash the Sore with A lewherein Rosemary hath been sod. The Soot or Grim of a Pot will dry and skin a galled Back.

Things good for inward or outward Bruises, or Swellings in general.

Wood and Water-Betony, Honeysuckle-Leaves, Knot-Grass, Archangel, Plantain, Ribwort, Yarrow, *Bursa Pastoris*, Bugle, Chervil, Mallows, Solomon's-Seal, Saracens-Confound, Saracens-Woundwort, Scabious, Self-heal, Sanicle, Soapwort, Thorough-wax, Rosin, Turpentine, Honey, Galbanum, St. *John's*-wort, Pitch, *&c.*

The Juice of Arsmart consumeth all cold Swellings, and dissolveth all congealed Blood got by Bruises, Strokes or Falls; the Root of Cinquefoil, Cud-weed or Cotton-weed, doth the like; Osmond-royal or Water-Fern is also good; Golden-rod outwardly applied is good for them; Nep or

Catmint bruiſed, and the Juice given inwardly, is alſo very good; the Decoction of Wood-Sage is a very good Remedy for any inward Vein broken, to diſperſe and void the congealed Blood, and to conſolidate the Veins; Sanicle is alſo good. The Powder of Bole-Armoniack given in warm Ale, ſtops any inward Bleeding; the Powder of *Iriſh* Slate given alſo in warm Ale is good for any inward Bruiſe whatſoever, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Cure of Bruiſes or Swellings.

Firſt, ripen it with Hay boiled in Chamberlye, or with rotten Litter laid upon it; then let out the Corruption, then fill the Hollowneſs with the Powder of Roſin, and lay a Plaſter of Shoemakers-Wax over it, and thus do once a day till it be whole: if it be ſlow of skinning or healing up, ſtrew on the Powder of unſlak'd Lime, and Bole-Armoniack mixt together, and if any proud Fleſh ariſe, take it down either with burnt Allum, or Verdegreaſe in powder.

Another.

Take Ale or Beer-Yeaſt, and Verjuice, and putting a little fine Hay thereunto, boil them well together, then bind the Hay to the Swelling, and pour on the Liquor; and do thus three or four days together, and it will take away the Swelling: or rotten Litter and Hay boiled in Urine will take it away.

Another for any inward Bruiſe, by Fall or otherwiſe.

Take near a Quart of ſtrong Beer or Ale, and put to it one Ounce of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and half an Ounce of the Powder of *Iriſh* Slate, and boil it a little, and give it him faſting in the Morning, for three or four Mornings together, lukewarm, and he will do well.

Another for a Swelling upon the Head, occaſioned by a Blow or otherwiſe.

If the Swelling be on both ſides, then bleed on both ſides; but if it be but on one ſide, then bleed but on that ſide the Swelling is of, and give him this Drink, *viz.* One Ounce of Anniſeeds, one Ounce of Turmerick, half an Ounce of Bay-Berries all beaten to powder, with a Gill-full of the Juice of Herb-Grace, Red-Sage and Wormwood; put all theſe into a Quart of ſtrong Beer lukewarm, and give it him faſting in the morning, and order him as you do

do a Horſe that hath had Phyſick. 'Tis good alſo to apply this outward Application to it, *viz.* A little common Soap put to a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, and rub and chafe it in with your Hand very well, and heat it in with a hot Fire-Shovel; leave it as thick upon the Swelling as you can. This will prevent a Farcin, which Blows and Strokes do commonly breed, and is alſo very good for any old or new Swelling whatſoever.

Another, which will take away any Cruſty Knobs or hard Swellings in any Part of the Body of a Horſe.

According to the Cure you are to undertake, whether great or ſmall, proportion Oil of Turpentine, and ſtrong Beer or Ale, and let it be of equal parts alike, well ſhaked together in a Glaſs, and then rub and chafe it very well in with your Hand, and heat it alſo in with a hot Fire-Shovel, and two or three Days after apply a Charge of common Soap and Brandy, well chafed in, as you did the Turpentine before. You may if you pleaſe put in a little of the Oil of Worms, which is a great Mollifier of any cruſty, hard or bony Part.

If you will ſee more of this kind, *vid.* Obſervations upon Bruiſes and Strains, about three Leaves further.

Things good in general to cure ſwelled Legs.

Nerve-Oil, black Soap and Boar's-Greaſe melted together, and anoint the place with it, or bathe his Legs in Butter and Beer, or in Vinegar and Butter melted together, or with Sheep's-foot Oil, or with Train-Oil, or with Piſs and Salt-Peter boiled together; and roll his Legs with Hay-Ropes wet in the ſame Liquor, from the Paſtern to the Knee, but bind them not too hard; or bathe him with the Water wherein hath been boiled Sage, Mallows, Roſe Cakes, and Butter and Sallet-Oil put into it; or to take Frankincenſe, Roſin, freſh Greaſe, of each alike, boiled and ſtrained, and uſed once a day, as you ſee occaſion; or waſh his Legs with the coldeſt Fountain-Water you can get; or let him ſtand every day, till the Swelling be aſſuaged, in running Water up to the Knees: or elſe take Primroſe-Leaves, Violet-Leaves, Strawberry-Leaves, of each a Handful, boil them in new Milk till they be ſoft, then put to it of Nerve-Oil, of Petroleum, and of Pompilion, of each an Ounce, anoint him with it for five or ſix days together: or take Pitch, Virgins-Wax, Roſin, the Juice of Hyſop,

Galbanum, Myrrh, ſecondary Bdellium, Arabicum Populeon and Storax, according to your Diſcretion, and boil them in Deer's-Suet; and when it is cold put into it Bole-Armoniack and Coſtus beaten into fine powder, and incorporate them well together into the other Ingredients, and boil them all over again, and when it is almoſt cold, work them up into Rolls, and when you uſe it, ſpread it upon a Plaſter, and wrap it about the Swelling, and let it ſtay there till it drop off of itſelf: this is good for a Surfeit.

To aſſuage the Swelling of a Horſe's Legs, that are very much ſwelled by reaſon of the Scratches.

Take a Quart of Chamberlye or more, as you ſhall think fit, and put into it a Handful of Bay Salt, a quarter of a Pound of Soap, a pretty quantity of Soot, a good Handful of Miſletoe chopt; boil them all very well together, and bathe his Legs with it very warm two or three times a day, and wrap a Cloth wet in the ſame, and lap about it, and this will aſſuage them. If you will have more Receipts for ſwelled Legs, ſee the firſt Part for Plaſters and Baths for ſwelled Legs.

Things good to cure a Horſe that is Spur-gall'd, or Shackle-gall'd, or Lock-gall'd.

Salt and Urine mixt together, or Salt and Water, and the place bathed with it, takes out Venom; warm Vinegar is likewiſe good; or elſe bind unto the place, the tender Tops of Nettles ſtamped. Oil of Turpentine is good, or Allum and green Copperas boiled in Water, and waſh the place with it; the Leaves of Briony ſtamped and bruiſed with Vinegar, and applied to the place: Honey and Verdegreaſe boiled together till it look red, and anoint the place with it twice a day, and ſtrew upon it ſome chopt Flox to keep on the Salve, are very good for the Shackle galls, and chiefly for the Scratches, *&c.*

Things good in general to cure the Diſeaſes of the Eyes, as Watery Eyes, Blood-ſhotten Eyes, Dim Eyes, Moon Eyes, Wart in the Eyes, Inflammation in the Eye, Pearl, Pin, Web or Haw, &c.

The Juice of Cabbages and Coleworts boiled with Honey and dropped into the Eye, cleareth the Sight and conſumeth any Film, as alſo the Canker that groweth therein; the Juice of Celandine put into the Eye, taketh away the Pin and Web in the Eye, and cleareth the Sight; the Juice of

ordinary Centaury cleareth the Sight; the Juice of Ground-Ivy, *alias* Alehoof, is good for Moon-Eyes, and to clear the Sight; the Juice of Housleek is good to allay the fiery Heat of the Eyes, and is good likewise for rheumatick and watery Eyes; the Juice of Germander put into the Eye, taketh away the Pin and Web, and all Dimness of Sight, so doth the Juice of Eyebright, so doth the Juice of Horehound with Honey. The Seed of Clary powdered and finely searced, and mixt with Honey, taketh away Dimness of Sight, and is good for watery Eyes likewise; so doth the Juice of Dragon, Alehoof, Celandine and Daisies stamped and strained, and white Sugar and White-Rose water put to it, taketh away all manner of Inflammations, Spots, Webs, Itch, Smarting, and any Grief whatsoever in the Eyes, nay, tho the Sight be in a manner gone. The Leaves of common Ivy laid atteep in Water for twenty four Hours, help sore and smarting wateriſh Eyes; the Juice of Endive cleareth the Sight; the distilled Water of Groundsell, the Juice of Melilot cleareth the Sight; the distilled Water of the Lilly of the Valley is good for Inflammations of the Eyes, or for Pin and Web; the Powder of Liquorice blown into the Eye, is good likewise for the same, with rheumatick Distillations in them. The distilled Water of Loosestrife is good for Hurts and Blows in the Eyes, and for Blindness; the distilled Water of Lovage taketh away the Redness and Dimness of them; sweet Marjoram stamped with fine Flower, and laid to them, is good for Inflammations in them; the Juice of Mercury is good for wateriſh Eyes; the Juice of Pimpernel with a little Honey, cooleth the Inflammations of them, and taketh away the Pin and Web; the Juice of Purslain is good to take away the Redness of the Eye; the Juice of the yellow Rattle-grass with Honey put into the Eyes, or the whole Seed put into them, draweth forth any Skin, Dimness or Film from the Sight, the distilled Water of red Roses, is good for the Heat and Redness in the Eyes, and to stay and dry up the Rheum and Waterineſs in them; the Juice of Rue, Fennel, Honey, and the Gall of a Cock put thereto is good, the Juice of Strawberry-Leaves prick'd into the Eye is good: or take Strawberries and put them into a Glass well stopped, and set it on a Horse-Dung-hil for twelve or fourteen Days, and then distil them, and it will be good for inflamed Eyes, or to take away any Film or Skin that groweth over them. The distilled Water of the wild Tansy, or the Juice of it taketh away the Heat and Inflamma-

tions in them; Meadow-Trefoil or Honeysuckle-Leaves are good for a Pin and Web; the distilled Water of Vervain is good to clear the Sight and to take away the Film; the Juice of Violet-Leaves is good to take away the Inflammations of them, either applied outwardly, or put into them. Spring Water is good to bathe an inflamed Eye with; Water that is gathered from the Willow-Tree when it flowreth, the Bark being slit, and there being a fitting Vessel to receive it, is very good for Redness and Dimness of Sight, and for Films that cover the Eye, and to stay the Rheum that falls into them. The Juice of Mustard-seed is good for Dimness of Sight; the Juice of an Onion with Honey cleareth the Eye, and doth remove the Pin and Web, and amendeth the bloodshotten-Eye; the Juice of the Blessed-Thistle is good for the same: the Flowers or Roots of Valerian boiled in White-Wine cleareth the Sight; Egg-shells burned between two Tiles and beaten to powder, after the inward Film is taken away, are good for Dimness of Sight. Lapis Calaminaris, Plantain-Water, White-Wine squirted into his Eyes, cleareth them; so does Aloes, Camphire-Powder, white Vitriol, or white Copperas blown into his Eye, after it is beaten to powder, and searced very fine, taketh away the Pin and Web, or any Film whatsoever: the Ashes of the Root of black Sallow, Sugarcandy, and grated Ginger and Salt made up in Butter into little Balls, and being put into his Eye once a day, taketh away the Film of it. Fine-Bole or Bole-Armoniack with white Sugarcandy blown into the Eye, stoppeth any Rheum that falleth into the Eyes; Alabaster beaten very fine and searced and blown into the Eye, taketh away any Film whatsoever; so doth the Powder of a black Flint burnt: Sanguis Draconis taketh away a Film; so doth the Bone of the Cuttle-Fish beaten to powder and blown into the Eye, and is likewise good for blood-shotten Eyes: *May*-Butter, Rosemary, yellow Rosin and Celandine stamped and fryed, and kept in a Box, is a Jewel for the Eyes; burnt Allum blown into the Eyes, is good for to take off a Film; an Eggshell filled with Pepper, and burnt and beaten to powder, and blown into the Eyes, taketh away the Pin and Web, or any other Dimness; the powder of Sandevoir, and the Powder of white Salt burnt, is good likewise for the same, so is the Powder of Pumicestone blown into the Eye; the Powder of the inner Sole of a Shoe burnt to Ashes and beaten to powder, is good to stop the rheumatick Eye; the Powder of two

Tiles

Tiles rubbed together and blown into the Eye, taketh away a Film; Wormwood with the Gall of a Bull beaten together, is good for a dim Sight; or take the Roots or Leaves of Primroſe clean waſhed and boiled in running Water the ſpace of an Hour, and put ſome white Copperas to it, then ſtrain it and let it ſtand, and there will appear an Oil upon the Water, and anoint his Brows, Temples and Eyes with it, and it will take off a Film; Man's-dung burnt in a Fire-ſhovel to a Coal, and beaten to powder, and blown into his Eyes, taketh away a Film; or take a Handful of the angrieſt young Nettles, and ſtamp them well, and put them in a Linen-Rag, and dip it in Beer, then ſqueeze out the Juice, and put a little Salt to it, and lick that into the Eye, and it will take away the Film; or the Lean of Beef, or a Gammon of Bacon dried and beaten to powder and blown into the Eye, taketh it away alſo; Sal-Armoniack, or Lapis-Tutia doth the like prepared; the Gall of a Hare, and live Honey alike, put into the Eye, doth the ſame. The Haw every Smith can cut out.

Eye-lids ſwelled outward.

If you meet with a Horſe (which is very rare to do) whoſe Eye-lids are ſo ſwelled that the inſide of them are turned outward, and look very red, and as it were full of Bladders, and yet the Ball of the Eye very ſound and good; then you need do nothing to him but keep him warm with a Hood made fit for his Head, of ſome Linen Cloth, and to anoint them twice a day with white Sugarcandy, Honey and white Roſe-Water; and in two or three days time they will turn into their Places again. Then take Blood from him, which is partly the occaſion (and cold Rheums together ſettling in the Head) of this Diſeaſe: do not clip nor meddle with the Bladders, or any part of the Eye, leſt you do not only put out his Eyes, but endanger his Life, or at beſt make him but Blear-Ey'd.

Particular Receipts for the Eyes.

Take Roſe-Leaves, Smallage, Maiden-hair, Euface, Endive, Succory, Red-Fennel, Hill-wort and Celandine, of each half a quarter of a pound: being waſhed clean, lay them in White-wine aſteep a whole Day, and then diſtil them; and the firſt Water will be like Gold, the ſecond like Silver, and the third like Balm: This Water hath recovered Sight for ſome years loſt.

Ano-

Another to take off a Film, or Pin and Web.

Take white Copperas and beat it to powder, and ſift it through a very fine Sieve, with the ſame quantity of white Sugarcandy beaten, and blow it into his Eye once a day, and as you ſee it amend, once in two or three days is enough.

Another to take off a Film.

Take Alabaſter and beat and ſearce it very fine, and blow it into his Eye once or twice a day, and it will take it off.

Another for the ſame.

Take Bay-Salt, or for want of that common Salt, and bruiſe it very ſmall and mix it well with freſh Butter, then make it up into ſmall Balls, as big as a Hazel-nut, and open his Eye-lid, and put one of them in, holding your Hand over it till it be all melted; and thus doing once a day will take off any Film, if it be taken in time.

Another to take away the Rheum from his Eyes, and to clear them.

Take Butter and Salt, of each alike, and mix them well together with your Knife; then take a piece as big as a ſmall Walnut, and put it into his Ear, (on that ſide that is offended) and let it remain there for four or five Hours, and this will dry up the Rheum and clear his Eye. You muſt tie or ſew his Ear cloſe, or elſe he will ſhake it out.

Another to ſtay a Rheum in a Horſe's Eye.

Take fine Bole, or Bole-Armoniack, and blow it into his Eyes, and it will drive back the Rheum; but if he will not ſuffer you to blow it into his Eye, mix it with Butter and ſome white Sugarcandy beaten to powder, and make it up into little Balls, and put one of them into his Eye once or twice a day, as you ſhall ſee occaſion.

Another to take off a Film.

Take the blackeſt Flint you can get, and calcine it, then beat it to powder, and ſift it through a fine Sieve, and put to it the powder of Ginger, and blow it into his Eye as you ſee occaſion.

Another for ſore Eyes, dim Eyes or Moon-Eyes.

Take Lapis Calaminaris half an Ounce, and heat it red hot, and quench it in a quarter of a Pint of Plantain-Water, or

& White-wine; do this eight or nine times, then beat it to powder, and put it to the Water, then add half a Dram of Aloes, and a Spoonful of Camphire in powder, and let them diſſolve: drop this into the Eye.

Another for the ſame.

Take a Pint of Snow-Water, and diſſolve into it two or three Drams of white Vitriol, and with it waſh his Eye three or four times a day, and it helpeth.

Another for a white Film or Skin over the Eye.

Take the Root of the black Sallow, and burn it to Aſhes, then put to it the like quantity of white Sugarcandy, and grated Ginger finely ſearced, and blow it into his Eyes Morning and Evening.

Another for any Soreneſs in the Eye, as Pearl, Pin, Web or Bruiſe

Take a new-laid Egg, and roaſt it very hard, then cleave it in ſunder long-wiſe, and take out the Yolk, then fill the empty holes with white Vitriol finely beaten, and cloſe the Egg again, and roaſt it the ſecond time, till the Vitriol be molten; laſtly, beat the Egg, Shell and all, in a Mortar, and ſtrain it, and with that moiſture dreſs the Eye. If inſtead of the Vitriol you fill the Holes with Myrrh finely ſearced, and hang the Egg up that it may drop, and with that moiſture dreſs the Eye, it is every way as good, only it is a little ſtronger.

Another which is infallible for the curing of a Pin, Pearl, Web or Spot in a Horſe's Eye.

Take an Egg and make a hole in the top, put out half the White, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roaſt it very hard, ſo as you may beat it into fine powder, having formerly lap'd it in a wet Cloth; then Morning and Evening, after you have waſhed his Eye with the Juice of Ground-Ivy, or Eyebright-water, blow this Powder therein.

To cure a Wart in a Horſe's Eye, which is upon the Edge or Inſide of the Eye-lids.

Take burnt Allum, and the ſame quantity of white Copperas unburnt, both being beaten very ſmall, and lay ſome of this

this Powder on the head of the Wart once a day, and it will consume it.

Another for foul Eyes, sore Eyes, or Sight almost lost.

Take Tacamahacca, Mastick, Rosin and Pitch, of each a like quantity, and being molten with Flox of the Colour of the Horse, lay it as a defensive on each side his Temples, as big as a twenty-shilling Piece; then underneath his Eyes upon the Cheek Bone (with a round Iron) burn three or four Holes, and anoint them with sweet Butter: then take a Handful of Celandine, and wash it clean in White-wine, but let it touch no Water, then bruise it and strain it, and to the quantity of Juice, put the third part of Woman's Milk, and a pretty quantity of white Sugarcandy, searced through a piece of Lawn, and lick it into his Eye Morning and Evening. Thus do for the worst of sore Eyes, but if the offence be not extreme, then you may forbear both the defensative and the burning, and use only the Medicine.

Another for a Bite, or Stroke upon the Eye.

Honey, Powder of Ginger, and the Juice of Celandine, mixed together, and licked into his Eye with a Feather twice a day, is a very good Cure for it.

Another for a Film.

The Powder of Verdegrease finely beaten and searced, and burnt Allum, of equal parts alike, mixed with some of the Ointment of Marsh-mallows, and about the bigness of a Pea put into his Eye once or twice a day, will cure him.

Another for Blood-shotten Eyes.

Roman Vitriol steeped in white Rose-water, till it be coloured, (or for want of that, fair Spring-water) and the Eye washed therewith twice or thrice a day cureth it.

Another to stop a Rheum flowing to the Eyes.

Take Flox or Hurds, and dip it in the best melted Rosin you can get, and apply it to the Hollow of the Eyes, and it will drive it back.

Some Observations upon Bruises and Strains.

1. In all Bruises by Falls or any other Accidents, 'tis good to bleed first in the common bleeding Neck-Vein, before you give him any equal Medicines for it; and be very careful that

that what you give him be not binding things, for they will so coagulate and thicken the strained Blood, that it cannot have its free passage through the Ureter-Vein as it should have, which will be very prejudicial to his Health.

2. The best thing you can give him for any inward Bruise or Wrench in the Back or Kidneys, is common Turpentine made into Balls, with the best *English* Liquorice-powder you can get for Money: about an Ounce of it given him every Morning for about a Week together, and a Plaster or Charge applied at the same time to his Loins or Fillets, made up with *Oxicroceum* and *Paracelsus* melted together, will perfectly cure him in a Month at fartheſt; you may renew your Charge, if there be occasion.

3. All things that provoke Urine are very good for him, for the congealed Blood must have its Vent through the Ureter-Veins, or else it will do him but little good.

4. If your Horse hath a Strain upon the Back-Sinews, 'tis also very convenient to let him blood with your Fleam on the Shackle-Vein, on the Pastern-Joint, the Hair being first clipped away, to the end you may the better see how to strike the Vein. When you have so done, apply your Plaster or Charge of *Oxicroceum* and *Paracelsus* melted together, as before directed, and lay it hot upon the grieved Part, and let it lie on till it come off of it self, and it will cure him in a very short time.

Things good in general for the Cure of any Halting coming by Strain or Stroke, either before or behind, from the Shoulder or Hip down to the Hoof.

If it be in the Shoulder, let blood and apply things to it as you do to other Strains. A Poultice made of Pellitory of the Wall, and Mallows boiled in strong Beer-Tilt, with Bran, Bean-flower and Sallet-Oil put thereto, and applied warm, is good to restore any Sinew-strain in a short time: the Decoction of the Herb Scabious applied is good for any Shrunk-Sinew or Vein; or Tansy boiled in Oil is good for it: Oil of Turpentine, Brandy, Aquavitæ, Oil of Spike, Nerve-Oil, Sallet-Oil, Bear's-grease, Oil of Swallows, Bole-Armoniack is good for Sinew-strains; so is Arsmart and Brook-Lime steeped together, good for old Strains: Glovers Specks boiled in Ale, and applied hot to the place, is good; Oil of Origanum, Oil of *Exeter*, Oil of Peter, Oil of St. *John's*-wort, Oil of Roses, Mirtles, Sanguis Draconis, Pickle or Brine from Olives, Train-Oil, Mallows, Oat-meal

and

and Bran bruiſed together and boiled with Urine, and laid to it Poultice-wiſe; Dialthea and Nerve-Oil mingled together; Pompilion, Nerve-Oil, and black Soap mingled together upon the Fire, and anoint it therewith; Brandy and Soap boiled together is good; or Whitewine-Vinegar and freſh Butter boiled together, with as much Bran as will bring it to a Poultice, and laid to it Morning and Evening, is good; or Mallows and Chickweed boiled together in Ale, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Cure of all manner of Halting, coming by Strain or Stroke, either before or behind, from the Shoulder or Hip down to the Hoof.

Markham's *Maſter-Medicine for a Back-Sinew-Strain, or any Strain, Shrinking, or Numbneſs of Sinews.*

Take a fat ſucking Maſtiff-Whelp, flay it and bowel it, then ſtop the Body as full as it can hold with grey Snails and black Snails, then roaſt it at a reaſonable Fire; when it begins to warm, baſte it with ſix Ounces of Oil of Spike made yellow with Saffron, and ſix Ounces of Oil of Wax: then ſave the Droppings, and whatſoever Moiſture falls from it, whilſt any Drop will fall, keep it for your uſe. With this anoint the Strain, and work it in very hot, holding a hot Fire-ſhovel before it: Thus do both Morning and Evening till Amendment.

Another in nature of a Charge for a Back-Sinew-Strain.

Take five Quarts of Ale and a Quarter of a Peck of Glovers Specks, and boil them till it come to a Quart; then apply it hot to the Grief, and remove it not in five or ſix days.

Another for a Strain in any part, new or old.

Take of Sheep's-Suet a Pound, of Sheep's-Dung two Handfuls, chopt Hay a Handful, Wheat-Bran a Pint, ſweet Soap a quarter of a Pound; boil all theſe in a Quart of ſtrong Ale till it come to a Poultice, then take it from the fire, and put in half a Pint of Whitewine-Vinegar, and a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, and apply it hot to the Grief; and give him moderate Exerciſe.

Another for a Strain or Sinew-Bruiſe.

Take Cummin-ſeeds and bruiſe them groſs, then boil it with the Oil of Camomile, and put to it ſo much yellow Wax as will bring it to a Cerate, and ſpread it upon a Cloth or Leather, and apply it hot to the Grief.

Ano-

Another for old Strains, Griefs, or old Cramps.

Take Brandy, Oil de Bay, Oil of Swallows, Bole-Armoniack, Hog's-grease, black Soap, of each half a pound; boil them till the Brandy be incorporate, then take of Camomile, Rue, Red Sage and Misletoe, of each a Handful; dry them and bring them to powder, and mix it with the Ointment, and bring all to a Salve. With this anoint the Grief, and hold a hot Bar of Iron before it, chafing it well in; and do thus once a day, and in nine days the Cure hath been effected.

A sudden Cure for a Knock or Bruise on the Sinews, or Sinew-Strain, new or old.

Take a live Cat, wild or tame, and cut off her Head and Tail; then cleave her down the Chine, and clap her hot, Bowels and all, to the Bruise: let it lie on twenty four hours, and serve another Cat or two so if there be occasion. When it is dry, anoint it with Oil of Turpentine, Brandy and Soap, and heat it well in with a hot Iron. The Cats Bones must be broken.

Another for a Strain newly done, to help it in twenty four Hours.

Take the Grounds of Ale or Beer a Quart, as much Parsley chopt gross as you can gripe, boil them till the Herb be soft, then put to it a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and when it is molten, take it from the fire, and put it in a Pint of Wine-Vinegar, and if it be thin, thicken it with Wheat-bran, and lay it upon Hurds, and Poultice-wise, as hot as he can endure it, lay it to, and remove it once in twelve hours, and give him moderate Exercise.

Another, which is Markham's *own Balm, which he says hath never failed him in any Strain in the Shoulder, or other Parts, hid or apparent, or for any Wind-gall or Swelling.*

Take ten Ounces of Piece-grease, and melt it on the Fire, then take it off, and put into it four Ounces of the Oil of Spike, one Ounce of the Oil of Origanum, an Ounce and a half of the Oil of *Exeter*, and three Ounces of the Oil of St. *John*'s-wort; stir them well together, and put them up into a Gally-pot. With this Ointment (or indeed precious Balm) being hot, anoint the grieved place, and rub and chafe it in very much, holding a hot Fire-shovel before

before it, and anoint it once in two days, but rub and chafe it in twice or thrice a day, and give him moderate Exercise. For want of Piece-greafe take Goofe-greafe.

Another for Sinews that are extended, over-ſtrained, and ſo weakned, that the Member is uſeleſs.

Take of Cantharides, Euphorbium and Mercury, of each a like quantity, and of the Oil de Bay double as much as of all the reſt; bring the hard Simples to powder, and beat all to a Salve: apply this to the Grief (being deſperate) and tho it make a Sore, it will give ſtrength and ſtraitneſs to the Sinews. For the Sore, you may cure it either with Populeon, freſh Butter or Deers-greafe warm.

Another of the ſame nature, but more gentle.

Take Turpentine two Ounces, Verdegreaſe three Ounces, Hogs-greaſe ſix Ounces; boil them till the Verdegreaſe be diſſolved, then take Roſin, Bees-Wax, of each two Ounces; mix all theſe together, then apply it to the grieved place hot.

Another, which is a Charge for a new Strain or Grief proceeding from Heat.

Take the Whites of ſix Eggs, and beat them with a Pint of Whitewine-Vinegar, the Oil of Roſes and Myrtles, of each an Ounce, Bole-Armoniack four Ounces, as much *Sanguis Draconis*, and with as much Bean-flower or Wheat-flower (but Bean is the beſt) as will thicken it, bring it to a Salve, and ſpreading it on Hurds, lay it about the grieved place, and renew it not until it be dry.

Signs to know where the Grief lies.

You may know where the Grief lies, by pinching every ſeveral Member; and where he moſt complaineth, there is his moſt Grief.

For a new Strain.

Take Whitewine-Vinegar, Bole-Armoniack, the Whites of Eggs, and Bean-flower, and having beaten them to a perfect Salve, lay it very hot to the ſore place, and it will cure it.

Another for an old Strain.

Take Vinegar and Butter, and melt them together with Whear-Bran; make it into a Poultice, and lay it as hot as may be to the place grieved, and it will take away the Grief.

Ano-

Another for a Back-Sinew-Strain.

Take *Venice*-Turpentine and Brandy beaten together to a Salve, and anoint the grieved place therewith, and heat it in with a Fire-shovel, and in two or three times doing it will take it away.

Another for an old Strain or Lameness.

Take Boars-grease, Bole-Armoniack, black Soap and Nerve-Oil, of each a like quantity; boil them well together, and apply it hot to the Grief, chafing it very well, and heating it in with a hot Fire-shovel; and thus do it once a day till the Pain go away.

Another for a Strain in the Pastern, or Foot-lock Joint.

A Poultice made of the Grounds of Strong-beer, Hens-dung, Hogs-grease and Nerve-Oil boiled together, and applied to the grieved part, two or three times bound on with a Linen Rag, will help him.

Another very good for a new Sinew-Strain.

Take common Soap a quarter of a pound, Bole-Armoniack in powder an Ounce, the Whites of three or four new-laid Eggs, a Gill of Whitewine-Vinegar, half a Gill of Brandy, and a quarter of a Pint of new Wort, either of Beer or Ale, with half a Gill of the Oil of Turpentine, and incorporate and mix them very well with your Hand. Then rub and chafe the thinnest of it in upon the grieved place, holding a hot Fire-shovel before it, to make it sink in the better: then daub all over the thickest of it in the nature of a Charge, and stick Flox or Hurds upon it, and bind it up with a Linen Cloth, and it will do well. If there be occasion, you may apply a fresh Charge to it.

Another for an old Strain upon the Legs.

After you have clipped away the Hair so close on the Pastern-Joint, that you can see the Pastern-Vein, strike it with your Fleam, and let it bleed well; then take two Ounces of the Oil of Turpentine, with the like quantity of strong Ale or Beer, and put them into a Glass, and shake them very well together, to incorporate them the better: Then pour it out into an Earthen or Pewter Dish, and with your Hand anoint and chafe it into the grieved part very well; holding at the same instant of time a hot Fire-shovel

before it, to make it ſink in the better. When you find that the Swelling is abated, lay the common Charge of Soap and Brandy upon it, and bind a Linen Rag wet in the ſame about it. When your Charge begins to peel off, anoint it with the Oil of Trotters once or twice. This Way of ordering him will perfect the Cure in a Week or Fortnight at fartheſt.

Another for any Grief, Pain, Numbneſs, Weakneſs, or Swelling in Joints, that cometh of a cold Cauſe.

Take Brandy and bathe the place therewith very warm, heating it in with a hot Fire-ſhovel; then wet a Linen Cloth in the ſaid Brandy, and cover the wet Cloth all over with Pepper finely beaten, very thick, and ſo fold it about the grieved place: then roll it on faſt with a dry Roller, and let him reſt, and do this once a day till you ſee Amendment.

An Excellent Charge, which never yet failed, for any Sinew-Strain, from the Shoulder or the Hips down to the Foot; nay, tho it be in the Coffin-Joint, which is the hardeſt of Strains to cure.

Take of *Burgundy* Pitch and of Frankincenſe, of each a quarter of a pound; as much ſtone Pitch, or for want of that, common black Pitch, as contains the quantity of a Walnut; a quarter of a pound of Roſes, and the like quantity of Bole-Armoniack finely beaten to powder: melt all theſe together till they be thoroughly diſſolved, incorporate them well together. If you add two or three pennyworth of Maſtick to them, it will be the better; but if you have none of it, it will do without it.

How to uſe it.

When it is almoſt cold, that it will not ſcald the Skin, lay it on the grieved place with a Lath or any other ſuch-like thing; then lay all over the Charge ſome Flox, Wool, Deers-hair, or ſuch-like things: then heat the Charge again, and daub it all over the Flox ſomewhat hotter than you did the former. Then cover it all over again with ſome Flox, as you did before, and if he be a Stable-Horſe, keep him out of the Water by watering him in the Houſe; but if it be in the Summer, you may charge him abroad. If the Strain be in the Coffin-Joint, you muſt let him blood in the Toe, which every common Smith can do; then ſtop the bleeding of

of it by some Flax or Tow dipt in the White of an Egg, beaten with Bole-Armoniack; use it as before shew'd, laying it all over the Hough, Heels, and Footlock-Joint, and especially at the setting on of the Hough.

How to know when it is well made.

If it be well made, you may know it by this Sign, *viz.* If you drop it upon a piece of white Paper, and let it lie until it be cold; then take and break it asunder, and if it crumble in the breaking, it is too hard; but if it break clear without crumbling, it is well made: and if you find it too soft, and that it will not keep on the Horse's Foot, then put a little more Rosin and Bole-Armoniack into it; and if you find it too hard, put in a little Tallow or Sallet-Oil, but Tallow is the best. If it be in hot Weather, you must make it the harder, and especially if he run abroad; and if it be in cold Weather, you must make it the softer. If you desire to see more Charges for these Uses, look in my First Part.

For swelled or garded Legs, whether by Grease or other Accident.

If your Horse's Legs be swelled, only because the Grease is fallen into them, and there is no other outward Ulcer, neither will the bathing with cold Fountain-water, and other ordinary Helps assuage them; then take a Pottle of Wine-Lees, or else take the Grounds of strong Ale or Beer, and boil it with a pound of Hog's-grease, then with as much Wheat-Bran as will thicken it, make thereof a Poultice, and having made him a Hose of Woollen Cloth, fill it with this Poultice as hot as he can suffer it; then close up the Hose, and let it abide two days: the third day open the Hose at the top, but stir not the Poultice, but put in hot molten Grease to it whilst it will receive any, for that will renew the Strength thereof. Then close it as you did before, and let him stand two or three days longer: then open the Leg, and rub it down, and if you find occasion you may apply another; if not, the Cure is wrought.

Now, if besides the Swelling he hath Ulcers, Chops and Sores, then apply the Poultice, as before shew'd; and after a Week's Application, take a Quart of old Urine, and put to it half a Handful of Salt, as much Allum, and half an Ounce of white Copperas; boil them together, and with it wash the Sore once or twice a day: then after a little

drying anoint them with the Ointment called Ægyptiacum, which is made of Vinegar eight Ounces, of Honey twelve Ounces, of Verdegreaſe two Ounces, of Allum one Ounce and a half, and boiled to the height, till it come to a red Salve; and it will both kill the malignant Humours, and heal and dry up the Sores.

Another for ſwelled Legs, whether by Greaſe, Goutineſs, Wind or Travel.

Firſt, Bathe them well with the Pickle or Brine which comes from Olives, being made hot; then take a Pint of Train-Oil, as much Nerve-Oil, and as much Oil de Bay, a quarter of a Pound of Allum, half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, half a Pound of Hog's-greaſe; put all theſe to a Pottle of Urine, and with a Handful or two of Mallows, Oatmeal bruiſed, and Bran, boil them to a Poultice, and very hot apply it to the Grief. Do this once in two days.

Things good in general for a Horſe that hath a Wrench in his Back.

To ſhave away the Hair, but then you muſt not lay his Charge on too hot: You may find many ſorts of them in my Firſt Part. But more particularly take this; Take of Bole-Armoniack, Comfrey *alias* Conſolida major, Galbanum, Sal-Armoniack, Sanguis Draconis, his own Blood, *Burgundy* Pitch, Maſtick, Olibanum, of each alike; ſtamp them well together with Wheat-Meal, Vinegar, and the White of an Egg, and lay it upon the place grieved: then clap upon the top of it all along the Chine and Back, a Sheep's-Skin newly taken off from his back, and change it every day, and in three or four days it will be well; but let the Charge lie on till it fall away of itſelf. Or to bathe his Back with Brandy well warmed, and the Powder of Bole-Armoniack mix'd together, is very good. But if your Horſe be naturally weak in the Back, or ſway'd in the Back, theſe two Diſeaſes are not abſolutely cured; but Coleworts boiled in Sallet-Oil, and Bean-Meal put into it, and the Back charg'd with it, will ſtrengthen it.

Or you may give him theſe things inwardly, which is good for a Back ſwank'd in the Fillets or Loin, or for a Wrench in the Back-bone, *viz.* Take one Ounce of *Solomon*'s-Seal, one Ounce of Comfrey, one of Clary, a quarter of a pound of Polypody of the Oak, Wood-Betony two Handfuls; boil them in a Gallon of ſtrong Beer or more, till

till half the quantity be consumed, then take it off the Fire, and put into it a quarter of a Pound of Butter, and a quarter of a Pound of Honey, and give him a Quart of it lukewarm in a Drenching-Horn fasting, at the end of every third Day, for about three or four times, and order him as in Observations how to order sick Horses. Ising-Glass boiled in Milk with a little Bole-Armoniack, is a great Strengthner of the Back, given him for several Mornings together: but the more easy and familiar way to cure these Distempers, (and as good a thing as I think you can possibly give him) is to make him some Balls of common Turpentine, and the Powder of *English* Liquorice, and give him about two Ounces of them, for about a Fortnight together, and apply at the same time to the Reins of his Back this excellent Plaster, *viz. Oxicroceum* and *Paracelsus*, of each a like quantity (but rather more of the *Oxicroceum*) melted together, and spread upon Sheep's Leather, and apply it to the grieved part, and let it lie on till it fall off of itself. You may renew this Charge if you think it convenient, after the other hath been about a Fortnight on. This is also a very excellent Plaster for a Back-Sinew-Strain in the Footlock-Joint, and indeed for all manner of Strains whatsoever.

If your Roots be green, slice them; if dry, beat them to powder.

To cure the Lampas.

Take a roasted Onion very hot, and put it upon a Clout, or upon Hurds, and with it rub the Lampas very much, and do this two or three times a day till it be whole; but the best Cure is to burn it away, which every common Smith can do.

Things good to cure the Camery or Frounce.

To let him blood in the two greatest Veins under his Tongue, and to wash the Sore with Vinegar and Salt, or to burn the Pimples on the Head, and to wash them with Ale and Salt till they bleed.

To cure the Barbes.

Clip them away with a Pair of Sciffars, and let them bleed, then prick them in the Palate of the Mouth with your Fleam, and wash the place with Wine-Vinegar, Bole-Armoniack and Salt, and see that no Hay-dust stick upon the place clipped, and he will be well again.

Several Receipts for the Canker in the Mouth, Nose, or in any other part of the Body.

For the Canker in the Mouth or Nose, take White-Wine half a Pint, Roch-Allum the Quantity of a Walnut, Bay-Salt half a Spoonful, *English* Honey one Spoonful, Red-Sage, Rue, Ribwort, Bramble-Leaves, of each a like quantity; boil these in the White-Wine so much as will suffice, till a quarter be consumed, and inject this Water into the Sorrance; or if it be in the Mouth, wash the place with a Clout fastned to a Stick, and dress him therewith twice a day, or oftener as you shall see fit, till it be whole.

Another for the Nose or Mouth, or any other place.

Take the Juice of Plantain, as much Vinegar, and the same Weight of the Powder of Allum, and with it anoint the Sore twice or thrice a day, and it will kill it and cure it.

Another.

Take of Ginger and Allum, of each alike, made into fine powder, mixing them well together till they be very thick like a Salve; and after you have washed it very well with Allum-Water or Vinegar, anoint it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dressing it will be killed.

Things good in general for the Canker.

The Herb Fluellen stamped, and the Juice given inwardly, or applied outwardly, healeth the most spreading and eating Cankers and Ulcers, and fretting Sores; Sage, Plantain, Rosemary, Honey, Allum, Verdegrease, green and white Copperas, Brimstone, Tansy, Bay-Salt, Bramble-Leaves, Elder, Ginger, the Roots of Asphodil, Quick-Silver, Arsnick, Agrimony made up with Hog's-Grease cureth old Cankers and inveterate Ulcers; Allum, Honey and Verdegrease mixed together is good, the Decoction of white Beets in Water; is good for running Sores, Ulcers and Cankers in the Head, Legs, or other Parts of the Body; the Decoction of the Leaves of the Burdock, &c.

Another excellent Cure for the Canker in the Head, Face or Eyes, &c.

Take three Ounces of *Burgundy* Pitch, and half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and put them into a large earthen new Pipkin, and set them over a soft Fire, and let them simper gently, keeping

keeping them stirring while they are on the Fire, to incorporate them the better. Your Pipkin must be the larger, by reason that you are to put in Verdegrease, which is of that fiery nature, that it will make it quickly rise and boil over, if you have not a special Care thereof: After you have boiled it near a quarter of an Hour, put to it one Ounce of the Oil of Turpentine, and as much of the Powder of Verdegrease as will lie upon a Sixpence, finely powdered and searced through a Lawn Sieve, boil them also a little while together, then take it off the Fire, and put it into a Gally-pot, and keep it till you have occasion to use it.

Directions to know whether it be well or ill made.

If it be well boiled it will be neither too thick nor too thin, but in the Condition of an Ointment, and of a very good green Colour; but if it be too much boiled, your Verdegrease will turn it of a red Colour, which will be so prejudicial to your Salve, that it will lose the healing Quality thereof.

Directions how to use it.

If you use it for a Canker in his Nose, you are to tye a Linen-Rag upon the end of a Stick, and dip it in Wine-Vinegar and Salt, or Verjuice and Salt mixed together, and put up into his Nostrils, and rub and scrub off the Scabs and Filth that you find therein: When you have thus washed and cleansed it, take the longest Goose-Feather you can get, and if it be not long enough to reach the Top of his Nostrils, tye it to the end of a small Stick, and dip it into the Salve, and use it as before, once a day, and he will do well. If you find it on his Head, Face or Eyes, you must do the like, viz. rub and scrub off the Scabs till they bleed, and lay on some of your Salve with a Feather, and strew some Wheat-Bran upon it to make it keep on the better. You are to dress it once a day till you find it heal, and then once in two or three days is enough.

Observation.

The quickest and speediest Way for to effect all outward Cures, is to let him stand in the House, during his Cure.

Things good to kill Worms in general.

Alheal, Alkanet, Water-Agrimony, the Leaves of Bistort or Snakeweed, the Powder of the Root of Butter-Bur, the Seed of Sea-Colewort bruised and given in Beer; the Pow-

der of ordinary ſmall Centaury; the Powder of the Root called Devils-Bit, Elecampane, the Powder of Fern-Roots, the Juice of Flix-weed, Gentian, Feltwort or Baldmony, Germander, Hops beaten to powder and given him, the Powder of Horehound, Knot-graſs, Groundſel, Savin, Brimſtone, Allum, Salt, Mother-wort, the Bark of the Root of the Mulberry-Tree, Nettle-ſeeds, the Powder of the Leaves of the Peach-Tree, the Powder of Plantain, Horſe-Radiſh, Wild-Rochet, Rupture-wort, Southernwood, Vervain, the Bark of the Walnut-Tree, or the Powder of the green Shells, Wormwood dried and beaten and given: Tanſy-Seed, the white Beete ſodden with Garlick, Mercury calcin'd, Aloes, black Soap, Tanners-Ouze, his own Hair chopped ſmall and given him in his Provender; Rue, Soot, the warm Guts of a new-ſlain Hen or Chicken rolled up in Salt and Brimſtone, and given him; Elder-Berries ſodden in Milk, Chalk, Fenugreek, Bay-Berries, Turmerick, Worm-Seed, Garlick, Hen's-Dung, Saffron, Mint, Sage, Roſin, Juniper-Berries, the green Branches of Sallow or Willow given him; Reeds, ſo much of Sublimatum as will lie upon Twopence, work'd up in Butter and given him; Stone-crop, Quick-Silver crude or mortified with the Juice of Lemons, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Bots or Worms.

Take a Quart of new Milk, and as much Honey as will extraordinarily ſweeten it; then give it him in the morning lukewarm, having faſted all the night before, and let him faſt after it two Hours: then take a Pint of Beer, and diſſolve into it a good Spoonful or more of black Soap, and being well mixed together, give it him; then ride and chafe him a little, and let him faſt another Hour, and the Worms will avoid.

Another more eaſy.

Take Savin chopped and ſtamped ſmall, a good Handful warmed in a Quart of Beer, and given him lukewarm, or a Quart of Brine given him is very good.

Another.

Take as much Precipitate, *alias* red Mercury calcin'd, as will lie upon a Silver Twopence, and work it into a piece of ſweet Butter, the bigneſs of a ſmall Walnut, in the manner of a Pill; then lap it all over again with Butter, and make it as big as a ſmall Egg, and give it him faſting in a Morning, taking forth his Tongue, and putting it upon the end

end of a Stick, put it down his Throat, and ride him a little after it, and give him no Water that Night, and let him fast two Hours, and then let him feed as at other times. With this Medicine you may kill all manner of Bots, Trunchions and Worms of what kind soever; but you must be very careful you exceed not the Quantity prescribed, for it is a very strong Poison.

Another.

Take the tender Tops of Broom and of Savin, of each half a Handful; chop them very small, and work them up into Pills, with fresh or sweet Butter, and having kept him over night fasting, give him three of these Pills the next Morning early, and let him fast two Hours after it, and give him no Water that Night: or take Rosin and Brimstone beaten not very fine, and strowed amongst his Provender, and given him fasting, long before he drinks, is good.

To a Mare with Foal, be cautious what you give her.

You shall need therefore but only to rake her, and to let her blood in the Roof or Palate of her Mouth, and make her eat her own Blood, for that will not only kill, but help all inward Maladies.

Another.

Take a Quart of Milk warm from the Cow, and put half a Pint of Honey to it, and give it her the first Day; the next Day take Rue and Rosemary, of each half a Handful; stamp them well together, then let it infuse together with the Powder of Brimstone and Soot, (so much as will suffice) four Hours in a Quart of Beer or Ale-wort; then strain it, and give it her bloodwarm, then ride her gently an Hour or two, and set her up warm, and give her Hay an Hour before you give her Drink, and let it be White-Water, and give her no Hay before you give her the said Drink, and let her Drink be either a Mash or White-Water.

Another.

Take two or three Heads of Garlick well peeled and bruised, with the quantity of a small Nutmeg of black Soap, and put them into a Quart of strong Beer, and warm it a little over the Fire, and give it her lukewarm in the morning fasting, with about an Ounce of the Flower of Brimstone at the Mouth of the first Horn, and order her as you do Horses that you give Drenches to.

Another

Another.

Three or four Pennyworth of the Powder of *Carolina*, (which you may buy at the Apothecaries) given her in a Quart of ſweet Wort in the morning faſting, is a very good Cure for her.

Another.

Take of Turmerick and Anniſeeds a good Spoonful of each beaten to powder, put them in a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, and a Pint and a half of ſtrong Beer, and give it her faſting in the morning lukewarm, with ſome Flower of Brimſtone put at the Mouth of each Horn, not exceeding an Ounce of it in all, and let her faſt three or four Hours after it. You may repeat this Drink two or three times, as you ſee occaſion.

Another for the Bots in a Horſe.

Take the Guts of a Chicken newly killed, and wrap them up warm in Honey, and put them down his Throat over night; the next morning give him a Pint of new Milk, with about three Ounces of the Flower of Brimſtone, and exerciſe him after it.

Things good in general to ſtanch Bleeding, either inward or outward, or of any Sinew, Cut or Wound, or Bleeding at the Noſe.

The Leaves of Snakeweed or Biſtort ſtrewed upon the Wound after they are beaten to powder; the Juice of Clivers applied to a bleeding Wound will ſtop it; the green Leaves of Cudweed or Cottonweed bruiſed and laid to the Wound, the Decoction of the Herb called Golden-Rod outwardly applied, the ſmoother Horſetail is good, either inwardly taken or outwardly applied. Lady's-Mantle, the dried Leaves of Medlars ſtrowed upon the Wound, being beaten to powder, ſtop the bleeding of it; the Juice of Mint given in Vinegar ſtayeth bleeding inwardly; Money-wort or the Herb Twopence ſtayeth bleeding inwardly, ſo doth Moon-wort, or the Oaken-Moſs of a Pale or Spear; Mouſe-ear ſtayeth the Flux of Blood inward or outward; the Powder of the Leaves of the Peach-tree ſtrewed upon the Wound; Plantain, Queen of the Meadows, Medlars dried before they are ripe and beaten to powder, and ſtrewed upon the Wound; the Juice of Sorrel, Stonecrop, a piece of a Fuze-Ball or a Mullipuſs laid to any bleeding Wound, ſtoppeth it preſently; an Ointment made of White-

White-Lilly Roots with Hog's-greaſe is very good for them: The Broth wherein Colewort hath been ſodden, is good for cut Sinews and Joints. The Root of Garden-Lilly ſtamped with Honey, gleweth and ſoddereth them together; the Herb Tutſan or Park-leaves, the Leaves or Bark of the Willow-tree is good for the bleeding of Wounds, or at the Noſe, or Fluxes of Blood, the Powder of the Bluebottle taken inwardly, the Juice of Clowns Wound-wort taken inwardly with Comfrey or applied outwardly, the Down of a Hare or Coney-Skin, or Woollen-Cloth burnt to aſhes and ſtrewed upon the Wound, Primroſe-Leaves or wild Tanſy bruiſed, an old Felt burnt and beaten to powder, Bole-Armoniack beaten to powder, and given inwardly or applied outwardly, ſtancheth bleeding. To ſtop bleeding at the Noſe, tie him hard upon his Fore-legs, about twelve Inches above his Knees, and juſt beneath his Elbow, and keep the Nape of his Neck as cold as may be, with wet Hay or Cloths, and it will ſtanch him preſently. The Leaves of Roſemary made into Oils, Ointment or Bathings, help all cold and benumbed Joints, Sinews, or Members, *&c.*

The beſt Receipt to ſtop Bleeding at the Noſtrils.

The Juice of the Root or Leaves of Nettles ſquirted up his Noſtrils ſtayeth the Bleeding at the Noſe. But the beſt thing of all to ſtop bleeding at the Noſe, is to take a Hank of *Coventry*-blue Thred, and hang it croſs a Stick, and ſet one end of it on Fire, and ſtrew a little Whitewine-Vinegar on it, to keep it from burning too faſt, and let him receive the Smoak up his Noſtrils, and it will ſtop it in a very ſhort time, when nothing elſe will do. New Horſe-dung tempered with Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar laid to a bleeding Wound will ſtop it, burnt Silk is good likewiſe for it, ſo is the Juice of Coriander, or bruiſed Sage, or Hog's-dung, or a Clod of Earth, or bruiſed Hyſop, or the ſoft Crops of Haw-thorn bruiſed, or to boil two Ounces of the Horſe's Blood and beat it to powder, and ſtrew upon the Wound. And to ſtop Bleeding at the Noſe, the Juice of Coriander ſquirted up it ſtayeth it, or the Juice of Periwincle, the Coam of a Smiths-Forge laid to the Wound, ſtayeth bleeding; or Shepherds-Pouch diſtilled and an Ounce given faſting, ſtayeth any inward Bleeding, whether natural or unnatural, or Burſa-Paſtoris bruiſed and applied to the place.

Par-

Particular Receipts to ſtop Bleeding.

Take the Powder of the Stone Emachile, and blow it up into his Noſe, and lay it to the Vein or Wound that bleeds, and it ſtancheth them.

Another.

Take the Root of Rhubarb and bruiſe it in a Mortar, and ſtop it into the Noſtril that bleeds, and it ſtayeth it.

Another for the Bleeding at the Noſe.

Take Betony and ſtamp it in a Mortar with Bay-ſalt, or other white Salt with Wine-Vinegar, and put it into his Noſtril that bleeds, and it ſtayeth it.

Looſening things in general, *vid.* the firſt Part.

Binding things in general which are good to ſtop a Looſeneſs, Lask or Flux of Blood.

Sloes, or the inner Rind of the black Buſh, wild Bryar-ball, or the inner Rind of it, Dock-Roots, or the Seeds of Docks boiled in Beer, the inner Skin that covereth the Cheſtnut, Cud-weed or Cotton-weed, the Root of the Water-flag or Flower-de-luce, the Seed of Flea-wort fryed and given, the Seed of Flix-weed given in Water where Steel hath been quenched, the Powder of ſtinking Gladwin is good for the Flux; Winter-green, the dryed Shells of Hazle-nuts, or the red Skin that is over the Kernel, the Berries of Holly-holm or Halver-buſh beaten to powder and given, Knape-weed, Knot-graſs, Ladies-Mantle, the Seeds or Roots of Water-Lilly, Looſe-ſtrife or Willow-Herb, Money-wort or the Herb Two-pence, Moon-wort, the Oaken-Moſs of a Pale or Spear, Mulberries, the Roots of Mullen, the Leaves and Bark of the Oak and Acorn-Cups, the Leaves of the Pear-Tree or four Pears, Periwincle, Queen of the Meadows, red Roſes, Sanicle, the Powder of Services when they are mellow, Shepherds-Purſe, wild Tanſy, the Bark of the Walnut-Tree, or the Kernels of the Walnuts when they are old; Yarrow, Wormwood, the Juice of Rue mixed with clarified Honey, with red Wine; or Bean-flower and Bole-Armoniack boiled in Milk, or red Wine and Bay-ſalt bruiſed together, Cinnamon and Nutmegs boiled in red Wine, Tanners Bark, Dragons-water, a Pint of it ſweetned with Treacle, Myrrh, Maſtick, Storax, the Rind of Pomegranate, Allum: for a Foal, give him a Pint of Verjuice to drink. The inward and outward Barks of the Willow-

tree

tree burnt to ashes is a great Binder and Dryer up of Sores, *&c.*

Particular Receipts to stay a Lask or Looseness.

Take Bean-flower and Bole-Armoniack, of each three Ounces, mix them with red Wine, or stale Beer, and give it him blood-warm.

Another.

Take half a Pint of Plantain-water, and half a Pint of red Wine, (or for want of that, Claret) and put into it an Ounce of Cassia-powder finely beaten, with as much of the Powder of Pomgranate-Rinds, and boil them well together, then take the Yolks of two Eggs, and some Loaf-Sugar, and make a Caudle of it, and give it him lukewarm, and it will help him.

Another.

The Powder of a Stag's-Pizzle dried and grated, and given him in Claret or stale Beer, is a very sovereign Remedy for it, so is the powder of the Jaw-bone of a Pike, Teeth and all, given after the same manner.

Another very Excellent.

Take three Pints of stale Beer, and put to it the powder of Cumminseeds three Spoonfuls, and boil them together till half be consumed, then take Knot-grass, Shepherds-Purse and Plantain, and stamp them severally and put four or five Spoonfuls of the Juice of each of them, to the Beer, and boil them again a little, and give him it half over night, and half the next morning; but if it fall out in the Winter, that you cannot get the Herbs, then take the Water of the distilled Herbs, and use it as before.

Another.

Take as much Bole-Armoniack as contains the bigness of a Walnut, beat it into fine Powder, and put it into a Pint of Claret, (or for want of that, Verjuice) and give it him when you find occasion. Or take a Pint of Claret, Verjuice or Beer, and put into them an Ounce of the Powder of Cinnamon, with some of the Powder of the wild Briar-balls, and two or three Yolks of new-laid Eggs warmed over the Fire. This given twice or thrice at most will perfectly cure him.

Another very good.

Take a Quart of Claret, and put to it four Yolks of new-laid Eggs, half an Ounce of long Pepper, with as much of the Grains of Paradise, boil them together and give it him

him luke warm. Or take an Ounce of the inward Bark of an Oak, and half an Ounce of the Powder of long Pepper boiled in a Quart of new Milk, and give it half over night, and the other half of it the next morning fasting is very good.

Another.

Take two or three wild Briar-balls, if they be not very large, and beat them to powder, and boil them in a Quart of Beer with a little of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and give it him blood-warm, and it is a certain Cure.

Another for a violent Scouring.

Take the Entrails of a Pullet, or great Chicken, all but the Gizzard, and mix with them of Spikenard one Ounce, and make him swallow it, and this will infallibly stay his Scouring, yea, though it be a Bloody-Flux.

Another which will stay a Lask, be it never so violent.

Take a penny-worth of Allum powdered, Bole-Armoniack powdered an Ounce, put them in a Quart of Milk, keeping them stirring till the Milk become all of a Curd, and give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take a Quart of red Wine, and put into it an Ounce and a half of Bole-Armoniack in fine Powder, and two Ounces and a half of Conserve of Sloes; mix them together and boil them pretty well, then take it off and put into it a Spoonful of the Powder of Cinnamon, brewed all together, and give it him, and let him fast two Hours after it, and let him eat no washed Meat. Hay is wholesom, so is Bread and Oats, if they be well mixt with Beans or Wheat; but not otherwise.

Another.

Take a Handful of the Herb Shepherds-Purse, and boil in a Quart of strong Ale; and when it is lukewarm, take the Leaves of Wood-rose stamp'd and put therein and give it him.

Things good in general for a Bloody-Flux.

Cummin-seeds, Knot-grass, Plantain, the Leaves or Seeds of Agrimony, the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree, or Berries, or red Beets, Bistort or Snakeweed, and Tormentil is very Excellent, Brank-ursine, Bear's-breech, Buckthorn, Plantain, Burnet, the Roots of Cinquefoil or five-leav'd Grass, the Juice of Clowns Wound-wort, red Darnel, the Powder

Powder of the yellow Water-flag or Flower-de-luce, the Flower of Ivy, Kidney-wort, Sage, Wormwood, Shepherds-Pouch, red Robin, the Seeds of Sorrel or Roots, wild Tansy, Bole-Armoniack, Myrrh, Southernwood, Parsley, Rue, Spittle-wort, Cassia, Cinnamon, Chalk, Vinegar, Bursa Pastoris, Tanners Bark, red Wine, Sloes, Arsmart, Self-heal, Paul's-Betony, Milfoil, the Blood of a Hare made into Powder, the Powder of Men's-bones, the Powder of white Dog's-Turd, the Pizzle of a Hart, or Harts or Goats-horns burned, the Jaw-bone of a Pike beaten to powder, red Saunders, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Bloody-Flux.

Take an Ounce of Saffron, two Ounces of Myrrh, three Ounces of Southernwood, of Parsley an Ounce, of Rue three Ounces, of Spittle-wort and Hyssop of each two Ounces, of Cassia, which is like Cinnamon one Ounce; beat all these into fine Powder, and with Chalk and strong Vinegar work them to a Paste, of which Paste make little Cakes, and dry them in the shade, and dissolve some of them in a Pint and a half of Barley-Milk, or for want of that, that Juice which is called Cremor or Ptisan, and give it him to drink; and it doth not only cure the Bloody-Flux, but being given with a Quart of warm Water, healeth all Grief and Pain either in the Belly or Bladder, which cometh for want of staling.

Another.

Take red Wine three Pints, half a Handful of the Herb called Bursa Pastoris or Shepherds-Purse, and as much Tanners Bark taken out of the Fat and dried, boil them in the Wine till somewhat more than a Pint be consumed, then strain it hard and give it him lukewarm to drink: if you add to it a little Cinnamon, it will be better, or to dissolve into a Pint of red Wine four Ounces of the Conserve of Sloes, and give it him to drink, either of the Medicines are sufficient.

Another most Excellent Receipt, which is infallible for the Cure of the Bloody Flux, or any other Scouring whatsoever.

Take three Pints of new Milk, and dissolve in it over a gentle Fire one Ounce of Ising-Glass or better; dissolve it first in a little fair Water over the Fire, before you put it to the Milk, that it will look like unto Cream. After you have so done, pour or strain it forth through a very coarse Sieve, to take out the dross and dregs of the Ising-Glass that will remain

remain behind undiſſolved, and give it him lukewarm in the Morning faſting, and at twice or thrice giving it will cure him at fartheſt. 'Tis alſo a very great Strengthner of Nature.

When the Iſing-Glaſs is diſſolved, and the Dregs ſtrained and poured from the Milk, there will not be above a Quart of it, which is quantity enough to give him at a time.

To make your Iſing-Glaſs diſſolve the freer and better, bruiſe it firſt in a Mortar, and then take it in pieces, which if it be right and good, it will flake off like unto a Wafer, and be tranſparent.

Iſing-Glaſs is not much unlike in form and ſhape unto a white Pudding.

'Tis very good alſo to be given toa weak Horſe, to ſtrengthen and make him luſty.

Things good in general for the Falling of the Fundament.

To anoint it with Oil of Roſes or warm red Wine, if it be not inflamed, and put it up again; but if it be, bathe it with a Spunge dipt in the Decoction of Mallows, Camomile, and Dill, mingled together, to aſſuage the Swelling, and put it up again with your warm Hand, and bathe the Tuel about with red Wine, wherein hath been ſodden Acacia, Galls, Acorn-cups and the Paring of Quinces, then throw upon it the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, Frankincenſe, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Falling of the Fundament.

Take Garden-Creſſes, and having dried them to powder, with your Hand put up the Fundament, and then ſtrew the Powder thereon; after it lay a little Honey thereon, and then ſtrew more of the Powder, mix with it the Powder of Cummin, and it helpeth.

Another.

Take white Salt made into very fine Powder, ſtrew a little upon the Gut, then take a piece of Lard, and firſt having boiled Mallow-leaves till they be ſoft, and beat the Leaves well with the Lard, and when it is well beaten make it up like to a Suppoſitory, and apply it to the place every day once till it be whole.

Another.

Take a ſmall Faggot made of the green Boughs of the Willow-tree and burn them to aſhes in ſome clean Place. When you have done, waſh his Fundament with warm Water, and ſtrew ſome of the fineſt of them upon it; and put it up into

into its place again with your warm Hand, and tie down his Tuel between his hinder Legs to his Surcingle, pretty strait, and it will knit very strong again. Or white Pepper strewed upon it, after it hath been beaten and searced to a very fine Powder, and used as you did the other, is very good also.

Things good in general for the biting of a mad Dog.

To let blood first, Angelica, Balm, Wood-betony, Carduus Benedictus, the Juice of Elder, all taken inwardly: An Ointment made of the Juice of the Figtree-leaves and Hog's-grease is good to anoint the Sore, Gentian, Felt-wort or Baldmony, Hounds-tongue, Mint bruised and laid to the Sore is good, Pimpernel given inwardly, or applied outwardly; Plantain, the Bark of the Walnut-tree taken with Onions, Salt and Honey is good, the tops of Rue, Box-leaves, Primrose-roots, of each alike, powdered together, and boiled in new Milk with *London*-Treacle, is good: Hobgoblin, Danewort, Sallet-Oil, the Powder of Diapente given inwardly, or lay a live Pidgeon cleaved in the midst hot to the Wound, and it will draw out the Venom, and heal the Sore with Turpentine and Hog's-grease melted together. The Leaves of Aristolochia bruised will take away the Poison; Yarrow, Calamint and Southernwood made into a Salve. The Ash Keys, the Roots of the sweet Briar dried and beaten to powder, and given inwardly, and applied outwardly, is good, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Biting of a mad Dog.

Take Hobgoblin, Periwincle and Box-Leaves, of each half a Handful; first mince them small, and stamp them very small in a Stone Mortar, and with Milk or Beer administer it both at the Change and Full of the Moon.

The best of Cures for the Biting of a mad Dog

Take the Herb which groweth in dry and barren Hills, called the Star of the Earth; you must give it three Days together: the first time you must gather three of these Herbs with all the whole Roots, and wash and wipe them clean, then pound them well, losing no part of them, and give it him in Beer, and be careful that he hath all the Herbs and Roots, you may make them up in sweet Butter, which will do as well: the second Day give him five of these Herbs or Roots, and the third Day seven, and he will be assuredly cured, for it cureth all manner of Cattel of all sorts whatsoever.

It cured a whole Kennel of Hounds of a Gentleman's, one Beagle excepted, which they did not suspect to be bitten. It cured a Gentleman's Son, who was so far gone with it that his Head began to addle, and to talk idly, yet it cured him perfectly; and though he was then but a Child, yet he lived to be a proper Man. Look for another afterwards.

Another.

Take Goats-dung, and of Flesh that hath lain long in the Salt, with the Herb Danewort, of each half a pound, and forty Walnuts stampt all together, and lay part thereof to the Sore, and it will suck out the Venom, and heal up the Wound; but upon the first Dressing give him Wine and Treacle together to drink.

Another.

Give him two or three Spoonfuls of the Powder of Diapente, in a Quart of good Ale or Beer, and cauterize and burn the Sore, and heal it up with a healing Salve.

Another.

Presently after the Biting let him blood, then take Sage and Rue, of each a large Handful, one Ounce of common Treacle, three or four Heads of Garlick peeled and bruised, of scraped Tin or Tinsoil the bigness of a Nutmeg; put all these into a Gallon of strong Ale, and put them up into an Earthen Pot close stopped with Paste, then boil it in a Kettle of Water till half of it be consumed. Give him five or six Spoonfuls of it before the Full of the Moon, and three Days after; but if necessity requires, give it presently.

Another not so difficult to make.

First, let blood, (as you must always do in this Distemper) then take Henbane and burn it to ashes, and mingle it with Hog's-grease, and apply it to the place bitten; and give him some of the Juice of the green Herb inwardly to drink in a quarter of a Pint of Angelica-Water, and he will do well.

Things good in general to expel all manner of Poison, either by Serpent, Spider, or any other venomous Beast.

Bay-berries, Burrage, the Powder of the Bluebottle, the Powder of the Root of the Butter-bur, Water Caltrops, Dragons, the Seed of Fennel, Garlick, *English* or foreign Gentian, Felt-wort or Baldmony, Clovegilliflowers, Angelica, Germander, Hawk-weed, the Leaves or the Berries

of the Herb called True-love, or One-berry, Hops, Horehound, Juniper-berries, Lavender Cotton, the white Lilly, Lovage, wild Marjoram, Mustard-seed, Ground-pine or Champepitis, the Seeds of Garden Rue, Sorrel, Southernwood, Stone-crop, the Juice of Tormentil or Set-foil, Heart-trefoil, Vipers Bugloss, the Root of Valerian, Holly-thistle, Birth-wort, the Root of Spider-wort, the Seed of Turneps, the Juice of Bastard wild Poppy, Moon-wort, Calamus, white Hellebore or Sneezing-root, Betony, Elecampane, Mallows, Cinquefoil, Master-wort or Herb Gerard, the Seed of *Hercules*, All-heal, Parsley-seed, Ameos or Bishops-weed, Wormwood, Pomcitron, the Seed of Oranges, Pepper, the Ashes of Reeds given him to drink, Mug-wort or great Tansy, and Wine and Camomile stampt together.

Particular Receipts to expel Poison.

Take a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and mix with it some Dragon and Angelica Water, and give it him lukewarm.

Another.

Take Calamus, Betony, Angelica, Dragons, and Elecampane and Bay-berries, about two Ounces of all of them together very finely beaten, and boil them in a Quart of Ale, and give it him, is very excellent.

Another.

Take Rue, Mug-wort, Germander and Wormwood, chopt small and boiled in a Quart of Beer, and give it him.

Things good in general for the Plague or Pestilence.

Red-Lead, Bezoar, the Seed of the Thorny-Apple, Gunpowder, Bistort or Snake-weed, One-blade, Burrage, the Powder of the Blue-bottle, the Roots of the Butter-bur beaten to powder the Juice of Celandine, Cuckow-point dryed and beaten to powder, the Leaves or Root of Devils-bit boiled in Wine, Elecampane, Garlick, True-love or One-berry, the Berries of Ivy, Juniper-berries, Pimpernel, the Seeds of Garden Rue, Saffron, Sage, the Roots of the Star-thistle, Stone-crop, Angelica, the Roots of Valerian, Diapente mixed with Sack and sweetned with Treacle, Urine mixt with Hen's-dung, Gentian, Aristolochia, Myrrh, Scrapings of Ivory, Bay-berries, Pepper, Germander, Tormentil. The Skull of a dead Man, dryed and beaten to powder, and given in Sack, is moit excellent; the Seeds or Leaves of Southernwood

Blood not your Horse in this Disease, for if you do it will certainly kill him.

ſtamped and given in White-wine or Ale with Bole-Armoniack or Balm, Betony or Naphe; the Juice of Marigolds, Scabious, Dragons-water, Mugwort, Feverfew, Yarrow, Tanſy, Briar-leaves or Elder-leaves; the Root of the white Lily given three Mornings together boiled in Beer, cauſeth the Poiſon of the Peſtilence to break forth into Bliſters in the outward part of the Skin: the Root of Wintergreen is good, Calathian Violet, Vipers-graſs, Rue, Ameos or Biſhops-weed. To preſerve a Horſe from the Infection of the Plague, you muſt anoint his Noſe with Vinegar, wherein hath been ſteeped Aſſafœtida during the Infection.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Plague or Peſtilence.

Take Devil-bit, Gunpowder, Biſtort or Snakeweed, Angelica, Bayberries, the Root Meum, Elecampane, all beaten to powder, and give it him two Mornings together, and order him as you do other ſick Horſes. About three Ounces of all of them is enough.

Another.

Give him two Spoonfuls of Diapente with a Pint of White-Wine or a Quart of Strong-Beer ſweetned with Treacle, and give it him. If you deſire more Receipts, you may compound them as your Diſcretion will think fit, out of my general things for the Plague.

Things good in general for Piſſing and Staling of Blood.

Agrimony, Wood-betony, Buckthorn, Plantain, wild Bryar-balls, the whole Cheſnut dry'd and beaten to Powder, the Powder of the Root of the Earth-Cheſnut, the Root of Cinquefoil or five-leav'd Graſs, Clown's Woundwort, Comfrey, the Powder of an Herb call'd Crabs-Claws, the Herb or Seed of Flixweed given wherein Steel hath been quenched, Fluellin or Lluellin, Golden-Rod, the ſmoother Tail of the rougher Horſe-tail, the Juice of Houſleek, Spearmint, Moneywort, Mouſe-ear dry'd, green Mulberries, Red Robin, Shepherd's-Purſe, Bole-Armoniack, * Hobgoblin, Bloodwort, Plantain, the Juice of Purſlain, the Powder of Gum Tragacanth and Arabick, the red Rattle-graſs boiled in red Wine, red Roſes, the Seeds of Ruſhes, the Juice of the

* Hobgoblin *is a Stone much like an Oyſter-ſhell, which you may find upon coarſe ſtony Lands. It is good alſo beaten to powder, to take off a Film from the Eyes.*

Powder

Powder of Sanicle. The Seeds of Sorrel or Roots, wild Tanſy, wild Thyme or Mother of Thyme, Tormentil or Setfoil, the Kernels of old Walnuts, the Powder of the Rind of dry'd Pomegranates, Polypodium of the Wall, Knot-graſs, Comfrey, Storax, Pine-apple Kernels, Daffodil and Wheat-flower, or Liquorice and Anniſeeds rolled in Honey and given him. Barley boiled in the Juice of Gumfolly, the Barley to eat, and the Liquor to drink; the yellow Willow-herb, Bugle, Herb Twopence, Water Sengreen, Marſhmallows, the Root or Queen of the Meadow, Knipper-wort, the tender Tops of the Bramble-buſh or Flowers, the Berries of the Hawthorn-Tree, Acacia, Moſs of an Oaken Pale or Stick boiled in Beer. Coral is a moſt excellent thing to ſtop all Iſſues of Blood, a live Frog given him, or *Ariſtolochia longa* boiled in Ale or Beer is very good.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Horſe that piſſes or ſtales Blood.

Take Knot-graſs, Shepherd's-Purſe, Bloodwort of the Hedge, Polypodium of the Wall, Comfrey, Garden Bloodwort, of each a Handful; ſhred them ſmall, and put them into a Quart of Beer and boil them; then put to them a little Salt, Leven and Soot; mix all together, and give it him.

Another for the ſame.

Take three or four red Sprats, or one red Herring with a hard Row, chop them very ſmall, and let them lie aſteep about half an hour in a Quart of ſtrong Beer, and give it him lukewarm faſting in the Morning, or at any time of the day when you have occaſion, with about a Spoonful of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack amongſt it, and it will cure him at twice giving at fartheſt.

Another, which never yet failed, whether it be a Strain or ſome other inward Diſtemper, and will ſtop any violent Scouring, being boiled in Beer, and given.

Take two or three Wild-Briar Apples, if they be ſmall, and beat them to very fine Powder, taking out the Sticks that are in them, and boil them in a Quart of Beer, and give it him faſting ſo long as you find him ſtale Blood. If you put to it the Powder of Hobgoblin, it will be the better, and it will certainly cure him. Take heed you blood him not, for if you do you endanger his Life. It will cure him at twice or thrice giving at furtheſt.

These Balls are to be given when they be ripe, which is about the latter end of *November*.

Another.

Take a good Handful of Arſmart, and chop it very ſmall, and boil it well in a Quart of good Beer, and when it is cool enough give it him ſo long as you find him to ſtale Blood, with the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and you ſhall find it work a Cure in two or three times giving at fartheſt.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Poll-Evil.

To ſink it at the firſt riſing, anoint it very well with red Lead and Sallet-Oil, and chafe it in very well twice a day with your Hand, and keep him warm, and it will ſink it; and if you find it will not ſink, ripen it with Wine Vinegar and the Loam of a Wall, Straws and all, boiled together, and let out the Corruption with a hot Iron, and tent it with Flax dipt in Hogs greaſe, and after four days tent it with a dry Spunge dipt in Turpentine, Saffron, and the Yolks of Eggs. But if it be turn'd to a Fiſtula, then take of unſlak'd Lime and Arſnick, the Juice of Garlick and Onions, Wall-wort and Holly, and boil them till they become an Ointment: then waſh the Sore with the Water wherein green Copperas and Allum hath been boiled, and fill the Hole full of the Ointment, by dipping a Tent therein twice a day. Or take of Orpiment, unſlak'd Lime, Verdegreaſe, the Juice of Pellitory, Celandine, black Ink, Honey, and ſtrong Vinegar boiled together thick, and made into Rolls, and put it into the Sore, and if the Fiſtula be killed, the Matter will be white and thick. Then dry it up with the Powder of Savin, Honey and Lime baked together, or anoint it with Tar, freſh Hogs-greaſe and Sallet-Oil melted together; or tent it with red Lead and black Soap mingled together. And to ſink it before it breaks, lay a Charge to it, of Shoemaker's Wax ſpread upon allum'd Leather, or what other Charge you think moſt convenient. You may find variety of them in my Firſt Part, if you look for Charges.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Poll-Evil.

After you have ſhaved away the Hair from the Swelling, then lay on a Plaiſter of black Shoemakers Wax, with ſome Maſtich melted in it, and ſpread it upon allum'd Leather, and let lie till it hath ripen'd or broke the Impoſthume: then take a Pint of Wine-Vinegar, and when it is boiling hot,

hot, mix with it as much Loam, with the Straws in it, and apply it as hot as the Horse will suffer it, and renew it once a day till it be whole.

Another.

Take an Ounce of Quicksilver, and kill it in fasting Spittle, and mix it with the quantity of a Hen's-Egg, with Hog's-grease and Brimstone finely beaten to powder; incorporate these very well together, and anoint the Swelling very well with it: then take red Tar one Pennyworth, of Hogs-grease half a Pound, and of green Copperas and Bay-salt of each a Handful, both made into fine powder. Boil them very well, and boiling hot apply it to the place with a Clout ty'd on the end of a stick, being lately anointed with the Quicksilver, Hogs-grease and Brimstone: and by so scalding it three or four Mornings together, you may after that but only warm the Tar and apply it, and it will be cured: for this scalding doth so kill the Malice of the Fistula, that it will never break forth any more, and this will cure any other Fistulaes or foul Ulcers whatsoever.

Another.

After you have so slit the Sore that the Corruption may run forth, and you have eaten or cut away the proud and dead Flesh, and wash'd it and made it very sweet and clean with allum'd Water, pour into it some Oil of Turpentine, and thus dressing it every day, you shall soon find it grow well; for this Oil will not only search it at the bottom, but it will also cleanse and heal it. It will likewise heal any raw Back pinch'd by the Saddle, or any Swelling it will likewise sink.

Another.

Take Euphorbium and Mastick, mix them well together, and seethe them well with *French* Soap, and make a Tent and put it into it, and it will consume the evil Moisture.

Things good for the Pains, vid. *Scratches*; for what cures the Scratches, cures these.

Things good in general to kill the Canker in any Part of the Body.

Green Copperas, white Copperas, Bay-Salt, unslak'd Lime, Soap and Quicksilver well mix'd together, Turpentine Hogs-grease, Arsnick, Verdegrease, Allum, Garlick, Rue Savin, Tar, Ginger, Pepper, Orpiment, Oil of Vitriol, Ele-

Elecampane, Fluellin, Tanſy, Cuckow-point, Snapdragon, Burdock Roots, *&c.*

Particular Receipts to cure the Canker of the Body.

Take Savin, Bay-Salt and Rue ſtamp'd with Barrows-greaſe, and anoint the Sore therewith; and when the ill Humours are killed (which you ſhall know by the Whiteneſs) then heal it with Tar, Oil and Honey mix'd together.

Another.

Take Vinegar, Ginger and Allum, and mix them well together, and anoint it therewith, and it will kill the Poiſon and heal the Ulcer.

Another for a Canker, foul Ulcer, Leproſy, and to make Hair grow.

Take a Quart of Tar, and put to it half a Pound of Boars-greaſe, an Ounce of green Copperas, a quarter of a Pound of Saltpetre, two Ounces of Wax, a Quart of Honey, a quarter of a Pound of Roſin, two Ounces of Verdegreaſe, a Quart of Linſeed Oil; ſeethe them till half be conſumed, then ſtrain it and keep it cloſe in a Pot: then when you have occaſion to uſe it, take of it warm, and apply it to the Sore, it doth heal, draw, and make Hair to grow.

Things good in general to cure a Fiſtula or Canker, or any other Running Sore whatſoever.

Wild Champions, Doves-foot or Cranes-bill, the Powder of the Root of Sow-Fennel put upon them, the Juice or Water of Flix-weed or Toad-flax put into them, the Juice of Coleworts, the Juice of Fleawort mixed with Hogs-greaſe cleanſeth them; the Juice of the Flower de-luce, Fluellin or Lluellin, Golden Rod, the Juice or the diſtilled Water of Winter-green, the Root of the black Hellebore beaten to powder and ſtrewed upon them, conſumeth the dead Fleſh inſtantly. The Leaves of Truelove or One-berry, Knapeweed, Knotgraſs, Lady's Mantle, Moneywort or the Herb Twopence. The Juice of the Leaves or Roots of Nettles is good to waſh all rotten and ſtinking Sores, Fiſtula's and Gangrenes, and ſuch as are fretting, eating, or corroding Scabs or Mangineſs in any part of the Body. The Root of Cow-Parſnips ſcraped upon the hard Skin of a Fiſtula, will take it away. The Juice of Pellitory of the Wall, Pimpernel, Groundpine or Chamepitis, the Juice of Plan-

Plantain, Queen of the Meadows, the Juice of Ragwort or Ragweed, the red Rattle-grass, Winter Rochet or Winter-Cresses, the Juice of wild Sage, the Juice of Saracens Woundwort. It is good for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, be they ever so foul and stinking, and so is Sanicle: the Powder of Savin is good to cleanse them, but it keeps them from healing; the Juice of Scabious, the Juice of Garden Succory, Self-heal is good to cleanse Sores, and is good for Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, so is the Juice of Smallage put to Honey of Roses. The Juice of Sorrel or Wood-sorrel is good for Ulcers and Cankers, the Juice of the Tamarisk-Tree, Vervain, the Juice of the Leaves of the Walnut-Tree, or the Water of them distilled in Ale, is good to cleanse and cure foul running Sores. Wheat-flower mix'd with the Yolk of an Egg, Honey and Turpentine do draw and heal any Bile, Plague-Sore, or any running foul Ulcer. Roch-Allum and Bay-salt burned to powder and beaten together, and mixed with Cummin and Honey, keep it for your use, and apply it either Tent-wise or Plaster-wise, which will heal any old Sore; the Oil of Turpentine is good likewise for the same purpose, the Juice of Beets, Calafoma or Calofonia, the Ashes of Garlick strew'd upon them, the Powder of Celandine or Verdegrease, Vinegar and Honey mingled together upon the Fire. But if you intend to make it stronger, put to it some Mercury Sublimate and Arsnick beaten to powder; but the other may be apply'd to the Mouth, and he receive no danger: or White-wine Vinegar, Mercury, Precipitate, Camphire, green Treacle, Sage, Yarrow and Ribwort, with Honey and Hogs-grease boiled together till half be consumed, and strain it and wash the Wound with the Liquor: Or take four Quarts of Coal-trough Water, boil it and skim it, then boil it over again, after you have strained it, with white Copperas, Allum, and Verdegrease, of each a pound, beaten to Powder; and when it is clear, put it into a Glass for your use. The Powder which remaineth at the bottom, keep by itself, for it will heal up any old Sore. Or take Roman Vitriol, Roch-Allum and Rosewater boiled till they become as hard as a Stone, and strew this Powder upon it, is excellent good. But to break a Fistula, take Brooklime, Mallows, Arsmart, of each alike, boiled in Chamberlye till they be soft, and apply it to the Swelling,

This Water will cure any Fistula whatsoever, if it come to the bottom; and heal it up with your green Ointment.

and

and renew it not in two or three days. But to cure a Canker, take red Grape-Leaves, Bramble-leaves, Honeysuckle-leaves, Allum, Columbine-leaves, Sage-leaves boiled in Water, and wash the Sore till it bleed: or Verdegrease, Butter and Salt melted scalding hot, and pour it into the Fistula, and use it till all the Flesh look red; then tent it with Verdegrease, Allum, Wheat-flower, and the Yolks of Eggs beaten and mingled together, and skin it with Barm and Soot mixed together; or Loam-Wall and Wine-Vinegar put hot upon the Sore, is good to ripen and heal it; or Butter, Rosin, and Frankincense, made boiling hot and poured into the Wound. And for a Fistula in the Head, dip a Lock of Wool in the Juice of the Housleek, and put it into his Ear, and put Hurds upon it, and tie it close, and this will break it; or Salt mixed with Butter or Water, and Salt put into his Ear, will do the like.

A Canker cured.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Fistula.

After you have search'd it to the bottom with a Probe of Lead, or some other thing which will bend whersoever the Concavity of the Sorrance leadeth it, and when you have found the bottom, let it be open'd downwards, if it may be possibly done, to the end the Corruption may the better issue out; then tent it two or three days with try'd Hogs-grease, to cause the Hole to be the wider; then inject this Water following: Take of Sublimate and of Precipitate, of each as much as will lie upon a Threepence; of Allum and of white Copperas, of each three Ounces; burn all these in an Earthen Pot, but first rub the bottom with a little Oil to keep it from burning. This done, burn them together; then take two Quarts of fair clear Water, boil it first by itself, and scum it in the boiling: then take it from the Fire, and put in as much of this Powder as will lie upon a Shilling at twice, and thus it is made. But if you would have it stronger, then take fair Water and Smith's Water, of each alike; and of Whitewine Vinegar a third part, and with the Ashes of Athen-wood make Lye of them with the Wine and Vinegar, and so make your Water with this Powder and Lye in the former Ingredients, according as before is taught you. Inject this Water with a Syringe into the Sorrance, and in a short time it will both kill the Fistula and heal it up, and is an approved and infallible Cure.

Another.

Take a Pint of the best Honey, an Ounce of Verdegrease beaten to powder, and boil them together three quarters of an Hour, then strain it into a Gallypot, and keep it for your Use. This is a very precious Ointment to tent a Fistula or Poll-Evil, for it searcheth it to the bottom, and eateth away all dead and evil Flesh, which causeth it to heal the better.

A Water for a Fistula.

Take a Pint of the best White-Wine you can get, or for want of that, Whitewine-Vinegar or Verjuice, and put a good Handful of Sage-Leaves bruised into it. After you have boiled it pretty well, strain out the Sage from the Wine, and dissolve into it about an Ounce and a half of *Roman* Vitriol, half an Ounce of burnt Allum, and half an Ounce of the fine Powder of Verdegrease: when it is cool put it in a Glass, and keep it close stopped for your Use. When you dress the Sore, let it be very warm, and syringe it very well to the bottom once or twice a day, and in five or six Weeks it will be cured.

Another Receipt for a Fistula.

Take of Roch-Allum and Bay-Salt burnt, of each half an Ounce; the Leaves of Ragweed and Elder-Tops, what you think fitting, according to the Concavity of the Sore; bruise and mix them very well together, with a Handful or two of Grey-Snails, Shells and all, and stop the Hole full of it to the bottom, having first washed and cleansed it very well with a Syringe, with the Water abovesaid: do this once or twice a day, and it will do well.

Things good for Fevers in general, which you are to use according to your Discretion.

To let blood, the distilled Water of the Branches, Leaves, Flowers, or Fruit of the Bramble is very good; the Leaves or Roots of Burrage or Bugloss is very good for pestilential Fevers, to defend the Heart, and to mitigate Heat in them; the Seeds or Leaves of the Bluebottle are likewise good for the same, so is the Root of the Butter-bur; the Juice of Cinquefoil is good for all Inflammations and Fevers; the distilled Water of Dandelion, the inner Juice of the Pomcitron or Lemons is good; Cochineal is good in pestilential Fevers; a Manchet steeped in

Some hold it death to let blood, but this you may use as Discretion serveth.

in Muskadine and given him, or in Sallet-Oil; Mashes of Malt and warm Water; three or four Yolks of Eggs given him in eight Spoonfuls of Aqua-vitæ, and stir him till his shaking Fit be over, is good, so is Muskadine and Sugarcandy brewed together: Wormwood, Pepper, Grains, Powder of dried Rue boiled in Ale, and sweetned with Treacle and Sugarcandy, is good, so is Stone-crop bruised and infused in Ale and given him; Germander, Gumdragant and dried Roses put into a Quart of Ale, with Sallet-Oil and Honey, given him lukewarm, is good; Aloes, Garlick, Liquorice and Anniseeds mixed in White-Wine and given him; Rue, Long-Pepper, Bay-Berries, Smallage boiled in Beer; Saffron and Treacle mingled together, or a Handful of Thyme boiled in Beer till it be tender, then strain it, and put to it Sugarcandy, Anniseeds and Treacle, and give it him blood-warm; but for a Hectick Fever, boil Sage, Yarrow, Ribwort, Plantain, Bramble-Leaves, Honeysuckle-Leaves, of each a Handful, with common Honey a Spoonful, in two Quarts of running Water, till half be consumed; then put to it a good Piece of Allum, and two Spoonfuls of Vinegar, and when it is dissolved, drain the Water from the Herbs, and keep it for your Use, and wash his Mouth therewith often, for his Tongue will be raw. Then give him this Drink; Take of Aloes an Ounce, powdered Garlick half an Ounce, of Anniseeds and Liquorice an Ounce made into powder: bruise your Garlick, and put to it three Ounces of brown Sugarcandy, and add to it a Pint of White-Wine, and give it him blood-warm, and ride him afterwards. Give him this Drink every other day for three Mornings together.

If you desire to know the several sorts of Fevers, look in the first Part for Fevers, and there you shall find them.

Particular Receipts for them.

Take Oil of Vitriol, Oil of Sulphur and the Spirit of Salt, and put to it a Quart of strong Beer, ninety or one hundred Drops of either of them, and give it him every Morning till you find his Fever abate. These three Oils or Spirits are much of a nature, for they all comfort and strengthen the Stomach very much, and abate all Inflammations, quenching Drought, and abating the Heat of Fevers, and create a good Stomach; they purify the whole Mass of Blood, and resist all Poison, Plague and Putrefaction, and are such excellent Medicines, that they are to be accounted truly

truly cordial and comfortable to the whole Body; powerful, yet ſafe in Operation: If you give them alone, they are preſent death. They are good alſo applied outwardly, to take away hard Knobs or Warts, and to kill Ulcers or Fiſtula's in the Fleſh; the Doſe gvien him is from fifty to one hundred Drops. When you take them, mix them not together, but uſe them ſingly by themſelves. Have a care you touch not your Linen or Woollen with them, for if you do, they will ſoon eat them full of holes. The Salt Spirit I adviſe you rather to make uſe of, of the three.

Another Receipt for a Fever.

Take of Diapente one Ounce, Bay-berries and Long-Pepper, of each half an Ounce, of the flat Shell of an Oyſter burnt and beaten to powder half an Ounce, of Diaſcordium half an Ounce; put all theſe into a Quart of ſtrong Beer, and give it him luke-warm when you find him want it, and order him with White-Wine and Honey to preſerve his Stomach, and a Cordial of brown Houſhold-bread boiled in Beer, and ſweetned alſo with Honey, as you have Directions more fully how to make and uſe them, in Directions for ſick Horſes, after the Table of Simples. This Drink will cauſe him to ſweat and ſleep, which will bring him to his Senſes, which is the proper Effect of Diaſcordium; but if you find that this does not make him ſleep, then give him as much Powder of Poppy-ſeeds as will lie upon a Six-pence, in two Hornfuls of ſmall Beer, at each Noſtril one, or for want of that, a Spoonful of white Poppy-Water, which will cauſe him to ſleep ſoundly.

Things good in general to be given inwardly for the Cure of the Farcin.

Hounds-tongue, Knot-graſs, Horſemint and Spearmint, Rag-wort, Seed of Baſtard Rhubarb, Savin, Scabious, Stone-crop, Tamarisk, Oil of Vitriol, ten or fifteen Drops of it in his Drink is good for it; ſtinking Gladwin, Dodder, Calamint, Water-Hemp or Water-Agrimony, Hearts-eaſe, Hops, black Hellebore or Bears-foot, Fumitory, the dried Bark of the black Aller-tree, the Root of Aſarabaca is not only good for it, but likewiſe for all Cankers or old putrid Ulcers and Fiſtula's upon the Body; the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree, the inner Rind of the Elder-tree or Berries, Borrage; Briony a great Purger, which muſt be corrected; Gentian, Feltwort or Baldmony, the Juice of Houſleek or Stone-

Stonecrop, Liverwort, the Seed of Male or Female Mercury, Chickweed, Turmerick, Bay-berries, Fenugreek, Nutgalls, the inner Rind of the Walnut-tree, the Juice of Cinquefoil put into his Ears, or the Juice of Rue and Aquavitæ or Assafetida and Brandy put into them; the Juice of Ground-Ivy given him inwardly; the Juice of Celandine, the Juice of Sow-thistle, Southernwood, *&c.*

Things good in general to be applied outwardly to kill the Knots of the Farcin.

After you have blooded him well, take Oil of Bay and Euphorbium mixed together, and anoint the Knots with it; or bathe the place with the Stale of a Cow or Ox, and with the Herb called Lyons-Foot, boiled together, or Tallow and Horse-Dung melted together; or burn the Knots with a hot Iron, or wash the Sore with Salt, Vinegar, Allum, Verdegrease, Green Copperas and Gunpowder boiled together in Chamberlye; or take a Pennyworth of Tar, two handfuls of Pigeons Dung, white Mercury two Pennyworth, and make it into a Salve, and anoint him with it. Soot, Bay-Salt and black Soap are likewise good; so is Rue, Brimstone, Arsmart, Hemlock, Nettles, Housleek, Brandy, Oil of Turpentine, Aqua vitæ, Pepper, Ginger, Misletoe, the Powder of unslak'd Lime, used at your pleasure, *&c.*

Observation upon this Disease.

If his Breath smell strong and stink, his Lights are rotten, and there is no Cure for him.

Particular Receipts both inwardly given and outwardly applied for the Cure of the Farcin.

Take nine Leaves of the Pot-Herb called Beets, of the smalleſt but soundeſt Leaves, and nine Grains of Bay-Salt; beat these very well together to a Salve, and put this Medicine into his Ears by equal Portions in the morning before Sun-rise, and stitch them up, and let him stand with Meat before him, and let his Drink be White-Water. Unstitch them not in twenty four Hours, then take forth the Wool and stuff, and he is cured.

Another.

If the Farcin be in the Fore-parts of the Horse, take two Ounces of Arsnick, and put it into a piece of new Cloth, and bind it up with a piece of new Packthred, and fasten it unto his Mayn; and if it be in his Hinder parts as well as

his Fore-parts, then hang it upon his Tail, and the more you ride and exercise him, the better: and tho the common way is to keep him with a spare Diet, I like not of it, for you cannot keep him too well, for the lower you keep him, the more doth the Disease get the upper hand of him.

Another to anoint the Farcin-Knots with.

Take black Hellebore, and add to the Herb some of its Juice; then put to it old Boar's or Barrows-Grease, and boil it till the Juice be quite boiled away in it, whereby to bring it to an Ointment, with which anoint the Knots or Buttons of the Farcin, but shave or clip away the Hair before you anoint it.

Another for it when it first appears, before it begins to be raw.

Take of Chamberlye, Soot and Bay-Salt, and boil them very well together; then at night wash the Places infected with a Rag upon the end of a Stick very hot, but not so hot as to scald away the Hair; then in the morning anoint it with Tar and black Soap boiled together pretty hot. This done four or five times together will cure it.

Another, which De-Grey *says he hath cured a hundred Horses with.*

Take of Rue the Leaves and tender Tops only, without any the least Stalk, a good Handful; first chop them small, then stamp them in a Mortar to an Ointment; then put to it one Spoonful of the purest tried Hog's-grease you can get, and work them together to a Salve, then stop into either Ear the whole quantity by equal Proportions, and put a little Wool upon the Medicine to cause him to keep it in the better, and so stitch up his Ears, and let it be in about twenty four Hours, and then unstitch them, and take forth the Wool, and he is cured.

Another, which if he hath it given him twice, will cure him.

Take the inner Rind of Elder, the inner Rind of the Walnut-tree, the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree, of all of them an equal quantity, and not exceeding above a handful of all of them together: boil them in a Quart of strong Beer a little while, then take out the Barks, and add to it the Powder of Turmerick, Fenugreek, and two Nut-galls beaten

beaten to powder, with the Powder of Grains of Paradise, about an Ounce of all of them; boil them in the same Beer about as long as you did before, then sweeten it with Treacle, and give it him lukewarm in the Morning fasting, and let him fast two or three Hours after it, and order him as you do a sick Horse; if you put into it a little Handful of Stone-crop, it will be the better: you must wash the Buds of the Farcin Night and Morning with this Water. Take half a pound of green Copperas, and boil it a little while in a Quart of Chamberlye; before you boil it, you must put in a good quantity of Salt or Brine.

Another.

After you have kept him slenderly fed all Night, give him the next Morning fasting, half a Pint of the Juice of Housleek, and half a Pint of Sallet-Oil mingled together, and let him fast till Night, and then give him Hay and no Water till the next Morning, and that warm too. This Drink used twice will almost cure any Farcin.

Another for the Farcin.

Take a Handful of each of these Herbs here underwritten, chopped very small, and boiled in three Pints of strong Ale or Beer to about a Pint and a half, and after you have strained the Liquor very well from the Herbs, give it him lukewarm fasting in the Morning; but before you give it him, stir into it an Ounce of crude Antimony, finely powdered and searced: About three or four Days after give him the like Drink again, and repeat it the third time if there be occasion, and it will certainly cure him. The Herbs are these, Chickweed, Wood-betony, Groundsel and Mullen.

The Buds must be anointed also with this outward Application.

Take the bigness of a Hazle-nut, of yellow Arsnick beaten to powder, and put to it about a Spoonful of black Soap, (or for want of that, common Soap) and lay a little of it upon the Head of every one of them, which will so corrode and eat into them, that they will become so loose, that they will drop out by the Roots; then heal up the wounded Places by anointing them with your green Oinement, which you may find in the first Part, or with Sallet-Oil or Hog's-grease; take care you let him not come to gnaw it with his Teeth for fear of poisoning him, or that you lay it not upon any sound Place, for it will make a Wound wheresoever it comes.

comes. You may anoint them with the Oil of Vitriol, if you pleaſe, which hath the ſame Operation with the other.

Another outward Application for this Diſeaſe, which will not only cure the Buds of it, but any foul Scab, Leproſy or Mange.

After you have let blood, which is always convenient in this Diſeaſe, take three Pints of old Urine, and a Pint of Vinegar or Verjuice, and put to it half a Pound of the Stalks of the ſtrongeſt Tobacco you can get, but let them be firſt bruiſed and laid aſteep in the Urine all Night before you boil them: after you have ſo done, ſet it over the Fire, and put to it an Ounce of the Flower of Brimſtone, and boil them all together till it come to a Quart; then ſtrain forth the Liquor from the Stalks, and anoint the infected Places with it till they be well.

Another inward and outward Application for the Farcin.

After you have blooded thoſe Buds with your Inciſion-Knife, which are freſh and green, waſh them once or twice a day with your Fiſtula-water, which will kill them, conditionally you give him this inward Drink with it, *viz.* Take two Quarts of running Water, and put to it two Handfuls of Herb-grace, chopt indifferent ſmall, with two or three Spoonfuls of bruiſed Hempſeed, and ſet it over the Fire, and let it boil away till it come to three Pints, then give it him three times in nine Days, and order him as you do ſick Horſes, and he will do well.

Another to cure it, by putting ſomething into his Ears.

After you have bruiſed about nine or ten Cloves of Garlick (being firſt peel'd) with a Handful of Rue, and about half a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, ſtrain the Juice through a Cloth into ſome convenient thing, and put to it ſo much of black or white Wool as it will well drink up, and fill each Ear full of it, putting a piece of dry Wool upon it to keep it in the better. Then ſew them up as you have Directions before, and do not unſtitch them in twenty four Hours. If you open his Head in the uſual place under his foretop, and put into it about the length of an Inch of the inner Rind of Elder, and let it remain there about the ſame time, the Cure will be the ſooner expedited.

Another Medicine to put into his Ears, to cure it when it is in his Head.

After you have let him blood bruise so much of Housleek and Hemlock as will contain two Spoonfuls of the Juice of each of them, and add to them two Spoonfuls of Sallet-Oil, and fill each Ear full of it, leaving so much room as you may put Flox or Wool upon it to keep it in the better. When you have so done, stitch up his Ears as in the former Receipt, and at twenty four Hours end take out the stuff. If you like the former way of soaking up the Juice with the Wool better than this, you may use that.

A Drink to cure the most malignant Farcin that is.

Before you give him this Drink here under-written, let him be kept very sparing of Meat all Night, and the next Morning blooded on both sides the Neck very well. 'Tis this; Take the inner Rind of the Barberry-Tree, Herb-grace, Sage, Wormwood, Fennel, Lungwort, of each half a Handful chopped small, Anniseeds, Turbith, Turmerick, and of Aristolochia rotunda, about two Ounces of all of them beaten to powder; boil the Herbs pretty well in two Quarts of small Beer to one Quart, then strain it forth and put in your Powders to it, and when it is cold enough to take, give it him.

How to order him before and after you have given it him.

1. Before you give it him, let him fast four Hours, and after it as much; when you have given it him, air him well by riding him after it.

2. Let him drink but once a Day, and let it be white Water, which is a Handful or two of Wheat-Bran stirred in amongst his Water, made first lukewarm.

3. Let him be kept in the House with very dry Meat during his Cure.

4. Exercise is very good in this Distemper, and the more you use him to it, the better you will find him.

5. 'Tis good also in order to his Cure, once or twice a Day to flounce him backward and forward in some clear River or Pond, up to the Midsides, which will cleanse his Body, and take away the Filth and Venom of the Disease.

6. This often washing him in cold Water will wash off the poisoned Medicines, if he hath been poisoned with any

any, and also abate very much the Malignancy of the Disease.

7. Let him rest three or four Days after his first Drink, and then give him another, and order him in every thing as you did before.

8. If you find after this second Drink, that he is not perfectly cured, you may give him the third, and this will certainly cure him.

9. When you give him his first Drink, if you please you may blood him with the end of your Cornet in the Furrow on the top of his Mouth.

The Virtues of this malignant Drink for the Farcin are these:

It will cause him to vomit up much Filth, and run at the Nose very nauseous and stinking stuff, and yellowish Water: It is a great Sweetner and Purifyer of the Blood, as also a great Drier up of all evil and malignant Humours that are seated and rooted in the Body. If the Heads of the Buds appear red and loose, lay upon them a little burnt Allum, mixed with a little Butter or Hogs-grease, and you shall quickly find them to fall off.

A Receipt for the Cure of the Water-Farcin.

This is the usual and common Way for the Cure of it, viz. To take a long and small iron Rod, and bend it backward at one end about the length of a Fleam; then heat it red hot in the Fire, and strike the swelled places under his Belly and Chaps full of Holes, and let and squeeze out the grey and oily Water, that you find pent up in the Skin, and wash the places, (to keep them from wrankling, and to take out the Fire) with Chamberlye and Salt, and some Powder of Bole Armoniack mixt amongst it as hot as he can well indure it for three or four times, and he is cured.

Things good in general to cure the running or rotten Frush.

To take off the Shoe and pare away all the corrupt Places, and make them raw, then put it on again being widened; then take Soot and Salt, bruise them well together in a Dish, and mix therewith the Whites of three Eggs, and dip Tow therein, and stop all the Foot with it, renewing it seven Days together, or to wash it with Urine three or four times a Day; or take a Quart of Urine, and boil in a quarter of a Pound of Allum, with some green Copperas, and strain it out, and keep it for your use; and after you have washed the

Sore with it, ſtrew on it the Powder of green Nettles fryed and Pepper, and it will dry it up. When you dip Tow in any thing, you muſt ſplint it in, that it may not fall off, and during the Cure let him come into no wet, and at the ſeven Days end leave ſtopping him, and ride him abroad, and bring him very clean into the Stable, for dirty ſetting up breeds this Infirmity, *&c.*

Things good in general for the Over-flowing of the Gall, which is a Yellowneſs of the Skin, and a Coſtiveneſs of the Body.

Saffron boiled in Milk is good, or Ale, Saffron and Anniſeeds mixt together, or Celandine-Roots chopped, bruiſed and boiled in Beer; or for want of Celandine, Rue, and give it him lukewarm, *&c.*

Things good for Gangrenes inward or outward.

The Leaves, Fruit or Roots of Briony, but it is a great Purger, which muſt be corrected; the Leaves of Bugle bruiſed and applied, or the Juice of it to waſh the Place; the Meal of Darnel is good to ſtay them, Cankers, or any other eating and fretting Sores, Water-Creſſes, Mallows, Elder-leaves, Brook-lime, mouldy Hay and Bran boiled in the Dregs of ſtrong Beer, and laid to very hot, is good to ſtay its ſpreading, if any thing will do it: Nettles bruiſed and laid to them is good, ſo is the Decoction of the Leaves or Bark of the Tamarisk-tree, and the place bathed therewith.

What the Spleen is.

It is a long, flat, narrow and ſpungy Subſtance, of a pale fleſhy Colour, joined with the Liver and Gall; it is the Receptacle of Melancholy, and the Dregs of the Blood, and it is as ſubject to Infirmity as any inward part whatſoever, as to Inflammations, Obſtructions, Knobs and Swellings: it is through the Spunginеſs apt to ſuck in all manner of Filth, and to dilate and ſpread the ſame all over the Body. The appearance thereof is on the left ſide under the ſhort Ribs, where you ſhall perceive ſome ſmall Swelling, which Swelling gives great Grief to the Midriff, and taketh away more of his Digeſtion then his Appetite; and being ſuffered to continue, it maketh faint the Heart, and grows in the end to a hard Knob and ſtony Subſtance. Now if I miſtake not, this Spleen is no other than the Milt, and I have known four or five Horſes die of it out of one Stable, and it hath been look'd upon no other than the Plague; which if

f they had had things proper for the Distemper, they might have lived.

Things good in general for the Spleen, either inwardly taken or outwardly apply'd.

A Decoction of the Herb Archangel in Wine apply'd to the place grieved, hot, Barley-Meal boiled with Melilot and Camomile-flowers, with some Linseed, Fenugreek, and Rue apply'd warm; the Juice of Camomile given inwardly: of to make him sweat, and then give him a Quart of White-wine, wherein hath been boiled the Leaves of Tamarisk, and a good quantity of Cummin-seeds beaten to powder, and give it warm; or to pour into his left Nostril every day after he hath sweat, the Juice of Myrobalans mixt with Wine and Water, to the quantity of a Pint. Or take Cummin-seed and Honey, of each six Ounces, of Laserpitium as much as a Bean, of Vinegar a Pint; and put all these into three Quarts of Water, and let it stand so all night, and give him a Quart thereof next Morning fasting; or Garlick, Nitrum, Horehound and Wormwood sodden in sharp Wine and given, and to bathe his left Side with warm Water, and to rub it hard.

A particular Receipt for the Spleen.

Take a Handful of Agrimony chopt very small, and work it up with sweet Butter into two or three Balls, with half an Ounce of the Powder of Turmerick, and as much of Cummin-seeds powder'd, and give him them fasting in the Morning for several Mornings together, and it will cure him. 'Tis good also to give him some of the Herb boiled in his Drink; or *Oxicroceum* apply'd plaster-wise to the grieved part, is very good.

Things good in general to cure the Colt-Evil.

The Juice of Rue mixed with Honey, and boiled in Hogs-grease, Bay-leaves, with the Powder of Fenugreek added thereto, and anoint the Sheath with it; the Powder of the Herb Avit, and the Leaves of Betony stamp'd with White-wine to a moist Salve, and anoint the Sore therewith: Wash the Sheath clean with lukewarm Vinegar, and draw out the Yard and wash that also, and ride him twice every day into some deep running Water, tossing him to and fro to allay the Heat of the Members, till the Swelling be vanished; and if you swim him now and then, it will not be

amiss: but the best way to cure a Horse, is to give him a Mare, and to swim him after it; to bathe his Cods with the Juice of Housleek, or with the Water wherein Kneeholm hath been sod. If it stops the Urine, then give him new Ale and a little black Soap in it to drink; or wash his Cods with Butter and Vinegar made warm, or with the Juice of Hemlock, or else take Bean-flower, Vinegar, and Bole-Armoniack, and mix them together; lay it plaster-wise to his Sheath and Cods: or make him a Plaster of Wine-Lees, Housleek and Bran mix'd together, and laid to his Sheath and Cods, *&c.*

Things good to cure the Mattering of the Yard.

Take Roch Allum one Ounce, and Whitewine one Pint; boil them till the Allum be dissolved, then blood-warm inject this Potion with a Syringe, putting it up into his Yard so far as it may be, four or five times a day, till it be well. This is so perfect, that you need not any other.

Things good in general for Shedding of Seed, which is no other than the Running of the Reins in Men.

Amaranthus that bears a white Flower, the Juice of Bistort added to the Juice of Plantain outwardly apply'd, Comfrey, to ride him into some cold Water up to the Belly, then cover him warm, and give him Red Wine and Hogsdung, or Red Wine and Acacia, *Venice*-Turpentine, *&c.*

Two Receipts (which may serve instead of many more) for the Shedding of the Seed, or Running of the Reins, which is an infallible, safe and sure Way of stopping it; and is also good for all manner of Bruises by Falls, or any other Accident, &c.

If you give it for Bruises or Falls, leave out the Bole-Armoniack.

Take a Pound of common Turpentine (if you will not go to the charge of the *Venice*) and put to it so much of the fine Powders of Bole-Armoniack and *English* Liquorice, with a little Wheat-flower, as will make it up into a stiff Paste. When you have occasion to use it, roll it out between your hands, and break so much of it off, as contains the bigness of a small Washball, and give him three of them Morning and Evening upon the end of a stick, or in a Horn-full of strong Beer, till you find the Flux of Seed staid, which will be in a Week or Fortnight's time at furthest. 'Tis convenient to purge

purge and cleanse his Reins very well first before you give him his Balls, which will not only expedite, but perfect the Cure so much the sooner and better.

Another for the same.

Take brown Sugarcandy, Tanners Bark finely powder'd and sifted, with the Powder of the dry'd Leaves of Clary, and incorporate them very well with some common Turpentine, and make them up into Balls with a little Wheat-flower, and give him two or three of them at a time, Morning and Evening, about the bigness of a Pidgeon's Egg, till the Flux of the Seed stayeth, which will be in a very short time.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Falling of the Yard.

To wash his Yard with Sea-water, or Water and Salt; and if that will not prevail, prick all the outmost Skin of his Yard with a sharp Needle very slightly, and wash all the Pricks with strong Vinegar; and this will not only make him draw up his Yard again, but also if at any time his Fondament chance to fall, this Cure will put it up again: or to put Honey and Salt into his Yard, made liquid, or else a quick Fly or a Grain of Frankincense, or a Clove of Garlick clean peeled and bruised, and bathe his Back with Oil, Wine and Nitre made warm and mingled together. But the best Cure is first to wash all his Yard with Whitewine warmed, and anoint it with Oil of Roses and Honey mixed together, and so put it up into his Sheath, and with a little Bolster of Canvas keep it from falling down, and dress him thus in twenty four hours until he be recovered, and let his Back be kept very warm as is possible, both with Cloth and a Charge of Plaster made of Bole-Armoniack, Eggs, Wheat-flower, Sanguis Draconis, Turpentine and Vinegar; or else lay next his Back a wet Sack or wet Hay, and a dry Cloth over it, and that will keep his Back exceeding warm.

What is good for the Cure of the particular Diseases in Mares, Barrenness, Consumption, Rage of Love, Casting Foals, Hardness to foal, and how to make a Mare cast her Foal.

If you have your Mare barren, boil good store of the Herb Agnus in the Water that she drinketh, or stamp a good Handful of Leeks, with four or five Spoonfuls of

Wine; then put 12 Flies call'd Cantharides, and ſtrain them all together with a ſufficient quantity of Water to ſerve the Mare two days together, by pouring the ſame into her Nature with a Gliſter-pipe made for that purpoſe, and at the end of three days offer the Horſe to her, and if he covers her, waſh her Nature twice together with cold Water. Or take of Nitrum, Sparrows-dung and Turpentine, of each a like quantity, wrought together and made like a Suppoſitory, and put that into her Nature, and it will cauſe her to deſire the Horſe, and alſo to conceive. If you will have her fruitful, boil good ſtore of Motherwort in the Water which ſhe drinketh: If ſhe loſe her Belly, which ſheweth a Conſumption of the Womb, give her a Quart of Brine to drink, Mugwort being boiled therein. If your Mare, thro good keeping, forſake her Food, give her for two or three days together a Ball of Butter and Agnus Caſtus chopt together. If you will have her caſt her Foal, take a handful of Betony, and boil it in a Quart of Ale, and it will deliver her preſently. If ſhe cannot foal, take the Herb Horſe-Mint, either dry it or ſtamp it, and take the Powder or the Juice, and mix it with ſtrong Ale, and give it her, and it will help her. And if your Mare is ſubject to caſt her Foals, as many are, keep her at graſs very warm, and once in a Week give her a good warm Maſh of Drink. This ſecretly knitteth beyond expectation.

Things good in general for the Cure of a Conſumption.

Wood-Betony, Horehound, Juniper-berries, Leeks mix'd with Sallet-Oil and Sack, with ſome Frankincenſe, Agarick, Bay-berries, Brank-urſin, China, Dandelion; but the beſt is to ſcour him well, and put him to graſs. Or take a Sheep's-head with the Wool on, waſh it clean, and boil it in a Gallon of fair Water until the Fleſh come from the Bones; then ſtrain it, and put into the Broth half a pound of refined Loaf Sugar; of Cinnamon, Conſerve of Roſes, Conſerve of Barberries, Conſerve of Cherries, of each three Ounces; and give him a Quart every Morning faſting: uſe this till four or more Sheeps-heads be ſpent, and let his Drink be either ſweet Maſhes or white Water. Take no Blood from him in this Diſeaſe, but rather labour to cheriſh the Blood he hath; neither be too buſy in adminiſtring unto him Purges, but Cordials, as Diapente, Diateſſaron, Duke Powder, Cordial Powder, and ſuch like Reſtoratives, and give him good Meat and good Maſhes, and change

change his Meat sometimes, to make him eat his Meat the better.

Things good in general for the Lungs.

Physick-Nuts are good for rotten Lungs. Lungwort, or Wood Liverwort beaten to powder and given in Beer, is good for Inflammations and Ulcers of the Lungs; the Powder of stinking Gladwin given him in Beer, with a little Mastick, is good for them. The Decoction of Hyssop made with Figs, Water, Honey and Rue, helpeth the Inflammations of the Lungs, the old Cough or Shortness of Breath; Feverfew, Pennyroyal given with Honey, cleareth the Breast from all gross and thick Humours, and cleanseth the Lungs. Calamint is good for the Wheesing of them; common Horehound cleanseth them, and is good for the Ulceration of them, so is Betony. Scabious scoureth the Chest and Lungs, Mullen or Lungwort is good, Comfrey, Cowslips of *Jerusalem*, Cinquefoil is good for the Liver and Lungs; Chervil boiled is good for the Consumption of the Lungs, Cummin-seeds, Brank-ursin, Rue, Liquorice, Bayberries, Cassia, Water-Agrimony, Alehoof, the Leaves of the Figtree, Lungwort which grows upon Oaks or Beeches, which is a kind of Moss with broad greyish tough Leaves, Maidenhair, wild Marjoram, Hedge Mustardseed, Rosa Solis or Sun-dew; the Juice of Sanicle, Vervain, Wood-bind or Honey-suckles, Cresses, Almonds, Bugloss, Garlick boiled in Milk, Tartar, which is the thickest of Whitewine Lees, dry'd and made into powder; Elecampane, Sugarcandy, Diapente; or take a Pint of sweet Sack, Honey, Myrrh, Saffron, Cassia and Cinnamon, of each alike, made into fine Powder, and mix two Spoonfuls of it with your Sack, and give it him warm fifteen days together, and feed him with Mashes and white Water. But if his Lungs be rotten, then take the Juice of Purslain half a Pint, and mix with it Oil of Roses, and put to it Tragantium steeped in Cow's-Milk, and give it him seven Mornings together, and this will ripen the Imposthume, which you may know by his stinking Breath: then give him this Powder; Take of Cassia made into fine Powder, seven Raisins of the Sun stoned, boiled in a Pint of Muskadine, and give it him blood-warm; or the Water of Angelica give him with some of the Root.

Particular Receipts for the Lungs.

Take of Horse-Lungwort *alias* Mullet, it groweth in every place with broad, hoary, soft Leaves, which do feel like Velvet;

Velvet; ſhred it, ſtamp it, and ſtrain it: then take of Fenugreek a good Spoonful, and of Madder as much, made into fine Powder, and give this to him in a Quart of good Ale or Beer, and give it him every other day, for twelve or fourteen days, and ſprinkle his Hay with Water, and let his Oats be waſhed in good Ale, and let his Drink be white Water, and ſometimes ſweet Maſhes.

Another.

Take a Snake, and cut off the Head and Tail, and flay it, and after cut the ſame into pieces the length of your finger, and roaſt it as you would an Eel upon a Spit, and let it baſte itſelf, and keep the Oil of it in a Glaſs for your uſe. When you uſe it, anoint the Breaſt, and his four ſhort Ribs which be againſt the Lungs; but firſt clip away the Hair, for that will take too much of the Oil up. And thus do often for ſome time, and it will recover his Lungs again, and make him perfectly ſound.

Things good in general for the Conſumption of the Liver.

There is no abſolute Cure for it, but to preſerve it, give him half a Pint of Sack, with the ſame quantity of the Blood of a young Pig lukewarm to drink; or give him three days together no other Food than warm Wort and baked Oats, and let him be kept faſting the Night before he receives his Medicine; or put into his Wort which he drinketh two or three Spoonfuls of the Powder of Agrimony, red Roſe-leaves, Saccharum, Roſaceum, Diarcadon Abbatis, Diſantelon, Liquorice, and of the Liver of a Wolf; or give him Sulphur and Myrrh beaten into fine Powder, mixed with a new-laid Egg, and given him in half a Pint of Malmſey, and ſeparate him from other Horſes, for this Diſeaſe is infectious.

Things good in general to preſerve the Liver, and to open the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen.

Amara Dulcis, Allheal, Agrimony open and cleanſe the Liver; Water-Agrimony openeth the Obſtructions of the Liver, and mollifieth Hardneſs of the Spleen; Alexander or wild Parſley, Angelica, Aſarabaca, the Decoction of Avens, the Bark or the Root of the Bay-tree openeth the Obſtructions of the Liver and Spleen, and other inward Diſeaſes; the Juice of the white Beet openeth them; Wood-Betony, Butcher's-broom or Kneeholly, the Leaves of Calamint, Centaury, Columbines, Dandelion, Liver-wort, the

the Leaves or Bark of the Maple-Tree, Pimpernel, Groundpine or Chamepitis, Agaricum, Almonds, Fumitory, Camomile, Wormwood, Liquorice, Annifeeds, Smallage, Parsley, Spikenard, Gentian, Succory, Endive and Lupine; all these are very comfortable for the Liver, and are to be seethed in Water that he drinketh. Aloes dissolved, Iris stamped, Savoury, Lungwort, or Oil and Wine mix'd together; but the best of all is a Wolf's Liver dry'd and beaten to powder, and given him in Beer, or strew'd amongst his Provender, or Parsley and Hartshorn, or Fennel and Parsley-Roots scraped or boiled in Water, and given him with Liquorice and Sorrel, or Polypodium of the Oak beaten to powder and strew'd amongst his Provender: or take Hyssop, Cowslip leaves, Silverwort or Lungwort *alias* Mullen, Hartshorn, of each a Handful; then take Gentian, Aristolochia rotunda, Fenugreek, Enulacampana dry'd, and long Pepper, of each alike; and when they are all powder'd and searced, take a Spoonful of all of them: chop the Herbs, and mingle them with this Powder, and put a Spoonful of live Honey to it, and boil all of them in strong Ale till half of them be consumed, and give it him blood-warm. Groundsel preserveth it greatly.

Of the Infirmities in general of the Hoofs, as false Quarters, loose Hoofs, casting of the Hoofs, Hoof-bound, Hoof-running, Hoof-brittle, Hoof-hurt, Hoof soft, Hoof-hard, and generally to preserve Hoofs.

False Quarters.

To take off the Shoe, and to take away so much of the Hoof on that side the Sorrance is, that when the Shoe is set on again, the Chink may be wholly uncovered; then open the Chink to the quick with your Drawing-Iron, and fill up your Rift with a Roll of Hurds dipt in this Ointment: Take Turpentine, Wax and Sheep's Suet, of each alike, melted together, and dip your Hurds therein, and stop the Rift therewith, renewing it once a day till it be whole; and thus the Rift being closed on the top with this Ointment, draweth the place betwixt the Hoof and the Hair with a hot Iron overthwart that place, which will make it grow and shoot downwards, and ride him with no other Shoe till his Foot be harden'd and become sound.

What

What is good to cure a loose Hoof.

If the Hoof be loose, let it be of what Cause soever, You are first to open it in the Sole of the Foot, so as the Humour may have free Passage downwards, and put a restrictive Charge about it, as you have some in my first Part; then to heal it up with Turpentine and Hog's-Grease melted together: Or take three Spoonfuls of Tar, and a quarter of a Pound of Rosin, and half a Handful of Tansy, and half a Handful of Rue, and half a Handful of red Mints, and half a Handful of Southernwood brayed all together in a Mortar, and add to it half a Pound of Butter, and a Pennyworth of Virgins-Wax; and melt them on the Fire till it come to be a thick Salve, then spread it upon a Cloth, and lay it to it seven Days together till it be whole. Or to anoint it with *Burgundy* Pitch, and it will fasten it; or take Betony, Rosemary, Rue, Bole-Armoniack and Frankincense boiled together and laid over it; or to take Tar and Brimstone in fine Powder, Wheat-Bran and the Urine of a Man-Child, boiled all to a Poultice, and apply it hot to the Hoof, and it will fasten it; or to stop it with the Brains of a Pig, or to stop it with Flax dipt in the Whites of Eggs; or wash it with Vinegar, and fill it with Tartar and Salt, and then anoint it with Olibanum, Mastick and Pitch of *Greece*, of each alike, and a little *Sanguis Draconis*, new Wax and Sheep's-Suet, and melt them together, and anoint it with it, and if the new Hoof come, cut away the old.

Of casting the Hoof.

Take Aquafortis the strongest you can get, and first with a Rape or Drawing-Iron file or draw away the old Hoof somewhat near; then touch the Hoof so prepared with your Aquafortis three or four several Dressings and no more: then anoint the Foot with the Unguent for Horses Feet, *viz.* Take Hog's-grease three Pounds, Patch-grease two Pounds, *Venice* Turpentine one Pound, new Wax half a Pound, Sallet-Oil one Pound; melt and mix all these upon the Fire, and anoint the Coffin of the Hoof up to the top, and this will bring a new Hoof.

Another.

Take Turpentine half a Pound, Tar half a Pint, new Wax half a Pound, Sallet Oil one Pint; melt all these except the Turpentine together, till they be well mixed, and a little before you take it from the Fire, put in your Turpentine,

pentine, and stir it till it be cold; but beforehand make him a Buskin of Leather, with a thick Sole made fit for his Hoof, but wide enough, that it may be tied about his Pastern, and dress his Hoof with this Medicine, laying Tow or Hurds upon it, and so put on the said Buskin, and fasten it to the Pastern-Joint, or a little above, but so as the Buskin do not trouble the Foot, renewing the Medicine every day till it be whole, and it is good likewise for a Hoof-bound Horse; and as the Hoof beginneth to come, and if you find it grow harder and thicker in one place than another, or crumbleth or groweth out of fashion, take your Rape and file it into good fashion again, and when you find it so well that you may turn him out, put him into some moist Pasture or Meadow, which will cause the Hoof to become tough.

Of the Hoof-bound.

First, pluck off his Shoes, and shoe him up again with Half-Moon and Lunet-Shoes; then ease with your Drawing-Iron or Rape, the Quarters of the Hoofs on both sides of the Feet, from the Cronet down to the end or bottom of the Hoofs, so deep till you perceive as it were Dew to come forth, and if you make two Rases it will be the better, and enlarge the Hoof the more: that done, anoint the Hoofs next to the Hair about the Cronet with this Ointment;

Take of Turpentine one Pound, of Wax and of Sheep's or Deer's-Suet of each half a Pound, of Tar and of Sallet-Oil of each half a Pint; melt all but the Turpentine together, and when you are ready to take it up, put in your Turpentine, and stir it well together till it be cold: anoint his Hoofs once a day till you find amendment, and ride him once a day upon soft Ground for the space of a Month; then take off his Half-Moon Shoes, and pare his Soles, Frushes and Heels, so thin till you may see a Dew come forth, and the Blood ready to start; then tack on his Shoes, and stop his Shoes as well within as without, with this Charge;

Take of Cow or Ox-Dung, and of Wheat-Bran, of each so much as will suffice; of tried Hog's Grease, and of the Kidney of a Loin of Mutton, of each one Pound; of Turpentine and Tar of each half a Pound: melt all these together, (the Turpentine excepted) which must be put in when it is almost ready to take from the Fire, keeping it stirring to mix the Ingredients. Let this Charge be laid

on

on hot, and renew it nine Days together, to the end the Sole may arise: but if this will not do, take out the Sole clean, and after you have stanched the Bleeding with the tender Tops of Hyssop stamped in a Mortar, apply then the Oil of Snails to it and red Nettles: the Oil is thus made; Take forty, fifty, or more Snails, and put them into a Bag with Bay-Salt, and when they are hung some time nigh the Fire, there will drop an Oil from them, and use that with red Nettles once a day for three Days, and heal up the Feet with your green Ointment, which you may find in my first Part, which will bring a new Hoof again, and then shoe him with Lavels again, and turn him forth to Grass.

If you fear that your Horse is subject to be Hoof-bound, anoint his Coffin all over with Neatsfoot Oil, especially at the setting on of the Hoof; or with Turpentine, and stop his Feet underneath with Cows-Dung. Or take the Fat of Bacon half a Pound; of white Soap three Ounces; Balm a Handful, and five or six Sprigs of the tender Tops of Rue: chop and stamp all these together very well; then fry them, and lay them to, reasonable hot, and let him come in no Wet till he be well; and being thus dressed every day once, his Hoof will in a short time be sound and easy to him again.

Things good in general to preserve Hoofs, and to make them grow.

To pare him well when you shoe him, which ought to be when the Moon is three Days in the Increase; Turpentine, Hogs-Grease and Bees-Wax melted together, and anoint the Coffin with it; or Myrrh, Allum, the Juice of Garlick, Rue, Asses-Dung or Cows-Dung, Pitch, Rosin, Sallet-Oil, Dogs-Grease, Olibanum, Dialthæa, Sheeps Suet boiled together, and anoint his Hoofs with it; or Chalk and white Lead mingled together; or Bark-dust and Honey mingled together; or Yarrow, Allum and Wormwood boiled in Oil; or to boil Beans till they burst, temper them with Honey and anoint his Feet with them; or to wash them with warm Vinegar, and anoint them with Horehound, Wormwood and Grease melted together: standing upon his own wet Litter, is good to keep them moist, and make them grow.

Particular

Particular Receipts to make a Horſe's Hoof grow, and to toughen it.

Take the Juice of Garlick ſeven Ounces, of old Hogs-greaſe two Pounds, and a Handful of Aſſes or Cows-dung; boil and mix them well together, and ſtop his Feet with it, and anoint the Cronets of his Hoofs, the Medicine being pretty hot.

Another for brittle Hoofs.

Take Turpentine, Sheep's-Suet, unwrought Wax, and Hogs-greaſe, of each half a Pound; Sallet-Oil half a Pint, and of Dogs-Greaſe a Pound: boil them all together, and keep them in a Gallypot for your Uſe, and when you uſe *it*, anoint his Hoofs very well two or three times a day with it eſpecially at the ſetting on of the Hair, and ſtop them with Cows-dung and Dogs-greaſe melted together

Another moſt excellent.

Take one Pound of Dogs and Hogs-greaſe, and clarify it with Roſemary; then mix it with half ſo much Cows-dung, and boil it up and anoint his Feet with it either hot or cold, is very good.

A moſt excellent Receipt for brittle-hoof'd Horſes, to make their Hoofs grow ſo in a Fortnight's time, that they will carry a Shoe that would not carry it before.

Take a Gallon of freſh Hog-greaſe; half a Buſhel of Damask-Roſes clean pickt, and when you have melted your Hogs-greaſe, and it is boiling hot, put your Damask-Roſes into it, and ſtir them well about till they be all wet; then take them off the Fire, and put them into an earthen Pot cloſe covered, and put it into the Oven after you have drawn your Bread, and there let it ſtand till it be cold: then take it out and put it into a new Horſe-dunghil that is very hot, and there let it be for three Weeks: then take it out and melt it again, and ſtrain the Roſes from the Liquor, and keep it in an earthen Pot cloſe covered for your Uſe.

How to uſe it.

When you dreſs your Horſe, take a Spoonful of Tar, and three Balls of Horſe-dung warmed in a Pint of that Oil; then take off his Shoes, and bind up his Feet with a Pair of Buskins of Leather with a thick Sole, and pour in the Liquor, and let him ſtand a Week ſo; but apply freſh

Shift

Shift to him every day poured into the Buskins, but take away none of the old Medicine; then tack on his Shoes again, and ſtop his Feet, and anoint them with the former Medicine. After his Bags are off, you may water him twice a day as at other times; and when his Feet be clean pickt and dry, you may uſe the Medicine as you did before. In my firſt Part you may have a better Direction to make the Buskin.

Things good to ſoften a Hoof that is too hard.

Take an Ounce of Soap, two Ounces of unſlak'd Lime, with as much ſtrong Lye as will make it ſoft, and ſtop his Feet daily with it till they come to a convenient Softneſs: or hot glowing Embers put upon the Hoof will ſoften it.

Things good to harden Hoofs if they be too ſoft.

To burn an old Shoe-Sole and ſeethe it in Vinegar, and bathe his Feet with it twice a day, will harden them; or take of the Powder of Galls, Bran and Salt of each a handful, boiled in a Pottle of ſtrong Vinegar, and therewith bathe the Hoofs, and it will harden them. The Powder of Honey and Lime, the Powder of burnt Oyſter-ſhells, the Powder of a burnt Felt or Boot mixed together with Cream, is good.

Things good for the Malt-long.

Things good for the Malt-long of the Hoofs, which will run in wateriſh Humours about the Cronet, which are certain Knobs there. If it be in the Summer, take black Snails and Burdock-Roots, and beat them well together, and lay them unto the Sore, and renew them once in twenty four Hours: but if it be in the Winter, take the Scrapings of a Pan or Cauldron, and put to it a Handful of the inner Rind of the Elder-Tree, and having beaten them well together in a Mortar, lay them to the Sore, and renew it once a day, and it will heal it: or take Garlick, Pepper and Honey, of each alike, ſtamped together, and laid to it.

For any Hurt upon the Hoof, or for all manner of Hurts in general.

To ſtop the Hoof with Honey and Vinegar mingled together for the ſpace of three or four days at leaſt, and then lay on the Leaves of Tamariſk bruiſed with them, till it

it be whole: or to stop the Hoof with Sheep's-grease and Horse-dung mixt together, and renew it once a day till it be well: or take Pitch and Rosin of each two Ounces, Brimstone in fine Powder an Ounce; melt them together on the Fire, and add to them an Ounce of Turpentine, and as it cooleth make it up into Rolls, and when you use it, put it into the Wound pretty hot, and all about the Sorrance, and clap Hurds upon it, and over that a Piece of Leather, and so splint it on, and in twice or thrice dressing he will be cured. Two Ounces of Turpentine melted down with some Wax, healeth any Wound or Gall: House-Snails seethed in Butter will draw out any Thorn or Nail, being often renewed. Or take Soap and Salt of each alike, and work them into an Ointment, and after you have washed the Wound with Beer and Salt, or Urine and Salt, and dry'd it again with a Linen-Rag; bind on the Medicine, and let it remain on for twenty four Hours, which will take out the Venom; then take Train-Oil one Spoonful or two, and as much white Lead in fine Powder, and work them to a thick Salve, and apply it to the Sorrance plaster-wise till it be whole, which will not be long, for nothing doth dry up sooner, or is more kindly or natural for the breeding of a new Hoof than this.

Things good in general to draw out either Stub, Thorn or Iron, either out of the Foot, or any other Part of the Body.

Black Soap laid to the Sore all night will make it appear; the Roots of Reeds stamped and mixt with Honey, and laid to it, draweth out any Stub or Nail, so will also black Snails stamped and wrought with Butter; the Root of stinking Gladwin roasted and laid to it; the Root of the Sword-Flag stamped with the Powder of Frankincense and Wine is good; Daffadil stamped with Meal of Darnel and Honey; Clary stamped and laid asteep in warm Water, and the slimy Substance taken and applied plaster-wise doth the like: Dittany bruised and applied; Primrose-Leaves, Galbanum, Agrimony stamped with Hog's-grease. If a Cloth be wetted in the distilled Water of Haw-thorn, and applied, it will draw forth any Thorn and Splint; the Seeds and Leaves of Mullen boiled in Wine; the Juice of Scabious and Southernwood bruised and laid to it; Soap and Chalk mixed together, and when it is out, pour into it scalding hot Turpentine, and when that is cold, pour in the Powder

of Sulphur, or black Snails and Soap bruiſed together and apply it to the Grief, and bolſter up his Foot or the Sore with Hurds, and keep it from all Wet and Filthineſs.

What is good for the Cords in general.

To bathe his Legs with the Grounds of Ale, and to rope them up with Hay, wet in the ſame for a Fortnight or more together; or take Muſtard, Aquavitæ and Sallet-Oil, and boil them together, and make a Plaſter of it, and apply it to the place grieved. But the beſt and ſureſt Cure of all is to make a Slit upon the very top of his Noſe, and with your Cornet take up his two great Sinews which you ſhall there find, and cut them in ſunder, and ſo heal it up again with ſome healing Salve; and this will do him no harm but good, for it will give him the uſe of his Legs ſo perfectly, as that he will ſeldom or never after trip any more; and this can any ordinary Smith do.

To cure the String-halt.

Take up the middle Vein upon the Thigh, and underneath the ſame, then under the ſaid Vein there lies a String, which String muſt be cut away, and then anoint him with Butter and Salt, and he will both do well and go well. You may find it more at large afterwards.

Great Driers in general of old Sores, and of all manner of moiſt Humours whatſoever.

Allum burnt, unſlak'd Lime, the Aſhes of an old Shoe burnt, Oyſter-ſhells burnt will dry up any Sore, be it never ſo moiſt; the Juice of Elder, the Powder of the Leaves of Brambles or the inner Rind, the Powder of the Root of the Butter-bur, the Powder of Fern-Roots, the Powder of Sow-Fennel, the diſtilled Water of Throat-wort, the whole Plant, Root and all, will dry up the hollow moiſture of corroding Ulcers; the Aſhes of Southern-wood, the Aſhes of Nutſhells burnt, Chamberlye, green Copperas, Brimſtone, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Cloves, Myrrh beaten to powder, and laid upon a Chafing-diſh of Coals, then take ſome Lint, and receive the Smoak of it into it, and lay it upon the Sore, but waſh it firſt with Chamberlye, Soot and Cream tempered together; Aquavitæ and Soap boiled together, Rye-flower, the White of an Egg beaten to an Oil with Honey, Bole-Armoniack and Meal mixt amongſt it, and make a Plaſter of it, is good to heal up any new-

new-gall'd Back; Barley-straw burnt and Soot, the Powder of Honey and unslak'd Lime will heal any Gall, being first washed with Vinegar; the Soot or Grim of a brass Pot, the Powder of the Bone of a Crab-Fish, the Powder of Galls, the Grease of Snakes roasted with Heads and Tails off is a great Drier; the Bark of a Willow-tree burnt to ashes, is a great Drier and Binder; dry Figs beaten to powder with Allum, Mustard and Vinegar, or Oil and soft Grease beaten to a Salve, with Vitriol, Galls and Allum; the Powder of Pomegranates, Salt and Vinegar, doth dry very much; or take a Toast of Wheaten Bread, spread all over with Honey, and toasted dry, and beaten in a Mortar to powder, and strewed upon any Gall, and it will dry it up soon; or take Egg-shells burned black and beaten to powder, with old Shoes burnt to a Coal, and Charcoal, quick Lime and green Copperas burnt in an Earthen Pot until it be red hot; then take of each of them alike, and knead them well together till they come to a Paste, and bake it well, and beat it into fine Powder, and strew it upon the Sore, and before you dress it, wash it with strong Vinegar or Chamberlye, and it will be well: or bathe the Sore with hot melted Butter, and strew upon it the Powder of Rosin for a day or two, then take of thick Cream and Soot, and work it to a Paste, and apply it to the Place plaster-wise.

A Plaster to dry up superfluous Moisture, and to bind Parts loosened.

Take Bitumen one Pound, of the purest part of Frankincense three Ounces, of Bdellium Arabicum one Ounce, of Deers-Suet one Pound, of Populeum one Ounce, of Galbanum one Ounce, of the Drops of Storax one Ounce, of common Wax one Pound, of Rosin Cabial half a Pound, of *Viscus Italicus* one Ounce and a half, of Apoxima one Ounce, of the Juice of Hyssop one Ounce, of the Drops of Armoniack one Ounce, of Pitch half a Pound; let them be well molten together and incorporated, and make a Plaster thereof.

Another Plaster to dry up any Swelling, Wind-gall, Splint or Bladder, in or about the Joints.

Take of Virgins-Wax half a Pound, of Rosin one Pound and a quarter, of Galbannm one Ounce and a half, of Bitumen half a Pound, of Myrrh secundary one Pound, of Armoniack three Ounces, of Costus three Ounces; boil all

theſe together in an Earthen Pot, ſaving the Armoniack and Coſtus, which being firſt ground like fine Flower, muſt be added unto the other things, after that they have been boiled and cooled, and then boiled together again and well ſtirred, ſo as they may be incorporated together, and made all one ſubſtance, and then apply them as occaſion ſhall be adminiſtred.

Things good to diſſolve Humours.

To bathe the Sorrance well with hot melted Butter, and to ſtrew upon it the Powder of Roſin for a Day or two, then take Cream and Soot, and work them to a thick Paſte, and apply it to the Sorrance, and it will dry up the Humour, and skin and heal the Sore. Wormwood, Sage, Roſemary, and the Bark of an Elm, or of a Pine, and Linſeed boiled in Oil, and make a Bath thereof, and lay it to the grieved place, and it will diſſolve any Humours that are bound and gathered together.

A Pound of Figs ſtamped with Salt till they come to a Salve, diſſolveth all manner of Humours, by opening the Pores, and giving a large Paſſage. Look for more Receipts, in my firſt Part, of this nature.

Things good to ſtop Humours.

The Flower of Wheat mixed with the Juice of Henbane, ſtayeth the Flux of Humours. The Flowers of the Willow-tree boiled in White-wine and given inwardly, drieth up evil Humours; Wormwood, Sage, Bole-Armoniack, Camphopia, a kind of Gum, Cardimonium is good.

Things good to drive back Humours.

Vinegar, Salt and Bole-Armoniack beaten together, and ſpread about the Sore, driveth it back; or White-Lead and Sallet-Oil beaten together, or red Lead and Sallet-Oil, or elſe *Unguentum Album Camphoratum*, and ſuch like: but to take away the evil Humours of the Legs, take of common Honey, Turpentine, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Bole-Armoniack made into Powder, Sanguis Draconis, new-laid Eggs, Whitewine-Vinegar, the Flower of Rice mixed all together, and make a Plaſter of it, and lap it round about the Legs from the Feet to the upper Houghs; do this for four or five times.

Humours made thin.

Garlick maketh thick and groſs Humours thin, and cutteth

reth ſuch as are tough and clammy; *French* Mercury, a Decoction made of it, and Cumminſeeds.

Humours purged.

A Conſerve made of Muſk; Roſes are great Purgers of wateriſh Humours; Sena purgeth cholerick and phlegmatick Humours, alſo groſs and melancholick.

Simples that are good to cleanſe the Body from all manner of evil Humours.

Agrimony, Anniſeeds, the inner Rind of the Barberry-tree boiled in Ale and given him for three or four Mornings together, cleareth the Body from Itching, Mange, Tetters, Ring-worms, Yellows and Boils. The Flowers of Broom or Furz cleanſe it of Choler; the Decoction of the Root of Butchers-Broom or Knee-holly made in Wine and Treacle put thereto, cleanſeth the Breaſt from Phlegm, and the Cheſt from much clammy Humours gathered therein; wild Marjoram cleanſeth it from Choler; the Seed of Cow-Parſnips cleanſeth it from tough phlegmatick Matter therein; the Powder of *Engliſh* Rhubarb ſteeped all Night in Ale and given him faſting, cleanſeth the Stomach, Liver and Blood, by purging away thoſe evil Humours that offend the Body; the diſtilled Water of Dragons given him, is a great Cleanſer of the internal Parts, Mallows or Marſh-mallows do the like; Mercury cleanſeth the Breaſt and Lungs from Phlegm; the diſtilled Water of the Star-thiſtle, or Root beaten to Powder, is very good; common Wormwood cleanſeth the Body from Choler; Ground pine is good for all Diſeaſes of the Brain, procured from cold and phlegmatick Humours, *&c.*

Simples that are good to dry up all manner of evil Humours in Sores or Wounds.

The Powder of the Root of Butter-bur doth wonderfully help them; wild Briar-balls dried and beaten to powder, and ſtrewed upon them, doth the like; the Root of Sow-Fennel beaten to powder and uſed as before, doth the like; ſo doth Fig-wort, Mother-wort and Lung-wort; Nettles bruiſed and applied to them is very good; Polypody, Rupture-wort bruiſed and applied to the Place grieved drieth up all manner of filthy Ulcers and Humours; green Copperas boiled in Water, and the place bathed therewith, drieth them up. About two Ounces of burnt Allum, put into a Quart of Spring-water after it comes off the Fire, and the Place

grieved bathed therewith warm, Morning and Evening, and a wet Cloth dipped in the Water, and bound about it three or four times double wet, is excellent good to dry them up; the Powder of the Root of Tormentil is good; the Flower of Wheat mixed with the Juice of Henbane, laid to them, ſtayeth the Flux of them to the Joints; the Leaves, Bark or Seed of the Willow-tree doth the like; the Flowers alſo have the ſame Faculty in drying up of evil Humours; Wood-Sage digeſteth Humours, *&c.*

Things good in general for the Shedding of the Hair from the Main or Tail.

To anoint the Main and Creſt with black Soap, and then to make a ſtrong Lye of Aſh-Aſhes, or elſe of Urine and Aſhes, and waſh it all over with it; but if there ſhould grow on the Horſe's Tail a Canker, which will conſume away both the Fleſh and Bone, then lay ſome Oil of Vitriol upon it, and it will kill it; if you find it eat too much, 'tis but wetting it with cold Water, and it will ſtop it. Or take of green Copperas, Allum, and white Copperas boiled in running Water till half be conſumed, and waſh it with it till it be whole; but if the Hair fall away, then take Southernwood and burn it to Aſhes, and mix it with common Oil, and anoint it with it, and it will preſently bring Hair again. If it be in the Main, let him blood; but if it be both in the Main and Tail, then take Quickſilver and try'd Hogs-greaſe, the Quickſilver being firſt mortify'd with faſting Spittle; incorporate them very well together till the Hogs-greaſe be of a perfect Aſh-colour, and anoint the Sorrance with it every day once, heating it in with a hot Fire-ſhovel; and three or four days thus dreſſing him, he will be well.

Things good in general to take away Hair in any part of the Body.

The Gum that grows on the Body of Ivy, the place rubbed therewith; for it is of ſo hot a quality, that it doth obſcurely burn: the Juice of Fumitory, that which groweth amongſt Barley, with Gum Arabick, *&c.*

Particular Receipts to take off Hair in any part of the Body.

Diſſolve in Water eight Ounces of Lime, and then boil it till a quarter be conſumed; then add to it an Ounce of Orpiment,

piment, and lay a Plaster of it to any part of the Horse, and it will in few Hours bring away the Hair.

Another.

Take Rust and Orpiment boiled in running Water, and wash the place with it very hot, and it will soon bring the Hair away.

To make Hair black.

The Leaves of the Bramble boiled in Lye, and anoint any place with it, maketh it black; or the Leaves and Berries of the wafering Tree boiled in Lye, or the Juice of common Elder, or the Decoction of Sage washed therewith.

To make Hair yellow.

To wash the Hair with the Lye of the Ashes of the Barberry-tree.

Things good in general to make Hair grow very soon, very thick, and very long.

The Roots of the Elm boiled very well in Water, and wash the place therewith; the Juice of Thistles put on the place, the Juice of red Beets, the Juice of Onions, Tar, Hogs-grease, Dogs-grease, the Ashes of green Willow, Nutshells, Soap, Bears-grease, Aquavitæ, Oil of Turpentine, an Oil made of the white Lilly-roots with Hogs-grease is very good; the Ashes of Southernwood mingled with old Sallet-Oil, *&c.*

Particular Receipts to bring Hair, and to cause it to grow long.

Take the Dung of a Goat newly made, ordinary Honey, Allum, and the Blood of a Hog, the Allum being first made into fine Powder; boil them together, and anoint the place with it every day, and it will make the Hair come again apace.

Another.

To wash the place with the Water wherein the Roots of Althæa have been boiled, and after dry it gently with your hand, increaseth Hair much.

Others.

To wash the place with the Urine of a young Boy, then take Lye made of unslak'd Lime, Ceruss and Liturge, and with it wash the Hair off, and it will make it come soon, long, and thick: or to wash the place with Oil mingled with the Ashes of Nutshells burnt, or else Snailshells burnt, or Nettleseeds bruised with Honey, Water and Salt, or the

Root of the white Lilly beaten and ſod in Oil, and anoint the place therewith; or the Juice of Radiſhes, or Tar, Sallet-Oil and Honey boiled together; or the Soot of a Caldron mixed with Honey and Oil, *&c.*

Another.

Take a quarter of a pound of Soap, and as much Piece-greaſe, and a quarter of a pint of Aquavitæ; boil theſe together, and apply it to the bald places, and in a Fortnight it will bring Hair again.

Another, which is the beſt of all.

Take green Walnut-ſhells and burn them to powder, and mix it with Honey, Sallet-Oil and Wine, and anoint the place therewith, and it will increaſe Hair wonderfully and very ſoon.

Things good in general to ripen all Impoſthumes, Inflammations hot or cold, or for any Swelling in any part of the Body and Legs, and to take away hard Knobs or Kernels, &c.

Wheaten Bran boiled in Vinegar, Leven made of Wheat, Daffodil ſtamped with Boars-greaſe and Leven of Rye-bread is good to ripen hard Impoſthumes: Bank-creſſes, Sow-thiſtles, Hawkweed, the Juice of Thorn-Apples boiled in Hogs-greaſe to an Ointment, the Leaves of Arſmart bruiſed and laid to any Impoſthumes in the Joints for the ſpace of an hour or two, taketh away the Pain. The Juice of Houſleek is good againſt the burning Inflammations; the Juice of Wall-pennywort is likewiſe good for any hot Inflammations or Tumours; all the ſorts of Pimpernel are good to cure Inflammations and Swellings; the Leaves or Flowers of Feverfew are good for all hot Inflammations and Swellings; the Leaves of Mullen boiled in Water, and laid to the Eyes, cure and eaſe the Pains of them; Water-Caltrops uſed in the nature of a Poultice is good; Water-Sengreen or Freſhwater-Soldier, Duckmeat, is good for all hot Inflammations and Swellings; the Fruit of the Pompion boiled in Milk is good for the Inflammations of the inward Parts; the green Leaves of Elder pounded with Deers-Suet allay all hot Inflammations; Strawberry-Leaves, Bay-leaves, Apples, are good for all Inflammations and hot Swellings; Figs ſtamped and made into the form of a Plaiſter with white Meal and the Powder of Fenugreek and Linſeed, and the Roots of Marſhmallows apply'd warm do ſoften and ripen Impoſthumes, and all hot and angry Swellings and

and Tumours; and if you add thereto the Roots of Lillies, it ripeneth and breaketh venomous Impofthumes.

Observations.

To all cold Swellings or Impofthumes you may apply hot Simples, and to all hot Swellings and Inflammations you muft put cold. If the Swelling doth impofthumate, you may know it by the Heat; and when you have made it fit to be opened, open it with a red-hot Iron.

Particular Receipts to ripen Impofthumes or Swellings.

Take Mallow-Roots and White-Lilly-Roots, of each alike, bruife them and put to them Hogs-greafe and Linfeed-Meal, and boil them till they be foft, and plafter-wife apply it to the Grief, and it will ripen it, break it and heal it preſently. Or Oil of Populeon is very good, the place anointed twice a day with it.

Another.

Take Southernwood and dry it to powder, and with Barley-Meal and the Yolk of an Egg make it into a Salve, and lay it to the Impofthume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it.

Another.

Take of Sanguis Draconis, Gum Arabick, new Wax, Maftick, Pitch of *Greece*, Incenfe and Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melt them together; then ftrain them, and make a Plafter thereof, and lay it to the Impofthume without removing, and it will both ripen, break and heal it.

Another.

Take Wheat-Bran two Handfuls, and fo much Wine, Ale or Beer as one Quart; and to thicken it put to it of Hogs-greafe half a pound: boil them together till the Liquor be quite confumed, and apply it hot to the place, renewing it every day once till it break of itfelf, or be fo foft to be opened; then let forth the Corruption with a hot Iron, and tent it with Flax dipt in this Salve: Take of Turpentine and of Hogs-greafe, of each alike; and of Rofin and Wax a much greater quantity; melt them together, and dip the Tent in it, and put it into the Wound, renewing it every day once till it be whole. This is to ripen Inflammations, Puftules and Kernels, which do grow under the Caul of a Horfe; but if it be an Inflammation in any other part of the Body, then take four Quarts of the Grounds of a Beer-Barrel, of Smallage, Pennyroyal, Win-

ter

ter Savoury, Comfrey, Rue, and of the Leaves and Berries of Misletoe, of each two Handfuls; chop them small, and put them to the Grounds, and put to it a pound of Sheeps-Suet or Deers-Suet try'd, and three or four Handfuls of Rye or Wheat-bran, so much as will serve to boil it to a Poultice, and when it is boiled apply it to the place; it will break it, or at least soften it that it may be open'd: if it be hard when you put your Poultice thereunto, it will send it back.

Things good in general for Impostumated Ears.

If it be not broke, Water and Salt put into the Ear, or Butter and Salt will break it; or apply to this Swelling Linseed beaten, and put to it Honey and Hogs-grease melted together; and when it breaks, tent it with Flax dipt in Salve made of Turpentine, Metrosatum and Sallet-Oil: But if he hath a Pain in his Ear, dip some black Wool in the Oil of Camomile, and put into it; but if it be broken, dip it in the Oil of Roses, Honey, and *Venice* Turpentine. The Juice of Ivy growing on a Pale or Wall, put into the Ears, stayeth the running of them, tho it be of long continuance, and helpeth old Ulcers and Impostumes bred there: but if you think it too sharp, you may mix it with the Oil of Roses.

Particular Receipts for Impostumated Ears.

Take of Pepper beaten and searced, and try'd Hogs-grease one Spoonful, the Juice of Rue one Handful, White-wine Vinegar two Spoonfuls; and if the Swelling, Impostumation or Inflammation be in the Ears, Face, Head or Throat of the Horse, if you take either black Wool, fine Lint, Flax or Hurds, and dip it into this Medicine, and so stop both his Ears therewith, and then stitch them up that it get not forth, renewing it once in two days till the Swelling be clean gone, he will be certainly cured: But if the Grief be in any other part of the Body, then with this Ointment you shall anoint the grieved or swoln place once or twice a day till it depart; but if the Swelling be near about the Cods or Privy-Parts, then bathe the place well with cold Water, and after it is made dry again with a Cloth, anoint it with the said Ointment every day once or twice, and it is a present Cure. It cureth also the Ulcer and Canker in the Nose, and is a sure Cure for the Vives.

Things

Things good in general for the Strangles.

To anoint and chafe the Swelling well with Bacon-greaſe or Hog's-greaſe, and that will ripen and break it: or ſo ſoon as you find the Swelling begin to ariſe between his Chaps, take a Wax Candle and burn it therewith, till the Skin ariſe from the Fleſh; then lay unto it wet Hay or wet Litter, and that will ripen it and make it break; then lay a Plaſter unto it only of Shoemakers Wax, and that will both draw and heal it. Now if it break inward, you may know it by voiding the Corruption at his Noſe: then twice or thrice every day perfume his Head, by burning under his Noſtrils Frankincenſe or Maſtick, or elſe by putting a hot Coal into wet Hay, and let him receive the Smoke thereof up his Noſtrils; or elſe blow the Powder of Euphorbium with a Quill into his Noſe; and ſo note, that whatſoever cureth the Vives cureth the Strangles; or with a ſmall round hot Iron thruſt a Hole through the Skin, on both ſides the Weaſand, and then after it beginneth to matter, mix Batter, Tanners-water and Salt together, and every day anoint the Sore therewith till it be whole; to anoint the Swelling with Oil of Turpentine is good. Blooding him in the Mouth is very good for this Diſtemper.

A Particular Receipt for the Strangles.

Take Baſilicon, old Boar's-greaſe and Dialthæa, of each four Ounces, of Oil de bay one Ounce; incorporate all theſe very well together, then anoint the place well, after you have chipped away the Hair, and bind it up with a piece of Sheep's Skin with the Wool next to the Inflammation, that the Warmth thereof may the better help to ripen the Puſtules; which being ripened, let forth the Corruption with a ſmall hot Iron, and tent it for three or four Days together with Baſilicon only, and afterwards heal it up with your black Ægyptiacum, taught you in my firſt Part, and let him eat good ſweet Hay and Bran inſtead of Oats, and let his Drink be White-Water.

An excellent Receipt for the Strangles, Quinſy, Strangling or Cold, that hath run for above half a Year or more at his Noſe.

Give him this Drink in the Morning faſting, in a Pint and a half of ſtrong Beer (not boiled, but heated) lukewarm, and blood him in the third Furrow of his Mouth after it;

viz.

viz. The Powder of Turmerick and Anniſeeds, of each an Ounce, half a quarter of a Pint of Brandy, with five or ſix Spoonfuls of Whitewine-Vinegar, or for want of that, Verjuice; then air him after it. When you have brought him home, clothe and litter him up warm, and tye him to the empty Rack for three or four hours or more; but if you ſee him ſweat very much, which this Drink doth uſually cauſe him to do, and you find him deſirous to lie down, you may untye him and give him that liberty: let him have no Maſh, but only warm Water, and a Handful or two of Wheat-Bran put into it, and the next morning give him the like, and preſently after it (to bring him to a Stomach) give him about two Ounces of Honey, in half a Pint of White-Wine, or Whitewine-Vinegar, or for want of either, Verjuice, and air him after it. The third day you may give him the common Cordial for Horſes, *viz.* three Pints of ſtale ſtrong Beer, boiled with a good big Toaſt of Houſhold Wheaten Bread, crumbed into it; and when you are ready to give it him, put into it, before it be quite cold, Honey and freſh Butter, a quarter of a Pound of each, and give it him lukewarm faſting, and exerciſe him after it, and ſet him up warm three or four Hours: after give him, as you did before, warm Water and Bran in it. Thus order him till you find Amendment.

The Virtues of the Cordials of White-Wine and Honey, and of the Toaſt of Houſhold-bread boiled in ſtrong Beer, and ſweetned with Honey, &c.

Theſe do not only help to bring him to a Stomach, and kill the Canker in his Mouth and Throat, (which this Diſeaſe doth commonly bring along with it) but alſo clear his Guts, and cleanſe and heal his Lights, if there be any Imperfection in them.

Obſervations upon this Diſeaſe.

1. If you find that he runs at the Noſe any foul, filthy and yellowiſh Matter, and it afterwards turn white, you need not much queſtion the Cure.

2. If he hath any Knots or Kernels under his Jaws, your common Charge of Soap and Brandy, heated and rubbed in well, will either break or ſink them.

3. If you find the Hair in the middle of the Swelling, begin to ſcale off, and that it be ſoft all over, you may let out the Corruption with your Inciſion-Knife, and let it heal up of itſelf.

4. Though your Drink does cause him to be very sick, and make him swell much in his Body, fear him not, for he will do well.

5. Two or three Miles riding every day will do him much good in order to his Cure.

A Receipt for a Sprain'd Shoulder: and if you desire to see more Variety of Receipts, look for Sinew-Strains.

Take Oil de bay, Dialthæa, fresh Butter, Oil of Turpentine, of each two Ounces; boil them and mix them well together, and when they be well incorporated, anoint the grieved place therewith, so hot as he can well suffer it without Scalding, and anoint him thus twice or thrice a day, and give him moderate Exercise, by walking him a Foot-pace gently up and down, and this is a certain and approved Remedy.

Another for a Sprain in the Shoulder.

Take one Ounce of the Oil of Spike, half an Ounce of the Oil of Linseed, half an Ounce of the Oil of St. *John's*-wort, with half an Ounce of the Oil of Pompilion; and put them all together in a Glass-Viol, and shake them very well together to mingle them: then put them forth into some earthen Vessel, to prevent penetrating and Loss of the Medicine. And when you have occasion to use it, chafe and rub it all over the grieved place with your Hand, one holding at the same time at a little distance, a hot Fire-shovel, or Brickbat before it, to make the Oils sink in the better. This is very good for a slight Strain. Then blood him in the Shoulder, and tye his Fore-feet together.

Another for a very great and violent Shoulder-strain, which is the best Receipt I know for the Cure of it.

If by any Accident he get a Strain in his Shoulder, take this common and usual way, which our Smiths do now generally use; *viz.* To take up his sound Leg before, and double it backwards in the Joint, and tye it so doubled with some List or Garter, so fast that it untye not; then force him to go upon his three Legs, till he sweat at the Roots of his Ears, Flanks, and between his Legs; then let down his Leg again (by untying it) which will cause the Blood to descend so into the Plate-Vein, that it will be more visible to be seen than when it was tyed up: but in case it does not appear so plain as you would have it, dab a little warm Water upon it with you Hand, and stroke it downwards towards

wards the place you are to let blood, and this will make it appear more visible to be seen then it was before. Then tye up his Leg again, and let him blood in the common bleeding place, *viz.* between his Chest and lame Leg, about two Quarts or more, according to the Greatness or Smallness of his Strain. Let the Blood that you save for this purpose (to anoint him with) be about a Quart, and let it be the last Blood, for that is the best, and therefore most proper and fit for your use; put a Handful of Salt into the Bowl you receive it into, and keep it stirring all the while it is running, to keep it from clotting. When he hath bled so much as you think fitting, pin up the Mouth of the Vein with a Pin or Needle to prevent bleeding, winding some Hairs of the Mane or Tail about the Pin, to keep the Pin fast and steddy, and a Day or two after take it out; but before you pin him up, anoint him all over the Shoulder and bottom of his Breast, between his Legs and down to his Knee, with Oil of Turpentine and strong Beer or Ale, of equal parts alike, shaked and mingled very well together first in a Glass Viol, clapping and dabbing it well in with your Hand: And after you have anointed him as much as you think good, smear all the said places anointed before, with the Blood and Salt, chafing and dabbing this also very well in with your Hand, as you did the other: Then bring him home softly into the Stable, and give him some Meat, and tie his Forelegs together with his Surcingle, or any other String that is broad and easy. The next Day you may untie his Legs, and walk him abroad in your Hand at the Halter's end, and if you find that he goes pretty well, you may mount his Back, and ride him a Mile or more gently: Then set him up again, and tye up his Legs as you did before. The third Day after his dressing, make a thin flat Wedge of Wood about the breadth of a Sixpence, and drive it between the Shoe and Toe so fast that it stir not, not forgetting still to tye his Legs together. Thus order him for three or four Days together, which is the usual time limited to make him sound again, conditionally it be not a new Strain. When you take him out of the Stable, or ride him at any time, you must untie his Legs, and take forth the Wedge. This Receipt is good also for a Shoulder that is pulled out of its place, about the breadth of a Man's Hand or more, or a wrenched Shoulder, or a splayed Shoulder, *&c.*

Things

Things good in general to cure the Sit-fast, or hard Knobs growing under the Saddle.

Take a long Nail with the Point turned inwards, and catch hold of the Edge of the dead Skin or Horn, which will rise from the sound Skin, and with a sharp Knife cut away all the dead and hard Skin from the sound Flesh, and heal it up by pouring hot Butter into it Morning and Evening; and when the Flesh is made even, dry and skin it either with the Powder of Honey and Lime, or with Soot and Cream mixt together; or wash the Wound either with Urine or Whitewine, and dry it up with the Powder of Oyster-shells burnt, or of Bole-Armoniack; or take the green Leaves of Cabbage, and stamp them with Hogs-grease, and work them to an Ointment, and lay it to his Back, then put on the Saddle and mount his Back, to the end that the Ointment may the better enter, or sink into his Back; and in few days it will cure him, *&c.*

Things good in general for a Navel-Gall.

To anoint it with the Oil of Turpentine, will not only cleanse, it but heal it also; but if you find any dead or proud Flesh arise in it, either cut or eat it away, before you use any Medicine, with either burnt Allum or the Powder of Verdegrease: or after you have washed and cleansed the Sore with your Copperas-Water, or with warm Vinegar, strew this Powder on it; Take of Honey a Quartern, and as much unslak'd Lime as will thicken the Honey, and make it into a Paste, and bake it so hard as that you can beat it to powder, and strew it on the Sorrance, *&c.*

Particular Receipts for the Navel-Gall.

Take Oil de Bay, Oil of Costus, Fox-grease, Oil of Savin, of each an Ounce; then take one hundred of great Garden-worms, and scour them with Salt and Whitewine, and put all the Ingredients together into an Earthen Pot very well stopped, and boil it well: then add thereto of Sallet-Oil one Ounce and a half, and boil it over again till it come to a perfect Ointment; then strain it into a Gally-Pot, and keep it for your use: only warm it, and so dress the Sorrance therewith with Lint or Hurds, and it will soon be whole.

Another.

After you have washed the Sore with old Urine and Salt, then

then anoint it with an Ointment made of Betony Powder of Brimstone, Hellebore, Pitch and old Hogs-grease stamped together and melted, or with your green Ointment in the first Part.

Another for the Navel-Gall.

If the place be only swelled, and the Skin not broken, then dab the grieved part all over with your Hand, or with a Rag wet in Brandy, and it will take it down; or the Oil of Turpentine used after the same manner will do the like: but if it be raw and sore, then these Medicines are very proper for it, *viz.* Take a quarter of a Pint of Whale-Oil, by some called Train-Oil, and boil in it as much of the Powder of Verdegrease finely powdered and searced, as will lie upon a small Shilling, and the grieved Part anointed with it will be cured very speedily. Or the same quantity of Verdegrease, Train-Oil, and two or three Spoonfuls of the Ointment of Marshmallows, boiled a little together, is a certain Cure for it.

How you are to order them.

If the Skin hang loose about them, you are to cut it off; but if it be an old Navel-Gall, which feels hard, then cut out the Bruise with your Incision-knife, and sear the Wound up again with a hot Iron, and heal it up with your green Ointment in the first Part.

These Medicines are not only good for a Navel-Gall, but for any manner of Sores and raw Backs whatsoever, and also for a Sit-fast. *Unguentum Rubrum deficcativum* is also good for them, so is Palm-Oil.

What is good for the Cure of the Palsey.

To let him blood on his Neck-Vein and Temple-Veins, on the contrary side to that way he wrieth his Neck; then anoint his Back all over with Oil of *Petroleum*, and with a wet Hay-rope swaddle his Neck all over, even from his Breast to his Ears. Then for three Mornings together give him a Pint of old Muscadine, with a Spoonful of these Powders in it, *viz.* Opoponax, Storax, Gentian, Manna, Succory, Myrrh and long Pepper beaten all into fine Powder; but put not in so much of the Myrrh and long Pepper as of any of the rest.

Things good in general to cure the Lethargy or sleeping Evil.

To keep him waking with great Noise, and let him blood in

n the Neck and Palate of the Mouth, and to give him Water wherein hath been boiled Camomile, Mother wort, Wheat-Bran, Salt and Vinegar, to perfume his Head, and to anoint the Palate of his Mouth with Honey and Mustard mixt together, or to put Parsley-seed or Fennelseed into his Water to provoke him to Urine.

Another for the same.

After you have blooded, as you must always do in this Disease, then take some of the green Boughs of the Ash-tree, and set them on fire in some clean place, and quench the Coals made thereof in some Ale; and when you have strained it out, give him a Hornful of it at each Nostril, the Cold being first taken off. 'Tis good also to open his Forehead underneath his Fore-top, and put into it a Slice or two of an old Onion, and let them lie there till they rot.

Things good in general for the Phrenzy and Madness in a Horse.

To let him blood in all the lower parts of his Body, to draw the Blood from his Head; as namely, in his Shackle-Veins, the Spur-Veins, the Plat-Veins and the Thigh-Veins: and let him blood very much, then give him this Drink; Take the Root of wild Cucumber, and where that cannot be gotten, take a Handful of Rue or Mint, and a Handful of black Hellebore, and boil them in Beer, and give it him lukewarm; or give him Man's Dung in Wine three Mornings together, or make him swallow down Hen's-Dung.

Things good in general for the Quitter-bone

To open it, and put some Oil of Vitriol into it, and that will so eat about the Bone, that you may thrust it out; this is a very safe, and as good a Medicine as any you have. If you find it eat too much, you may stop the eating of it with cold Water, or with your Copperas-Water in my first Part, which will not only keep it sweet and clean, but also keep proud Flesh from growing in it, or you may heal it up with a Salve made of Turpentine and Hog's-grease, and always before you dress it wash it with the said Water, or Auripigmentum made into fine Powder, and steeped in Whitewine twenty eight Hours, and apply it to it, and it will eat so about it that you may pull it away with your Fingers, and do so likewise after the Bone or Gristle is taken out: heal it up with with your Copperas-Water and

your green Ointment, and let him not come into the Water during the time of Cure.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Quitter-bone.

Tent it a day or two with Hogs-greaſe and Verdegreaſe ground together, then take ſcalding hot Greaſe poured into the Hole, and lay a Plaſter of Pitch and Tar mix'd over it for twenty four hours; and if the Bone riſe not, do the ſame again, and it will riſe: then take it out with your Nippers, and heal it up with ſome of your Salve which you beſt like on, which you may find in my Firſt Part.

Another.

Take of common Honey and Verdegreaſe in fine powder, as much of each as will ſuffice; boil it till it be red, and tent the Wound till it be whole, keeping evermore the Wound open, leſt it heal up above, before it be well healed up at bottom.

Another.

Take of Arſnick the quantity of a ſmall Bean made into fine powder, and put it to the bottom of the Sorrance, and ſtop the mouth of it with Hurds, and bind a Clout over it very faſt, that he bite it not off; for it will poiſon him, and after it hath remained on for twenty-four hours, open it and it will look black therein, it is a ſign that it hath done his work. Then to allay the Fire and to reſtore the Fleſh, is to tent it with Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe melted together, and to cover the Tent with a Plaſter made of Roſin, Pitch, Wax and Turpentine melted together; and thus dreſs him daily, till you have got out the Core or ſharp Griſtle, for till that be out, the Sorrance will not heal; or to heal it up with your green Ointment.

Things good in general for the Cure of a Ring-bone.

To waſh the place with Vinegar after you have ſhaved away the Hair, then uſe green Vitriol, Euphorbium, Cantharides, Verdegreaſe, Oil de Bay, *Venice* Turpentine, Oil of Turpentine, the Powder of Tartar and Salt Arſnick, unſlak'd Lime, the Powder of Vitriol, Pepper, Ginger.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of a Ring-bone.

Scarify the place about the Ring-bone with a Lancet, then take a great Onion, and pick out the Core; then put into it Verdegreaſe and unſlak'd Lime, then cover the Hole and roaſt the Onion ſoft; then bruiſe it in a Mortar, and ſo

so very hot lay it to it four days together, and it will cure it.

Another.

Take unslak'd Lime and burn it well, which you may know by its Lightness; make it into fine powder, and lay it upon the place swelled all along of a good thickness, and bind a Linen Cloth upon it very fast, and so put him into the Water, and let him stand there a pretty while; then take him forth and unbind his Foot, and he is infallibly cured, for the burning of the Lime doth kill the Ring-bone even unto the Root thereof: *De Grey* declares, that he hath cured with this Receipt about one hundred Horses. But when you are to dress your Horse, you are to bring him close to the Water; and so soon as you have dressed him, you are to put him presently therein.

Another.

After you have washed, shaved, and scarified the place, then take grey Soap and Arsnick pulverized, of each the quantity of a Walnut, which being very well mixed, spread it upon the Sorrance so far as the Ring-bone goeth; and having thus spread it, apply upon it a few Hurds, and bind a clean Linen Cloth upon it, and remove it not in twenty four hours: then take it away, and stir not the Scab, but only anoint it with fresh Butter till it fall away of itself, and so heal it up with some healing Salve, whereof you have plenty in the First Part. And this Medicine will cure either Bone-Spavin, Splint or Curb. Let him come in no Water during his Cure.

The common way that our Smiths do generally use for the Cure of this Infirmity, is to take up the Vein on the inside of the Leg where the Sorrance is, and then to sear the Ring-bone with a hot Iron, made about the thickness of the back of a Knife, three times downright, and as many times cross it, till it look somewhat of a yellowish colour: then prick three or four holes in it on an equal distance one from another, in the seared Lines quite through the Skin, with a Nail or other Instrument of Iron, which you think most proper and fit for the Work. When you have so done, rub a Handful of common Salt very well in upon it, which will fetch forth the Blood and Water that was occasioned by the searing and pricking of it, then apply this Charge to it, viz. Half an Ounce of Mastick and Frankincense, *Burgundy* Pitch and common black Pitch, of each as much as contains the bigness of a Walnut; boil all these very well

together in an Earthen Pipkin till they be thoroughly melted and incorporated, and apply it very hot upon the grieved place, with a Lath or any other flat Stick, and clap Flox or Hurds upon it, preſſing it down hard with your Hand, to make it ſtick on the better.

Obſervations how to order him.

Let it ſtick on till it come off of itſelf; and if Occaſion requires, apply another freſh Charge to it.

If you turn him to graſs, let him remain the firſt Night in the Stable, which will make it ſtick on ſo much the better. The Cure will be the ſooner perfected if you keep him upon dry ground, for if he goes much in the wet, it will quickly come off.

Things good to cure the Red-Water.

Take the Root of the Herb called *Emanuel*, alias *Bonus Henricus*, or Good King *Henry*, or All-good; boil the Roots in Water, and give it him: or Muſtard-ſeed beaten ſmall, a good Handful given him in Whitewine Vinegar two or three times together one after another, keeping his Belly rubbed with a good long Stick by two Men, one taking one end of it, and another the other end.

A particular Receipt very good for it.

Give him theſe things here under-written, well mixed and brew'd together in a Quart of ſtrong Beer or Ale for three Mornings together, *viz.* Three Spoonfuls of the Powder of the Lean of ſalt Beef dry'd, two Spoonfuls of the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, with about four or five Shellots peeled and bruiſed in a Mortar with the reſt of the Powders; diſſolve all theſe in the Beer as aforeſaid, and give it him. 'Tis not amiſs to give him after his Drink a Pint of Butter-Milk, or for want of that a Pint of Cheeſe-Runnet. This is a very good and certain Cure for it.

Things good in general to provoke Urine, or to cauſe a Horſe to ſtale.

Wild Briar-balls beaten to powder are very good, Allheal, Water-Agrimony, Birds-foot, Parſley-Roots or Seed, Muſtard-ſeed, Alexander and Horſe-Parſley, or wild Parſley which is ſold in Apothecaries Shops for *Macedonian* Parſley; Burdock-ſeed is a great Provoker of Urine; Aſarabacca, the Kernels within the Husk of Aſhen-Keys, Brooklime, Pimpernel, Watercreſſes, Butchers-broom, the Root of the Butter

Butter-bur, the Juice of the Leaves of the Burdocks, Champions, wild Carrots, the Berries and Fruit of the Winter-Cherries, the Juice of Garden-Chervil, the Juice of Cuckowpoint boiled in Ale or Beer, the Seed of Cucumbers, Dandelion, Dodder of Thyme, Dogs-graſs, Elder, Elecampane, Eringo or Sea-holly, the Root of Fern, Fennel-ſeeds, Filipendula, Dropwort, Flax-weed or Toad-flax, the Flower-de-luce, Gentian, Feltwort or Baldmony, the Seeds of Germander, the Seeds of ſtinking Gladwin, Golden Rod, Gromwel, Groundſel, Artichoke-weed, Hawkweed, Herb-Robert, Hops, the ſmoother Root of the rougher Horſetail, *St. John's*-wort, the Berries or Leaves of Ivy, Garlick, Radiſh-roots, Horſeradiſh-roots, the Seeds of Rochet, Kidney-wort, Knotgraſs, Juniper Berries, the Flowers of Lavender ſteeped in Whitewine, Ladies-ſmocks or Cuckow-flowers, Lovage, Maidenhair, Wall-Rue, the Roots of Maſterwort, Motherwort, Mugwort, Nettle-ſeeds, dry'd Acorns beaten to powder and given, Parſley-Piert or Parſley-breakſtone, the Powder of the Bark of Reſtharrow, Burnet, Smallage, the Roots of Spignel, the Seeds of the Star-Thiſtle, Lady-Thiſtle, great Turnſole boiled in Water with Cummin, the Water that is gathered from the Willow-Tree when it flowereth, the Bark being ſlit to let it out; Honeyſuckle-leaves, Wormwood, Saffron, the Roots of Valerian with Fennel-ſeeds, Haws bruiſed and laid aſteep in Beer or Ale, Eggſhells dry'd and beaten to powder, and given in Ale or Beer; the Juice of Coleworts, Southernwood, Mallows ſtamped and given him in Ale, Cherryſtone-Kernels, Madder. But for a Horſe that can neither ſtalen or dung, take the Root of Male-brake or Fern; the Male is to be known, for if you cut it, you will find the perfect Figure of an Eagle upon it: put a piece thereof upon his Tongue, and it will cauſe him both to ſtale and dung. A Flintſtone beaten to powder will make him ſtale, given him in Beer: Ivy-berries dry'd and beaten to powder, and given in Whitewine, is very good.

Particular Receipts to cauſe a Horſe to ſtale or piſs.

Take a Quart of ſtrong Ale, and put it into a Pottle-Pot, then take as many keen Radiſh-Roots waſhed, ſlit and bruiſed, as will fill up the Pot; then ſtop it up cloſe, and let it ſtand twenty four hours: then ſtrain the Ale and Roots very hard, and give it him faſting, and ride him a

little up and down, and set him up warm, and you shall see him stale. Do this two or three Mornings together.

Another.

Take a good Piece of fine Castle-Soap, about the bigness of a good big Walnut, and dissolve it in a Quart of warm Beer with some bruised Parsley-seed, give it him in the morning fasting, and ride him moderately after it, and set him up warm, and it will cause him to stale.

Another.

Take three or four Spoonfuls of bruised Burdock-seeds, and boil it in a Quart of Beer, and give it him to drink lukewarm, putting a good piece of Butter to it whilst it cools.

Another for the same.

Take half an Ounce of Fennel-seeds, half an Ounce of Parsley-seed, half an Ounce of Burdock-seed, half an Ounce of Nettle-seed, and half an Ounce of Ivy-berries when they are thorough ripe; put all these into a Pint of White-Wine, and a quarter of a Pint of Ale, and let them steep some time therein, and give it him fasting in the morning for two or three mornings together, and exercise him after it. This is a most excellent Receipt, not only for this Distemper, but also the Wind-Cholick, Stone and Gravel, for it wonderfully cleanseth the Kidneys from Sand and Filth.

Another very good.

Take Burnet, Dill, Smallage and Anniseeds, of each a like quantity, well dried and beaten to powder, and put a small Spoonful of each of them to a Pint of White-Wine, or for want of that a Quart of Ale, and give it him as you did the other.

Another.

Take about a Spoonful of these Powders here under written, and put them into a Pint of Whitewine, and as much Ale, and give him them fasting in the morning with Exercise after it, *viz.* Gromwel-seed, Broom-seed, Parsley-seed, and the Powder of the Root of Horse-Radish well dried.

Another Infallible Cure for the Stoppage of Urine.

Kill as many Bees as you think you have occasion to use, and dry them very well, and beat them to powder, and give him about an Ounce of them at a time in a Pint of Whitewine, or for want of that a Pint of Ale; and at twice or thrice giving them at fartheſt, they will so o-

pen

pen the Passages of the Ureter-Veins, that they will make him piss and stale very freely. This Receipt is also good for the Strangullion.

Things good for the Pain or Ulcers in the Kidneys.

Plantain, Liquorice, the Decoction of the tender Tops of Broom, Broom-rape boiled in Wine, is good for the Kidneys and Bladder, and provoketh Urine, and breaketh the Stone. To bathe his Back with Sallet-Oil, and Nitrum warmed together, and to cover him warm; then to drink the Water wherein hath been boiled Dill, Fennel, Anniseeds, Smallage, Parsley-seed, Mustard-seed, Spikenard, Myrrh, Cassia, or Sallet-Oil and Deers-Suet melted together, and the Root of the Daffodil boiled in Wine.

Things good in general for the Strangury or Strangullion.

To bathe his Loins with warm Water, then take Bread and Bay-berries and temper them with sweet Butter, and give him two or three Balls thereof three days together; or take a Quart of new Milk, and a Quartern of Sugar, and after they are well brewed together, give it him to drink fasting in the morning, and to keep him from all sharp Meats, as Mow-burnt Hay, Bran and the like, or to boil in the Water he drinketh good store of the Herb Mayth or Hogs-Fennel, and it will cure him.

A particular Receipt for it.

Take some of the Powder of a Flint-stone calcined, with an Ounce of the Powder of Parsley-seed, and as much of the Powder of Ivy-berries, and boil them a little in a Pint of Claret, and give them him; it is a very good Cure.

Things good for the Stone in general, or for the Stone in the Kidneys.

Alehoof, Alkanet, Birds-foot, the Seeds of the Burdock, Parsley-seeds, the Kernels of the Husks of the Ash-tree, the Bark of the Baytree-Root, Broom, Bucks-horn, Plantain, Carrot-seeds, the Berries or Fruit of the Winter-Cherry, expel the Stone out of the Reins and Bladder; the Juice of Garden-Chervil, Chich Pease or Cicers, the Root of Columbines, Coral-wort, Dogs-grass, Doves-foot or Cranes-bill, Elecampane, Eringo or Sea-holly, Fennel, the Powder of the Root of Filapendula or Drop-wort, the Flower-de-luce, the Fuz-bush, Garden-Rod, Herb-Robert, the smooth-

er, not the rougher Horſe-tail, St. *John's*-wort, the Berries of Ivy, Maiden-hair, the Juniper-berries, Kidney-wort, Knot-graſs, Wall-Rue, the Roots of Maſter-wort, Medlar-ſtones made into powder and given in Wine or Beer, wherein ſome Parſley-ſeed hath been infuſed all night, and a little boiled; the Powder of Spearmint, Ground-Moſs boiled, Mouſe-Ear, Mugwort, Nettle-ſeeds, Parſley-piert or Parſley Breakſtone, the Kernels of the Peach-tree, Pellitory of the Wall, Pimpernel, the Gum of the Plum-tree, the Powder of the Bark of the Root of Reſt-Harrow given in White-Wine, Winter-Rochet or Winter-Creſſes, wild Briar-balls beaten to powder and given in White-Wine; the Seeds of the great round-leav'd Dock, Cummin, white Saxifrage, Burnet, Saxifrage, the Seeds or Roots of Sorrel, the Milk of the Sowthiſtle given in Wine, Spleenwort, the Seed of the Star-thiſtle, Garden-Tanſy, the great Turn-ſole boiled in Water with Cummin, Vervain, the Tears of the Vine given, but the Salt of the Leaves is better; Vipers-Bugloſs, Dodder, Sallet-Oil, the Lard of a Goat, Coriander-ſeed, Caſtle-Soap, the Juice of the red Colewort, the Roots of Alexander, Wormwood, Southernwood, Galangal, Mallows, black Soap, Hyſop.

Particular Receipts good for the Stone in the Reins, Kidneys, or Bladder.

Take Saxifrage, Nettle-Roots, Parſley-Roots, Sperage-Roots, and Dodder, of each a Handful; bruiſe them and boil them gently with Whitewine until a third Part be conſumed; then put to it of Salt a Handful, of Sallet-Oil and of the Lard of a Goat, of each three Ounces, of Honey half a Pound; when all this is boiled, ſtrain it and wring it very hard, and give him of this one Pint every Morning faſting bloodwarm, and if it become too thick by boiling, diſſolve into it ſome Whitewine; and after the firſt boiling, it muſt be but only warmed, and let him have it ſo long as it will laſt: Or a handful of Maiden-hair ſteeped all night in a Quart of ſtrong Ale, and ſtrained, and given him, is excellent.

Another.

Take of Ale or Beer a Quart, and put it into a Pot, and put to it ſo many of the reddeſt Radiſh-Roots clean waſhed and ſliced into ſmall Pieces as will fit up the Pot; then ſtop it up ſo cloſe that the Air get not in, and let it remain twenty four Hours; then ſtrain the Roots from the Ale or Beer

Beer very hard, and give it him in a morning fasting, and ride him gently upon it, and after that set him up warm covered and littered, and in a little while you shall see him piss freely: let him have it several Mornings together, and during the Cure let his Drink be White Water.

Another.

Make a strong Decoction (that is to say, boil the first quantity of Water to an half Pint three times over) of keen Onions clean peeled and Parsley; then take a Quart thereof, and put to it a good Spoonful of *London* Treacle, and as much of the Powder of Egg shells, and give it him. And thus do divers Mornings if the Infirmity be great, otherwise when you see him offended.

Things good in general for the Cholick or Stone, or for the Gripings or Fretting of the Guts by Wind.

Centaury, Costmary is good for the Gripings of the Belly; Camomile Flowers are good for the Cholick and Stone, and are good given in a Glister for that purpose; the Roots of the Sea-holly boiled in Whitewine, Rue boiled with Dill and Fennel-seeds in Wine is good; Cinnamon, sixteen or eighteen of the Berries of Holly purge the Body of thick and phlegmatick Humours; Hawthorn-berries, Cardamum, Cloves, Pepper, Juniper-berries given him; or to put a jagged Onion into his Fundament, or to give him a Pipe of Tobacco at his Fundament: Horehound, Southernwood, or the Powder of a Stag's Pizzle dried and given in Beer, or the Heart of a Lark swallowed down whole; Hyssop, Cowslips, Liverwort, Lungwort, the Urine of a Child given him to drink, Gentian, Aristolochia rotunda, Enula-campana, or a Glister made of Soap and salt Water, or to give him one Ounce of Myrrh in Wine; Nettle-roots, Sperage-roots, Dodder bruised and boiled in Whitewine with some Salt amongst it, is good to give him fasting; the Powder of the wild Briar Apple-balls.

Or you may give him by way of a Drink, or by Glister, this following Drench, *viz.* Two good Handfuls of Mallow-leaves boiled in three Pints of new Milk till it comes to a Quart; strain out the Milk from the Mallows, and give it him either way, sweetned with Loaf-sugar lukewarm. This is a most excellent Receipt for the dry Gripes, for this will make his Body loose, which by this means will free him from those tormenting Pains he is troubled with.

For the dry Gripes.

Par-

after the Gravel is gotten out, ſtop his Foot with Hogs greaſe and Turpentine molten together, pouring it into the Wound ſcalding hot, or to ſtop it with Hogs-greaſe, Verjuice, Bees-Wax, the Juice of Houſleek beaten in a Mortar together, and melt it, and dip Flax therein, and uſe it as you did the other; or to waſh it with Beer and Salt, or Chamberlye and Salt; and to put into it ſcalding hot Pitch, Virgins-Wax, Deers-Suet, Boars-greaſe and the Juice of Houſleek, and ſtop it up with Hurds, and tack on the Shoe again; or to lay into it Flax dipped in the White of an Egg, or to heal it with the Powder of Galls and Tartar mixt together.

Things good in general for molten Greaſe.

Firſt, to take Blood from the Neck-Vein to a good proportion, to let out all the inflamed Blood, and to give him Bran prepared or dried Bran, and if he empties himſelf, to give him a reſtringent Gliſter, which you may find in my firſt Part. But things in general to be given inwardly are theſe, Sallet-Oil, Sack, Honey, Cordial, Powder of Anniſeeds, Hempſeed, Cummin-ſeed, Fenugreek-ſeed, Powder of Elecampane-Roots, Brimſtone, Liquorice, Colts-Foot. In Maladies of this nature you muſt forbear to adminiſter ſuch Drugs as be hot, for that is the way rather to kill than recover your Horſe, for lenitive and gentle things are the only means to bring it away.

Particular Receipts for Molten Greaſe.

Take of Titian three Pints, three Ounces of Loaf-ſugar finely powdered, of Cordial powder an Ounce, of live Honey four Ounces, and give it him to drink bloodwarm.

Another for Greaſe fallen into his Legs.

When you have warmed him well by riding him two or three Miles; then take about half a Pint or more of Sack, and three or four Pennyworth of Sallet-Oil, and give it him to drink, then ride him as far again, and he will purge out his molten Greaſe. This done two or three times will cure him for that Winter.

Another for Molten Greaſe.

You ſhall find another moſt excellent for this Purpoſe afterwards.

After you have let him blood, take half a Pint of Whitewine, half a Pint of Sallet-Oil, of Rhubarb and Aloes two Drams, of Sena half an Ounce, of Agarick three Drams, Bay-berries half an Ounce, Saffron two Drams,

Duck

Duck or Duke-Powder, and of Cordial Powder, of each two Drams; make what is to be powder'd into Powder, and mix them well together, adding thereunto four Ounces of live Honey: give it your Horſe after it is well warmed upon the Fire blood-warm, but be ſure you let him faſt about three hours before you give it him, and three hours after you give it him, and let his Drink be either a ſweet Maſh or white Water for five or ſix days after, and let him have, inſtead of Oats, Bread made for him, or Bran prepared; but if you give him Oats, put in amongſt them Fenugreek bruiſed. But if you deſire to approve of another Receipt, look in my Firſt Part for Balls for Colds, Glanders, or molten Greaſe.

Another very good for it.

To abate the ſtirring and working of his Body, and to bring and reſtore him to his perfect Health again, take this courſe for his Recovery; Take an Ounce of Diaſcordium, and diſſolve it in a Pint of Sack, or for want of that in a Quart of Beer or Ale, and give it him cold in the Morning faſting, and order him as you do ſick Horſes, with Maſhes of Malt, burſten Oats, warm Cloths, warm Water, *&c.* But if you find that he falls from his Stomach, and dungs hard, to remedy theſe two Evils, I direct you to the Directions how to order ſick Horſes, about the beginning of the Firſt Part, after the End of the Table of Simples, where you may find Vinegar and Honey to bring him to a Stomach, and a Cordial of Bread boiled in Beer with Butter and Honey put therein, to looſen his Body, and to bring him to heart again: and when you find him luſty and ſtrong, you may give him as much of the Powder of Mechoacan as will lie upon a Shilling at thrice, in a Quart of warm Beer or Ale; or you may give him a Purge of Aloes.

Another alſo very good.

Take an Ounce of the beſt Aloes Succotrina you can get for Money, half an Ounce of the Cream of Tartar beaten to powder, with as much of each of theſe Powders as are here under-written, as will lie upon a Groat, *viz.* Liquorice, Flower of Brimſtone and Ginger: mix them all together, and work them up in a little freſh Butter at firſt, then divide them into three equal parts, and cover every part all over with freſh Butter, to keep the bitter taſte of the Aloes from offending him. Let your Balls be made about the bigneſs of a ſmall Waſhball, thick in the middle,

and

and ſharp at both ends; ſtick them upon a ſtick not too ſharp at the end, and give him them in the Morning faſting, with a ſmall Hornful of warm Beer after every one of them, to make them paſs down the better. Let him have moderate Exerciſe after them, and order him as you do ſick Horſes, and he will do well.

General Simples good for a Surfeit.

Angelica, the diſtilled Water of Broom-flowers, the Leaves of Balm with Nitre given in Ale, or the Juice of Ivy-leaves ſo given, Liver-wort, common Wormwood, the diſtilled Water of wild Poppy, *&c.*

A particular Receipt for a Surfeit.

Take three Quarts of ſtrong Beer, one Handful of Wormwood, one Handful of Celandine, one of Herb-grace *alias* Rue, chop them groſs, and boil them in it till they come to a Quart; then ſtrain and ſqueeze the Liquor from the Herbs, and put into it two Spoonfuls of Honey, and two Ounces or more of Treacle of Jeane, with a Lump of ſweet Butter, and give it him faſting in the Morning with Exerciſe after it; and when you bring him home, clothe and litter him up warm, and two or three hours after give him a Maſh and white Water.

Another for a Horſe whoſe Coat ſtands ſtaring, and does not thrive; or that hath ſwelled Cods or Legs, by reaſon of molten Greaſe ſettled and dry'd in his Body, which commonly brings along with it Gauntneſs and Coſtiveneſs, with ſeveral other Diſtempers, &c.

The only way to remedy and help theſe Diſtempers, is firſt to give him a Purge of Aloes made up according to Art, as you may find the Manner how in Directions for the purging of Horſes after the Table of Simples, and order him as you do ſick Horſes with Maſhes, burſten Oats, ſcalded Bran, warm Clothing and warm Water, *&c.* About three or four days after he hath done purging and drank cold Water, to bring him to a Stomach, give him Honey and Whitewine, and to comfort him and looſen his Body, and to make him ſtale freely, give him the Cordial of Houſhold Wheat-Bread boiled in Beer, *&c.* You may find the Manner how to make this alſo in the Directions how to order ſick Horſes, after the Table of Simples. As to the ordering of his ſwelled Cods or Legs, you may apply to them

them (after his Phyſick hath done working) the common Charge of Soap and Brandy ſcalding hot, and three or four days after ride him into ſome River or clear Pond up to the midſide, and flounce him backwards and forwards, which will be a means to abate and take away the Swelling: You need not lay on your Charge above once. Theſe Directions are in caſe of a dry Surfeit. But if he be troubled with a Cold, which you may ſoon know by his coughing and running at Noſe, then give him this Drink; *viz.* The Powder of Anniſeeds and Turmerick, of each an Ounce, put into a Pint and a half of ſtrong Beer; half a Quartern of Brandy, and about five or ſix Spoonfuls of Whitewine Vinegar, (or for want of either, Verjuice:) boil all theſe a little, and give it him lukewarm faſting in the Morning. If you find his Stomach loſt, give him his Cordial. But if you find that your Horſe is fat and ſtrong, and hath his Greaſe ſettled within him, then give him the Purge of Aloes firſt; but if you find him both fat and ill together, then give him this Whitewine and Honey, and Cordial, to bring him to a Stomach, and after them give him his Purge.

Obſervation.

Theſe Heats and Colds, which are occaſioned by hard Labour or violent Riding, do commonly bring along with them hard Puſtules and Kernels under his Caul, which you may either ſink or break with your common Charge of Soap and Brandy, boiled together and applied hot. If you find that they break, waſh them with Verjuice and Butter, or Vinegar and Butter melted together, and they will do well.

Things good in general to mollify Hardneſs.

Linſeed, Fenugreek, Roſin, Pitch of *Greece*, Flower of Roſes boiled together with Turpentine, Honey and Sallet-Oil, till it come to an Ointment; Malvariſco, Oleum Rolatum, Brank-urſin, Mallows, Coleworts, Lard, Oil of Cypreſs with Meal, Pellitory, Wormwood or Greaſe, Muſtard-ſeed and Cummin boiled together, or the Juice of the Roots or Leaves of Elder, Armoniack, Aloes, Opoponax, Nettles, Mercorella, the Roots of Cucumbers, Hogs-greaſe and Tar, Turpentine and old Greaſe beaten together; Oil of Turpentine is very excellent to take down a Swelling, Patch-greaſe and Turpentine melted together, and ſtop his Feet therewith, and anoint his Coffins therewith; or Salt and Water mix'd together, and bathe the Swelling therewith,

with, and dip a Linen Cloth in the same, and lay that upon it, and it will dissolve it.

What is good for bruised Kidneys.

The Powder of the Herb called Crabs-Claws, Plantain, Liquorice, Broom, *&c.*

Things good in general for a sore Mouth and Throat.

Woodbine-Leaves, Bole-Armoniack, Plantain-Water, to wash it with a Water made of them, or to wash it with Bay-salt and Verjuice warmed together. If the Palate be sore, then let him blood there; then take Honey, young Onions, and toasted Cheese boiled together, and anoint the Palate with it: or wash it with the Juice of Alehoof, the Juice of Golden Rod, Mallows or Marshmallows, or Mint, or Mulberries, or Nettles, or Pellitory of the Wall, or Privet, or Queen of the Meadows, or Ragwort, or Sage and Allum, or Self-heal, or Succory, or the Juice of the *English* Vine, the Decoction of Ragweed, Plantain boiled in Whitewine, Mustard-seed apply'd outwardly dissolveth the Swelling of the Throat.

What is good for the Quinsy.

To let blood under the Tongue, and if his Throat is so swelled that you can get nothing hardly to go down it, lay a Poultice under his Caul, and that will open the Passage; then take a Bull's-pizzle or a Whale-bone, and tie a Linen Rag about it, and dip it into Milk wherein Allum and the Powder of a Dog's-turd hath been dissolved, and thrust it up and down his Throat, and put a Hornful of it down after it. If he be so bad that he can eat nothing but what you give him with a Horn, which must be comfortable and cordial things; be sure let the Hornful of Milk, wherein Allum and Dog's-turd hath been dissolved, be the last thing you give him, or else it will do him no good, and tie him up to the Rack half an hour after it: You are to use it two or three times a day, or oftner, as you shall see occasion. Or four Ounces of the Juice of Cinquefoil given down at a time for certain days together cureth it; or the Juice of Cudweed or Cottonweed taken in Wine and Milk is a good Remedy against it, so is Hyssop boiled with Figs.

Another Receipt good for it.

After you have blooded him under the Tongue, take as many

many Leaves of common Mallows as you think fit for your use; boil them very well in his own Piss, and apply it as hot (poultice-wise) to his Throat as he can well endure it, and you shall soon find the wonderful Effects of it, for it will open the Passage of his Throat, and take down the Swelling occasioned by the Inflammation of it. Do this two or three times, if you see occasion, and apply your inward Medicine also to it, as the Receipt above will direct you.

Things good in general to kill Lice or Vermin.

The Decoction of the Herb or Seed of Henbane, and wash him with it. To wash his Body all over with Cow's-Piss for three or four days together, is an approved and certain Cure, and is as good as any I can give you. However I shall give you some more Receipts, which are to anoint him with Quicksilver and Hog's-grease mixed together; or take Staves-acre and green Copperas boiled in running Water, and wash him all over therewith, and at twice dressing it will cure him; or Tobacco shred small and boiled in small Beer with some powder'd Allum, and when the Allum is dissolved, to wash him therewith.

Another very good to destroy them.

Take Hogs-Lard, and anoint your Horse all over his Back-bone, and under his Mane, and about his Flanks, or any where else, where you find your Lice do come, and it will destroy them: The reason is, that this Food being so very delicious, and so well liked of by them, makes them feed so much upon it that it causeth them to burst. Or take Train-Oil, which is Whale-Oil, and anoint his Breast and Flanks with it, and then dip a broad List of Woollen into it, and sow it about his Neck, and this will destroy them.

Things good in general to keep the Flies off a Horse's Head.

To anoint his Head with Oil and Bayberries mingled together; or to rub his Head all over with the Water wherein Rue hath been steeped, after it is well bruised; or to anoint his Head or round about his Eyes with Linseed Oil, and it will keep them away; or with the Water wherein Devil's-dung hath been dissolved, is the best of all; or with the Water of Pellitory of *Spain*, or the Leaves of Ivy bruised with a little Water, and his Head washed therewith.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Leprosy or Mange.

To take blood first from the Neck-Vein good store, and scrape away the Scurf with an old Curry-comb, Oyster-shell, or such like: then these things you are to use as your Discretion serves; Staves-acre, Chickweed, Elecampane, Mercury Sublimate, the Leaves of Bramble boiled in Lye, Cow-Piss, the Powder of the dry'd Root of Briony, the Powder of the red Dock, or the Powder of Arsnick, * Realgar, or white Mercury mix'd with Hogs-grease till it be kill'd, Urine, Tobacco and Brimstone boiled together is very good; or Salt, Verdegrease, Allum, Verjuice and Train-Oil boiled together, and anoint him therewith; or Broom, Wormwood, Mustard-seed, Elecampane, Chimney-soot and black Soap boiled together; or the Juice of Hemlock, unslak'd Lime, Pepper and Ginger boiled in Beef-broth, and the Place anointed therewith, is very good.

* *Realgar is a Composition of Sulphur, Orpiment, and unslak'd Lime, and is a most strong Corrosive.*

Particular Receipts for the Mange.

Take a Quart of fair running Water, and put into it half a pound of green Copperas, and an Ounce of Allum, and an Ounce of Tobacco chopt small; then boil them together till they come to somewhat more than a Pint, and anoint him all over with it very warm: After you have rubbed off the Scabs, tie him to the Rack three or four hours; twice dressing cures him. Or the Ashes of the Bark of the Ash-tree made into a Lye, and the Body washed therewith; Calamint taken inwardly, the Decoction of the Leaves of the Fig-tree, wild Flower, *&c.*

Another.

First let blood, then take a Quart of old Urine or Vinegar, and break it into a quarter of a pound of Tobacco, and set it on the Embers to stew all night, and wash the infected Places, whether it be in the Mane or otherwise.

Another for any Mange or Universal Leprosy in a foul surfeited Horse.

After you have let him blood, and scraped off the Scabs or Scurf, take of Verjuice and Vinegar a Pint, Cow-Piss a Pint, Train-Oil a Pint, old Urine a Pint, and put to them a Handful of wild Tansy, and a Handful of Bay-salt, a Quarter of a Pound of Brimstone, as much Allum, two Ounces

Ounces of Verdegrease, and four Ounces of Bole-Armoniack; boil all well together; with this very hot wash him well, and if you put to it the quantity of a Pint of the Blood you take away, it is not amiss; do this twice or thrice.

Another.

Take Mother of Salt-Peter, the best and strongest, and wash the Sores therewith so hot as he is able to suffer it, and in three or four times dressing it will cure him; this will not only kill the Mange, but all Scratches, Pains, and Rats-tails, *&c.*

Another.

Take of Soapers-Lees, and after you have scraped away the Scurf, wash him with it, and in once or twice dressing he will be well. It cures the Mange not only in Horses, but also Dogs, provided they get not to it with their Mouth.

An inward Drink with an Outward Application, which I think is the best Remedy that can be invented for this Disease.

Take Anniseeds and Turmerick, of each an Ounce, finely beaten; of the blackest Rosin powdered one Ounce; put them into a Quart of strong Beer, heated lukewarm, and give it him in the Morning fasting, with a little of the Flower of Brimstone at the Mouth of every Horn you give him, not exceeding above an Ounce in all, and let him fast four or five Hours after it, and order him afterwards as you do a sick Horse: About two or three days after his Drink, when he hath a little recruited and recovered his strength again, apply this outward Application (but first curry off all the Scabs with an old Curry-Comb till the Blood and Water appear) *viz.* Take Oil of Turpentine and Beer, of equal Parts alike, with some Flower of Brimstone, well shaked and jumbled together in a Glass-Viol, to incorporate them the better, and anoint him all over with it, tying him first with a strong Bridle to the Rack to prevent him from biting at it, for it is a very terrifying, biting and sharp Medicine, and will torment him for about half an Hour or more, and then the Smarting will be over. If you find your Horse full of good and in heart, you may venture to give him two or three of these Drinks and Anointings, if you see the Cure will not be performed without them; but if he be a very poor lean Horse, then

Blood him first, and about two or three days after give him this Drink.

then one is enough till he hath recovered more heart and ſtrength.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Scab, Tettar, or Ring-worm.

The Water that is found in the hollow places of a decayed Beech-tree, and anoint him with it; the Juice of the Leaves and Roots of ſtinking Gladwin: one Part of Plantain Water, and two Parts of the Brine of Beef boiled together and clarified, and anoint him with it; Plumtree-leaves boiled in Vinegar, kill Tettars; the Juice of the Root of Monks-Rhubarb, which is a kind of Dock, ſome call it Garden-Patience, is very good; the Oil of Wheat preſſed between two thick Plates of Copper; the Juice of Mercury mingled with Vinegar, Water-Creſſes, the Roots of Docks boiled in Vinegar and the Place bathed therewith; Cardimonium mixt with Vinegar.

To make a ſtrong Lye of old Urine, Aſh-Keys and green Copperas. and bathe the Knots therewith, and it will kill and heal them; or to cut the Head and Tail of a Snake, and cut it into ſmall pieces and roaſt it, and anoint the Sore with the Greaſe of it, and it will heal it in a ſhort time; and have a care you touch no place but the Sorrance, for it will venom.

Particular Receipts to cure the Tettar or Ring-worm

Take two Drams of Precipitate, and put it into a ſmall Viol-Glaſs with fair Water, much more than will cover the Powder, keep it cloſe ſtopped, and with this Water twice a day waſh it, and it will infallibly cure it; and after you have dreſſed the Sorrance, ſhake the Glaſs, and let it ſtand till the next Dreſſing; but if it be in any fleſhy Part, you may kill it by bathing the Sorrance with the Juice of Southernwood; Maudlin and Rue, of each alike, ſtamped together and ſtrained, and bathe the place with it twice a day till it be whole.

Another.

Take the Roots of Elecampane, and the Roots of red Docks, of each alike, ſlice them thin, and put them into three Quarts of Urine, with two Handfuls of Bay-Salt; let it boil till one Quart be conſumed; then take it off, and with a Clout faſtned to a Stick, waſh the Sorrance very hot, four or five Mornings together, and it will kill it.

A

A very good Receipt to cure any manner of Scab, Itch or Scurf, in any Part of a Horse's Body.

Mix Sallet Oil, his own Water, Whitewine-Vinegar, Salt, Butter, and Brimstone together, and anoint the grieved Part with it twice a day, and it will cure it. Let your quantities of all these things be more or less, according to the Cure you undertake.

Things good in general for the Crown-Scab, which is a stinking and filthy Scab, breeding round about the Corners of the Hoof.

Spread upon a Plaster this Ointment; Take Salt, Bacon-Grease, Soot, Wax and Pitch molten together, and lay to it, and if the Flesh grows proud, eat it away with Verde-grease beaten to powder; or with burnt Allum, or Scrapings of Harts-horn or Ox-horn made into powder; or take Soap and Hogs-grease, and half a Pound of Bole-Armoniack, and a quarter of a Pound of Turpentine mixed well together, and make a Plaster and bind it on fast, renewing it every day till it leave running, and then wash it with strong Vinegar made warm, and let him come into no Water during the Cure; or bathe him with old Urine sod with Salt, and that will dry up the Humours and heal it; or wash it with green Copperas, Allum and Honey boiled together in fair Water, and wash the Sore with it three or four times a day, and this will both kill and heal it without any other Medicine.

Things good in general for a Surbated Horse.

Take two new-laid Eggs, and after you have well picked his Fore-feet, break them raw into his Soles; then stop them up with Ox or Cow-dung, and he will be well by the next Morning; or Sugarcandy melted with a hot Iron between the Shoe and the Foot, and when it is hardned, take Nettles and Bay-salt, stamped and laid upon it; or after his Foot is pared, to cool it, stop his Feet with Bran and Hogs-grease boiled together very hot, and cover the Coffin round with the same; or stop them every Night with Cows-dung and Vinegar mingled together.

Things good in general for Sinews that are cut, pricked, bruised or shrunk, or for any other Griefs in them.

Allheal is good for the Grief of them; Wood-betony, Comfrey soddereth cut Sinews together; the dried Powder of red Wheat boiled in Vinegar is good; wild Tansy, Oil of Camomile, Mugwort cureth the Contraction and Drawing together of the Sinews; or Tar, Bean-flower and Oil of Roses mixed together, and laid to the Place, hot, and if it do not good presently, then take Worms and Sallet-Oil fryed together; or else the Ointment of Worms, which you may have at the Apothecaries, and apply either of them, for they knit the Sinews again if they be not quite cut asunder; but if there be a Convulsion, you must with your Sciffars cut the Sinew asunder; then take Rosin and Turpentine, Pitch and Sanguis Draconis melted together, and clapped somewhat hot to the Sore; then take Flax and clap upon that, for that will cleanse and defend, and is a very excellent Medicine for any swollen Joynt whatsoever: But if the Sinews be not much swelled, but only stiff; then take of black Soap a Pound, and seethe it in a Quart of strong Ale, till it wax thick like Tar, aud anoint the Sinews and Joints with it, and it will supple them and stretch them forth be they ever so much shrunk; or take a Quart of Neatsfoot-Oil, a Quart of Ox-galls, a Quart of Aquavitæ or Brandy, a Quart of Rosewater, or a Handful of Rosemary stamped; boil all these together till half be consumed, and strain it, and use it as you see occasion.

A Receipt for a cut Sinew.

Take the Leaves of Nep or Woodbine, and bruise them well in a Mortar with *May*-Butter, and apply it to them; 'tis very good to knit them together.

A Particular Receipt for the Shrinking of the Sinews.

Take a Handful of Chickweed, of red Roses dried the like quantity; put them into a Pint of Ale, and a Pint of Canary, and let them boil together till a fourth part be consumed; then put to them a Pint of Trotters-Oil, and let that boil also a good while, keeping them stirring, which being strained, anoint the grieved Part therewith, chafing it in very well with your Hand, holding a hot Fire-shovel or Brickbat before it at the same time, to make it sink in the better: When you bind it up, put to it some of the Herbs,

Herbs, and at three or four times dressing it will be well. The Decoction of the Root of Scabious and Garden Tansy boiled in Sallet-Oil; or take the Decoction of the Leaves of Mullen, with Sage, Marjoram and Camomile-Flowers, and the grieved Part bathed therewith, is excellentgood for them, *&c.*

Things good in general to cure the Tongue of a Horse that is hurt.

To boil in Water Woodbine-Leaves, Primrose-Leaves, Blackberry-Leaves, Knot-grass with some Honey, and put to it a little Allum, and two or three times a Day wash it with a Clout tied upon a Stick, being lukewarm; or take *Mel Rosatum* and anoint it therewith, and be sure whensoever you dress his Tongue or Mouth, tie him up to the Rack an Hour after it, that so the Medicine may take the better effect; or take red Honey, the Marrow of powdered Pork, quick Lime and Pepper made into fine Powder, of each alike, boiled together till they come to an Ointment, and anoint it with it twice a day.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Tongue of a Horse, that is hurt.

Take of Arman half an Ounce, and put into the Fire till it become red hot, then take it out and beat it to very fine Powder; then take a Sawcer full of live Honey, and of Whitewine one Pint, mix and steep these with the Powder together, and so let it boil over the Fire, keeping it stirring, then take it off and let it cool, and so wash his Tongue Morning and Evening with it till it be whole.

Another.

Take the Juice of Celandine, and wash the Hurt therewith nine Days together, and it will cure it though it be half cut asunder, for the Juice of the Celandine will conglutinate and sodder the Tongue together, being cut or wounded.

Things good for Venomed Things.

Garden-Bazil or sweet Bazil laid to it, is good for any thing venomed by a Spider, Wasp, Bee or Hornet; Water-bistort or Snakeweed is likewise good; and if he hath drunk Horse-Leeches, Hen's-dung and the like, give him three Spoonfuls of the Herb Sow-thistle dried in a Quart of Ale.

Another for a Venom.

Take a Handful of Rue, and ſtamp with it the Fat of ruſty Bacon, till it come to a perfect Salve, and therewith dreſs the Sore till it be whole.

Another to be uſed either inwardly or outwardly.

If he hath eaten any venomed thing, give him the Juice of Sage, Morning and Evening, in Wine or Ale; but if he be outwardly venomed, bruiſe the Sage, and apply it to the grieved part twice a Day, and it will take out the Venom.

Things good in general for Ulcers.

See a more large Account of things of this Nature in the firſt Part.

Tar, Hog's-greaſe, green or white Copperas, Salt-Peter, Bees-wax, Honey, Roſin, Verdegreaſe Linſeed-Oil, all boiled together, and make a Salve of it, and dreſs it with it: Euphorbium, Maſtick, *French* Soap is good; or to waſh the Sore with White wine and green Copperas diſſolved together, and to heal it up with Swines-greaſe, the Leaves of Lillies beaten in a Mortar, and make a Salve of it, and lay it upon the Sore, and cover it with a Plaſter, or Loam and Horſe dung mixed with Pepper and the White of an Egg; or to ſtrew upon the Sore of the Powder of Galls, or to ſcald it once a day with Sallet-Oil or Sack, Frankincenſe, Cloves, green Copperas and Brimſtone, and double as much Myrrh as any of them, and put it upon a Chafing-diſh of Coals, and receive the ſmoke of it upon Hurds, and keep it cloſe in a Box, and when you uſe it, waſh the Sore with Urine or Vinegar twice a day.

Things good in general for an Ulcer or Canker in the Noſe.

Green Copperas and white Copperas, with ſome Allum boiled in running Water, and ſquirted into his Noſtrils lukewarm three or four times one after another, is good; but if the Canker be hot and very burning with great Pain; then take the Juice of Purſlain, Night-ſhade, Lettice, and mix them together, and waſh the Sore with a fine Cloth dipt therein, or elſe ſquirt it up his Noſtrils, and it will allay the heat of it: Or to take Sage, Rue, Hyſop, of each a Handful, and ſeethe them in Urine and Water, and ſtrain it out, and put into it a little white Copperas, Honey and Aquavitæ, and waſh or ſquirt it into the Place; But if the Canker be killed, heal it with this Water; Take of Rib-wort, Betony

Betony and Daſies, of each a Handful, and ſeethe them well in Wine and Water, and waſh the Sore therewith; or take Chryſtal made into fine Powder, and ſtrew upon it; *Pauls* Betony bruiſed is very good.

Things good in general to cure the Vives.

To cut a Hole where the Kernels are, and pick them out with a Wire, and fill the Hole with Salt, and at there days end it will run; then waſh it with the Juice of Sage, and heal it up with an Ointment made of Honey, Butter and Tar, or with your green Ointment in my firſt Part; or waſh the Sore with Water, wherein hath been boiled green Copperas and Allum, and tent it with Flax dipt in the White of an Egg, beaten to an Oil, or heal it up with Hogs-greaſe, Turpentine and Wax molten together; or take a Spunge dipped in Whitewine-Vinegar, and bind to the Sore, and renew it twice a day, till the Kernels do rot; then open the nethermoſt part of the Softneſs, and let the Corruption out, and fill the Hole with Salt finely brayed, and the next day waſh away the Filth with warm Water, and the next day after waſh the Sore with Honey and Fitch-flower mingled together till it be whole.

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Vives.

Take Tar, tried Hogs-greaſe, Bay-Salt and Frankincenſe powdered, of each as much as will ſuffice, melt them together, and with a Clout faſtned to a Stick, ſcald the Place four or five Mornings together, until the inflamed Places do become ſoft and ripe, then ſlit the Skin with your Inciſion-Knife, and let forth the Corruption, and heal up the Sore with tried Hogs-greaſe and Verdegreaſe made up into fine Powder, melt them upon the Fire, and let it not boil more than a Waum or two, then put in ſome ordinary Turpentine, and ſo ſtir all together till it be cold, and anoint the Sorrance with it till it be whole.

Another which is the beſt Cure for it.

Take a Pennyworth of Pepper beaten to fine Powder, Swines-greaſe a Spoonful, the Juice of a Handful of Rue, Vinegar two Spoonfuls, mix them very well together, and convey it equally into both the Ears of the Horſe, and ſo tie or ſtitch them up, then ſhake his Ears that the Medicine may ſink downwards, which done, let him blood in the Neck-Vein, and Temple-Veins, and this is an infallible Cure.

Another

Another very good for the same.

The Vives are cured several manner of ways, as you find by the Receipts above, but the most usual and common way that our Smiths generally use for the Cure of this Infirmity, is, for to let blood on both sides the Neck-Veins, then to sear the Swelling with a small hot Iron, from the Root of the Ear, down to the Bottom of it, till the Skin look yellow; the Manner and Form of the Searing-Iron must be somewhat like the Shape and Fashion of a great Arrow's-Head, as you see by the Figure in the Margin, with three or four small Lines or Strokes on each side, drawn from the Body of it. After you have seared it, take out the Heat of the Fire; and to make it sound again, anoint it with fresh Butter or Hogs-grease, and he will do well.

What is good to cure the Arraistes or Rats-tails, which is a kind of Scratches.

To ride him till he be warm, which will make the Veins to swell, and the better to appear; then let him blood on the Fetlock-Veins, on both sides, making him to bleed well, and the next day after to wash the Sores with warm Water, and then clip away all the Hair from about the Sores, and anoint the grieved Place with this Ointment, *viz.* Take green Copperas and Verdegrease, of each two Ounces, and of common Honey, four Ounces, beat your Copperas and Verdegrease very small, and so work them with your Honey to an Ointment, and anoint the Sores daily with it till it be whole.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Wind-Cholick.

Allheal, True love or One-berry, the Berries of Holly, Holm or Holver-Bush, Juniper-Berries, the Flowers of Lavender steeped in Wine, wild Parsnips, Jack by the Hedge, Winter and Summer-Savory, but the Summer is the best, Burnet, Saxifrage, the Leaves of the Willow-tree bruised, and the Juice given with some Pepper in Beer, Cardamom, Fenugreek, Haws beaten to powder, Rue, Cloves, Cinnamon, an Onion peeled and jagged, and put it into his Fundament; or give him a Pipe of Tobacco at his Fundament, lighted, and the Wind of his Body will draw it out. If you intend to see more of this nature, look for Cholick, Angelica,

Angelica, Wood-betony, Mullen, Muſtard-ſeed, Centaury.

A Plaſter to lay upon the Wound, to keep in the Tent or Salve.

Take Pitch, Roſin, Maſtick, Turpentine, Hogs-greaſe, of each ſo much as will ſuffice; melt them together, and keep it for your uſe. When you uſe it, ſpread it upon Leather, and cover the Wound therewith. This Salve doth infinitely comfort a Wound both green or old, be the ſame Fiſtula or otherwiſe.

Things good in general to cure the Wind-Galls.

To open them the length of a Bean, and thruſt out the Jelly; then take the White of an Egg and Oil-de-bay, and mix them together, and apply it with Hurds plaſter-wiſe, and in three or four days thus dreſſing, it will be cured: and after you have opened it, and the Jelly ſqueezed out, to lay Pitch and Roſin melted together upon it, and to clap ſome Hurds upon that.

This is a very good Cure.

To lay to it Oil-de-bay, Turpentine, Verdegreaſe, the White of an Egg and Red Lead boiled together till they become a Salve; or the Roots of Cummin beaten with Salt and laid to it; or to anoint them with the Juice of Onions, or Leeks, or Ground-Ivy and Wormwood ſodden in White-wine, and laid to them; or after the Jelly is let out, to lap a wet woollen Cloth about it, and with a Taylor's hot Preſſing-Iron rub upon the Cloth till all the Moiſture is dry'd up, then daub all over it Pitch, Maſtick and Roſin boiled together, and lay Hurds upon it. In all theſe kind of Cures you muſt firſt ſhave away the Hair, and oprn the Sorrance, and ſqueeze forth the Jelly before you lay any Charge to it, and to keep him out of the Water during the Cure,

Particular Receipts for the Cure of the Wind-gall.

Take Tacamahaca, Maſtick, Perozin, of each the quantity of a Hazle-Nut, and of ſtone Pitch to the quantity of a Walnut, with a little Brimſtone powder'd; melt all theſe together, and when it is molten, put in as much Turpentine as a Walnut will contain, and ſpread it upon a Plaſter, and lay it to the Place warm, and daub it all over with the ſame Salve, and Flox upon that, and let it remain on till it fall away of itſelf.

Ano-

Another.

Take of Oil of Vinegar, and dip your Thumb therein, and rub the Sorrance with it every day till the Hair do fall off, which will cauſe the Wind-galls to break out and bleed; then heal and cure them, as you have been already taught.

Another for the Cure of the Wind-Galls.

Take about half a Pint of White wine-Vinegar, one Ounce of *Roman* Vitriol, one Ounce of Maſtick, one Dram of white Copperas, and one Ounce and a Dram of Euphorbium; boil all theſe together till a fourth part be conſumed, then ſtrain it out, and put it into a Glaſs cloſe ſtopped, and keep it for your uſe. The manner of uſing it is to rub about a Spoonful of it upon each ſide where they are, for three or four days together, and not clip away the Hair.

A Purgation for a Horſe ſick of Greaſe or Coſtiveneſs.

Take a Pint of old Whitewine, and ſet it on the Fire, and diſſolve into it a Lump of Caſtle-Soap as big as a Hen's-Egg, and ſtir them well together, then take it off, and put into it two good Spoonfuls of Hempſeed beaten, an Ounce of Sugarcandy beaten to powder, and brew all together; then having warmed the Horſe, to ſtir up his Greaſe and other foul Humours, give it him to drink, and walk him up and down a little after it, to make the Potion work: then ſet him up warm, and after a little ſtirring him in his Stall, if he grow ſickiſh, give him liberty to lie down; then after two hours faſting give him a ſweet Maſh, and feed as at other times; or if you find him ſick, give him a Pint of warm Milk down his Throat, and he will be quickly well. For Coſtiveneſs, rake out his hard Dung, then boil an Ounce of each of theſe things in a Quart of Beer, *viz.* Aniſeed, Fenugreek, Linſeed, and the Powder of Piony, and give him a Pint of it lukewarm.

To cure a Horſe that is ſwelled after Blood-letting.

Take Linſeed-Oil, Hogs-greaſe, and Red Lead mix'd together, and melt them together over the Fire, keeping them ſtirring till it becomes cold, or elſe the Red Lead will ſink all to the bottom; then rub it once a day well in with your Finger till the Swelling be down, and this will diſſolve the hardeſt Knot that is. If it be in the Winter, you muſt heat it in with a hot Fire-ſhovel; but if it be in the Summer, the Sun will do the ſame thing.

Ano-

Another for a Horse that hath taken cold after Blood-letting, or that hath been prick'd by some rusty Fleam, so that it wrankles.

Take Soap and Brandy, and dissolve them together cold, and wash the Place with it, is good for them; so is the Ointment or Oil of Populeon, the Place grieved being anointed with it. Or Pitch both white and black, of equal parts alike, melted together, and apply'd hot upon the end of a Lath, and Flox or Hurds stuck upon it till they come off of themselves, is also a very good Cure.

They are both very cooling things.

Things good to cure a Bone-Spavin.

Tho this is a very hard thing to cure, yet I shall give you such Receipts as I find in an eminent Author.

First, Take up the Vein which feeds it, and let him bleed well, and do no more to him that day: the next day shave away the Hair from off it, and rub it hard with a Rolling-Pin, (having first anointed the place with Petroleum, and chafed it well with your Hand) or some other round and smooth Stick, Morning and Evening, for four days together, and at the fourth day's end slit down the Skin with your Incision-Knife the full length of the Spavin; but be very careful you touch not the great Artery or Vein, both which do lie very near; for if you do but hurt that, you maim the Horse past all recovery; having thus done, lay to the Place the Herb called *Flamula*, bruise it and bind it on so fast that it fall not off in two days more: then for three days after, take Cantharides and Euphorbium, and incorporate them well together (being before beaten to powder) with black Soap and Bay-salt, and lay this to the Place, and thus dress it every Morning, and this will lay the Bone and Crust bare: after take Fern-roots, Hounds-tongue, and Boars-grease, incorporate all these together, and lay to the place till you perceive the Crust to be loose, and to be wasted; and now and then try to loosen it with your Cornet, or other Instrument, and if you can conveniently take it off, do so; which done, heal up the Wound with your green Ointment prescribed in my First Part. But if you find a Swelling begin to arise in the Spavin-place, whereby you suspect it, then for the prevention thereof, after you have first shaved away the Hair, anoint the place with natural Balsam for two or three days together; then repress the

the Humour with this Charge; Take three Ounces of the Oil of Roſes, Bole-Armoniack one Ounce, Wheat-Flower half an Ounce, and the White of an Egg; make all theſe into one Body, and every day after you have anointed it with Balſam, lay on the ſaid Charge.

Things good in general for all manner of Burnings or Scaldings, either by Shot, Gunpowder, or Wildfire.

The Leaves or Roots of the yellow Lilly, Daffodil ſtamped with Honey, the Juice of an Onion, the Juice of the red Lilly, Lettice, the Juice of Thorn-Apples boiled in Hogs-greaſe to the form of an Ointment, cures all manner of Burnings or Scaldings whatſoever in a very ſhort time; Water-Plantain, the Juice of Houſleek, St. *John's*-wort bruiſed, the Herb Tutſan or Park-leaves, an Ointment made of the Juice of Cowſlips, and Oil of Linſeed, cureth all manner of Scaldings or Burnings whatſoever: Ivy that groweth upon Walls or Trees, Brank-Urſin, the Juice of Elder-leaves, the Decoction or the diſtilled Water of Archangel, the Flowers and Herb of Ladies-Bedſtraw made into an Oil by ſetting it in the Sun, is good. The Leaves of the Burdock bruiſed with the White of an Egg, is a moſt excellent thing for all manner of Burnings by Fire; the Juice of Colts-foot, the Decoction of Daſies, Wallwort and Agrimony, cureth inward Burnings being given inwardly; the Decoction of the Leaves of Brank-urſin.

Particular Receipts to allay Burning with Shot, Gunpowder, or Wildfire.

Take Varniſh and put it into fair Water, and beat them very well together; then pour away the Water from the Varniſh, and anoint the place burned with a Feather dipt into it, and in a few days dreſſing it will kill the Fire: which done, heal the Sore with your carnifying and healing Salves.

Another.

Take Hogs-greaſe and ſet it on the Fire, and take off the Filth that ſhall ariſe, and when it is well boiled, take it off the Fire and put it into an earthen Pan to cool, for four or five Nights together in the open Air; then waſh it in fair running Water ſo often till it become white; then melt it down again, and keep it for your Uſe, and anoint the place grieved, and it will cure him.

Ano-

Another.

Take fresh Butter and the Whites of Eggs, as much of each as will suffice; beat them well together till you bring them to a formal Ointment, and anoint the Places burned therewith, and it will speedily take away the Fire, and cure them soundly.

Another.

Take a Stone of Quick-Lime, which must be well burned, which you may know by its Lightness, dissolve it in fair Water, and when he Water is setled, strain the clearest through a fine Cloth; then put into the Water either the Oil of Hemp-seed or Sallet-Oil, of like quantity with the Water, and so beat them well together, you shall have an excellent Unguent, very precious for all sorts of Burnings. And the Nature of these three Unguents is to leave no Scars; wherefore we apply them for most sovereign Remedies, as well for Man as Beast.

To help a Horse that is Costive in his Body.

Take a Decoction of Mallows one Quart; Sallet-Oil half a Pint, or fresh Butter half a Pound; Benedicta Laxativa one Ounce; give him this bloodwarm glister-wise: then clap his Tail to his Tuel, and hold it close, and make him keep it for half an Hour at the least, and when it hath worked, give him a sweet Mash, and so keep him to Mashes and White-Water for two or three days.

What is good to make a Horse draw up his Yard.

To bathe his Yard and Sheath with Whitewine made warm; then anoint it with Oil of Roses and Live-Honey mingled together, and so put up the Yard into the Sheath, and with a short Bolster of Canvas, keep it from falling down, and dress him once every day till he be well, and let his Back and Fillets be kept warm, and anoint him with Acopium, but if you have it not, apply this Charge unto his Back and Fillets:

Take Bole-Armoniack, the Whites of Eggs, Wheat-Meal, Sanguis Draconis, *Venice* Turpentine, and strong Whitewine-Vinegar, of each as much as you think fit; mix them well together, and charge his Back with it, as also his Sheath and his Stones.

Another.

Take the Ashes of Ashen-wood, the whitest, finest and best burned, and search them, one Pound of red Clay dried,

ed, and made into fine Powder, Bole-Armoniack Half an Ounce powdered; boil all these in as much Verjuice of the Crab, as will make it liquid like Pap, and with it anoint his Yard, Sheath and Stones, Morning and Evening, and he shall be peesently cured.

A Receipt to scour and cleanse a Horse's Yard, that is foul and furred by pissing within his Sheath.

Draw forth his Yard, and rub and prick off the Filth with your Hand, and cleanse it well with Butter and Whitewine-Vinegar melted together, and squirt some of it up into his Yard with a Syringe, and he will do well.

A Receipt to prevent Diseases in a Horse the whole Year.

The first Day of *April* open a Vein in the Neck, and if it be good take the less; if bad, take the more: then from that Day, until the first of *May* give him this which I shall prescribe, and let him have it Morning and Evening during the whole Month of *April*, from the first to the last, which is before his turning out to Grass or Soiling, which shall be about the middle of *May*, and let him have the same all the whole Month of *October*, (like as you must do in *April*) after you have taken him from Grass about *Bartholomew*-Tide. That which I prescribe is this.

To prevent Diseases.

Take a Bushel of old Rye, sweet and clean, well purged, or made clean from all Filth, and put it in a clean Iron Pot, dry, and without Water, put it over the Fire, and put in your Rye, and keep it continually stirring to the bottom, until it be so parched that it becometh black, hard, and dry; then take it from the Fire and put it into some clean Vessel, and when it is cold keep it close stopt for your use. When you use it, take two or three Handfuls of it, and beat it into fine powder, and mingle it amongst his Provender at every Watering, Morning and Evening, or at other times when you give him Oats; do this these two entire Months of *April* and *October*, for all Men hold that in these two Months the Blood turneth and altereth, as we alter his Diet from hard and dry Meat to Grass, and so likewise from Grass to dry Meats: for this Rye thus parched and ordered, doth refine the Blood, cool the Liver, and purgeth the Spleen, so as the whole Structure of the Body is thereby better

better cured and freed from all ſuch bad and unnatural Humours, which would otherwiſe make the Body inclinable to ſundry Maladies and Diſeaſes, which this Rye preventeth.

Things good to keep a Horſe from Caſting forth his Drink.

As it proceeds from Cold in the Stomach, or other Cauſes, as Cold in the Head, where the Rheum binding about the Roots and Kernels of the Tongue, hath as it were ſtrangled and made ſtreight the Paſſages to the Stomach; therefore to prevent this Miſchief, you muſt give him cordial and warm Drinks; as Malmſey, Cinnamon, Anniſeeds and Cloves, well brewed and mingled together, and to anoint his Breaſt and under his Shoulders, with either the Oil of Cypreſs, Oil of Spike, or the Oil of Pepper, and to purge him with Fumes or Pills, for ſuch Fumigation joining with theſe hot Oils, will ſoon diſſolve the Humours.

A particular Receipt for the Cure of it.

This Infirmity comes alſo by Glut of Provender, or by eating of raw or green Food, as new Peaſe or Beans, *&c.* You may alſo take this courſe for the Recovery of him, *viz.* To give him comfortable things; as Diapente boiled in Beer or Ale, and the like: Or to keep him faſting, and let him have no Meat, but what he is willing to take out of your Hand, *viz.* Bread, Hay, Oats, *&c.* Let his Drink be new Milk till his Stomach returns to him again. 'Tis alſo very good to bring him to his Stomach again, to put a Piece of four brown Bread, ſteeped in Vinegar, into a Bag, and hang it at his Noſe for him to ſmell of it.

Things good in general for the hungry-Evil.

To comfort his Stomach by giving him great Slices of white Bread, toaſted and ſteeped in Sack, or to let him drink Wheat-flower and Wine mingled together; or to make him Bread of Pine-Nuts, and Wine mingled together; but there is nothing better than moderate feeding of the Horſe many times in the day, with wholeſom Bean-Bread well baked, or Oats well dried and ſifted.

Particular Receipts for a Horſe that hath ſwallowed down Hens-dung, or any other venomous thing.

Take a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and two Spoonfuls of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and as much of the Powder of

Diapente, and brewing them well together, give it him to drink, and for want of Diapente, so much of the shaving of Ivory, or of an old Stag's-Horn especially, the Tips thereof burnt; or three Spoonfuls of the Powder of Sowthistle given him in a Pint of Ale or Beer.

Another.

Take of the Urine of a Man, as it cometh warm from him, one Pint, of Bay-Salt a Handful; stir them well together, and give it him, and after walk him up and down for half an Hour. If you desire to see more Receipts, you must look for things that are good to expel Poison.

Things good for Pain in the Teeth, loose Teeth, Wolfs Teeth and Jaw-Teeth.

For loose Teeth the Cure is to prick all his Gums over with a Lancet, making them bleed well; then rub them all over with Sage and Salt, or with the Leaves of Elecampane, and it will fasten them.

The Pains of his Teeth come by means of Distillation of Humours, which is cured by rubbing all the outside of his Gums with fine Chalk and strong Vinegar mixt together; or after they are so washed, to strew upon them the Powder of Pomegranate-Pills; or to cover the Temples of the Head, with a Plaster of Rosin and Mastick molten together. Now for the Cure of the Woolfs Teeth or Jaw-Teeth, tie up his Head to some Post or Rafter, and after you have opened his Mouth with a Cord, so wide as you can see any Part thereof, take an Instrument of Iron made like unto a Carpenter's Gouge, and with your left Hand, set the Edge of the Tool to the foot of the Wolfs Teeth on the outside of the Jaw, turning the Hollow of the said Tool downwards, knock it out as steadily as you can with your Mallet, and put some Salt finely brayed into the Holes. Now if the upper Jaw-Teeth do hang over the nether Jaw-Teeth, and so cut the inside of the Mouth; then take your Gouge and Mallet, and pare the Teeth shorter by little and little, turning the hollow Side of your Tool downwards towards the Teeth, by which means you shall not cut the inside of his Cheeks; then with your File, file them all smooth without any Ruggedness, and then wash his Mouth with Vinegar and Salt.

Things good in general for the Crick in the Neck.

The Cure is to thrust a sharp hot Iron through the Flesh of the

Neck in five several Places, three Inches distant from one nother, and to have a care you touch not any Sinew, and owl all of them with Horse hair, Flax or Hemp, for the space fifteen Days, and anoint the Rowels with Hogs-grease, and e Neck will soon be restored; or to bathe the Horse's Neck with the Oil of Peter, or the Oil of Spike very hot, nd then roll it up in wet Hay, or rotten Litter, and keep- g him very warm, without using any Burning, Wound- g, or other Violence, he will do well: the Leaves or oots of Down or Cotton-thistle given inwardly, or the eaves or Roots of the Fullers-thistle, Eringo or Sea-holly, Vinegar and Patch-grease melted together, and chafed in ry hot against the Hair, and afterwards bathed in with oap and Vinegar mixt together, is very good.

A certain Way to raise up the Crest that is fallen,

Is first to raise it up with your Hand, and to place it here it ought to stand; then having one standing on the me side the Crest falleth from, let him with one Hand old up the Crest, and with the other thrust out the bottom f it, so as it may stand upright; then on that side to hich it falleth, with a hot Iron (somewhat broad on the dge) drawing his Neck first at the bottom of the Crest, hen in the midst of it, and lastly at the setting on of the air, and to draw it through the Skin and no deeper; hen on the other side (from whence the Crest falleth) ga- her up the Skin with your Hand, and with two Plasters of hoemakers-Wax, laid one against the other at the Edge of he Wound, and with smooth Splints to stay the Skin, hat it may shrink neither upward nor downward; then ith a Pair of sharp Sciffars clip away all the spare Skin hich you had gathered with your Hand; then with a eedle and some red Silk, stitch the Skin together in divers aces, and to keep the Skin from breaking, stitch the dges of the Plaster also; then anoint the Sore with Tur- entine, Honey and Wax melted together, and the Places hich you drew with a hot Iron, with Piece-grease made arm, and thus do twice a day till it be whole; and ve great care that your Splints shrink not. But the st Cure for this Infirmity, is to let him blood, and to ep him very well, for Strength and Fatness will ever raise e Crest.

Things good for a Horſe that is Wrung, or hurt in the Withers.

If you find that by taking off the Saddle his Withers are ſwoln, clap on the Saddle again, and lay upon the Place ſome wet Litter; then take up a thin Turf of Graſs and Earth together, and put into the Fire, and let it there remain till it become red Hot; then take it out, and moiſten the graſſy ſide very well with Whitewine-Vinegar; then take off the wet Litter, and lay the Turf very Hot with the graſſy ſide next to the Place, and ſo put on the Saddle again, and let it ſo remain all Night: and this preſently helpeth any Swelling in the Withers, or any other part of the Back, as alſo any Swellings by Spur-Galls. But if the Skin be broken or ulcerated, then take ſweet Butter, Bay-ſalt and the Powder of Frankincenſe, of each as much as will ſuffice; boil all theſe together, and with a Clout faſtened upon a Stick, dip it into it ſcalding hot, and ſcald it two or three times; But if it be full of Corruption, then make inciſion on both ſides beneath, that the matterative Stuff may the more eaſily void away downwards, and heal it up with your Powder of Lime and Honey; or to anoint it well with the Oil of Turpentine, and it will either aſſuage or break the Swelling; and if it be broke, ſqueeze forth the Corruption, and drop ſome of the ſaid Oil into it Morning and Evening, and it will both cleanſe and heal it. But if the Skin be only galled off, take Cream and Soot, well mixt together, and lay upon the Sore, and it will heal it preſently, if the Wound be not very deep.

Things good in general for ſwelled Cods.

If it come of Rankneſs of Seed, or of Blood, then let him have a Mare, and let him cover her two or three days together; and half an Hour after ride him into the Water above the Cods or Stones againſt the Stream, and he will do well. But if it come of other cauſes, take the Lees of Claret-Wine, or for want of that, the Dregs of ſtrong Beer and Cummin-ſeed made into fine Powder, and a little Wheat and Bean-Flower; boil them all together to an Ointment, and anoint his Cods warm therewith; then draw forth his Yard, and waſh that and his Sheath alſo with Whitewine-Vinegar, and three or four Hours after ride him into the Water above the Cods, and let him ſtand in the Water ſome ſhort time, and to ride him againſt the Stream; do this every day till the Swelling be aſſuaged. Or take the Roots of wild Cucumbers and white Salt, boil them in fair Water

to an Ointment, and anoint his Cods with it warm, and then apply this Ointment: Take Goats-grease, or Deers-suet, the White of an Egg and Sallet-Oil; boil them gently, and anoint his Cods therewith: but this must be after he hath been ridden into the Water, and dry again.

A charge for Swelled Cods.

Take Bole-Armoniack beaten into fine Powder, Vinegar and the Whites of Eggs well beaten together, and anoint him therewith daily, till it be abated; and if it impostuate, where you find it to be soft, open it with a hot Iron, or with your Incision-Knife, if it break not of it self; and heal it up with your green Ointment, taught you as aforesaid.

Another for any Bite or Bruise on his Cods, which cause them to Swell very much.

To remedy this Accident, wash and bathe them very well with warm Whey, Morning and Evening, for three or four days together, and anoint them after it with the Oil or Ointment of Populeon, till you find the Swelling abated, keeping his Cods warm with a Linen-Bay, made in the nature of a Purse, and drawn easily over them. If you find that the Swelling is abated, you may then apply the common Charge of Soap and Brandy to it very hot, which will knit the Strings of his Cods together again; but if you find that they are so torn, that you question his Cure, then the best way in my opinion is to geld him.

They are both very cooling Things.

A most excellent Bath, which is not only good for swelled or bruised Cods, but for all manner of Bruises in any Part of the Body, from Head to Foot.

Take two Quarts of the strongest Ale you can get; then set it over the Fire in a large Skillet or Pipkin, and put to it two good Handfuls of the Rind of the Blackberry-bush, and let it Simper away till it come to a Quart; then strain it forth and keep it for your use.

How you are to use it.

Bathe the grieved Part, Night and Morning, with it very hot, and heat it very well in by the Fire; then dip a Linen Cloth in the same, and bind it up hot. When you have done,

peel off the Bark towards the Root, (when you gather it) for that is the beſt.

This is a very great Strengthner of any weak Member, by either Bruiſe, Strain or Pain.

Things good in general for Burſting or Ruptures in Horſes.

Though I hold it incurable, yet I ſhall give you thoſe things that work much good, though no abſolute Cure. Theſe things are great Knitters, and are to be taken inwardly: Valerian, Rupture-wort, Croſs-wort, Cranes bill, the Powder of the Roots of Chammack, the Leaves and Nuts of the Cypreſs, Elm Leaves or the Bark thereof, Corn-Flag; any of theſe things given inwardly, with the outward means uſed, maketh the Cure the more effectual. The outward means is this; bring the Horſe into a Place where there is a Beam overthwart, and ſtrew it thick with Straw; then put on four ſtrong Paſterns, with four Rings on his Feet, and faſten one end of a long Rope to one of thoſe Rings, with the looſe End of the Rope, and ſo draw all his Fore-feet together, and he will fall; then caſt the Rope over the Beam, and hoiſt him up ſo, that he may lie flat on his Back with his Legs upwards without ſtrugling; then bathe his Stones well with warm Water and Butter molten together, and the Stones being ſomewhat warm and well mollified, raiſe them up from the Body with both your Hands, being cloſed by the Fingers cloſe together, and holding the Stones in your Hands in ſuch manner, work down the Gut into the Body of the Horſe, by ſtroaking it downwards continually with your two Thumbs, until you perceive that ſide of the Stone to be as ſmall as the other; and ſo having returned the Gut to the right place, take a Liſt of two Fingers broad, throughly anointed with freſh Butter, and tie his Stones both together with the ſame, ſo nigh the Body as may be, yet not overhard, but ſo as you may put your Finger between. That done, take the Horſe quietly down, and lead him gently into the Stable, and keep him warm, and let him not be ſtirred for the ſpace of three Weeks; but forget not the next day after you have placed his Gut in his true place, to unlooſen the Liſt, and to take it away, and as well at that time as every day once or twice after, to caſt a Diſh or two of cold Water up upon his Cods, and that will make him to ſhrink up his Stones, and thereby to reſtrain the Gut from falling down; and at the three Weeks end, to make the Cure ſo much the ſurer, take away the Stone on that ſide he is burſten,

so he shall hardly be burſten on that ſide again. And during the Cure let him not eat much, nor drink much, and let his Drink be always warm.

A particular Receipt for the Rupture.

Take common Pitch, Sanguis Draconis, Powder of Bole-Armoniack, Maſtick and Frankincenſe, of each an Ounce, and make a Plaſter thereof, and lay it upon his Loins, and upon the Rupture, and let it remain there till it fall off of it ſelf, and it will cure him; conditionally you give him ſome ſtrengthning things inwardly, which you may find variety of, if you look for general Things good for Ruptures.

Particular Receipts for the Botch in the Groin of a Horſe, which is a hard Swelling there, which will cauſe his Legs to ſwell, eſpecially from the Cambrels or Hoofs upwards.

The cure is to ripen it with this Plaſter: Take of Wheat-Flower, of Turpentine and of Honey, of each a like quantity, ſtirring it together to make a ſtiff Plaſter, and with a Cloth lay it on the Sore, renewing it once every day till it break or wax ſoft; and then lance it, ſo as the matter may run downwards; then tent it with Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

Another for the Botch in the Groin, or any Impoſthumation.

As ſoon as you can perceive the Swelling to appear, lay upon it a Plaſter of Shoemakers-Wax ſpread upon Allum-Leather, and let it lie until the Sore grow ſoft; then open it with a Lancet, or let it break of it ſelf: when the Filth is come out, waſh the Sore very well with ſtrong Allum-Water; then tent it with the Ointment, called Ægyptiacum, till it be whole.

A Receipt to cure the Mellet, which is a dry Scab, that groweth upon the Heel of the Fore-feet.

Take of ordinary Honey half a Pint, black Soap a quarter of a Pound; mix them ogether, then put thereto four or five Spoonfuls of Vinegar and as much Allum, finely beaten and imburned, as a Hen's-Egg, and of Rye-Flower two Spoonfuls, mix them very well together, and having clipped away the Hair, apply it to it plaſter-wiſe, ſo far as the Sorrance goeth, and let it ſo remain for five days; then take it away, and waſh all the Leg, Foot and Sorrance, with

powdered Beef-Broth, and after rope up his Legs with Thumb-Bands of ſoft Hay wet in the ſame Liquor, and he will be ſound. You are to remember that whenſoever you are to dreſs the Sorrance, you take off the dry Scab, or whatever cruſty thing ſhall be upon the Place, and to waſh it very clean.

A Receipt for the Hough-bonny.

To ripen it either with rotten Litter, or Hay boiled in old Urine, or elſe with a Plaſter of Wine-Lees, and Wheat-Flower boiled together, to ripen the Swelling, and bring it to Putrefaction, or elſe to drive the Swelling away; but if it come to a Head, to lance it in the loweſt part of the Softneſs, with a thin hot Iron to let out the Matter; then to tent it with Turpentine, Deers-Suet and Wax, of each alike molten together, laying a Plaſter of the ſame Salve over it, to hold in the Tent, until it be perfectly well.

Things good in general for the Cure of the Fig in a Horſe's-Foot.

Cut away the Hoof ſo as there may be a convenient ſpace betwixt the Sole and the Hoof, to the end the Fig may the more eaſily be cured; then put to the Sorrance a piece of a Spunge, which you are to bind cloſe upon it, which will eat it off to the very Root, and heal it up with your green Ointment, in my firſt Part. Or to cut it away cloſe with your Inciſion-Knife; or elſe to burn it off with a hot Iron, (which is the better way,) then for two days after lay tried Hogs-greaſe to it, to take away the Fire; take then the Tops of the moſt angrieſt Nettles you can find, pound them very ſmall, and ſo lay them upon a Linen-Cloth, juſt the bigneſs of the Fig; then take the Powder of Verdegreaſe, and ſtrew it upon the chopped Nettles, (which muſt be done before you lay it to the Sorrance,) and ſo bind it upon the Sorrance, renewing it every day once, till the Hoof have recovered the Sore.

To cure Bliſters.

Fret them in the Sun till they bleed; then take the Roots of Ivy, and ſtamping them in a Mortar, mix them with as much Tar, Brimſtone and Allum, till they come to a Salve, and dreſs it therewith, and it will heal it.

Things good in general for Knots in the Joints, Hardneſs, Cramps, or any Inflammations.

The Powder of Diapente beaten with Linſeed-Oil, or Sallet-Oil, to an Ointment, and applied once a day to the Grief

Grief is good for the Cramp or Inflammation; or Wine, Oil and Tar mingled together as it is boiled, is good; or Mustard, Hog's-grease and Bay-Salt mixed together with Vinegar, and applied, is good; or take a Plaster of Figs and the Roots of Fern and Rochet mingled with Hogs-grease and Wine-Vinegar; or take dry Pitch, Pitch of *Greece*, of each one part, of Galbanum and Lime, of each four parts, of Bitumen two parts, of Wax three parts, melt them all together, and anoint the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the Grief.

A particular Receipt to cure a Knot that is moving in the Place where it grows.

If you find in any part of your Horse's Body a Knot or Kernel that feels soft, and slips up and down in the Skin when you handle it; take your Incision-Knife, and slit the Skin right over against it, so wide, that you may pinch the Knot out to cut it off: When you have so done, to stanch the bleeding of it, sear the Inside of it with a hot Iron, and stop the Wound, either with the Powder of Bole-Armoniack or Hare's-Wool. The next day unstop it, and wash the Wound clean with a Linen-Rag tied upon a Stick, dipped in Verjuice or Whitewine-Vinegar; then dry up the Moisture that you shall find therein with a Linen-Rag also, and heal it up with your green Ointment in the first Part, or what other healing Salve you think best fit for the purpose.

Observation.

In all Wounds that you have in Cure, be sure you cleanse and wash them very well, before you apply any healing Medicine to them.

Another to take away the Knots under the Caul, occasioned by Heats and Colds.

Brandy and Soap dissolved together over the Fire, and chafed in very well hot with your Hand, and heated in afterwards by holding a hot Fireshovel before it, will either sink or break them. Or Butter or Hogs-grease used after the same manner is very good.

Observations upon dressing of them.

Before you anoint them sear away the Hair with a Candle, and in a Fortnight's time, or little more, they will remove, conditionally you give him some inward Medicine for a Cold.

How

How to cure Wounds made with the Shot of Gun-powder.

Search first if the Bullet be in the Wound, if it be, take it out with an Instrument made for that purpose, but if you cannot get it out, you must have patience, for Nature it self will wear it out of its own accord, without any Impediment; for Lead is of that nature that it will not canker: then to kill the Fire, drop in some Varnish into it with a Feather to the Bottom, and stop up the Mouth of the Wound with some soft Flax dipt likewise in the same; then charge all the swollen place with this Charge: Take of Bole-Armoniack a Quartern, of Linseed beaten into powder half a Pound, of Bean-Flower as much, and three or four Eggs, shells and all, and of Turpentine a Quartern, and of Vinegar a Quart; mingle them well together upon the Fire, and being somewhat warm, charge all the sore Place with part thereof, and clap a Cloth upon it to keep the Wound warm, continuing so doing every day for four or five days together; then at the fifth day's end leave anointing it, and tent it to the Bottom with a Tent dipt in Hogs-grease and Turpentine melted together, renewing, once or twice every day till the Fire is killed, which you shall perceive by the Mattering of the Wound, and by falling of the Swelling; for so long as the Fire hath the upper Hand, no thick Matter will issue forth, but only a thin yellowish Water, neither will the Swelling assuage; and then of Turpentine, washed in nine several Waters, half a Pound, and three Yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and tent it with this Ointment, renewing it every day once till the Wound be whole. But if the Shot be got quite through the Wouud, then take a few Weavers Linen Thrums made very knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them through the Wound, running them up and down in the Wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the Wound on either side upon the swollen places with the Charge aforesaid, until you perceive that the Fire is killed; then clap on a comfortable Plaster upon one of the Holes, and tent the other with a Tent in the Salve made of wash'd Turpentine, Eggs and Saffron, as is beforesaid. Some Farriers use to kill the Fire with the Oil of Cream, and to heal up the Wound with Turpentine, Wax and Hogs-grease melted together; or to kill it with Snow-water, and charge the swelled place with Cream and Barm beaten together, and to heal up the Wound by dipping a Tent in the Yolk of an Egg, Honey, and Saffron, well beaten together.

Bones

Bones being broken and out of Joint to cure.

If your Horſe hath any broken Bone, then take a double ſtrong Canvas, whith ought to be as broad as the Horſe's Fore-Shoulders to his Flanks; then you ſhall have another double Canvas, which ſhall come from between his Fore-booths up to the top of the Wither, whereat meeting with the reſt of the Canvas, and having very ſtrong Loops and Ropes faſtned to them, ſling him up upon ſome Beam, no higher then that his Feet may touch the Ground; and if it be a Fore-leg that is broken, raiſe him up then higher before than behind; and if a hinder, then a little higher behind than before, ſo that he may reſt moſt upon the Members that are ſoundeſt. When he is thus ſlung, put the Bone into the right Place, and wrap it cloſe up with unwaſhed Wool, newly pulled from the Sheeps-Back, bound faſt to the Leg with a ſmooth Linen-Roller, ſoaked before in Oil and Vinegar mingled together, and look that your Roller lie as ſmooth and as plain as may be; and upon that again lay more Wool dipt in Oil and Vinegar, and then ſplint it with three broad, ſmooth and ſtrong Splints, binding them faſt at both ends with a Thong, and be ſure to keep out his Leg ſtrait for the ſpace of forty days, and looſen not the Bones above thrice in twenty days, unleſs it ſhrink, and ſo require to be new dreſt and bound again; and fail not to pour on every day through the Splints, Sallet-Oil and Vinegar mingled together: And if at the forty days end you find that the broken Places be ſoddered together with ſome hard Knob or Griſtle, then looſe the bands, and eaſe the Canvas, ſo as the Horſe may tread more firmly upon his Fore-Foot, which if he doth, looſe him altogether, and let him go up and down fair and gently, uſing from henceforth to anoint the Place with ſoft Greaſe; or to take of Liquid Pitch one Pound, of Wax two Ounces, of the pureſt and fineſt Part of Frankincenſe one Ounce, of Amoniacum four Ounces, of dry Rozin and Galbanum, of each one Ounce, of Vinegar two Pints; boil firſt the Vinegar and Pitch together, then put in the Amoniacum diſſolved firſt in Vinegar, and after that the aforeſaid Drugs, and being united in one, ſtrain it, and make it into a Plaſter, and uſe it according to your occaſion; or to take a Quart of old Sallet-Oil, and put to it of Hogs-greaſe and of Spickma,

If the Bone do fall in its true Place again, it will give on a ſudden a great Crack.

See my firſt Part for conglutinating things good in general, or Strengthners of Parts out of Joint.

Nitre

Nitre, of each one Pound, boiled together till they begin to bubble above; then take it from the Fire, and when you uſe it, let it be chafed in very hot, and then the former Plaſter folded about it, which is very comfortable for a broken Bone.

A Bath very good for broken Bones.

To a Gallon of ſtanding Lye put theſe things here under-written, *viz.* Knot-graſs two Handfuls, Plantain two Handfuls, Comfrey a Handful, Wormwood a Handful; boil theſe very well in the Lye, and while it is warm, bathe the afflicted Member therewith: and give him alſo at the ſame time inwardly, the Buds of Elder (gathered in *March*) boiled in running Water for ſeveral Mornings together, in half a Hornful of Sallet-Oil and Vinegar, and it will much avail to the knitting of the Bones.

A Receipt to cure a Stifled Horſe.

After you have tied down his Head to the Manger, then take a Cord and faſten it to the Paſtern of the ſtifled Leg, and draw his Leg forwards, and ſo the Bone will come right, by helping it up with your Hand; which being in, your care muſt be to keep it in with your Hand, and then tie the other end of the Cord to the Rack, ſo as he may not put back his Leg, to diſlocate the Bone for an Hour or two after, till it be ſettled and dreſſed; wherefore let his Keeper ſtand by him all the while, leſt he ſhould lie down, or be unruly. Take Pitch, which you muſt have molten in a Pot in a readineſs, and with a Clout upon a Stick anoint his Stifling three or four Inches broad at leaſt, and ten Inches long and preſently before the Pitch can cool, have a ſtrong Piece of new Canvas cut fit for that Purpoſe, which being made very warm by a Fire, clap it upon the Place ſo neatly that the Bone cannot go forth again. This Plaſter muſt not lie towards the Flank and Foot long-ways, but croſs-ways upon the Joint, as it were about the Thigh, otherwiſe it cannot hold in the Bone. Having thus done, anoint the Plaſter on the out-ſide all over with the ſaid molten Pitch, and whilſt it is warm, clap Flox of the Horſes Colour all over the out-ſide of the Canvas, and let the Plaſter remain on till it fall away of it ſelf; and after that you may apply ſuch good Unguents as you may think moſt expedient fo the Malady: But if the Bone be not out, then put in a *French* Rowel, a little beneath the ſtifling Place, and let it remain in fifteen days, turning it once every day, and at fifteen days end take it forth, and

and heal up the Orifice with your green Ointment in my firſt Part.

Another which is very good.

The only way for the Cure of this Imperfection, is the common way that Farriers generally uſe, *viz.* To ſwim him in ſome deep River or Pond, till he ſweat about the Ears, which will put the Bone in its right place again: When you think that he hath ſwam enough, take him out of the Water, and throw an old Blanket over him to prevent catching of Cold, and lead him Home gently; when you have him in the Stable, put a Wedge of Wood about the breadth of a Six-pence between his Toe and his Shoe on the contrary Foot behind, and when you find him throughly dry, anoint him upon the grieved Part with Piece-greaſe, or Oil of Turpentine and ſtrong Beer, of equal Parts alike, well ſhaked and mix'd together in a Glaſs-Viol; chafe it in very well with your Hand, one holding at the ſame time before it a hot Bar of Iron, or Fire-ſhovel, to make it ſink in the better. Or for want of them, you may apply unto it Brandy, and common Soap, and ſtrong Beer, mix'd together, and uſed as you did the Turpentine. Theſe are very ſharp Medicines, (eſpecially the Turpentine) which will cauſe the Place to ſwell and heave up; but fear them not, for they will work a ſpeedy Cure.

To cure the String-halt.

Take up the Vein in the Thigh, and then anoint all the Leg and the Thigh from the Body down to the very Foot, a long time together, holding a red hot Fire-ſhovel to the Place, and let him be anointed with this Ointment.

Take of the Oil Petrolium, of the Oil of Worms, of the Oil of Nerval, of Patch or Piece-greaſe, of the Oil of Spike, of each one Ounce, of *London*-Treacle two Ounces, and of Hogs-greaſe one Pound; melt all theſe upon the Fire: then take it off, and keep it ſtirring till it be throughly cold, and with this anoint the viſited Member every day once, and then wiſp him with a ſoft Thumb-band of Hay from the Paſtern to the top of the Hoof; and thus do for ten days together, rubbing and chafing in the Ointment very well a long time together, holding a hot Fire-ſhovel near it, the better to cauſe it to ſink into the Sinews, Nerves and Joints. But after you have done anointing him, keep him warm and well littered, and let the Thumb-bands be daily made leſſer and leſſer, and ſhorter

Patch or Piece-greaſe is the Tallow that is gotten from Shoemakers ſhreds.

ſhorter and ſhorter, till you perceive him to uſe both Legs alike, and your Horſe to be recovered; but you muſt not ride him that he may ſweat much, in a Month after: and ſo ſoon as warm Weather cometh, turn him to graſs in ſome dry Paſture, where is Water, and take him up again about *Bartholomew*-Tide, or before the Cold cometh; and whilſt he doth remain in the Stable keep him warm, and ſo he will be free of his String-halt, and be a ſound Horſe again. To anoint him alſo with Acopium is very good. With this Receipt *De Grey* ſays he hath cured ſundry Horſes of this Malady.

How to make your Unguentum Theriacum, *which is good for any Ach in the Joints, Griefs in the Hip, Stifling. Place, Legs, Shoulders, Paſtern, or any other part of the Legs, a Back Sinew-ſprain only excepted.*

Take Nerval, of Oil of Pamphylion, and of black Soap, of each two Ounces, and of tried Hogs-greaſe half a Pound; melt them all upon a gentle Fire: and being molten put into it of ordinary Treacle two Penniworth; then take it from the Fire, and keep it ſtirring till it be cold, then will it be of a dun Colour; keep it in a Gally-Pot for your uſe, and when you uſe it, anoint the Place grieved with the ſame, rubbing and chafing it in very well, and heating it well in with a hot Fire-ſhovel.

Hot Simples in General.

Agarick, Aloes, Allum, Anniſeeds, Ariſtolochia, Aſſafœtida, Aſonteo, Aſarabacca, Arſmart, Archangle, Angelica, Alexander, Alehoof, Balm, Garden-Bazil, Bayberries, wild running Betony ſmelling like Marjoram; Burrage is hot and cold, ſo is Brank-urſin, Briony, Broom, Butter-bur, Burdock, Brimſtone, Celandine, Chervil, Garden-Clary, Clowns Wound-wort, Calamus, Coloquintida, Garden-cummin, Chamock, Cinnamon, Cloves, China, Darnel, Elecampane, Fennel, Gentian, Garlick, Germander, ſtinking Gladwin, Golden-Rod, Gromel, *Engliſh* Galangale, Ginger; Glaſswort is ſo hot that it hath a coſtive burning Quality, Galls, Grains of Paradiſe, Galbanum, Hempſeed, Garden-Hyſop, Honey, St. *John's*-wort, Juniper-berries, Ivy, Iack-by-the-Hedge, Iris, Knee-holm, Lavender, Lavender-cotten, Ladies-ſmocks, Garden-Lilly, Lovage, Leeks, Mallows and Marſh-mallows, wild Marjoram, ſweet Marjoram, Marigolds, Maſter wort, Melilote, *French* and Dogs-Mercury, Spear-

Spearmint, Misletoe, Mother-wort, Mouse-ear, Mug-wort, Mustard-seed, Neesing-roots, Nutmeg, One-blade, Pepper, Rag-wort, Rest-harrow, the wild Rochet, Rosemary, Garden-Rue, Saffron, Sage, Sanicle, Saracens Consound, Savin, common Saxifrage, Burnet-Saxifrage, Scabious, *English* Scurvey-Grass, Self-heal Smallage, Soap-wort, Southernwood, Sea-Starwort, Staves-acre, Garden-Tansy, Thyme, Tutsan, Turmerick, Valerian, Vervain, Wold, Weld or Dyers-weed, Fenugreek, Cochineal, *London*-Treacle.

Cooling Simples in General.

Clove-Gilly flowers, Groundsel is an universal Medicine for any thing coming of Heat whatsoever, Hawk-weed, Housleek, Knot-grass, Kidney-wort, Lettice, Water-Lilly, Liquorice, common Liver-wort, Medlars, Money-wort, Tree-Moss, Ground-Moss, the unripe Fruit of Mulberries, Mace, common Night-shade may be used either inwardly or outwardly, and is no way dangerous as the others are, Navel-wort, Orpin used outwardly, Water-Plantain, Land-Plantain, Pomegranate, Queen of the Meadows, Shepherds-Purse, Common Sorrel, Wood-Sorrel, Sow-thistles, Straw-berry-leaves, Succory, Stone-crop, Star-wort, Spinage, wild Tansy, all the parts of the Black-Thorn or Sloe-bush, Meadow-trefoil, Honeysuckles, both the Vervains, Vine-leaves, Violets, Vipers-Bugloss, Vinegar, the Leaves, Flowers, Seed, and Bark of the Willow-Tree, Yarrow, Antimonium, Alkanet, Garden-Arach, Barberry-bush, Barley, Bilberries, Blew-bottle, Bucks-horn, Plantain, Bole-Armoniack, Comfrey, Cranes-bill, Dandelion, all the kinds of Docks are generally cold, Ducks Meat applied outwardly is a great cooler of hot Inflammations, Fumitory.

Things good in general for a Prick or Stub in the Sole of a Horse's Foot.

To pull off his Shoe, and pare his Foot so deep that you discover the Hole, making the Mouth of it about the breadth of a Twopence; then wash it well with Chamberlye and Salt, or green Copperas and Allum boiled together in Water, then tack on his Shoe again, and stop the Hole with Turpentine, Hogs-grease and Verdegrease melted together, and lay Flax or Tow upon it, and put over that Cows-dung, and cover it with Leather, and splint it with

The Nail or Stub must be first drawn out, and the Corruption let forth and made very clean, before you dress it.

two

two croſs Splints, and renew it once in two or three days, and keep him out of wet during the Cure. Or tent it with Tallow and Turpentine melted together, and anoint his Coffin all over with Bole-Armoniack and Vinegar mingled together, and take red Nettles ſtamped with Vinegar, and black or common Soap, and ſtop the Wound therewith; or to waſh the Wound with Vinegar and Salt. Or if it be in the Summer, take the tender Buds or Leaves of Elder ſtamped; if in the Winter, the inner Rind of it, and melt ſome hot Tallow with it into the Wound. Or take Turpentine, brown Sugarcandy powdered, and white Ginger powdered, and melt them all in an Iron Spoon, and pour it hot into the Wound; and put Hurds or Flax upon it, or Roch-Allum burned and made into powder, and fill the Hole therewith, and lay Hurds thereupon. Or Oil of Turpentine poured into it is excellent good; for it will not only ſearch it to the bottom, but take out the Venom and heal it up. Or after you have cleanſed it with Salt and Vinegar, take Salt made into fine Powder, and four times ſo much Turpentine, and boil them well together, and pour it into the Wound ſcalding hot, and put into it the Powder of Brimſtone diſſolved in Whitewine, and lay Hurds upon it. Or take Oil-de-bay four Ounces, of Orpin, of Cantharides, and Euphorbium, of each two Ounces, made all into fine Powder, and ſet them on the Fire, keeping them ſtirring till they become an Ointment, and with it dreſs him as before is taught. But if the Foot be bruiſed, ſear a live Spider upon it with a hot Iron.

A Particular Receipt for a Stub in the Foot, or for any Over-reach of the Toe of the Hinder-foot upon the Heel of the Fore-foot, or for any accidental Cut with a Stone.

After you have well ſearched and made clean the Wound with Water and Salt, or Verjnice, Beer and Butter; Take theſe things here under-written, well beaten and bruiſed together till they come to a Salve, and ſpread them upon a Linen-Rag, or brown Paper, with a Rag bound and tied faſt over it to prevent the coming of it off; let it lie on twenty four Hours before you take it off: Continue ſo dreſſing and waſhing it every twenty four Hours till you find amendment; but if you find it amend very faſt, you need not dreſs it in two or three days. The things you are to apply to it are theſe, *viz.* common Soap about the bigneſs of a good big Waſh-ball, a large Onion peeled and a Spoonful of

of long Pepper beaten to Powder, and maſhed and bruiſed together with the reſt.

Of Clifts and Cracks in the Heels croſs and overthwart which are a kind of Scratches, and are cured with the ſame Medicines as they are.

Falling-evil cured, which is no other than the Falling-Sickneſs in Man.

Take a pretty quantity of Blood from the Neck, and four or five days after let him Blood in the Temple-Veins, and on his Eye-Veins, then anoint his Body all over with a comfortable Friction; then bathe his Head and Ears with Oil de bay, liquid Pitch and Tar mixt together, and of the ſame, put ſome of it into his Ears; then make him a Cap or Biggin of Canvas, quilted with Wool, to keep his Head warm; then give him a Purgation or Scouring. But if the Diſeaſe continue ſtill; then pierce the Skin of his Forehead with a hot Iron in divers Places, and after anoint it with ſweet Butter, for thereby you ſhall draw out the groſs Humours which do oppreſs the Brain; and keep him warm in the Stable, during the time of his Phyſicking.

General things to be given inwardly for it.

The Seed of the Bolbonack, or the Satten-Flower, the Leaves and Flowers of Flea-wort, ſtinking Ground-pine taken with Oxymel or honeyed Water is good, given Evening and Morning for ſome time together, Betony, the Flower of Violets, the Roots of Piony, Maſter-wort, Gerard, Anniſeeds, the Leaves and Bark of the Maſtick tree; the Gum of it hath the ſame Vertue given in Ale; the diſtilled Water of red Cherries.

A Particular Receipt.

A Spoonful of the Powder of dried Miſletoe that grows upon the Apple-tree, (which is ſhaped much like Ivy-Leaves,) given him in half a Pint of Canary, and kept warm, is very good.

A Hip-ſhot Horſe.

There is ſo uncertain a Cure to be made of it, that I durſt ſay nothing of the Cure.

The Cure for the Hurle-bone out of Joint.

Take Oil of Turpentine and ſtrong Beer, of equal part alike

alike, and shake them very well in a Glass-Viol, and anoint the grieved Part therewith, as also the brawn and inside of his Thigh down to his Gambrels, and heat it in very well by holding a hot Fire-shovel before it, while you are doing it. This will make him sound in a few days conditionally you continue using it, working the Bone gently in with your Hand, to bring it to its right Place again. This is a very sharp and biting Medicine, which will make his Skin puff and heave up, but you need not fear it, for there is no danger in it. When you have anointed him tie him up to the Rack staves for about half an Hour, to prevent his biting of it with his Teeth, which may prejudice him; while he stands in the Stable, put a Wedge of Wood about the breadth of a Sixpence between his Toe and his Shoe; but when you ride him you are to take it out, and when you come home to put it in again. Or after you have anointed him once with Oil of Turpentine and Beer, and put in his Bone into its right place again; you may clap a Charge upon it made of *Oxycroceum* and *Paracelsus*, (which you may buy at the Apothecaries) which will strengthen it so very much, that it will keep it from slipping out of its place again. But the best, most speedy and certain Cure is, (though it doth a little disfigure your Horse) to pin him, which every Smith either does or ought to know.

Quick-Scab to cure.

To let him blood, then clip away the Hair where the Sorrance is, and take off the Scurf and Scabs with an old Curry-Comb, or other such like thing; then with fair cold Water wash it well, and lay a Linen-Cloth well wet in it to the Place, and do nothing to it in ten days after; and if you find it doth not heal, dress it as before: and so a third time and a fourth till it be throughly healed. Or to take Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of each alike, and boil them in fair Water as much as will suffice, till they be soft; and with the Herb and Decoction bathe and wash the Sorrance two or three days together warm: Then take of common Honey a Pint, Copperas, Allum, of Glass and Verdegrease, all made into fine Powder, of each four Ounces, Turpentine and Quick Silver mortify'd, of each two Ounces; boil all these together with the Honey unto an Unguent, and with it dress him every day till it be whole.

Rot in a Horse cured.

Let him first bleed under the Tail, then take of Mares Milk two Quarts, or the Milk of a red Cow; then take a Lump of Arement, then take a young Horse about the Age of four Years, and of colour black if it may be, if not of some other colour, run and chafe him about till he sweat much; then with a Spoon or some other Instrument rake off the Sweat from off his Head, Neck, Breast, Back, Sides, Ribs, Buttocks, Legs, and in each Part or Member where you can get off any, and so put your Arement and your Sweat into the Milk, mixing them well together, and by equal Portions give it him three Mornings together, till he hath taken it all; and let him drink no Drink after it in six or seven Hours; and immediately after his Drink, lead him forth into some Pasture where other Horses be, to sneeze, stale or dung, to empty himself, which is very wholesome for him so to do before he either eats or drinks; then set him up warm and well littered, and if the Season do serve, give him of the green Blades of Rye; if not, give him Barley steeped in Milk three days, but renewed every day once. Then after every of these Drinks, if you feel him cold in the Pastern Joints, or that he trippeth or stumbleth as you lead him in your Hand, do no more to him, for he is past Cure. Otherwise, for nine days together after, Morning and Evening, give him white Water only, unless now and then a sweet Mash; and some times give him Milk with his white Water: if he be not above nine Years old, this will prolong his life, whereby he may do the more service. Mr. Grey declares, that this Receipt a Knight taught him, who recovered sundry Horses with it.

Swaying in the Back.

Take of the Fat of the Fruit of the Pine-tree two Ounces, of Olibanum three Ounces, of Rosin four Ounces, of Pitch four Ounces, of Bole-Armoniack an Ounce, and of Sanguis-Draconis half an Ounce; incorporate all these well together, and lay it plaster wise all over the Reins of his Back, and let it remain till it fall off of it self.

Another most excellent Receipt for swaying Weakness in the Back.

These Infirmities are seldom or never perfectly cured; but the best help for them, that I know of, is, to give him in-

wardly some strengthning things, as common Turpentine made up into Balls, with the Powder of Bole-Armoniack, and Powder of the dried Leaves of Clary, and to apply outwardly at the same time all over the Reins of his Back these strenthning Charges, *viz. Oxycroceum* and *Paracelsus* melted together; or Cole-worts boiled in Sallet-Oil, made thick like a Poultice, with the Powder of Bole-Armoniack and Bean-Flower. If you desire to see more variety of Charges, (though these are very good) look into the first Part, and there you may find plenty, where you may pick and chuse, what you best fancy.

Foundering in the Body to cure.

To cure this Distemper, is first to rake his Fundament, and to give him a Glister, which you have variety of in my first Part; then take Sack or Ale a Quart, Cinnamon half an Ounce, Liquorice and Anniseeds, of each two Spoonfuls beaten into fine Powder, with five or six Spoonfuls of Honey, put them all into the Ale together, and warm them till the Honey is molten, and give it him lukewarm to drink, and ride him gently after for the space of an Hour, and let him fast two Hours more, and keep him warm clothed and littered, and let his Hay be sprinkled with Water, and his Oats very clean sifted from dust; and give it him by little and little, and let his drink be warm Mashes of Malt and Water, and when he hath recovered strength let him blood in the Neck-Vein, and once a day perfume his Head with Frankincense. There is no Drink nor Diet that is comfortable, but is good for this Disease.

The Way of Gathering, Drying, and Preserving of Simples, and their Juices, viz. *Roots, Barks, Leaves, Herbs, Flowers, Seeds,* &c.

CHAP. I. *Of Roots.*

CHUSE those that are sound, and not rotten nor worm eaten, and let them be such as have their proper taste, smell and colour.

2. Those that are dry, hard and sound, are the best and fittest for your Use.

3. If they prove soft, dry them in the Sun, or else string em and hang them up by the Fire; but the dry and hard as you may lay any where.

4. The small Roots will keep a Year or two very well, the larger sort of them will keep four or five, but they best in their prime the first Year.

5. The best time to gather them is in the Summer, before y run out to Seed, for then they grow hard and sticky, loose their Vertues.

6. Those Roots that you may have all the Year, as Plan-

tain, Fennel or Parſley, *&c.* trouble not your ſelf to dry them.

Chap. II. *Of Barks.*

1. Barks of ſuch Trees as are frequently with you, as the Oak, Elm or Aſh, *&c.* gather them but when you have preſent uſe for them: As for the Out-landiſh, you may have ready dried at the Druggiſt.

2. The Bark of Roots, as Fennel, Parſley, *&c.* is only that which remains when the Pith is out, which is called a Bark, though very improperly.

Chap. III. *Of Leaves of Herbs, or Trees.*

1. Of Leaves, gather ſuch as are freſh and green, and full of Juice, and in the picking of them be careful to throw away the dead and decayed Leaves, which are not fit for any phyſical uſe.

2. Thoſe that grow in the Place they moſt delight in, are beſt for uſe, as Betony delights to grow in the Shadow, and therefore 'tis better than that which grows in the Sun, becauſe it is its proper Place.

3. Thoſe Herbs that run up to Seed, and in Flowers, their Leaves are not ſo good then as before they were ſpindled (ſome few only excepted) and therefore I adviſe you, if through Ignorance you know them not, or through Negligence forget them, rather chuſe to take the Tops than the Leaves.

4. The Sun is better to dry them in, than the Shadow.

5. The beſt way to keep them after they be dried, is near the Fire, in a Bag made of brown or white Paper.

6. 'Tis not certainly known how long Herbs will keep, but 'tis concluded by moſt they will keep a Year very well.

7. You may know when they are decayed by the loſs of Smell, Colour, or both.

8. Thoſe that grow upon dry Grounds, do uſually keep longer than thoſe that grow upon moiſt; and thoſe that are very full of Juice, will not continue their Virtue ſo long as thoſe that are drier, becauſe more ſubject to Putrefaction and Corruption.

9. Thoſe that you do thoroughly dry will keep better than thoſe that are ill dried.

Chap. IV. *Of Flowers.*

1. The Flower, which is the Glory and Beauty of the Plant

Plant, is of excellent use in Physick, if it be gathered when it is in its prime.

2. When you intend to gather them let them be thoroughly dry, and the Sun shining; for if you gather them when they be wet they will not keep.

3. When you have gathered them, dry them thoroughly upon a Table, or in the Window where the Sun comes, before you put them up in Papers, to hang near the Fire.

4. If you find their Smell and Colour continue, you may be assured their Virtues are not lost.

Chap. V. *Of Seeds.*

1. The Seed contains the vital faculty and spirit of the whole Plant, and therefore hath in it equal Virtues with it.

2. Gather them not till they be full ripe, and from the places where they delight most to grow in, and let them be thoroughly dried in the Sun before you lay them up.

3. These having the spirit of the whole Plant in them, are not so subject to corrupt as the others are, and therefore you need not keep them so near the Fire as you do the Herbs.

4. They will continue good and sound four or five Years; but they are best in their prime the first and second.

Chap. VI. *Of Juices.*

1. The Juices that you are to press out of Herbs, Plants, Tops and Flowers must be done when they are young and tender.

2. If you intend to preserve them some time, you must gather them when they be thorougly dry.

3. When you use them they must be bruised in a Stone-Mortar with a wooden Pestle, and put afterwards into a Canvas-bag, and the Juice pressed out in a Press, and when you have so done set it over the Fire in an Earthen-Pipkin or Skillet, and clarify it by taking off the scum that shall arise. You may know when it is well clarified, for then the Scum will not appear on the top.

This being clarified according to your mind, you may preserve it for your use (in the Winter when you can get no Herbs) these two ways, first, by putting it into a Glass when it is cold, and pouring so much Sallet-Oil over it as will cover it, let the Oil lie about the thickness of two Fingers above the Juice: This Oil being of a light Body will always get uppermost, and keep out the Air from entring, and so preserve it the better from Putrefaction. When you

have occaſion to uſe it, pour it out into a Porringer or any other convenient Veſſel, ſo much as you think you ſhall uſe and take off the Oil that comes out with it, with a little Cotton or with a Spoon, and put the remainder back again in the Glaſs (if you leave any) and it will quickly ſink under the Oil again, *&c.* The ſecond way of preſerving it is after you have clarified it, to boil it over again, (being firſt cold) to the thickneſs of Honey, and this way it is uſed for the Diſeaſes of the Mouth.

The Way of Making and Keeping all Neceſſary Compounds, viz. *Electuaries, Pills, Waters, Ointments, Plaſters, Charges, Poultices, Oils, Syrups by Infuſion and by Decoction, or by Juice.*

CHAP. I. *Of Electuaries.*

1. IF you deſire to preſerve your Horſe's Health abroad as well as at home, then make up ſome Electuary with ſome Herbs, Roots and Flowers, ſuitable to the Diſeaſes you think he may be moſt afflicted with, whether they be Coughs, Colds, or any other Illneſs, and put it into a Gally-Pot.

2. If you intend any Phyſick for preſent uſe, let the Herbs, Roots, Seeds and Flowers be always in a readineſs, ready dried in your Houſe, that ſo you may not want them when you come to uſe them.

3. They will keep beſt whole, for being beaten and made into Powder, they will be ſoon penetrated by the Air, which will cauſe them to loſe much of their Strength and Virtue.

4. If you find them not dry enough to beat, make them fit for the Peſtle by drying them by the Fire.

5. When

5. When you use them, beat them as small as you can, and then sift them through an indifferent fine Sieve.

6. To one Ounce of this Powder you may add three Ounces of clarified Honey, and make up what quantity of Electuary you please, according to the occasion and use you have for it.

7. Your Honey must be clarified by the Fire, by scumming off the Scum from it that shall arise.

8. Mix the Powders and this Honey very well together in a Mortar, before you put them up for use.

9. The usual Dose of cordial Electuary is from one Ounce to two Ounces, dissolved in a Pint or Quart of strong warm Ale or Beer, and given him in the Morning or Evening fasting, and to fast two or three Hours after it.

Chap. II. *Of Pills or Balls.*

1. The invention of these Pills or Balls at first were for the Purging of the Head, as I have told you in some of my physical Observations. And as such Infirmities as lie nearest the Passages were best removed by Decoctions, because they pass to the grieved Part soonest, so in the Infirmities of the Head or other parts of the Body more remote from the Stomach and Bowels, they are best removed by Pills or Balls, which are longest in Digestion, and therefore the better able to call the offended Humour to them.

2. The way of making them is very familiar, for with the help of a Pestle and Mortar, and a little of your care, you may make any Powder into Balls; you have Directions at large for the making of them after the best Receipt for the Glanders.

3. The manner of giving them is two-fold, *viz.* either upon the end of a Stick, with his Tongue first drawn forth on one side of his Mouth, or in a Horn-full of strong Beer.

Chap. III. *Of Distilled Waters.*

1. Waters are distilled out of Roots, Herbs, Flowers and Fruits, and are best when they are distilled in their greatest strength and vigour.

2. Distilled Waters are the weakest of all artificial Medicines, and made more weak by distilling them in a Pewter Still, being good for very little unless mix'd with other Medicines. But the strongest way of distilling them is in Sand.

3. When they are distilled put them up into a Glass, and bind

bind on the Top of it a Paper prick'd full of Holes, that so the fiery Vapours may exhale, for else they will cause them to mother, which will corrupt the Waters. Then cover them close, and keep them for your use.

4. Stopping them with Cork is the common Way though not the best, because that Way will make them grow Musty, and not much better is Paper, if it be suffered to touch the Water. But the best and most approved Way to keep them is to stop them with a Bladder, being first wet in Water, and bound over the Glass.

5. Those Waters that are distilled in a Pewter Still will not keep above a Year good, when those that are distilled in Sand will keep twice as long.

Chap. IV. *Of Ointments.*

There be many Ways of making Ointments, but the most familiar and easy is the common way, *viz.* to bruise those Roots, Herbs or Flowers you intend to make it of, and to two Handfuls of the bruised Herbs, add a Pound of tried Hogs-Seam, mash and beat them very well together in a Mortar, then put them into an Earthen-Pot (covering it with Paper to keep it from filth) and set them in the Sun, or in some other warm place for four or five days that it may melt, then take it forth and boil it gently over the Fire for some little time, then strain it out while it is hot, pressing the Herbs very hard to get what Grease you can out of them; then add to it as many more fresh Herbs bruised and set in the Sun, and ordered in every thing as before; but if you think them not yet strong enough, you may repeat the Herbs over again the third or fourth time, for the fuller of Juice the Ointment is, the stronger will it be. The last time you boil it, boil the Herbs and all with it, and when they be crisp and the Juice consumed, (which you may know by the leaving of its bubling while it is on the Fire) 'tis enough, then strain it out very hard in a Press, and to every Pound of Ointment add two Ounces of the best common Turpentine you can get, and as much Bees-Wax, which will take away the offensiveness of the Grease, which is very prejudicial to Wounds, as well as Oil.

Chap. V. *Of Plasters.*

1. The Emplasters of the *Greeks* consisted of very many Ingredients, *viz.* Gums, Rosin, Wax, Herbs, Seeds, Roots, Juices, Liquorice, Minerals, Metals, Stones and Excrements of Creatures,

Creatures, *&c.* which said Metals they reduced to powder, and mixed them with their fatty substances, which the rest of the Plaster consisted of, while it was hot, keeping it continually stirring up and down to prevent the sinking of them, that they may the better stiffen and incorporate together; which after it was somewhat cold and hard, they made them up into Rolls, and when they needed it they melted them again by the Fire.

2. The *Arabians* made up their Medicines with Meal, Oil and Fat, which needed not so much boiling as the other did. But seeing these are so difficult to make, and when made, so rarely used in Farring, I shall advise you to let them alone, and buy them rather of the Druggist, when you have occasion to use them, than put your self to the needless trouble of making them.

Chap. VI. *Of Charges.*

1. The use of these are for Strains, Sprains, or any other Weakness in the Legs, Shoulders, or Back, and are made of several things, *viz.* Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, *Oxycroceum*, *Paracelsus*, and Hernium, Galbanum, Frankincense, Turpentine, Meal, Bole-Armoniack, *&c.* The manner of using them is to melt what things you have occasion for in an Earthen-Pipkin, and lay it on with a Lath all over the grieved Part; then clap upon it some Flax, Hurds, Tow, Wool, Deers Hair, or such like things, then heat the Charge again, and daub it all over the Flax, Tow or Wool the second time, scalding hot; then daub it over again the third time as you did before, pressing it all the time close with your Hands to the grieved Part to make it bind on the faster, and let it remain there till it fall off of it self. Clip away the Hair before you apply it.

2. If his Charge be on his Legs, be careful that he comes not into the Water, for that will soon fetch it off: but to prevent this, chuse rather to keep him in the Stable, and water him there till he be somewhat amended.

Chap. VII. *Of Poultices.*

1. Poultices are vulgarly called Cataplasmes, which is as much as to say a thick Poultice made of Meal and Herbs, which is a very excellent Medicine to ripen and break Sores, ease Pains, cool hot Inflammations, dissolve Hardness, ease the Spleen, disperse Swellings, and digest Humours.

2. When you are to make them, you are to take those Roots

Roots and Herbs as are moſt proper and ſuitable to the Diſeaſe and Member afflicted; chopping them firſt ſmall, then put them into clear running Water, and boil them to a Jelly, then add to them a little Meal of Lupins, (or for want of that Barley-Meal) with a little Sallet-Oil, or rough Sweet-Suet, which I account better: Then ſpread it upon a Linen Cloth, and apply it to the grieved Part, bound faſt with a Tape or Pack-thread that it fall not off.

Chap. VIII. *Of Oils.*

1. Sallet-Oil is made from the Expreſſion of Olives, which is ſo temperate, that it exceeds in no one quality.

2. Of Oils, ſome are Simple, and ſome are Compound.

3. Simple Oils are ſuch as are made by Expreſſion of Fruits or Seeds; as Linſeed-Oil, Rape-ſeed Oil, and Oil of ſweet or bitter Almonds.

4. Compound Oils are made of the Oil of Olives, and other Simples; as Leaves, Flowers, Roots, *&c.*

5. The manner of making up thoſe Herbs or Flowers you intend to make your Oil of, is, they muſt be firſt bruiſed, and then put into an earthen Pot; and to two or three handfuls of them ſo bruiſed, put a Pint of Sallet-Oil, and then cover up your Pot cloſe with a Paper (to keep it from Filth) then ſet it in the Sun for about a Fortnight; then warm it on the Fire, and preſs out the Oil from the Herbs very hard, and add ſo many more Herbs to the Oil, and uſe them in every thing as before. The oftner you repeat your Herbs, the ſtronger will your Oil be. When you think it is ſtrong enough for your uſe, boil the laſt Herbs (you put in it) and Oil together, till the Juice be conſumed, (which you may know by the leaving off its bubling) and the Herbs grown criſper. Strain it while it is hot, and put it into ſome convenient Earthen or Glaſs-Veſſel, and ſet it up till you have occaſion to uſe it.

Chap. IX. *Of Syrups by Infuſion, by Decoction, and by Juices.*

1. A Syrup is a Medicine of a liquid Form, compoſed of Infuſion, Decoction and Juice.

2. Thoſe Syrups that are uſually made by Infuſion, are made of ſuch Flowers as loſe their Colour and Strength in boiling; as Violets, Roſes, Peach-Flowers: They are thus made, *viz.* To every Pound of Flowers well pickt, add three Pints of Spring-Water made boiling hot on the Fire;

Fire; put them in an earthen Veſſel, and put the Water to them, then cover it cloſe, and let it ſtand by the Fire to infuſe about twelve or thirteen Hours, then ſtrain it out, (in ſuch Syrups as purge, as Peach-Flowers, Damask-Roſes, *&c.* the uſual and beſt way is to repeat to their Infuſion freſh Flowers divers times, then ſtrain it out into ſome convenient Veſſel) and add to every Pint of it two Pounds of Loaf-Sugar, then melt it over a gentle Fire again, taking off the Scum that ſhall ariſe, and your Syrup is made.

2. Thoſe Syrups that are made by Decoction, are made of Compounds, yet any ſimple Herb may be made alſo into a Syrup: Take the Root, Herb or Flower you intend to make into a Syrup, and bruiſe it a little in a Mortar; then take it forth, and put to every handful of Roots, Herbs or Flowers, a Pint of running Water, and boil it till half the Water be conſumed; after you have ſo done, ſtrain it through a Woollen Cloth, letting it run out at leiſure without preſſing: And to every Pint of this Decoction add one Pound of Sugar; then boil it again over the Fire till it come to a Syrup, which you may know when it is well done, if you take a little of it now and then in a Spoon, and let it cool. Be ſure you take off the Filth that doth ariſe while it is boiling; and when you think it is enough, ſtrain it hot through a Woollen Cloth, and preſs it out and keep it for your uſe.

3. Syrups that are made by Juices, uſually are made of ſuch Herbs as are moſt full of Juice, and are beſt made this way, *viz.* Take the Herbs and beat them in a Mortar with a wooden Peſtle, then preſs forth the Juice, and clarify it as you were taught in Juices, then ſet it over the Fire again, and let it boil till a quarter of it be conſumed, and to a Pint of it add a Pound of Sugar, and boil it up to a Syrup, keeping it ſcumming all the while; when you think it is well boiled, ſtrain it through a Woollen Cloth, as you did the other, and keep it for your uſe.

4. If you make Syrups of Roots that are hard, as Graſs-Roots, Parſley, Fennel, *&c.* bruiſe them very well firſt, then lay them aſteep in that Water you intend to boil them in, which will cauſe the Virtue of them to come forth ſo much the better.

5. Your Syrups that are well made will keep ſomewhat above a Year, but ſuch as are made by Infuſion will not keep ſo long.

6. The beſt way to keep them when made, is in Glaſs or Stone-Pots, and to bind a Paper about the Mouth of them.

Chap.

Chap. X. *Of Decoctions.*

1. Decoctions are made either of Fruits, Barks, Roots, Leaves, Flowers or Seeds, and are made after the ſame manner as is ſhewed you in your Syrups.

2. Thoſe Decoctions that are made of Wine are more durable than thoſe made of Water.

3. If you make a Decoction for to cleanſe the Paſſages of Urine, and to open Obſtructions, chuſe rather to make it of Whitewine, becauſe it is of a more penetrating and ſubtile Nature than Water.

4. Decoctions are of the beſt uſe for the Cure of ſuch Diſeaſes as lie lurking in the Paſſages of the Body, Stomach, Bowels, Kidneys, Paſſages of Urine and the Bladder, *&c.* which are more powerful in Operation, in paſſing quicker to the aforeſaid Diſeaſes than any other ſort of Medicines.

5. All the difference that is between Decoctions and Syrups made by Decoction, is only this; Syrups are made to keep, Decoctions only for preſent ſpending.

6. You may ſweeten them with Sugar or Syrup, or ſuch things as you imagine moſt fit for the Diſeaſe you give it for.

7. If you make a Decoction of Roots, Herbs, Flowers and Seeds together; boil the Roots a good while firſt, becauſe they retain their Vertues longer; ſo then the next in order according to the ſame Rule, are: Firſt, Barks: Secondly, Herbs: Thirdly, Seeds: Fourthly, Flowers: And, Fifthly, Spices; which are put in laſt, becauſe their Vertues do ſooneſt come forth.

8. All Decoctions are to be kept in a Glaſs cloſe ſtopped, and the cooler you ſet them the longer they will keep; their uſual time of laſting is not above a Week at moſt.

9. The uſual Doſe you are to give him at a time, is a Quart or more, according to the Age, Strength and Conſtitution of your Horſe, Seaſon of the Year, Strength of the Medicine, and Quality of the Diſeaſe.

Roots that are hot in the firſt Degree.

Liquorice, Dogs-Graſs, Marſhmallows, Burrage, China, Valerian, Bazil, Parſley, Bugloſs, Pilewort, Lillies, Piony Male and Female, wild Parſnips, Burdocks, Spatling-Poppey, Knee-Holly, *&c.*

Herbs hot in the ſecond Degree.

Lovage, Water-Flag, Fennel, Butter-Bur, Hogs-Fennel, Swal-

Swallows-Wort, Carline-Thistle, Devils-Bit, Spignel, Mercury, Sarsaparilla, *&c.*

Hot in the third Degree.

Ginger, Angelica, Asarabaca, White-Dittany, Doronicum, Elecampane, Hellebore white and black, Stinking-Gladwin, Filapendula, Aron, Sow-bread, Birth-wort, Galangal, Cellandine, Snake-root, Briony white and black, Masterwort, Rest-harrow, *&c.*

Hot in the fourth Degree.

Leeks, Onions, Garlick, Pellitory of the Wall, *&c.*

Roots that are very Temperate.

Cinquefoil, Tormentil, Mallows, Bears-breech, Mechoachan, Jallap, Eringo, Asparagus, our Ladies-Thistle, *&c.*

Roots cold in the first Degree.

Plantain, Comfrey the greater, Sorrel, Madder, Beets white and red, Rose-root, *&c.*

Cold in the second Degree.

Hounds-Tongue, Alkanet, Succory, Endive, Daises, *&c.*

Cold in the Third.

Mandrakes, Bistort, *&c.*

Cold in the Fourth.

Henbane.

Roots dry in the first Degree.

Calamus Aromaticus, Bears-breech, Madder, Bur-dock, Pile-wort, Red-Beets, Eringo, Self-heal, Knee-holly, Endive, *&c.*

Dry in the Second.

Hounds-Tongue, Zedoary, Plantain, Mercury, Reeds, Devils-bit, Parsley, Butter-bur, Fennel, Spignel, Lovage, Alkanet, Marshmallows, Valerian, Spratling-poppey, Bazil, Water-flag, our Ladies-Thistle, Cypress long and round, Sorrel, Smallage, Aspodel male, Swallow-wort, *&c.*

Dry in the Third.

Cellandine, Angelica, Hogs-Fennel, Tormentil, Ginger, Birth-wort long and round, Aron, Sow-bread, Carline-Thistle, Bistort, Briony white and black, Sarsaparilla, Asarabaca, Virginian Snake-root, China, Doronicum, Dittany,

rany, Galangal of both kinds; Hellebore white and black; Elecampane, Rest-harrow, Piony Male and Female; Fila-pendula, Orice *English* and *Florence*, Stinking-Gladwin, *&c.*

Dry in the Fourth.

Costus, Pellitory of *Spain*; Garlick, Onions and Leeks, *&c.*

Roots Moist are.

Daises, Burrage, Valerian and Spatling-Poppey, Bugloss, White-Beets, Liquorice, Dogs-Grass, Parsnips, Skirrets, *&c.*

Of Hot Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.

1. *Heating the Head.*

Doronicum, Fennel, Piony, Spikenard, *Winter's* Cinnamon, Betony, Costmary, Carduus-benedictus, Cowslips, Eye-bright, Feverfew, Goats-Rue, Herb-Mastick, Lavender, Laurel, Lovage, Maudlin, Mellilot, Thyme, Penny-Royal, Rosemary, Cellandine, Scurvy-Grass, Sneese-wort, Sena, Piony Male and Female, Camomile, Sage, Nutmegs, Jallap.

2. *Heating the Throat.*

Devils-bit, Pile-wort, Arch-angel white and red; Ale-wort.

3. *Heating the Breast and Lungs.*

Birth-wort long and round, Calamus Aromaticus, Cinquefoil, Elecampane, Liquorice, Orice-squills, Cassia-Lignea, Cinnamon, Betony, Bays, Bawm, Calamintis, Camomile, Distaff, Thistle, Fennel, Germander, Hyssop, Horehound, Indian-leaf, Maiden-hair, Nettle, Oak of *Jerusalem*, Organy, Periwincle, Rue, Scabious Thyme, Figs, Raisons, Orice *English* and *Florentine*.

4. *Heating the Heart.*

Angelica, Butter-bur, Basil, Cinnamon, Citrons, Carline-thistle, Tormentil, Valerian of both sorts; Pimpernel, Bay-berries, Bawm, Broom, Carduus-Benedictus, Rue, Goats-Rue, Rosemary, Southernwood, Sene, Saffron, Spikenard, Juniper-berries, Mace, Nutmegs, Walnuts, Mustard-seed, Doronicum, Bugloss.

5. *Heating the Stomach.*

Avens, Fennel, Galangale, Ginger, Radish, Spikenard, Zedoary, Cassia Lignea, Cinnamon, Citrons, Lemons, Saf-

 safras

safras, Bayes, Bawm, Broom, Hyſop, Indian Leaf, Mints, Thyme, Parſley, Sage, Smallage, Wormwood, Roſemary, Cloves, Almonds, Ben, Nutmegs, Pine-Nuts, Annis, Caraway, Cardamoms, Cummin, Elecampane, Fern.

6. *Heating the Liver.*

Carline-Thiſtle, China, Dogs-greaſe, Fennel, Gentian, Parſley, Rhubarb, Smallage, Turmerick, Aſparagus, Agrimony, Ale-coſt, Aſh, Bays, Aſarabacca, Centaury the leſs, Chamepitis, Germander, Fox-Gloves, Hops, Horehound, Hyſop, Ladies-Thiſtle, Thyme, Maudlin, Pimpernel, Celandine, Samphire, Sage, Elder, Scordium, Water creſſes, Camomile, Betony, Annis, Caraway, Cummin, Cinquefoil, Parſley, Kneeholly, Rhapontick.

7. *Heating the Spleen.*

Aſh, round Birth-wort, Thiſtle-Fern of both ſorts, Fennel, Gentian, Parſley, Aſparagus, Bayes, Agrimony, Centaury the leſs, Chamepitis, Dodder, Germander, Hops, Hore-hound, Harts-Tongue, Maiden-Hair, Thyme, Smallage, Samphire, Sage, Scordium, Sena, Tamarisk, Water-creſſes, Wormwood, Betony, Wall-Flowers, Annis, Caraway, Fennel.

8. *Heating the Bowels.*

Ginger, Valerian great and ſmall, Zedoary, Alehoof, Alexanders, Camomile, Ginger.

9. *Heating the Reins and Bladder.*

Bazil, Burdock, Carline-Thiſtle, China, Cypreſs long and round, Drop-wort, Knee-holly, Marſhmallows, Parſley, Smallage, Aſparagus, Spikenard, White-Saxifrage, Valerian, Saſſafras, Agrimony, Betony, Brooklime, Bayes, Broom, Chervil, Coſtmary, Camomile, Clary, Germander, Hops, Melilot, Thyme, Nettle-ſeed, Organy, Pimpernel, Penny-Royal, Rochet, Samphire, Scordium, Toad-Flax, Vervain, Gromwel, Reſtharrow, Liquorice, Pellitory of the Wall, Elder, Turpentine, Spatling-Poppey, Filapendula, Dogs-Graſs.

10. *Heating the Womb.*

Piony, Valerian, Angelica, Pimpernel, Briony, Ariſtolochia Rotunda, Mug-wort, Rue, Mercury, Feverfew, Savin, Betony, Elder, Spikenard, Red-Fitches, Roſemary, Indian-Nut, Juniper-berries, Oranges, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Caſſia-Lignea, Saffron, Cardamoms, Aſh, Pepper, Caſtoreum,

reum, Birth-wort long and round, Galangal greater and less, Hogs-Fennel.

11. *Heating the Joints.*

Branca-Ursina, Costus, Ginger, Hermodactils, Jallap, Mechoacan, Agrimony, Arsmart, Camomile, Costmary, Garden-cresses, Cowslips, Melilot, Rosemary, Rue, Sciatica-cresses, Water-cresses, Sage, Bays.

Of cold Medicaments appropriate to the Parts of the Body.

1. *Cooling the Head.*

Lettice, Purslain, Mandrake, Plantain, Night-shade, Henbane, Water-Lillies, Roses, Poppy, Violets, Gourd, Cucumber, Melons, Opium, House-leek, Wood-sorrel, Strawberry-leaves, Violet-leaves, Fumitory, Willow-leaves.

2. *Cooling the Throat.*

Bramble-leaves, Orpine, Privet, Strawberry-leaves, Poppy, Oranges, Lemons.

3. *Cooling the Breast and Lungs.*

Endive, Lambs-Tongue, Plantain, Polipody, Purslain, Water-Lillies, Bramble-leaves, Coleworts, Violet-leaves, Mallows, Bugloss. Cichory, Poppies, Quinces, Strawberry-leaves, Barley, Mulberry-leaves, Prunes, Saunders, Fenugreek, Gum-Dragant, Arabick.

4. *Cooling the Heart.*

Dandelion, Sorrel, Wood-Sorrel, Water-Lillies, Violet-leaves, Cucumbers, Gourds, Barberries, Red-Currants, Citrons, Pomegranates, Saunders, Camphire, Vipers-Bugloss, Lettice, Burnet, Strawberry-leaves, Water-Lillies.

5. *Cooling the Stomach.*

Cichory, Sorrel, Asparagus, Water-Lillies, Endive, Purslain, Myrtle, Roses, Violets, Cucumbers, Barley, Quinces, Citrons, Oranges, Pomegranates.

6. *Cooling the Liver.*

Asparagus, Gramen, Water-Lillies, Sorrel, Strawberries, Cichory, Sow-Thistle, Endive, Purslain, Lettice, Roses, Bugloss, Burrage, Poppy, Barley, Lemons.

7. *Cooling the Spleen.*

Willow, Hemlock, Fumitory, Oil of Vitriol, Spirit of Salt, Oil of Sulphur, of which three laſt you muſt not exceed above 90 or 100 Drops, put into a Quart of Ale or Beer.

8. *Cooling the Reins and Bladder.*

Graſs, Strawberries, Water-Lillies, Purſlain, Willow, Lettice, Caſſia, Fiſtula, Violets, Roſes, Poppy, Citrons, Lemons, Barley.

9. *Cooling the Womb.*

Biſtort, Comfrey, Burſa-paſtoris, Plantain, Stinking-Arach, Balauſtins, Water-Lillies, Willow, Henbane, Poppy, Pomegranates, Medlars, Myrtles, Red-Coral.

10. *Cooling the Bowels.*

Caſſia, Fiſtula, Sow-Thiſtle, Bucks-horn, Orpine, Plantain, Fumitory, Mallows, Althæa.

11. *Cooling the Joints.*

Henbane, Houſleek, Lettice, Night-ſhade, Willow, Poppy, Opium.

The Properties of Purging Medicaments.

1. *Purging Choler.*

1. Mild; as, Caſſia-Fiſtularis, Tamarinds, Manna, Calabrina, Aloes-ſuccotrina, Rhubarb, Damask-Roſes, Violets. 2. Strong; as, Aſarum, Scammony.

2. *Purging Phlegm.*

1. Mild; as, Myrobalans, Chemulan and Emblican, Carthamus-Seeds, Mechoacan. 2. Strong; as, Agarick, Jallap, Turpethum, Coliquintida, Hermodactils, Euphorbium, Sagapenum, Briony, Spurge, Sow-bread, Elaterium, Squills, Turbech, Ground-pine.

3. *Purging watry Humours.*

1. Mild; as, Soldanella, *German* Orice. 2. Strong; as, Elaterium, Cambogia, Hedge-Hyſop, Enſula.

4. *Purging by Vomit.*

1. Mild; warm Water, fat Broth, Oil with Water, Butter, Roots of Garden-Cucumber, Orach, Mellon, Aſarum. 2. Strong; as, white Hellebore, Tobacco, Sulphur of Antimony,

mony, Mercurius-vitæ, Crocus-Metallorum, Turpethum Minerale, Gutta-gamba.

5. Purging by Urine.

1. Mild; as, Roots of Parsley, Smallage, Eringo, Ruscus, Asparagus, Pimpernel, Leaves of Pellitory, Asarum, Chervil, Scordium, Saxifrage, Seeds of Gromwel, Winter-Cherries. 2. Strong; as, Sal Tartari, Succini, Absinthii, Oleum Tartari, Baccarum, Juniperi, Vitrioli, Sulphuris, Ceræ, Wood and Bark of Guaiacum, Sassafras.

6. Purging by the Throat.

Mercurius-dulcis, Sublimatus & Precipitatus, Turpethum Minerale, Unguentaque-Mercuriata.

7. Purging by Sweat.

1. Mild; as, Angelica, Pimpernel, Tormentil, Gentian, Carduus, Scabious, Zedoary. 2. Strong; as, Lignum-Guaiacum, Sassafras, Bezoar-stone, Aurum-Diaphoreticum, Antimonium-Diaphoreticum, Bezoar-joviale & Minerale, Sal Tartari, Sulphur-Auratum.

8. Purging by the Nose.

Roots of Orice, Bind-weed, Leaves of Beet, Marjoram, Sage, Betony, Ivy, Ginger, Roots of Pellitory of *Spain*, white Hellebore, Leaves of Sneese-wort, Tobacco, Pepper, Mustard, Euphorbium.

The Properties of altering Medicaments.

Softning Things.

The Roots of Lillies, Althæa, Wild-Cucumber, Briony, Leaves of Mallows, Pellitory, Violets, Elder, Dwarf Elder, Flowers of Camomile, Seeds of Fenugreek, Lime, Fat, Figs, Fresh-Butter, Hogs-grease, Bears-grease, Old-Oil.

Loosening Things.

Lillies, Linseed, Fenugreek, Fat, Butter, Althæa. See more in my first part.

Abolishing Things.

Herb-Mercury, Camomile, Mellilot, Elder, Fenugreek and Linseed, Old-Oil, Butter, Orice, Thyme, Penny-royal, Hyssop, Mug-wort, Seed of Annis, Fennel.

Opening Roots.

Smallage, Fennel, Aſparagus, Parſley, Holm, Cichory, Eringo, Gentian, Fern, Madder, Tamarisk, Aſh-leaves, Fumitory, Wormwood, Agrimony, Maiden-hair, Liver-wort, Chamepitis, Dodder, Hore-hound, Calamint, Penny-royal, Scurvy-Graſs, Brook lime, Water-creſſes, Hops, Seeds of Annis, Ameos, Lupins, Almonds, Cinnamon, Vinegar, Endive, Garlick, Onions, Pellitory, Turmerick, *&c.*

Binding Things.

Roots of Tormentil, Plantain, Comfrey, white Lillies, Piony, Biſtort, Rhubarb roaſted, Leaves of Amomum, Agnus-Caſtus, Cypreſs, Cinquefoil, Bawm, Flea-wort, Horſe-tail, Ivy, Knot-graſs, *Solomon*'s-Seal, Bay, Myrtles, Oak, Purſlain, Shepherds-Purſe, Medlars, Rice, Lentiles, Galls, Myrtle-berries, Barberries, Acorns, Maſtick, Dragons-blood, Allum, Coral, Bole-Armoniack, Iron, Sumach, Pomegranate-Rind. See more of this Nature before ſpoken of.

Drawing Things.

Birth-wort-Roots, Roots of Anemony, Bindweed, Taragon, Gentian, Pellitory, Crowfoot, Daffodil, Aron, Garlick, Onions, Leaves of Sciatica-creſſes, Calamint, Dittany, Pimpernel, Ivy, Seeds of Nettles, Euphorbium, Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Sagaponum, Pitch, Roſin, Cantharides, Pigeons and Hens-dung, Soap: See more in the part before ſpoken of.

Striking back Things,

Roots of Plantain, Leaves of Houſleek, Purſlain, Duckweed, Endive, Lettice, Night-ſhade, Sumach, Hen-bane, Red-Roſes.

Diſſolving Things.

Roots of Aſphodil, Birth-wort, Briony, Leaves of Arach, Beets, Camomile, Chick-weed, Dill, Maiden-hair, Althæa, Mints, Pellitory, Bawm, Clivers, Mallows, Scordium.

Cleanſing Things.

Roots of Aron, Aſphodil, Birth-wort, Cellandine, Orrice, Gentian, *Solomon*'s-Seal, Tamarisk, Leaves of Smallage, Tanſy, Wood, Hyſop, Water-creſſes, Hore-hound, Agrimony, Pimpernel, Pellitory, Arach, Beets, Aloes, Sugar, Honey, Fenugreek-ſeeds, Turpentine, Vitriol, Whey.

Pain-

Pain-removing Things.

Roots of Eringo, Orice, Rest-harrow, Water-flag, Marshmallows, Leaves of Arach, Beets, Camomile, Chickweed, Dill, Maiden-hair, Fennel, Marjoram, Thyme, Parsley, Rosemary, Rue, Saffron, Fenugreek seed, Hogs and Hens-grease.

Things good to clear the Wind.

Costus, Galangal, Garlick, Fennel, Parsley, Smallage, Spikenard, Zedoary, Camomile, Dill, Juniper, Marjoram, Organy, Savory, Wormwood, Schenanth, Bay, Nutmeg, Pepper, Ginger, Annis, Caraway, Cummin.

Humour-dissolving Things.

Roots of Tormentil, Zedoary, Virginian Snake-weed Ginger, Leaves of Carduus-Benedictus, Scordium, Butter-bur, Rosemary, Sage, Rue, Flowers of Saffron, Bezoar-stone, Cochineal, Treacle.

Things good to drive away Poison.

Angelica, Birth-wort, Bistort, Bugloss, Costus, Cypress, Carline, Doronicum, Enula, Garlick, Gentian, Smallage, Tormentil, Vipers-bugloss, Zedoary, Betony, Carduus, Calamint, Agrimony, Avens, Juniper, Organy, Penny-royal, Rue, Scordium, Wormwood, Centaury, Bay-berries, Pepper, Citrons, Anniseeds, Anemony, Cardamoms, Caraway, Fennel, Bezoar, Saffron, Cochineal, Dragons, Plantain. See more in this part.

Astonishing Things.

Mandrake-roots, Leaves of Mandrake, Hemlock, Henbane, Poppy, Opium, Spirit of Darnel and Darnel-meal.

To stop the running of the Glanders *for present Sale.*

Take some Frankincense and strew it upon a Chafing-dish of Coals, and let him receive the Smoak through a Tunnel, into the Nostril that runneth, and it will stop it for some time.

The best Receipt for the Cure of the Glanders *that is; which if your Horse be Youthful, and his Strength and Lungs not too much wasted, you need not fear the Cure: For if any thing in the World will cure this Disease, this Receipt will.*

Take a small Faggot made of the green Boughs of the

Ash-tree, and set it on Fire in some Chimney-corner, clean swept for your use; then having a Gallon of the best Ale you can get in a readiness, quench so many of the Coals that are made thereof therein as will make it pretty thick; then strain it through a Linen Cloth, into some convenient Vessel fit for your use; then double it over again to make it the stronger, by quenching fresh Coals therein; then strain the Liquor from the Coals as you did before, and when it is cold, put it into a Bottle close stopped for your use; for if you do not put it in cold, it will quickly sour, which will spoil it. If you make it strong enough, you shall find that the Coals will drink up a Quart or more of your Ale: when you use it, shake the Bottle to make it all alike; then pour out of it so much as you think fit for your use, and warm it lukewarm, and put a small drenching Horn full of it into each Nostril of your Horse, if he runs at both, if not, but one will serve: do this Morning and Evening during his Cure, and ride him gently after it for about an Hour; then let him feed a while upon Hay, and after that you may give him some Drink. Three or four Quarts of this Liquor will perfect the Cure at fartheſt; if you find, that the Kernels under the Caul do waste, which this Liquor will take away in four or five Days at the furtheſt; you need not much question the Cure: you are to keep him in the House during his Cure. After you have given him his Drink for about a Week together, you may rest him, by forbearing to give him any more for a Day or two; then give it him again, and so use it till you have cured him.

'Tis convenient if the Horse be Strong and Lusty, before you give him this Drink, to cleanse his Body with this Scouring, which is both safe and sure.

Take an Ounce of the best *Barbadoes* Aloes you can get for Money, and beat it very fine, then mix it very well with fresh Butter, and after you have so done, divide it into three Parts, and cover every part all over with Butter, as big as a good Wash-ball; then give them the Horse in a Morning fasting upon the point of a Stick, and stir him a little after it; then bring him into the Stable, and keep him warm, and let him fast two or three Hours, then give him a Mash of Malt, and after that some Hay,

The best of all Receipts for the ordering and making up of Pills or Balls of Aloes, for the scouring or purging of a Horse that is sick, either of Cold, Surfeit, molten Grease, Worms, or any other inward Illness, &c.

Take an Ounce of the best *Barbadoes* Aloes, or of Aloes Hepatica with half an Ounce of the Filing of Steel Needles, and put them both together in a Mortar, and beat and rub them round about with your Pestle, till the Aloes be finely powdred; then drop into it fifteen or twenty drops of Brandy, (or for want thereof, Water) and rub them round with your Pestle, and they will incorporate and become one Body, which you may work with your Hand like unto Paste, into what form or shape you please; divide them into two or three Balls, and give him them fasting in the Morning one after another in a Horn ful of cold strong or small Beer, and exercise him after it; then bring him home, and let him up warm clothed and littered, and no question but he will purge very well.

Or with the help of a Fire and your warm Hand, you may work up by it self into Balls the britlest sort of Aloes that is.

Some Observations upon it.

If you chance to put too much Brandy into it, it will be so thin that you cannot work it into a Paste. If this Misfortune happen to you, put a little of the Powder of *English* Liquorice to it, and that will so quallify the thinness of it, that you may work it up into a Body very well; Or you may make up your Aloes after the same manner only with the Powder of Liquorice, or with any other Powder, which you think most proper for your Use.

How to know the Goodness of the Filings of Steel Needles.

If it look bright and be clean from dirt 'tis good; but if you find it of a rusty Colour 'tis naught. You may buy it at the Needle-makers in *Crooked-Lane*, near the *Monument*, for 6 *d.* the Pound.

Another Receipt very good for the said Distempers.

Take an Ounce of *Barbadoes* Aloes, or Aloes Hepatica, with a Dram of each of these Roots here under-written, finely beaten and searc'd *viz.* Gentian, Aristolochia rotunda and Elecampane; put them into a Mortar together, and make them up as in your former Receipt; or you may make

make up your Aloes with the Powder of crude Antimony.

Another excellent Purge or Scouring, which is good to free a Horse from the same Distempers as the others did, and is the best way I know of for the dissolving of Aloes.

Or you may dissolve your Aloes in cold Brandy, being first beaten into fine Powder, and put therein.

Take an Ounce of the best *Barbadoes* Aloes, or Aloes Hepatica, and beat it in a Mortar to a fine Powder, then put it into a Bladder, and wet the Powder very well with Brandy-wine; then tie it up hard that it receive no Vent, and put it into a Skillet of Water, and set it over the Fire, and you shall find that in a little more than a quarter of an Hour's boiling, your Aloes will be quite dissolved: Then take it off the Fire, (having first in a readiness a Quart of strong Beer indifferent hot) and untie or clip your Bladder with a Pair of Scissars, and let out your Aloes into the Beer, and put also into it an Ounce of fresh Butter, with the Yolks and Whites of two new-laid Eggs: brew and beat all these very well together, till you think they are cool enough to give him, and order him as in the former Receipt. If your Horse be strong and lusty, and that you think this is not a sufficient Dose strong enough for him, you may either add more Aloes, or else you may put into it as much of the Powder of the Root of Jallap and Liquorice, as will lie upon a Sixpence, which will strengthen his Purge very much, and make it work very freely, kindly and safely.

Some more Physical Observations in giving of Purges or Scourings.

1. When you give your Horse a Purge or Scouring, either for Surfeit, Cold, or any other Illness, let him fast about three Hours before he takes it, and about three or four Hours after.

2. Let the first thing he eats after he hath fasted his limited time, be a Mash of Malt or boiled Oats, and let him not have it till his Physick hath wrought twice or thrice with him, which will set it working so much the more freely.

3. If you give him Hay first, before you give him his Mash, 'twill so bind his Physick upon his Stomach, that 'twill spoil the Operation and working Quality thereof, to the no little prejudice of his Health.

4. The best time in my opinion is to give it him about Four or Five in the Afternoon, for then 'tis possible you may see

ſee the working of it the next Morning, which if you give it him in the Morning (which is the uſual time of giving a Horſe Phyſick) it may work in the Night, and ſo prevent you of ſeeing the Operation thereof.

5. According to the ſtrength of your Horſe's Body, and the quantity or quality of the Phyſick you give him, will be the Operation of it; for in ſome Horſes it will work in twelve Hours, in others not in twenty four, and again in others not in forty eight.

6. Let him have no Water, till after his Phyſick hath done working, and then let it be a little aired before you give it him, with a Handful or two of Wheat-bran put amongſt it.

7. If you fear your Horſe is troubled with Bots or Worms, and that you find him to begin to dung looſe after his Purging, then put a Tobacco-pipe at the ſame time ready lighted into his Fundament (breaking off ſome part of it before you put it in, leſt it prove too long) and the Wind from within his Body will draw it out, as orderly as if it were taken at your Mouth, ſo that the Smoke being thus received into his Body will ſo ſuffocate and choak them, that it will make them to let go their hold, which being looſe will be the more eaſily thrown out by the Purge in his Excrements.

A Particular Receipt for Splaiting of the Shoulder, which is a Torn Shoulder.

Put a Pair of ſtrait Paſterns on his Feet, keeping him in the Stable without diſquieting of him; then take of Dialthæa one Pound, of Sallet-Oil one Pint, of Oil-de-bay half a Pound, of freſh Butter half a Pound; melt all theſe together in an Earthen-Pot, and anoint the grieved Place therewith, and alſo round about the inſide of the Shoulder, and within two or three days after, both that Place and all the Shoulder will ſwell; and either prick it with a Lancet or Fleam in all the ſwelling places, or elſe with a ſharp hot Iron, and then anoint it ſtill with the Ointment beforeſaid; but if you ſee that it will not go away, but ſwell ſtill, and gather to a Head, then lance it where the Swelling doth gather moſt, and is ſofteſt under your Finger, and then tent it with your green Ointment, which you may find in the firſt Part,

Things

Things good in general to cure a Shoulder-Pight, which is a Shoulder out of Joint.

To make him swim in a deep Water up and down a dozen turns, for that will make the Joint to go into its right place again; then make two Pins of Ashen-wood the bigness of your Finger, being sharp at the Points and five Inches long; then slit the Skin an Inch above the Point, and an Inch beneath the Point of the Shoulder, and thrust in one of the Pins from above downwards, so as both the ends may equally stick with the Skin; and if the Pin of Wood will not easily pass through, you may make its way first with an Iron Pin; then make two other Holes cross to the first Holes, so as the other Pin may cross the first Pin right in the midst with a right Cross; and the first Pin shall be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent, that the other being round may press the better without stop, and close juster together; then take a piece of a little Line, somewhat bigger then a Whip-cord, and at one end make a Loop, which being put over one of the Pins ends, so that it may lie betwixt the Pin's ends and the Skin, and fasten the last end with your Pack-thred unto the rest of the Cord, so as it may not slip; and to do well, both the Pins and the Cord should be first anointed with a little Hogs-grease, then bring him into the Stable, and let him rest the space of nine or ten days, and let him lie down as little as may be, and put a Pastern-Shoe on the fore Leg, and at nine or ten days end you may anoint the Place with a little Dialthæa or Hogs-grease, and so turn him out to grass, and let him run there till the Pins be rotted off: If you work him in a Cart after a Month's time, it will settle his Shoulder the better, and make him the more fit to ride.

The Cure for the Canker in the Mouth.

Take Allum half a Pound, Honey a quarter of a Pint, Columbine-Leaves and Sage-Leaves, of each a Handful; boil them together in three Pints of running Water, until a Pint be consumed, and wash the sore Places therewith, (with a Rag tied upon a Stick) till they bleed, Morning and Night till they be cured.

The Curing of the Gigges, Bladders or Flappes.

Pull out his Tongue, and slit them with an Incision-Knife, and thrust out the Kernels or Corruption, and wash the place with Vinegar and Salt, and Allum-water, and they will do well again, But to prevent their coming at all, is to wash it often with Wine, Beer and Ale, and so shall no Blister breed thereon, nor any other Disease.

To

To make useful unto you those several Weights and Measures, which are set down by some Authors, *in some Physical and obscure Characters, (wherein are contained many Excellent Receipts); Take them as followeth,*

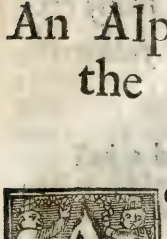
℔ The Character of the half-pound	℈ A Scruple
℔ A Pound	℈ss A Scruple and a half
℔ss A Pound and a half	gr. A Grain, which is the least of all Weights. *M.* a Handful. *P.* a Pugil. *P.* a Part. *Ana* Of each alike.
℥ An Ounce	
℥ss One Ounce and a half	
ʒ A Dram	
ʒss A Dram and a half	

Note that { Twenty Grains / Three Scruples / Eight Drams / Twelve Ounces } Make { A Scruple. / A Dram. / An Ounce. / A Pound. }

An

An Alphabetical Deſcription of the Diſeaſes of a Horſe.

A.



Accloyed or *Cloyed*, is no other than Prick'd with a Nail in the Shoeing, *vid* Prick'd.

Arriſtes; vid. *Rat-tails*.

St. *Anthonies-Fire*, is a vehement burning Diſeaſe in the Fleſh, and is of the Nature of *Noli-me-tangere* or *Wild-Fire*, and is named of ſome, *The Singles of an Horſe*, which is very hard and difficult to cure.

Anticor or *Heart-ſickneſs*, is cauſed many times by too much Feeding without Exerciſe, and ſometimes by hard and immoderate Riding, and careleſs looking after him afterwards, which makes the Blood of this uſeful Creature (a Horſe) ſo corrupted and inflamed, that unleſs it find ſome way to vent it ſelf forth, it ſoon puts a period and end to his Life. This Diſeaſe hath its Seat and Reſidence near the Heart, and is known by a Swelling in the middle of his Breaſt againſt the Heart, from whence it derives its Name.

Attaint Upper is a Swelling of the Maſter, or Back-Sinew of the Fore-legs, near the Paſtern-Joint, and cometh ordinarily by an *Over-reach*.

Attaint Nether is the ſame with the other, and cometh ſometimes by a Wrench, and ſometimes by a Strain; all the difference of them is, whereas the other is upon the Foot-lock Joints, this is under it, and is uſually upon the Heel or Fruſh, and is not always viſible to the Eye; but it may

be felt by the Heat and Burning of it, and by its Softneſs, which will ariſe by a Swelling like a Bladder or Bliſter, wherein will be corrupt and vitious Matter like to Jelly, which will make him complain very much.

Anbury is a kind of *Wen* or *ſpungy Wart*, growing upon any part of a Horſe's Body.

Apoplexy, vide *Palſy*.

Ach or *Numbneſs* in the Joints cometh by Cold, taken by hard and violent Exerciſe or Labour.

Avives, *Vives* or *Fives*; ſee *Vives*.

B.

Bloody-Flux, vide *Flux-bloody*.

Back-ſwayed, vide *Swaying in the Back*.

Barbes are a common Diſeaſe, and few Horſes are without them, they are known by two Paps under his Tongue, which ſeldom prove hurtful to him, till they be inflamed with corrupt Blood, proceeding from vitious Humours, which will make them raw, and grow beyond their uſual length, and cauſe them to become very painful to him, which will hinder his feeding. You muſt clip them away with the Sciſſars.

Blood-ſpaven, is a ſoft Swelling which groweth through the Hough, and is commonly full of Blood, and is biggeſt upon the inſide, and being fed by the Maſter-Vein, makes it greater than the Swelling on the out-ſide: It runneth down the inſide of the Hough down the Leg to the Paſtern: This Diſeaſe is occaſioned from the Corruption of the Blood, taken by hard Riding when the Horſe is young and tender, which by overmuch heating, makes it ſo thin and flexible, that the Humour falling downwards reſideth in the Hough; which makes the Joints ſtiff, and cauſeth him to go with great Pain and Difficulty. This Diſeaſe growing hard makes it more eaſy to cure than the *Bone-ſpavin*.

Bone-ſpaven is a great Cruſt as hard as a Bone, if it be let run too long, it ſticketh, or rather groweth on the inſide of the Hough, under the Joint, near to the great Vein, which maketh him to halt very much; it cometh at firſt like a tender Griſtle, which by degrees cometh to this hardneſs: It is bred ſeveral ways, either by immoderate Riding or hard Labour, which diſſolves the Blood into thin Humours, ſo that it falleth down and maketh its Reſidence in the Hough, which cauſeth the place to ſwell, and ſo become a hard Bone, which occaſions this name

of

of *Bone-ſpaven:* it cometh alſo hereditary from the Sire or Dam, which are troubled with the ſame Diſeaſe.

Blood-running Itch, cometh by the Inflammation of the Blood, being over-heated by hard Riding, or other ſore Labour: It getteth between the Skin and the Fleſh, and maketh a Horſe to rub, ſcrub and bite himſelf; which if let alone too long, will come to a grievous Mange, and is very infectious to any Horſe that ſhall be nigh him: What cureth the Mange, cureth this Diſeaſe.

Bots and *Worms* in general are of three ſorts, *viz. Bots*, *Trunchions* and *Maw-Worms: Bots* are uſually found in the great Gut near the Fundament, *Trunchions* are found in the Maw, and if they continue theree too long, they will eat their Paſſage through, which will certainly bring Death, if not killed. The third ſort are called *Plain-Worms*, which remain in a Horſe's Body, which are of an effect alſo. *Bots* are a ſmall Worm, with great Heads and ſmall Tails, breeding in the great Gut adjoining to the Fundament, which may be taken away by your Hands, by picking them away from the Gut where they ſtick. *Trunchions* are ſhort and thick, and have black and hard Heads, and muſt be removed by Medicine. *Maw-Worms* are of a reddiſh Colour, ſomewhat long and ſlender, much like unto *Earth-Worms*, about the length of a Man's Finger, which alſo muſt be taken away by Medicine. They proceed all from one Cauſe, which is raw, groſs and phlegmatick Matter engendred from foul feeding, which cauſeth all theſe three ſorts of evil creatures to breed. The Signs to know, when he is troubled with them is, he will ſtamp with his Feet, kick at his Belly, turn his Head towards his Tail, forſake his Meat; he will groan, tumble, wallow, and alſo friſk his Tail to and fro.

Bunches, *Knots*, *Warts* and *Wens*, come ſometimes by eating of foul Meat, by Bruiſes, by hard Riding and ſore Labour, whereby the Blood becomes ſo putrefied and foul, that it turns into evil Humours, which occaſions theſe kind of Sorrances.

Blood-ſhotten Eyes, or all Diſeaſes of the *Eyes* come of two Cauſes, *viz.* either inward or outward; the inward Cauſes proceed from evil Humours that reſort and flow to the Eyes, the outward from ſome Stroke or Blow that is given him thereon.

Bleeding at Noſe cometh commonly among young Horſes, proceeding from great ſtore of Blood, or by means that the

the Vein ending in that place, is either opened, broken or fretted: It is opened many times by reason that the Blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine or too subtile, and so pierceth through the Veins; or it may be broken by some violent Strain, Cut or Blow; or it may be fretted or gnawn asunder, by sharpness of the Blood, or by some other evil Humours contained therein.

Botch in the Groin, cometh by reason that a Horse being full of Humours, and suddenly laboured, causeth them to resort to the weakest Parts, and there gather together and breed a *Botch*, and especially in the hinder parts of the Thighs, not far from the Cods; the Signs be these, His hinder Legs will be all swoln, especially from the Gambrels or Hoofs upwards; and if you feel with your Hand, you may find a great Knob or Swelling, and if it be round and hard it will gather to a Head.

Blisters, are certain hollow risings between the Skin and the Flesh, proceeding either from some Burn, Scald or Chasing, and are very full of thin Water.

Bustness, vide *Rupture*.

C.

A Canker, is a very filthy and loathsom Sorrance, which if it continue long uncured, it will fester and putrify the place so where it is, that it will eat to the very Bone, and if it happens to come upon the Tongue it will eat it asunder; if it light upon the Nose, it will eat the Gristle through, and if it come upon any part of the Flesh, it fretteth and gnaweth it in a great breadth. You may easily know this Sorrance, for where it is, the places will be raw, and bleed often, and many times a white Scurf will grow upon that place infected with it. It proceedeth many ways, either by Melancholy and filthy Blood ingendred in the Body, by unwholesome Meat, or by some salt and sharp Humours coming by Cold, not long before taken, which will make his Breath to stink very much.

Clifts and Cracks in the Heel, come several ways, either by over-hard Riding or Labour, which occasions Surfeits; or by giving him unwholesome Meat, or by washing him when he is hot, which corrupts his Blood, and causes the peccant Humours to fall down and settle where the Sorrances are, which makes his Heels very raw, and run ve-

ry offensively with stinking Water and Matter, which prove very troublesome to the poor Creature.

Cods and *Stones* swelled, come several ways; either by some Wound, or by the sting of some venomous Creature, or by fighting of one Horse with another; or by means of some evil Humours, which corrupt the Mass of Blood, which fall down to the Cods sometimes after Sickness, or Surfeiting with Cold, and then it is a sign of Amendment; and sometimes from having too much plenty of Seed.

Cord, is a strait Sinew in the Fore-Legs, which cometh from the Shackle-Vein to the Gristle in the Nose, between the Lip, the length of a Bean. Or there be two Strings like Threads that lie above the Knee and the Body, and run like a small Cord through the Body to the Nostrils, which causes a Horse to stumble, and sometimes to fall; and is a Defect which is very common among young Horses. You may know this Infirmity by his stiff going, and stumbling without any visible Sorrance.

Cholick, is commonly occasion'd by *Wind*, which makes it bear the Name of *Wind-Cholick*: It causeth very violent Pain, by Griping of the Belly of a Horse, which will make him strike at it, and sometimes to lie down and tumble, and stamp with his Feet, and be so painful as to make him forsake his Meat.

Colt-Evil, is a Disease that is subject both to a Horse and Gelding. It cometh to a Horse with an unnatural Swelling of the Yard and Cods, proceeding of Wind, filling the Arteries and hollow Sinew, or Pipe of the Yard, or else through the abundance of Seed: and to a Gelding for lack of natural Heat to expel their Seed any further.

Cold or Poze in a Horse's Head, is gotten by means and ways unknown, according to the Temper and Constitution of a Horse's Body; and the best Keeper cannot warrant his Horse from this Infirmity. You must know, that if the Horse be subject to bad Humours, you must endeavour to expel them, by purging of his Head. Now, according as the Cold which a Horse hath taken, is new or old, great or small, according as the Humours do abound in his Head, and as those Humours be thick or thin, so is the Disease more or less dangerous: If he hath but a new taken Cold, he will have small Kernels like Wag Kernels under his Caul, about the Root of his Tongue; but

but if he hath great ones, then you may imagin his Cold of a longer date. His Cold may be new also, if you find him rattle in his Head, or void thin Matter out of his Nose and Eyes, or if he hold down his Head in the Manger, or when he drinketh, his Water cometh up again out of his Nostrils, or if he cheweth between his Teeth matterative Stuff: but if he casteth foul stinking Matter out of his Nose, and coughs grievously; then it is a sign he may have the *Glanders* or *Consumption of the Lungs.*

Consumptions are of two sorts: one is call'd *a dry Malady*, the other, *A Consumption of the Flesh.* The first cometh by violent Heats and Colds, with fretting and gnawing Humours, descending out of the Head, which fall upon the Lungs, which causeth at first thin Matter to run from the Nose; but after some certain time it groweth thick, tough and viscous, which causeth a Maceration and Leanness of the whole Body, whereby he droopeth and pineth away; and tho he doth eat and drink, yet he doth not digest it kindly, to do him good. The Signs to know this Malady are; this Flesh will soon consume away, his Belly is gaunt, and the Skin thereof so hard stretched, or rather shrunk up, that if you strike it with your Hand, it will sound like a Tabor; neither will his Hair shed in due season, as other Horses do; he will cough, and that but huskingly, as if he had swallowed some small Bones: and 'tis a Disease hard to be cured. The other *Consumption* is that *of the Flesh*, which also is occasion'd by a Cold; which for want of a Cure in time, causeth this Maceration and Leanness throughout the whole Body; and cometh several ways, either by violent Heats, or immoderate Labour; or riding him into the Water before he be thoroughly cold, and setting him up negligently afterwards.

Cramp or *Convulsions*, are all of one Malady; they are forcible Contractions of the Sinews, Veins and Muscles, in any Member or part of the Body, which proceeds several ways; either from some Wound, or Sinew cut asunder, or for want of Blood, or by over-heats and sudden cooling afterwards; or lastly, by over-much purging him. The Signs to know this Malady are, that the infected will be so stiff, that the whole Strength of a Man is not able to bow it; he will be lame and well as it were in a moment. There is also another kind of them, which seizeth upon a Horse's Neck, and Reins of his Back, and so al-

moſt univerſally over his whole Body, which proceedeth ſeveral ways; either by ſome great Cold, which may be catched ſeveral ways, or by loſs of Blood, whereby a great windineſs entereth into the Veins, and ſo benumbeth the Sinews. This is alſo known by his Neck and Head ſtanding awry, his Ears upright, and his Eyes hollow, his Mouth dry and clung, and his Back will riſe like a Camel; which muſt be cured by giving him ſomething to make him ſweat, and by loading him with warm Woollen Cloths.

Coſtiveneſs, is when a Horſe is ſo bound in his Belly, that he cannot dung but with great Pain and Trouble: It is a Diſeaſe very dangerous and perillous to him, and is the Origin of ſeveral Maladies; you may know it by ſeveral Symptoms; ſometimes it proceedeth from Glut of Provender, or over-much Feeding, ſometimes by eating too dry and hard Meats, which ſuck and dry up the moiſture of a Horſe's Body, *viz.* Beans, Peaſe, Wheat or Tares, *&c.* Not but that they are very wholeſome Food, and the heartieſt Meat a Horſe can eat; but feeding too much upon them over-heats his Body more than any other Grain whatſoever; which ſhuts up a Horſe's Office of Nature, ſo that it makes him he cannot dung: And beſides, they are very windy Food, which cauſeth many bad Humours and Obſtructions in the Body. Sometimes Coſtiveneſs cometh alſo by much Faſting, in the Dieting of them for Races or Hunting, which doth ſuck up (like a Spunge) the phlegmatick Moiſture of the Body.

Crown-ſcab, is a filthy, ſtinking and cankerous Diſeaſe, breeding round about the Feet, upon the Coronets or top of the Hoof, next the Hair, which cauſeth much Pain unto him: It cometh to him, by reaſon he hath been bred in ſome cold wet Soil, ſtriking corrupt Humours up to his Feet; and he is more troubled with theſe in the Summer than the Winter. The Signs to know it are theſe; The Hair about the Coronets will be thin and ſtaring like Briſtles, and run with matterative Water.

Camery or *Frounce*, are ſmall Warts or Pimples in the moiſt part of a Horſe's Palate, which are very ſoft and ſore, and are bred alſo ſometimes in his Lips and Tongue; it is occaſion'd many ways; ſometimes by eating of wet Hay whereon Rats or other Vermin have piſs'd; ſometimes by drawing frozen Duſt amongſt the Graſs into his Mouth, and ſometimes by licking up of Venom.

The

The Signs ſhew themſelves, which are the Pimples or Whelks, and Soreneſs of them, with the unſavorineſs of his Food that he hath eaten before, and his falling from his Meat.

Curb, is a long Swelling beneath the Elbow of the Hough, in the great Sinew behind, above the top of the Horn, which maketh him halt and go lame when he hath been heated: it cometh to him ſeveral ways, either hereditarily, or by ſome Bruiſe or Strain, or by heavy loading him when he was too young.

Caſting out of his Mouth and Noſtrils his Drink, proceedeth from a cold Stomach, or by ſome Cold taken in his Head, where the Rheum bindeth upon the Roots and Kernels of the Tongue, which hath as it were ſtrangled and made ſtrait the Paſſages of the Stomach.

Canker in the Eyes, cometh of a rank and corrupt Blood, deſcending from the Head into them, where it breedeth a little Worm like the Head of a Piſmire, which groweth in the corner next his Noſe, which will eat in time, if let alone, through the Griſtle of his Noſe, and ſo paſs into his Head, and kill him. You may know it by the great and ſmall Pimples within and without the Eyelids, and the Eye it ſelf will be full of corrupt Matter. What cures it in the Mouth, cures this.

Chops, *Clefts* or *Rifts*, in the Palate of a Horſe's Mouth, proceed either from coarſe and rough Hay full of Thiſtles, and other pricking ſtuff, or by foul Provender full of ſharp Seeds; which by frequent pricking the Bars of his Mouth, doth cauſe them to wrankle and breed corrupt Blood, which may turn to the Canker. What cures the Canker in the Mouth, if it comes to this Diſeaſe, cures this; but to prevent the Canker, waſh his Mouth with Vinegar and Salt, and anoint it with Honey.

Canker in the Mouth, is a Rawneſs of the Mouth and Tongue which is full of Bliſters, ſo that he cannot eat his Meat; it proceeds from crude and undigeſted Meat, rankneſs of Blood, or unnatural Heat coming from the Stomach.

Crick in the Neck, is a kind of Convulſion, which I ſhall ſpeak but briefly of, becauſe I have handled it fully before in all the Kinds thereof. It is when the Horſe cannot turn his Neck any manner of ways, but holds it right forth; inſomuch that he cannot take his Meat from the Ground, but with great Trouble and Pain.

Creſt-fallen is, when that part which a Horſe's Mane groweth on, which is the upper part thereof, and called the Creſt, leaneth either to one ſide or other, not ſtanding upright as it ought to do. It cometh for the moſt part from Poverty, occaſioned by ill keeping; and eſpecially when a fat Horſe falleth away ſuddenly upon any inward Sickneſs.

D.

Dropſy, is a Diſeaſe which cauſeth a univerſal Swelling of the Body, through the great quantity of Water that lieth between the Skin and the Fleſh, occaſioned by melancholy Blood, Water and Wind, which will make his Belly and Legs to ſwell; but his Back, Buttocks and Flanks will be dried and ſhrunk up to the very Bones; and if you thruſt your Finger hard upon the place ſwoln, you ſhall leave the print thereof behind; for the Fleſh wanting natural heat, will not return again to its place. Other Signs there be to know this Diſeaſe, *viz.* He will be evil coloured, heavy, dull, and of no Face, Strength nor Spirit; and therefore it proceedeth principally for want of good Nouriſhment and Digeſtion, which paſſeth into Melancholy: it proceedeth alſo, either from the Spleen or the Liver, or both; the Blood being putrefied and turned into a thin Water; and ſometimes for want of good Exerciſe, or over-much Reſt. He will be alſo ſhort-breath'd, loſe his Stomach, and be very dry; and though you bring him to the Water, he will drink little, but only pudder long with his Noſe in it. In a word, he will be as if he had a general *Conſumption* over his whole Body, and his Hair will peel off with the leaſt rubbing.

Dimneſs of Sight or *Blindneſs*, is occaſioned ſeveral ways; either by ſome Strain, violent Riding, hard Labour, and over-charging him with a Burden beyond his Strength, whereby the Strings of his Eyes are ſtretched beyond their due Compaſs; it may alſo be hereditary: laſtly, by ſome Blow or Wound. The Sign is, want of Sight, or the ill affected colour of the Eye.

E.

A Bony Excreſcence is occaſioned moſt an end by Cauſticks, or burning Corroſives, which are put to Wounds that lie cloſe to the Bone; as when the Wound is in the Leg, or about the Paſterns; for the Fleſh being very much burned by

by them, cause the Excrescence to grow upon the Bone; so that by the little Experience of the Farrier the Wound is healed, but this Excrescence doth remain: and sometimes it cometh by a Shackle, or the Galling of a Lock or Fetters, that have been long continued upon the Foot. What cures the Bone-spaven, cures this.

Enterfering cometh several ways; either hereditary from the Parents, or by some stiffness in his Pace; or by evil and too broad Shooing, which maketh him to go so narrow behind with his hinder Feet, that he fretteth one Foot against another, so that there groweth hard mattery Scabs, which are so sore that they make him go lame. The Signs are his ill going, and the visible sign of the Scabs.

Eyes Blood-shotten. See *Blood-shotten Eyes.*

Eyes Lunatick. See *Lunatick Eyes.*

F.

Feltick, is no other than a galled Back.

Fraying, is Stiffness taken in his Legs and Feet.

Farcin or *Fashions* is a creeping Ulcer, and is the most loathsom, stinking and filthy Disease that can come to a Horse. It proceedeth first of corrupt Blood engendred in the Body by over-Heats and Colds; which beginneth first with hard Knots and Pustles, which at last by spreading and dilating it self, will over-run the whole Body of a Horse; but it commonly beginneth in a Vein, or near to some Master-Vein, which feedeth and nourisheth the Disease: It cometh sometimes also by *Spur-Galling*, with rusty Spurs, Snaffle, Bit, or the like: as also by the biting of some other Horse infected with the said Disease; or if it be in the Leg, it may come with enterfering one Leg with another, and by many other ways.

Water-Farcin cometh to a Horse by his feeding upon low watry Grounds, and in Pits or Holes where the Grass grows above Water; so that in picking out the Grass he licks up the Water with it, which will cause Horses sometimes to swell under the Belly and Chaps; which when you come to prick it with a hot Iron (bent back again about the length of a Fleam) there will issue from it abundance of yellow, grey and oily Water.

Flanks, is a Wrench, Crick, Stroke, or other Grief gotten in his Back; which word we are beholden to the *French* for. Now there is another sort of *Flanks*, which is quite different from the other, which is a kind of Pleurisy;

which is when he is over-run with too much Blood, which endangereth a *Mange*, or else he falleth dangerously sick thereby; who by reason that he hath been often blooded before, his Body now requires it; whereof he missing, falleth into a loathsom and dangerous Malady.

Falling of the Fundament cometh several ways; either by Weakness, being poorly fed, or by some Cold, which occasions a Scouring and Flux of Blood.

A Fever, according to the Learned Physicians, is an unnatural and immoderate Heat, which proceedeth first from the Heart, and so spreadeth it self through all the Arteries and Veins of the Body, stopping all the natural Motions thereof: and there be several sorts of them, *viz. Quotidian*, *Tertian*, *Quartan* and *Pestilent*, and are all of one Nature, tho some be more malignant than others are: only a *Hectick Fever* is of a Nature far different from the former; and so likewise a *Pestilent Fever*. *Vegetius* speaketh of Summer, Autumn and Winter-*Fevers*, without making any great difference between them, more than that one is worse than another, by reason of the time and season of the Year he hath it in. I shall shew you first the Causes from whence they proceed, and then give you the Signs how you may know them. It cometh by hard Labour or Exercise; as of too much Travelling, and especially in hot Weather, and sometimes by extream Heat of the Sun, and also by extream Cold of the Air; and sometimes it is bred of crude or raw Digestion, which happeneth by too greedy eating of such Corn as was not throughly dried or cleansed. Now the Signs to know a *Fever* are these: The Horse doth continually hold down his Head, and is not able to lift it up; his Eyes are so swelled, that he cannot easily open them for matterative Stuff, and he will fall away and consume in his Flesh; his Lips and all his Body is lush and feeble, his Stones hang down, he will covet much to lie down, and often to rise again: If his Ague come with a cold Fit, he will shake and quiver, and when the cold Fit is over, he will burn, and his Breath will be hot and will fail, and his Flanks beat; he will reel as he goeth, he will covet much to drink, and evermore keep his Mouth in the Water, although he will drink but little. These are the certain Signs of a *Fever*, as I know of.

Fistula, is a deep, hollow, crooked *Ulcer*, for the most part springing from malignant Humours engendred in some Wound, Sore or Canker not well cured; sometimes

it cometh by a Bruise which hath festered inwardly, which either bursted forth of it self, or was opened by a Farrier; sometimes it cometh by a co-wrench or pinch of a Collar in drawing, or by being wrung with the Tree of a Saddle. The Sign to know it, is the hollowness of it descending downwards from the Orifice, which is much straiter at the Mouth than the Bottom, and sendeth forth thin Matter from the same.

Foundering in the Feet, cometh evermore by hard Riding, or sore Labour, by great Heats and Colds, which distemper the Body, and stir up peccant and malignant Humours, that inflame the Blood, melt the Grease, and cause it to descend downwards into his Feet, and there settle; which causeth such a numbness and pricking in his Hoofs, that he hath no sense nor feeling of them, for he is hardly able to stand, which if he do, it is but after a feeble manner, for you may soon push him down with your Hand; besides he will stand shaking and quaking, as if he had a fit of an Ague. This Disease cometh several ways, sometimes by watering him when he is very fat, and his Grease molten within him, and then suddenly cooled, by setting him upon cold Planks without Litter, or taking his Saddle off too soon, or else by letting him stand when he is hot in some shallow Water up to the Feet-locks; by which means, through the extraordinary Coldness of it, the molten-Grease descendeth into his Feet, and there cakes and congeals, which is the true reason of this Malady. A Horse also may be foundred by wearing strait Shoes in the Heat of Summer, and travelling upon hard Ground. To know when a Horse is foundred upon his Fore-feet, and not on his Hinder-feet, you may know it by this; he will tread only upon his Hinder-Feet, and as little as he can on his Fore-feet, and go crouching and crimpling with his Bottocks. Sometimes he will be foundred on his Hinder-Feet, and not on his Fore-feet, (but this is very seldom) which you may know by his seeming very weak behind, and will rest himself as much upon his Fore-feet as he can, being very fearful to set his Hinder-feet to the Ground.

Foundring in the Body, cometh by eating too much Provender suddenly when he is too hot, and panting, whereby his Meat not being well digested, breedeth evil Humours, which by little and little do spread through all the Members, and at length doth so oppress all his Body, that it

taketh

taketh away his ſtrength, and makes him in ſuch evil condition that he can neither go nor bow his Joints, and being once laid, is not able to riſe again, neither can he ſtale or dung but with great pain. It cometh alſo if he drink too much upon travelling when he is hot, and not riding him after it. The Signs to know it; He will be chill and quake for Cold after drinking, and ſome of it will come out of his Noſe, and ſome few days after his Legs will ſwell, and after a while begin to peel, and have a dry Cough, which will make his Eyes to water, his Noſe to run with a white phlegmatick Stuff, and cauſe him to forſake his Meat, and make him hang down his Head, for extream Pain, in the Manger. *Foundring* is a *French* Word, and ſignifieth no more than a Surfeit given in the Body of a Horſe.

Cheſt-Foundred is diſcovered by this Infirmity; he will often covet to lie down, and ſtand ſtradling with his Fore-legs.

Falſe Quarter, is a Rift, Crack or Chink on the out-ſide, but moſt commonly on the inſide of the Hoof, which is an unſound Quarter, ſeeming like a Piece put therein, and not all of one entire Piece: It cometh ſeveral ways; ſometimes by ill ſhooing and paring, ſometimts by gravelling, or a prick with a Nail or Stub, which will make him halt; and wateriſh Blood will iſſue out of the Chink or Rift.

Flux cometh ſeveral ways, *vid. Lask* or *Looſeneſs.*

Bloody Flux or *Flix* are of ſeveral kinds, ſometimes the Fat of the ſlimy filth that is avoided, is ſprinkled with a little Blood, ſometimes the Excrements are like wateriſh Blood, and ſometimes like pure Bood; and all theſe do ſpring from one and the ſame cauſe, which is the Ulceration of the Guts. Now you may know by their ſeveral mixtures, whether the Ulceration be in the inner ſmall Gut, or in the outward great Gut; if it be in the inner Guts, then the Matter and Blood will be mixt together, but if it be in the outward Gut, then they be not mingled together, but come out ſeverally, the Blood moſt commonly following the Matter. It cometh commonly of ſome ſharp Humour, breeding by filthy raw Food, or ſore Travel, or Labour; which being violently driven through many crooked and narrow Paſſages, do cleave to his Guts, and with their heat and ſharpneſs fret them, cauſing Ulceration and grievous Pains. It cometh alſo by ſome great Cold, Heat or Moiſtneſs, or by means of receiving ſome violent

violent Purgation, as Scammony, Stibium, or ſuch like violent Simples applied in too great a quantity, or it may be by Weakneſs of the Liver.

The Fig: This Diſeaſe bears its name from a hard Piece of Fleſh growing upon the Fruſh or Heel, which reſembleth the ſhape and faſhion of a Fig, it cometh by reaſon of ſome hurt received in his Foot (being not throughly cured) or by Stub or Nail, Bone, Thorn or Stone, and ſometimes by an over-reach upon the Heel or Fruſh.

Falling-evil is a Diſeaſe that is ſeldom ſeen, which is no other than the Falling-Sickneſs, proceeding from ill Blood, and cold and thick Phlegm gathered together in the Fore-part of the Head, between the Panicle and the Brain, which being diſpers'd over the whole Brain, doth ſuddenly cauſe the Beaſt to fall, and bereave him of all ſenſe for a time. It is more incident to *Italian*, *Spaniſh* and *French* Horſes than to *Engliſh:* ſome are of opinion, that at a certain Courſe of the Moon, Horſes and other Beaſts many times do fall and die for a time, as well as Men. This Diſeaſe is known by theſe Signs, When they are fallen, their Bodies will quiver and quake, and their Mouths will foam; and when you think they are dying, they will riſe up immediately and fall to their Meat. You may know whether they will fall often or not, by putting your Fingers to the Griſtle of their Noſtrils, and if it feel cold, he will fall often, but if it be warm, he will ſeldom fall.

Frenzy. vid. *Madneſs.*

G.

Gigges, *Bladders* or *Flappes* in the Mouth of a Horſe, are ſmall Swellings or Puſtules, with black Heads on the inſide of his Lips, under his great Jaw-teeth, which will ſometimes be as great as a Walnut, and ſo painful withal, that they will make him let fall his Meat out of his Mouth, or at leaſt keep it in his Mouth unchewed: they do proceed from foul feeding, either of Graſs or Provender; you may feel them with your Finger.

Gangrene, is a running and creeping Sore, that as far as it runs, mortifies the Fleſh, cauſing it to rot, ſo that of neceſſity, that Member, wherein a Gangrene is radicated muſt be cut off.

Greaſe Molten, is when his Fat is melted by over-hard riding or labour: you may know it by his panting at the Breaſt and

and girting Place, and heaving at the Flank, which will be visible to be seen the Night you bring him in, and the next Morning, and besides, his Body will be very hot and burning.

Glanders is such a loathsome and filthy Disease, and withal so infectious, that it will infect those that stand nigh him. It cometh first of Heats and Colds, which beginneth with a thin Rheum, and ascendeth up to the Head, and settleth near to the Brain, and so venteth it self at the Nose, which in time groweth thicker and thicker, till it comes of a yellowish Colour, like unto Butter, which is then very hard to cure: but if it comes to a viscous, and a tough and slimy substance, and the Colour be green, and stink much, having run some Months with some reddish Specks in it; then the most experienc'd Farrier may fail in the Cure thereof, and the Horse die under his hands; for then it is most certain, if he hath those last Symptoms, that his Lungs are ulcerated, and his Cure not to be performed without great difficulty. Besides these inward Signs to know this Disease, I shall give you one outward one, which is, he will have some Kernels and Knots that may be felt under his Caul; and as they grow bigger and more inflamed, so doth the Glanders more increase within the Body of a Horse. I would advise you before you begin his Cure, to prepare his Body four or five days together with scalded Bran, and give it him instead of his Provender, for this will dry up the moisture and bad Humours in his Body; then let him blood in the Neck, and the next day rake him, and give him the Glister prescribed in the First Part.

Gravelling cometh to a Horse in travelling, by means of little Gravel-stones getting betwixt the Hoof and the Shoe, which settle at the quick, and there fester and fret.

H.

Hoof-Brittle, or *Brittle-hoof*, cometh either by Nature or Accident. It cometh naturally by the Sire or Dam; accidentally by a Surfeit that fell down into his Feet, or else in that he had been formerly foundred.

Hair falling or shedding from his Mane or Tail, cometh by Heat taken, which hath engendred a dry Mange therein, which occasions their shedding; sometimes it comes by a Surfeit, causing evil Humours to resort to those Parts, *&c.*

Head-

Head-ach is a pain that cometh either of some inward Cause, as of some cholerick Humour, bred in the Panicles of the Brain, or of some outward Cause, as of extream Heat or Cold, or of some sudden Blow or noisom Savour. The Signs to know it are, The Horse will hang down his Head and Ears, his Sight will be dim, his Eyes swollen and wateriſh, and he will forsake his Meat. See the First Part.

Hoof-cast or casting of the Hoof, is when the Coffin falleth clean away from the Foot, which cometh by means of some Foundring, Prick or Stab, which breaketh on the top round about the Cronets, which in time causeth it to fall off.

Hoof-bound is a shrinking in of the Hoof, on the top thereof, and at the Heel, which maketh the Skin to stare above the Hoof, and to grow over the same; it cometh to a Horse several ways, either by keeping them too dry in the Stable, by strait Shooing, or by some unnatural Heat after Foundring. The Signs to know it are, He will halt much, and his Hoofs will be hot, and if you knock them with a Hammer, they will sound hollow, like an empty Pottle; and if they are not both Hoof-bound, you may know which is the grieved Foot, by the smallness of it. Some call this Sorrance a dry Foundring.

Hide-bound, is when the Skin sticketh so fast to the Horse's Back and Ribs, that you cannot pull it from his Flesh with your Hand. It cometh to a Horse several ways, sometimes by Poverty, sometimes for want of good ordering, sometimes by over-heating him by hard riding, and carelesly letting him stand in the Wet and Rain; and sometimes of corrupt and filthy Blood siccating the Flesh, which wanting its natural Course, causeth this shrinking of the Skin together, which maketh him illy disposed, and to have a gaunt, shrivelled and shrunk up Belly to his Flanks, making his Hair to stare, and his Legs to swell, with many more Signs; but let these serve instead of more.

Hip-shot is when the Hip-bone is removed out of its right place; it cometh to him many ways, sometimes by a wrench or stroke of a Horse, sometimes by slip, strain, sliding or falling. The Signs to know it are, He will halt and go sidling in his going, and the sore Hip will fall lower than the other, and the Flesh, in process of time, will consume away, and if you suffer him to run too long, it will never be restored to its pristine state.

The

The Hurle-bone is about the midst of the Buttock, and is very apt to go out of the Socket with a Slip or Strain.

Hoof-swelled, cometh sometimes to young Horses, when you over-ride, or labour them hard in their youth; which makes them to swell in that place, by reason the Blood falling down there, settleth, which if it be not speedily removed, will beget a wet Spaven.

Haw in the Eye, is a Gristle growing between the nether Eye-lid and the Eye, and will put it quite out, if it be not taken in time away. It cometh to him by gross, tough and phlegmatick Humours, which fall from the Head, and knit together, which in the end grow to this Infirmity. The Signs of it are, the watering of the Eye, and unwilling opening of the nether Lid.

Hough-bony, is a round bony swelling like a *Paris* Ball, growing upon the very top or elbow of the Hough, and cometh ever of some stripe or bruise, or by bruising himself in his Stall, by offering to strike at the Horse that standeth next him, and striking against the Bar that divides them.

Hoof-loosened, is a dissolution or dividing of the Horn or Coffin of the Hoof from the Flesh, at the setting on of the Cronet. Now if the parting be round about the Cronet, it cometh by means of Foundering; if it be in part, then it cometh by some prick of Channel-Nail, Quitter-bone, Retreat, Gravelling or Cloying, or such like thing. The Signs to know it are these, When loosened by Foundering, it will break first in the Fore-part of the Cronet right against the Toes, because the Humour doth always covet to descend towards the Toe; but if it proceeds from pricking, gravelling and such like cankered thing, then the Hoof will loosen round about, equally even at the first; but if it proceeds from a Quitter-bone, or hurt upon the Cronet, then the Hoof will break right above the place that is grieved, and very rarely be seen to go any further.

Hungry-evil is a great desire to eat, it cometh from some great emptiness or lack of Meat, when the Horse is even at the pinch, and almost Chap-fallen; it comes many times by Cold outwardly taken, sometimes by travelling in Frost and Snow, and in barren places, which outward Cold maketh the Stomach cold, whereby all the inward Powers are become weakned. The Signs to know it, are a Change and Alteration in his feeding, having lost all temperance,

perance, and ſnatching and chopping at his Meat, as if he would devour the Manger.

I.

Impoſthumes are ſwellings which come ſeveral ways, either by gathering of filthy corrupt Humours in any Part or Member of the Body, making that to ſwell, which grows at laſt to an Inflammation, and breaks out into foul, mattery and running Sores, which proceed from corrupt Food or bad Blood, and at the firſt very hard and ſore: there are two ſorts of them, hot and cold; you muſt firſt ripen them before they can be healed; ſometimes they are occaſioned by ſome Blow upon the Ears, or Bruiſe by a hempen Halter, or of Cold taken in the Head, which remaining in the Body, make their Paſſage through the Ears: It is known by much burning, and his unwillingneſs to be handled about that place.

K.

Kibed-heels is a Scab breeding behind, ſomewhat above the nether Joint, growing overthwart the Fet-lock. It cometh many ways, ſometimes being bred in cold Grounds, ſometimes for lack of good dreſſing after he hath been ridden or laboured in foul ways; the dirt ſticking to his Legs, fretteth his Skin and maketh ſcabby Rifts, which are very painful to the Horſe, cauſing his Legs to ſwell, eſpecially in Winter and Spring-time, and then he goeth very ſtiffly. What cures the Scratches cures this Diſeaſe.

Kernels under the Caul of a Horſe, come by Heats and Colds, which bring the Glanders; I refer you therefore to the Cure of the Glanders.

L.

Laſk, Looſeneſs or *open Flux of a Horſe's* Body, bringing him to extream weakneſs and faintneſs; it cometh ſometimes from Cold, ſometimes by Nature's being offended with too many cholerick Humours, deſcending from the Liver or Gall down into the Guts, ſometimes by drinking too much cold Water preſently after he hath had his Provender, for by that means the Water getting to the Provender, cauſeth it to ſwell and breed Crudities, and ill Humours in the Stomach, which convey themſelves down into the Guts; ſometimes by ſudden travelling or haſty running upon a full Stomach, before his Meat be well digeſted, ſometimes

by

by drinking cold Water when he is too hot, and not preſently warmed in his Belly, ſometimes by licking up a Feather, or Hen's-dung, with many other ways which will occaſion it: ſtop it not too ſuddenly, for Nature it ſelf is the beſt Phyſician; but if you find he hath had it ſo long, that Nature is become weak and feeble, then you are to ſeek out for ſome Remedy for the Cure of it.

Lampas is a ſwelling that proceeds from abundance of Blood, reſorting to the firſt Furrow of the Mouth, joining to the Fore-teeth, which will cauſe the ſaid Furrow to ſwell as high as his Gathers, which will hinder his Feeding, and make him let fall his Meat half chewed, out of his Mouth again. This is a natural Infirmity which every Horſe hath firſt or laſt, and every common Smith can cure.

Ligs are little *Puſtles* or *Bladders* within a Horſe's Lips. There are many other Diſeaſes that belong to the Mouth, *viz.* *Bloody Rifts*, *Gigs*, *Camery*, *Inflammation*, *Tongue-hurt*, *Barbs*; and are all cured by this one Receipt here underwritten, except the *Lampas*, which every Country Smith can cure, *viz.* Take Wormwood and Shirwit, and bruiſe them in a Mortar, with a little Honey, and anoint the Sores with it, and they will do well.

Leproſy is a cankered Mangineſs ſpreading over all the Body, which is very infectious, cometh of abundance of Melancholy, corrupt and filthy Blood, infected by Surfeits taken by over-hard Riding or Labour. The Signs to know this Diſeaſe are; the Horſe will be all mangy and ſcurfy, full of Scabs and raw places about his Neck, and not very pleaſant to look on, and be always rubbing and ſcrubbing.

Lice cometh of Poverty, and will breed moſt about the Ears, Neck and Tail, and over all the Body; they may be catched alſo by running abroad in the Winter in Woods, or places full of Trees; for the droping of the Trees falling upon his lean and thin Body breed them, ſometimes he may catch them from another Horſe: you may know when he hath them by this; he will rub and ſcrub himſelf againſt Walls and Poſts, and he will be always poor when he hath them.

Low-worm is a Diſeaſe hardly known from St. *Anthony's* Fire, or the *Shingles*, having the very ſelf-ſame Symptoms. 'Tis a Worm that is bred in the Back of a Horſe, between the Skin and the Bone, and runneth along the Neck to the Brain; and when it cometh to touch the Panicle thereof, it maketh him ſtark mad: 'tis known by theſe Signs, *viz.*

After

After a long and weariſome Journey, he will be Sick, and fall from his Meat, and ſtretch himſelf out at length with his Feet, bending his Back, and ſtraining to Piſs, but cannot; but if he doth ſtale, it is but little, and that in his Sheath, which in time will make him ſo mad, that he will gnaw the Manger, Rack-ſtaves, or any thing within his reach. Some Farriers take this Diſeaſe for the *Staggers*, and ſo kill many a good Horſe. The Cure hereof being not put down in the Diſeaſes, I have here inſerted it. Take ſix Heads of Garlick clean peeled, of Acrement a quarter of a Pound, Rue, and that Tormentil that beareth the yellow Flower, of each one Pound, bruiſe them in a Mortar together, and put ſo much Whitewine to them, that after they be ſtrained, there may be of the Juice and Wine two Quarts; then after you have blooded him in the Tail pretty well, divide this Pottle of Liquor into ſix Parts, giving him one Part every Morning, till he hath taken all of them, and this will perfectly cure him, *vid.* St. *Anthony's*-Fire.

Lungs, the Diſeaſes of them come from Heats and Colds, and by hard Riding, which let run too long without Cure, cauſeth them to putrefy, corrupt and rot. You may know this Infirmity by the beating of his Flanks, and working of his Ribs, but moſt cheifly when he cougheth, and then the more ſlowly they do beat and heave, the more old and dangerous is the Diſeaſe; he will draw his Wind ſhort, and but little at once, and groan often, eſpecially when he lieth down and riſeth up again; out of his Noſe will iſſue forth Corruption, and he will ſeem to ſhew ſomething between his Teeth.

Lethargy or *Sleeping-Evil*, is moſt incident to dun and white Horſes; it proceedeth from Phlegm, cold and moiſt Humours which getting into the Brain, does ſo ſtupify and benumb it, which bringeth this Sleepineſs upon him, and is the true Sign of this Diſeaſe.

Lunatick-Eyes look ſometimes as if they were covered with White, and ſometimes they will look clear, and alter their Colour according to the Moon, from which they take their Name, *vid. Moon-Eyes.*

M.

Mattering of the Yard, vid. *Yard Mattered.*

Melancholy is called the *Staggers*, but the true Name thereof is the *Stavers*, vid. *Stavers.*

Mon-foundred cometh from the *French*, which signifieth Molten-Grease, or Foundering in the Body.

Moon-Eyes bear that Name, by reason that at certain times of the Moon they will seem very well, and at other times they seem covered over with a white Phlegm, which is the worst sort of Blindness that is, and is not to be cured; for the more you tamper with it, the worse it is, therefore my advice is, that you let them alone, for they will go in and out till they go quite out. It may be called a *Lunatick-Eye*, which cometh several ways, sometimes from the Sire or Dam, sometimes from evil Humours residing in the Head, which descend down to the Eyes, and they come also by hard riding, or labouring, which the poor Beast was put to perform more than he was able.

Mallender is a kind of dry and hard Scab, which hath Chinks and Chops in it, and hard, stubborn and long staring Hairs, like to Hogs-Bristles, growing about it, upon the inward part of the Fore-legs, just against the Bending of the Knee. It is an evil Sorrance which canketeth and corrupteth the Flesh, and makes him go lame at first going out: It cometh to him several ways, sometime by corrupt Blood, by hard Labour, or Riding, sometimes for lack of clean keeping and rubbing; and usually those Horses that have most Hair upon their Legs, as the *Flanders* and *Friesland* Horses have, are most subject to this Disease.

Mange is a most infectious and filthy Disease, which will make him rub and scrub against every thing he can lean against, and if you remove not his fellow Creatures that are in company with him, at home or abroad, they are subject to catch it from him. The Signs to know it are, his Hair will stare, and in many places peel away from his Skin, and a Scurf will arise thereon. It cometh sometimes by Over-heats and Colds, by hard Riding or Labour, whereby the Blood is corrupted; or by feeding upon unwholesome Meat.

Mourning of the Chine, in plain *English* is no other than the Glanders, which hath its first Source and Origin from Heats and Colds, by hard Riding or Labour, which being let run too long, cometh to this filthy Disease, the Glanders; which in time doth waste the Liver, and putrefy the Lungs, which will in conclusion kill the poor Creature, if not taken in time.

Those that have opened a Horse that hath died of this Disease, have found the Pith and Chine sound and good, and

and therefore this Malady in reason cannot be called the Mourning of the Chine, but the Glanders.

Madness or *Frenzy* is divided into four Passions. The first is, when some bad Humours or Blood getteth into the Panicle of the Brain, but in one part only, which quickly makes him dull in Spirit and Sight; which you will know by this Sign, he will turn round like one that is giddy; the reason is, because the outward part of the Head is grieved only. The second is, when the Venom of such bad Blood doth infect the middle of the Brain, then he becometh frantick, leaping against Walls or any thing else that standeth in his way. The third is, when corrupt and bad Blood filleth the Veins of the Stomach, and infecteth as much the Heart as Brain, then he is said to be mad. The fourth and last is, when the Blood infecteth not only the Brain and Heart, but even the Panicles also, and then he is said to be stark mad, which you may know by biting at every Man that comes near him, and by gnawing the Manger and Walls about him, and at last he will be so very mad that he will tear his own Skin in pieces.

Malt long or *Malt-worm* is a cankerous Sorrance about the Hoof, just upon the Cronet, which will break out into Knobs and Branches, which will run with wateriſh sharp Lye, or Humour, which will venom the whole Feet; which are Signs enough to know them.

Molten-Grease see *Grease-Molten.*

Mules, vid. *Scratches*, for what cures them cures these.

Mellet is a dry Scab that grows upon the Heel of the Fore-feet.

N.

Navel-gall is a Bruise on the Back, or Pinch of a Saddle behind, which if let alone too long, is difficult to cure. 'Tis called a Navel-gall, because the Hurt is right against the Navel.

Night-Mare is a melancholy Blood that doth oppress the Heart, making him sweat more in the night than in the day, which doth take from him his rest; the way to know it is, by taking notice of him in the Morning, whether he sweats in the Flanks, Neck and short Ribs, which if he do, you may be sure that he hath it.

O.

Over-reach is a painful Swelling of the master-Sinew, which

is by reason that he doth over-reach and strike that Sinew with the Toe of his hinder Foot, which maketh him to halt and go lame. *vid.* Attaint upper and nether.

P.

Pissing of Blood cometh several ways, sometimes by riding him too hard, by labouring him beyond his Strength, or by carrying too heavy a Burden upon his Back; sometimes it cometh by reason of some Vein broken in his Body, and then clean Blood will issue forth many times; sometimes it cometh by some Stone fretting upon the Kidneys, by hard Riding or Labour. And lastly, it cometh by journying him in Winter, being newly taken up from Grass, and travelling him before he is thoroughly cleansed from his Grass, which cannot be well under a Week or two. Your Eyes are the Witnesses of this Disease, for he will piss Water like to Blood.

Poll-evil, is a Fistula growing betwixt the Ears and the Poll, or Nape of the Neck, which proceedeth from evil Humours that approach unto that place, or else of some Blow or Bruise, for that is the tendereſt part of all the Head, and therefore sooneſt offended; which rude Carters do little consider of, whilst in their Fury they beat them upon the Head with their Whip-stocks, and therefore no Horses more subject to this Disease than they: This Disease cometh most in the Winter. The Sign to know it, is the Swelling of the place, which in process of time will break of it self, rotting more inward than outward; therefore 'tis more dangerous, if not cured in time.

Pursiness or Shortness of Breath cometh two ways, Natural and Accidental; Natural is, when he is Cock-throttled, for that his Throttle or Wind-pipe being so long, that he is not able to draw it in and out, with so much ease and pleasure as other Horses do that are loose throttled, for that the Wind-pipe being too strait that should convey his Breath to his Lungs, and vent it forth again at his Nose, makes him pant and fetch his breath thus short: likewise, when his Pipe is too much filled with Fat or other phlegmatick Stuff, which suffocates him, and makes his Lungs labour the more: It cometh, secondly, by *Accident*, when he is hard ridden after a full Stomach, or presently after Drinking, which causeth phlegmatick Humours to distil out of the Head into the Wind-pipe, and so fall upon the Lungs, where they rest and congeal, *&c.* It cometh also

alſo by Heats, Colds, Glanders, and the like; and brings with it a great many Inconveniencies, *viz.* Dulneſs and Heavineſs in Travel, being ſubject to ſweat much, and ready to fall down upon every little Strain.

Prick'd, is called *Accloyed*, *Cloyed* or *Retrait*, &c. Moſt of which Names are borrowed of the *French*, and ſignify no more then a *Prick*, by the negligence or unskilfulneſs of the *Farrier*, in driving of the Nails, by their weakneſs, ill pointing or breaking of them; which if not preſently taken out, will in time break out into a foul Sore. You may know it by his going lame; but if you deſire to know it more certainly, pinch him round his Hoof with a pair of Pincers, and when you come to the grieved place, he will ſhrink in his Foot: Or, you may try where he is prick'd by throwing Water upon his Hoof, for that place where he is prick'd will be ſooner dry than any of the reſt; and many other Signs there are which your Ingenuity may find out.

Planet-ſtruck or *Shrow-running*, is a deprivation of Feeling or Motion, not ſtirring any of his Members, but remaining in the ſame Form as when he was firſt ſtricken. It cometh to a Horſe ſeveral ways, ſometimes by Choler and Phlegm ſuper-abundantly mixt together; ſometimes from melancholy Blood, being a cold and dry Humour, which oppreſſeth and maketh ſick the hinder part of the Brain; ſometimes of extraordinary Heat or Cold, or raw Digeſtion, ſtriking into the Veins ſuddenly; or laſtly, from extreme Hunger, occaſioned by long Faſting; the Signs whereof you have had already, *viz.* Numbneſs and want of Motion. If this Diſeaſe cometh of Heat, you may know it by the hotneſs of his Breath, and the free fetching of his Wind; If it proceed from Cold, then you may know it by his Stuffing and Poze in his Head.

Palſy or *Apoplexy* is a Diſeaſe of depriving the whole Body of Senſe, and which is called a general Palſy, and hath no Cure. But when he is deprived but in ſome Part and Member of his Body, (and moſt commonly it is in his Neck) then 'tis called a particular Palſy: The Signs to know it are; He will go grovelling and ſide-ways like a Crab, carrying his Neck as if it were broken, and going crookedly with his Legs, beating his Head againſt the Walls, and yet forſaking not his Meat nor Drink, and his Provender ſeemeth moiſt and wet. It proceeds from foul Feeding in fenny Grounds, which breed groſs and tough

Humours, which joining with Crudities and raw Digeſtion, oppreſs the Brain, or it cometh by means of ſome Wound or Blow given him upon the Temples.

Pearl, *Pin* or *Web*, or any unnatural Spot or thick Film over the Eye, cometh by ſome Stroke or Blow given him, or from deſcent of the Sire or Dam. The Pearl is known by a little round, thick white Spot like a Pearl (from which it hath its Name) growing on the Sight of the Eye.

The Pains is a kind of ulcerous Scab full of fretting matteriſh Water, and breedeth in the Paſterns betwixt the Fetlock and the Heel, which cometh for want of clean keeping and good rubbing, after the Horſe hath been journied, by means whereof the Sand and Dirt remaining in the Hair, fretteth the Skin and Fleſh, which cometh to a Scab, and therefore thoſe Horſes that have long Hair, and are rough about the Feet, as the *Frieſland* and *Flanders* Horſes are, are ſooneſt infected with this Diſeaſe, if they be not the cleanlier kept. The Signs be theſe; His Legs will ſwell with the vehemency and heat that is cauſed from the Venom and filthy Water that iſſueth from the Scabs; for it is ſo ſharp and ſcalding, that it will ſcald off the Hair, and breed Scabs ſo far as it goeth. What cures the Scratches cures theſe.

Peſtilence, *Plague*, *Murrain* or *Garget*, is all one Diſeaſe, which is very infectious and contagious: It cometh to a Horſe many ways; ſometimes by over-hard Riding or Labour, whereby a Horſe is ſurfeited; ſometimes by the Contagiouſneſs of the Air, and evil Vapours and Exhalations that ſpring out of the Earth, after great and ſudden Floods; or coming into fenny or marſhy Ground, that hath always been bred in pure and wholeſome Air. The Signs to know this Diſeaſe are theſe: 'Twill come ſuddenly upon him, but after three or four days drooping, he will ſwell under the Roots of his Ears, like the ſwelling of the Vives, and under the Caul, and 'twill come up to his Cheeks through the Malignancy thereof, and become very hard; he will forſake his Meat, and be very ſleepy, hanging down his Head in the Manger; his Eyes will be yellowiſh, he will brethe ſhort, which will be very hot and offenſive, and ſometimes he will break forth in a Carbuncle or Boyl in his Groin, as big as a Gooſe-Egg, and his Stones will hang limp and flaging, but not always. If you cannot recover him, but that he dieth, bury him very deep, that no Scent, if poſſible, may remain on him to infect the reſt.

Q.

Quinſey is no other than a ſore Throat, which if not carefully taken in time, will ſoon put a period to his Days. It cometh ſometimes by cold and phlegmatick Humours ſettling there; or for want of Blooding, when he is over-run therewith.

Quarters falſe, vide *falſe Quarters.*

Quick-ſcab doth putrefy and corrupt the Blood and Fleſh, and at laſt breaketh forth into a loathſome and infectious Diſeaſe, much like unto the Mange or Leproſy. It cometh by a Surfeit taken by over Riding or hard Labour: It is called a Quick-ſcab, becauſe it runneth from one Member to another; for ſometimes it will be in the Neck, and at other times in the Breaſt, ſometimes in the Mane, and then another time in the Tail.

Quitter-bone is a hard round Swelling upon the Cronet, between the Heel and the Quarter, and groweth moſt commonly on the inſide of the Foot. It cometh to a Horſe many ways; ſometimes by Gravel underneath the Shoe, ſometimes by ſome Bruiſe, Stub, prick of a Nail, or the like; which being neglected, will impoſtumate and break out about the Hoof; it cometh ſometimes alſo by evil Humours which deſcend down to that place, whereof that *Quitter-bone* ſpringeth.

R.

Red-Water is that which iſſueth from any Wound, or ſore Ulcer, which ſo long as that remains in them, it doth ſo poiſon them, that till it get out, they are not to be cured.

Ring-bone cometh two ways; naturally or accidentally; naturally from the Stallion or Mare; accidentally by ſome blow of a Horſe, or any other accident, the Pain whereof breedeth a viſcous ſlimy Humour, like a Griſtle upon the top of the Cronet, which ſometimes goeth round about it, and reſorting to the Bones which are of their own Nature, cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to ſome Bone, which, in proceſs of time cometh to a Bone. The Signs to know it are, There will be a hard Swelling round about the Cronet of the Hoof, which will be higher than any place of it; beſides, his Hair will ſtare and be brittly, and 'twill make him halt.

Rottenneſs is to have his inward Part, *viz.* his Liver, Lights and Lungs ſo waſted and conſumed, that he is not to be recovered by Art.

Rhumatick or *wateriſh Eyes*, cometh by the Flux of Humours, diſtilling from the Brain, and ſometimes by ſome Stripe received; the Signs to diſcover it are, The continual watering of the Eye, and his cloſe ſhutting of his Lids together, accompanied ſometimes with a little Swelling.

Rupture, *Incording or Burſtneſs* is, when the Rim or thin Film or Caul, which holdeth up his Entrails, be broken or over-ſtrained, or ſtretched, that the Guts fall down either into his Cod or Flank, which cometh ſeveral ways; either by ſome Stripe or Blow, or by ſome Strain in leaping over a Hedge, Ditch or Pale, or by teaching him to bound when he is too young, or by forcing him when he is full to run beyond his Strength; or by your ſudden ſtoping him upon uneven Ground, whereby he ſtradling and ſlipping his hinder Feet, teareth the Rim of his Belly. The Signs to know it are theſe; He will forſake his Meat, and ſtand ſhoring and leaning on that ſide that he is hurt; and if you ſearch on that ſide with your Hand, betwixt his Stone and his Thigh upwards to the Body, and ſomewhat above the Stone, you ſhall find the Gut it ſelf big and hard in the feeling, whereas on the other ſide you ſhall find no ſuch thing.

Rat-Tails is a moſt venemous Diſeaſe, and not much unlike to the Scratches of a Horſe. It cometh to him ſeveral ways, ſometimes by too much reſt, and the Keeper's Negligence in not rubbing and dreſſing him well; and by reaſon of too much Reſt and good keeping without Exerciſe, the Blood corrupting in his Body falls down into his Legs, which cauſeth this Diſeaſe.

Retrait is no other than a Prick in the Foot by a Nail, *vid.* Prick'd.

Rheum cometh by Cold, which maketh his Teeth looſe, and ſeem long by the ſhrinking up of his Gums, which will ſpoil his Feeding, that all the Meat will lie in Lumps in his Jaws, *vid.* Colds.

Rot is a Diſeaſe ſo like unto a *Dropſy*, that it is hard to diſtinguiſh it from the ſame: Miſtake not this Diſeaſe for Rottenneſs; for if he be rotten, his Liver and Lights are ſo putrefied, that they are not to be recovered: But this *Rot* is of the Nature of a Sheep's Rot, that is ſaid to be rotten; when his Liver is become foul and ta[illegible] we do

do eat his Fleſh, and affirm it to be good Meat, ſo that the Sheep is not rotten, but hath a Diſeaſe call'd the *Rot:* It cometh ſeveral ways, ſometimes to young Horſes feeding in wet or fenny Grounds, and ſometimes when they are over-heated in their breaking, whereby their Blood is inflamed, putrefied and corrupted, cauſing Obſtructions in the Liver, which cauſe Putrefaction, and ſo Knots and Puſtles do engender therein, which breedeth this Diſeaſe. The Signs are theſe; He will loſe his Stomach, pant much, beat and heave in his Flanks, ſwell under his Belly, his Hair will ſtare, his Legs ſwell, burn and dent when you preſs it with your Finger, and his Coat will not ſhed at thoſe uſual times as other Horſes do, and will be ſo faint and feeble that he will loſe his Courage and Mettle.

Running of the Reins, vide *Mattering of the Yard.*

S.

Shedding of the Seed cometh ſometimes from abundance and rankneſs of the Seed, ſometimes by Strains, or putting too heavy a Load upon his Back; and ſometimes by weakneſs of the Stones and Seed-Veſſels, not being able to retain the Seed until it be digeſted and thickned.

Strain or *Sprain*, is when the Sinews are ſtretched beyond their Strength, by reaſon of ſome Slip or Wrench.

Shackle-gall is on the Paſterns, *vide* Gall.

Surbatine is a beating of the Hoof againſt the Ground; it cometh ſometimes by means of evil Shooing, lying too flat to his Feet; ſometimes by travelling a Horſe too young before his Feet are hardned, which many times doth occaſion a Foundering; ſometimes by hardneſs of the Ground, and high lifting up of the Horſe's Feet; and thoſe Horſes that are flat footed, their Coffins are ſo tender and weak, that they be moſt ſubject to this Sorrance. The Signs to know it are; He will halt on both his fore Legs, and go ſtifly and creeping as though he were half foundred.

Screw is the Nature of a Splint, only the Splint is on the inſide of the Knee, and the Screw is on the outſide.

Swellings and *Tumours* come by Heats and Colds, taken by hard Riding, or ſore Labour, whereby the Horſe being over-much heated, the Greaſe falleth down and ſettleth in his Legs and other parts, which grow dry and hard, and breedeth

breedeth Splints, Spavens, Curbs, Ring-bones and the like Sorrances, which in time are no other things than proper Tumours. Besides, it doth occasion other Knots and Swellings. See the first part for the Cure of them.

Scratches are of several sorts and kinds, and they are called by several Names, *viz.* Crepances, Rats-tails, Mules, Kibes, Pains, *&c.* being no other than the very Scratches which are certain dry Scabs, Chaps or Rifts, that breed between the Heel and the Pastern-joint, and so goeth many times above the Pastern, even up to the very Hoof of the hinder Legs; but sometimes they are upon all four Legs, though not very common: They proceed several ways, sometimes by dry melancholy Humours which fall down upon his Legs; sometimes by the fuming of his own Dung lying under his Heels, or near him; sometimes by the negligence of the Groom, in not rubbing his Heels well, especially after a Journey or hard Labour, when he brings in his Horse from Water, and doth not rub his Legs and Heels dry from the Sand and Dirt which doth burn and fret them, and so cause Swellings, and those Swellings cause Scratches: Sometimes it cometh by Corruption of the Blood after great Heats and Surfeits, taken sometimes by being bred in fenny, marshy or watry Grounds; and sometimes they come to a Horse after a very great Sickness taken by Surfeit: Or lastly, by over-hard Riding or Labour, whereby his Grease is molten, which falleth down and settleth in his Pasterns and Feet-locks; which doth occasion this Sorrance. The Signs to know it are these; The staring, dividing and curling of the Hair; it beginneth first with a dry Scab upon his Pastern-joints, like unto the Chaps or Chinks, and are in several shapes and forms, sometimes long, sometimes down-right, sometimes overthwart, which will cause the Legs to swell, and be very gourdy, and run with fretting, waterish, matterative and offensive Stuff, which will make him go so lame at the first setting out, that he will be hardly able to go. 'Tis good to clip away his long shaggy Hair from his Pasterns (if he have any) which will in some measure prevent them, or at least curb them.

Sit-fast, or *Stick-fast*, is a hard Knob, which is as hard as a Horn, that grows in a Horse's Skin, under the Saddle, fast to his Flesh, which cometh by a Saddle-Gall or Bruise, which not imposthumating, the Skin falleth dead, and looketh like a hard piece of Leather.

A

A Surfeit is occaſioned by Heats and Colds; The Signs to know it are, He will not thrive, but be gaunt-bellied, and dried up in his Body, and cannot cough but gruntingly; his Coat will ſtand ſtaring, and will not lie ſmooth; ſometimes his Cods will ſwell: And when it falleth out of his Body into his Legs, they will ſwell alſo and ſtink, by reaſon of the thin, moiſt, white, yellow, thick and ſtinking Water or Matter that flows from them, which will make them ſo ſtiff, that he will not be able to go over the Threſhhold.

Not Staling or *Dunging* cometh ſeveral ways, ſometimes by being too high kept, and but little Exerciſe given him; therefore Exerciſe is as wholeſome for a Horſe's Health, as good Food is nouriſhing to his Body; ſometimes it cometh when you ſuddenly travel him, when he hath been newly taken from Graſs, before his Body is emptied of it, and dry Meat put into the room thereof. The Sign to know this Grief is, He will lie down and tumble with extreme Pain, as if he had the Bots.

Staling of Blood, vid. *Piſſing of Blood.*

Sellander is a kind of Scab, and is the ſame with the Mallender, only the difference is, that the Mallender breedeth upon the bending of the Knee, on the inſide of the Fore-legs, and the Sellander is bred on the bending of the Hough in the Legs behind, proceeding both of like Cauſes, and requiring like Cure.

Stinking Breath is occaſioned by means of corrupted and infected Lungs; and you may know it by the Smell. vid. *Lungs infected.*

A Splint in the beginning is a very Griſtle, and will, if let run too long, come to be as hard as a Bone, and will be greater or ſmaller according to the cauſe of its coming, ſometimes as big as a Walnut, ſometimes as big as a Hazle-nut; it is found for the moſt part upon the inſide of the Shank between the Knee and the Foot-lock Joint, and is very hard and difficult to cure; it is ſo painful to him, that it will not only cauſe him to halt, trip, ſtumble, but alſo fall in his Travel: It cometh to him by means of too hard Travel, or ſore Labour, whilſt he is very young, or by oppreſſing him with too heavy a Burden, whereby the tender Sinews of his Legs are offended; it cometh alſo Hereditary, from the Sire or Dam being troubled therewith; and is known by the ſight and feeling, for if you pinch it with your Thumb and Finger, he will ſhrink up his Leg.

Stumbling

Stumbling cometh two ways; First, Naturally, Secondly, Accidentally: Naturally, by reason that the Sinews of the Fore-legs are somewhat strait, so that he is not able to use his Legs with that freedom and nimbleness he should: and to cure him of this Disease, is to cut him of the Cords, *viz.* a Slit made upon the top of his Nose, and with your Cornet raise up the great Sinews, and cut them asunder, and heal it up again with some good Salve, and this will do him no harm but good, for it will give him the use of his Legs so perfectly, that he will seldom or never trip more. Secondly, Accidentally, by either Splint or Wind-galls, or by being foundred, prick'd, stubbed, gravelled, Sinew-strained, hurt in the Shoulder or Withers, or by carelesly setting him up when he is too hot, which maketh him go very stiff, which Stiffness causes Stumbling.

Stavers or *Staggers*, is a Giddiness in the Head, which when it seizeth the Brain, cometh to Madness; it is caused several ways; sometimes by corrupt Blood, or gross and tough Humours oppressing the Brain, and is very common to most Horses, and very dangerous if not taken in time: sometimes it cometh by turning him out too soon to Grass before he be cold, which by hanging down his Head to feed, stireth and maketh thin Humours that fall down to the Head, and so by degrees seizeth the Brain, which bringeth this mortal Sickness; it cometh also by sore Riding and hard Labour; which inflames and putrefies the Blood, and disorders the whole Body; The Signs of this Disease are these, Dimness of sight, Reeling and Staggering of the Horse, who for very Pain will beat his Head against the Walls, and thrust it into his Litter, forsake his Meat, and have waterish Eyes.

Swelled Legs cometh to a Horse several ways, sometimes by hard Riding or sore Labour when he is too fat, and carelesly putting him to grass, or setting him up in the Stable too hot, whereby he taketh cold which causeth the Blood, Grease and Humours to fall down into his Legs; and so cause them to swell, sometimes it cometh by long standing in the Stable, when the Planks where his Fore-feet stand higher than his Hinder-feet doth, which uneasy Posture causeth the Blood to settle in the Hinder-Legs, which causeth them to swell.

Stifled, this Malady cometh to a Horse Accidentally, *viz.* either by some Strain in Leaping, or by a Slip in the Stable

ble, or in his Travel, or by some Stroke or Blow with a Horse, which either puts out the Bone, or much hurts or strains the Joint: The Sign to know it is, by the dislocated Bone bearing it self out, which will make him grow lame, and unwilling to touch the Ground, but only with his Toe, till it be put in again.

Stone cometh many ways, sometimes from the weakness of the Bladder, occasioned by gross and bad Humours, stoping the Water-Conduit, or principally by violent Labour, or immoderate Riding; sometimes it cometh by foul Matter descending from the Liver and Spleen, which falling down into the Kidneys and Bladder, settleth there; whereby there groweth in the Mouth of the Conduit, certain hard inflamed Knobs, which stop his Urine, and cause him to stale with great pain and trouble, by reason the Sinews and Pozes about the Neck of the Bladder are benumbed; which taketh away the sense and feeling of the Bladder, sometimes it cometh by keeping a Horse in his Travel too long from staling, for his Water being over-heated by Exercise doth conglutinate and become so viscous and thick; that Nature cannot discharge it self so freely as it should do, and being pent up too long in his Kidneys, engendereth Gravel, sometimes red, and sometimes grey, which falling down into the Conduits, by mixture of Phlegm and gross Humours, is there brought by Conglutination, to become a hard Stone, which stoppeth the Passage of the Urine, so as he will not be able to piss or stale. The Sign to know this Distemper needs no more than this, That he would fain piss, but cannot, and that many times drop by drop.

String-halt is a sudden Twitching or Snatching up of his Hinder Leg much higher than the other, and cometh most an end to the best mettled Horses. It cometh by taking Cold suddenly after hard Riding or sore Labour, especially if you wash him when he is too hot, which will chill his Blood, and so stupify and benumb his Sinews, that it takes away the Sense and Feeling of that Member.

Strangury, or *Strangullion*, is when a Horse is provoked to stale often, and voids nothing but a few Drops: It cometh several ways, sometimes by hard Riding or sore Labour, which heats and makes sharp the Urine; sometimes by hot Meats and Drinks; sometimes by Ulceration of the Bladder, or by means of some Impostume in the Liver and Kidneys, which being broken, the Matter falleth down

into

into the Bladder, and with the ſharpneſs thereof, cauſeth a continual provocation of Piſſing, which will be with ſuch pain, that he will whisk, wry, and beat about his Tail as he piſſeth.

The Strangle is not, as ſome ſuppoſe, a Quinſey, but an Inflammation of the Throat, proceeding from ſome cholerick or bloody Fluxion, which cometh out of the Branches of the Throat-veins into thoſe parts, and there breedeth ſome hot Inflammation, ſtirred up by a hard cold Winter, or by Cold taken after hard Riding or Labour. 'Tis a great and hard Swelling between the Horſe's nether Chaps, upon the Roots of his Tongue, and about his Throat, which Swelling, if it be not prevented, will ſtop his Wind-pipe, and ſo ſtrangle or choak him: The Signs to know this Diſeaſe are, His Temples of his Head will be hollow, his Tongue will hang out of his Mouth, his Head and Eyes will ſwell, and the Paſſage of his Throat be ſo ſtopped that he can neither eat nor drink, and his Breath will be very hot.

Swaying in the Back cometh ſeveral ways; ſometimes by ſome great Strain, Slip or heavy Burden; ſometimes by turning him too haſtily round: His Grief commonly lieth upon theſe kind of Strains and Wrenches, and the lower part of the Back below his ſhort Ribs, and directly between his Fillets. You may perceive it by the reeling and rolling of his hinder parts in his going, and being ready to fall to the Ground by his frequent ſwaying backward and ſide-long; and when he is down, 'tis a great deal of trouble for him to riſe again.

Shoulder-pinch'd cometh either by labouring or ſtraining him too young, or by putting too great a Burden upon his Back. You may know it by the Narrowneſs of the Breaſt, and by the Conſumption of the Fleſh of the Shoulders, inſomuch as the fore-part of the Shoulder-bone will ſtick out, and be higher than the Fleſh. And if it be of a long ſtanding, he will be very hollow upon the Brisket, towards the Arm-holes, and will go wider beneath at the Feet, than above at the Knees. The Cure I ſet down here, becauſe it is not in the place of Cures: 'Tis this, Give him a ſlit with a ſharp Knife an Inch long, upon both ſides, an Inch under the Shoulder-bone; then with a large Quill put into the ſlit, blow up firſt one Shoulder, and then the other, as big as you can poſſibly, even up to the Withers, and with your Hand ſtrike the Wind equally into every

place

place of the Shoulders, and when they be both full, beat all the windy places, with a good Hazel-wand over all the Shoulder; then with a flat Slice of Iron loosen the Skin within from the Flesh: then rowel the two Slits or Cuts with two round Rowels made of the upper Leather of an old Shoe, with a hole in the midst, that the Corruption may issue forth; and let the Rowels be three Inches broad, and put in flat and plain within the Cut; then make a Charge and lay upon the same. Look in the Table for a Charge, and there you may take your Choice.

Shoulder-wrench or *Strain* cometh several ways, sometimes by turning or stopping too suddenly upon some uneven Ground, sometimes by running hastily out at some Door, sometimes by slipping or sliding in the Stable or abroad, sometimes by the stroak of another Horse, and sometimes by fall on the Planks or slippery Ground. You shall perceive it by his trailing his Leg upon the Ground close after him.

Shoulder-splaiting or *Shoulder-torn*, cometh by some dangerous sliding, either abroad or at home, whereby the Shoulder parteth from the Breast, and so leaves an open Rift, not in the Skin, but in the Flesh and Film next under the Skin; which maketh him so lame that he is not able to go. You may know it by the trailing of his Leg after him in his going.

Shoulder-pight is, when the Shoulder-point or Pitch of the Shoulder is displaced by some great Fall, Rack or Strain. You may know it by this; His Shoulder-point will stick out further than his Fellow; and besides, he will halt downright.

Spaven-blood or *Bone*, vid. *Blood or Bone-Spaven.*

Shrow-running, vid. *Planet-Struck.*

T.

Tongue-hurt cometh by accident, or with a Bit, Halter or the like.

Tetter, *Flying-worm* or *Ring-worm*, is a very evil Sorrance, which runneth up and down the Skin of a Horse's Body, from whence it bears its Name: It cometh to him several ways; sometimes by Heat in the Blood, which engendreth a sharp and hot Humour; sometimes by bad and foul feeding: It is most commonly found in his Rump, which runneth down his Joints till it comes into his Tail, and if it continue there long it will turn to a Canker; But yet sometimes it will settle upon some fleshy part of his Body,

Walls

which will so trouble him with itching and rubbing against Walls and Posts, that he will bring away the Hair, yea, and the Skin and Flesh with his Teeth, if he can come at it, so violent is his Itching. You may know it by the falling away of the Hair, by its continual rubbing, but if it get into the Joint between the top of the Rump and the Tail then it is known by a Scab, which you may feel with your Finger, and if you scrape or pick it away, there will come out of it by little and little a thin Water, which being let run too long, will in time run into his Tail, and become a Canker, as I said before.

Trunchions are Worms in shape, short and thick, and of a pretty bigness, which have black and hard Heads. *vid.* more for *Bots:* and there you may find all the kinds of them that do engender in a Horse's Body.

V.

Vives, Avives or *Fives*, are all one Disease: They are certain flat Kernels, much like unto Bunches of Grapes, which grow in a Cluster close knotted together in the grieved place. They center from the Ears, and creep downwards between the Chap and the Neck of the Horse toward the Throat; and when they come to inflame, they will swell, and not only be painful to the Horse, but prove mortal by stopping his Wind, unless you take a speedy course for the Cure of him: 'Tis commonly Rankness of Blood that is the Cause of this Infirmity. When you go about the Cure of them, have a care you touch them not with your Fingers, for that will venom them.

W.

Wind-broken, or *Broken-wind*, cometh to a Horse, when you let him stand long in the Stable without Exercise, and with foul Food, whereby gross and thick Humours are drawn into his Body so abundantly, that sticking to the hollow places of the Lungs they stop up his Wind-pipe, that the Wind cannot get backward nor forward: sometimes it cometh to a Horse when you run him off his Wind, when he is very fat and foul: You may know it by his heaving and drawing together of his Flanks, and by blowing wide his Nostrils.

Wart or *spungy Excrescence* growing near to the Eye, doth come from condensed Phlegm residing there, which in time causeth the Eye, either to consume or to grow little, if it be not remedied.

A Wen

A Wen is a hard riſing out of the Fleſh, like a Tumor and Swelling, and is of ſeveral ſizes, ſometimes great, ſometimes ſmall; ſome are painful, and ſome are not painful: They proceed from groſs and vitious Humours, binding together in ſome ſick part of the Body, but moſt commonly by ſome Stroke, Bruiſe, Blow, or a Stone thrown at that place. It is outwardly Fleſh, but towards the Root it is matterative.

Wind-galls are Bladders full of corrupt Jelly, which being let forth is thick, and of the Colour of the Yolk of an Egg; they are ſometimes great, and ſometimes ſmall, and grow upon each ſide of the Fet-lock Joints upon all four Legs, and are ſo painful to him, eſpecially in the Summer-ſeaſon, when the Weather is hot, and the Ways hard, that they make him not only halt downright, but ſometimes fall: They come for the moſt part from extream Labour and Heat, whereby the Humours being diſſolved, do flow and reſort into the hollow places about the nether Joints, and there ſettle; which is the Occaſion of this evil Malady.

Wolfes-teeth are two ſmall Teeth growing in the upper Jaws, next unto the great grinding Teeth, which are ſo painful to him, that he cannot endure to chew his Meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his Mouth or to keep it ſtill half-chewed.

Worms, vid. *Bots*. And there you may find all ſorts of them that breed in a Horſe's Body, and how you may diſtinguiſh them one from another.

Wind-cholick, vid. *Cholick*.

Wrench in a Horſe's Back, *vid.* Flanks.

The Womb of a Mare is ſubject to many Diſeaſes, *viz.* Aſcent, Deſcent, Falling out, Convulſion, Barrenneſs, Abortion, *&c.* She may be barren through the Untemperateneſs of the Womb or Matrix, as for that it is too hot and fiery, or elſe too cold and moiſt, or elſe too dry, or elſe too ſhort, or too narrow, or having the Neck thereof turned awry, or by means of ſome Obſtruction or Stopping in the Matrix, and that the Mare is too fat, or too lean, or ſometimes for want of being well horſed. The Cure is, *Take a good Handful of Leeks well ſtamped in a Mortar, with half a Glaſs full of Whitewine, then put to it twelve Flies called Cantharides, then ſtrain all together with a ſufficient quantity of Water, that may ſerve her therewith two days together, by pouring the ſame into her Nature with a*

Horn or Gliſter-pipe made of purpoſe, and at the end of three days next following, offer the Horſe unto her that he ſhould cover her, and immediately after ſhe is covered, waſh her Nature twice together with cold Water. Or take Nitrum, Sparrows-dung and Turpentine, of each a like quantity wrought together, and made like a Suppoſitory, and put into her Nature, which cauſeth her to deſire the Horſe, and alſo to conceive.

Y.

Yellows in a Horſe is the ſame that the Phyſicians do call the Jaundice in a Man, and there are two kinds of them, the yellow and the black; the yellow being moiſt, and the black dry. The yellow proceeds from the overflowing of the Gall, occaſioned by Choler; and the black cometh from the overflowing of the Spleen, proceeding from Melancholy; which are both dangerous Infirmities, but the black is moſt deadly and mortal. The yellow is diſcovered by the changing his natural Colour from white to yellow, *viz.* The Balls of his Eyes, the Tongue, the inſide of his Lips and inward parts of his Noſtrils are coloured yellow. The black Jaundice is diſcovered by the quite contrary Symptomes; for having this Diſeaſe, the Whites of his Eyes, Tongue, Mouth and Lips will be of a duskiſh Colour, and not ſo clear and ſanguine as before: And though this Diſtinction of the yellow and black Jaundice be ſtrange to ſome Farriers, yer it is moſt certain, that when a Horſe dieth of the Yellows, he dieth of the black Yellows; for when it cometh unto the caſe of Mortality, then are all the inward parts converted to Blackneſs, and the yellow Subſtance is clean maſtered. The Origin of this Malady cometh principally from unnatural Heats given him by hard Riding or Labour, which inflames the Liver, Gall, Blood and Spleen; which cauſeth Choler to have the Sovereignty and Dominion over the Humours, which occaſions this Diſeaſe, which endeth in a ſudden Death, if not timely prevented.

Yard mattering or *mattering of the Yard*, cometh moſt commonly in covering time, by his over-freeneſs in ſpending upon Mares, when the Horſe and Mare are both too hot, doth burn them, giving him the Running of the Reins, as we truly term it. The Signs to know it are, The Falling down of yellow Matter from the Yard, and a Swelling at the

the end thereof, and when he ſtaleth, he will do it with a great deal of pain, and cannot well draw up his Yard again.

Yard fallen down, or *Falling down of the Yard*, cometh to him for want of ſtrength, to draw it up within the Sheath; ſo that he lets it hang down between his Legs: It is occaſioned either through the weakneſs of that Member, or by means of ſome Reſolution in the Muſcles and Sinews ſerving the ſame, cauſed by ſome violent Slip, Strain or Stroke in the Back, or elſe by ſome great Wearineſs and Tyring.

FINIS.

An Alphabetical

TABLE

Of the

Principal Matters

Contained in this

BOOK.

A.

Accidents, *Certain Observations and Advantages for every Feeder to observe in many of them.* Page 51

Accloyed, vid. *Prick'd.*

Accopium, *a Drink, with the Virtues and Nature of it.* 139

Aches, *general Simples good for them.* 249

Adders-Tongue-*Ointment to make.* 304

Advancing. 31

Ægyptiacum *to make.* 141

Age *of a Horse, the way to know it.* 71

Aloes, *an Advertisement about the several sorts of them.* 242

Ambling,

Ambling, *Observations on it.* 54
By the ploughed Field. 55
By the Gallop. ib.
By Weights. ib.
In Hand. 56
By the help of Shoes. ib.
By the help of fine Lifts. ib.
By the Hand only. 57
By the Tramel. ib.
The best way for it. 58
Anbury *cured.* 300
St. Anthony's *Fire, general things good for the Cure of it.* 250
A particular Receipt for it. ib.
Anticor, *or Heart-sickness, general things good for the Cure of it.* 251
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Antimony, *crude or raw.* 248
Apoplexy, *vid.* Palsy.
Arman, *a Confection, with the Virtues of it.* 140
Arraistes. 410
Attaint, *Upper or Nether, general things good for the Cure of it.* 251
Particular Receipts for it. ib.

B.

Back, *how to be look'd to.* 17
Galled to cure. 305
Wrench'd, general things good for the Cure of it. 324
Swayed to cure. 435
Backing. 28
Balls *Cordial.* 136
Bangle *Ears how to help.* 136
Barbes *cured.* 325
Barley *boyled very good.* 21
A Bath *for swelled Cods.* 421
For Bones broken and out of joint. 428
Baths *of all sorts.* 153
Bewitched, *general Simples good for it.* 170
Binding *Simples in general.* 332
Biting of a mad Dog, *general things good for it.* 337
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Bitting. 32

Bleeding, *general Simples good to ſtanch it.* 330
Particular Receipts for it. 331
Bliſters *cured.* 424
Blooding, *when the beſt time for it.* 22, 81
Obſervations upon it. 98
Swelling after it to cure. 412
Blood-Spaven, *things good for the Cure of it.* 280
Bloody-Flux, *things good for it.* 334
Bones, *how many a Horſe hath, and where ſituated.* 80
Broken and out of Joint cured. 427
Bone-Spaven *cured.* 281, 413
Botch *in the Groin to cure.* 423
Bots *or Worms, general things good to deſtroy them.* 327
Particular Receipts for them. 328
Bread, *to keep a Horſe in heart.* 130
Another ſort. ib.
Breath *ſhort, general Simples good to help it.* 263, 271
Breed. 64
Breeding, *the beſt manner of it.* 4
Broken-wind *to help.* 263, 269
Bruiſes *or Swellings, general Simples good for the Cure of them.* 307
Particular Receipts for them. 308
Bruiſes *and Strains, Obſervations upon the Cure of them.* 316
Burning *of a Mare.* 6
Burning. 99
Actual and Potential. 101
Burning *or Scalding, general things good for the Cure of it.* 414
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Burſting, *things good for it.* 422
Buying *a Horſe, Obſervations and Advertiſements about it.* 63
The End for which. ib.

C.

Camery. 325
Canker *cured.* 264, 326, 343
Caſting *and Overthrowing a Horſe.* 174
Caſting *forth of his Drink to cure.* 417
Cauſtick. 130, 164
Cauterizing. 99
Cautery *Potential.* 129
Charges *of ſeveral ſorts.* 148

Choice

Choice *of a Horse for the Wars.* 14
For a Prince's Seat. ib.
For Travel. ib.
For Hunting. ib.
For Running. 15
For the Coach. ib.
For the Pack. ib.
For the Cart and Plough. ib.
Cholick *or Stone, general Simples good for the Cure of it.* 393
Particular Receipts for it. 394
Cleansers. 373
Cleansing *a Horse.* 76
Clifts *and Cracks in the Heels.* 433
Cods *swelled to cure.* 420
Coiling *the Stud.* 11
Colds *and Coughs, general Simples good for the Cure of them.* 258
Particular Receipts for them. 259
Colours *of a Horse in Verse.* 2
A Proverb amongst Husbandmen on them. 3
What are best. 14
Colt-Evil, *general things good for the Cure of it.* 357
Colts, *Taming of them.* 10
The time to break them. ib.
To Saddle and Bridle them. 27
Complexion *of a Horse.* 83
Compounds, *the way of making and keeping all necessary ones.* 441
Comprehensive *Terms explained.* 246
Conglutinating *Simples.* 166
Consumption, *general Simples good for the Cure of it.* 258, 268, 360
Cooling *Simples.* 180, 431
Copperas-*Water.* 157
Cordial *Powders to make.* 141
Cordials *and Strengthners of Nature.* 171
Cords, *which is Stumbling, general things good for the Cure of it.* 370
Corrections *from the Voice, from the Rod,* &c. 29
Corrosives. 99, 164
Costiveness *to help.* 415
Covering, *Observations upon it.* 5
After the Change of the Moon. ib.
In the Wane. ib.

Cramps, *or Convulsions; general things good to help them.* 257
Particular Receipts for them. ib.
Crepances. 286
Creſt *fallen rais'd up again.* 419
Crick *in the Neck, general Things good for it.* 418
Crown-ſcab, *general Things good for it.* 405
Curb *to cure.* 285

D.

Decoction, *what it is.* 165
Diahexaple, *a Drink, with the Virtues of it.* 88
Diapente, *a Drink.* 88
Diateſſaron *made.* 89
Diſeaſes, *An Alphabetical Table of them.* 462
Drawers *forth of any Stub, Thorn or Nail.* 369
Drenches *in general.* 142
Drenching, *Directions for it.* 240
Dreſſing *a Horſe.* 19
Upon Travel and Reſt. 22
Driers *up of all manner of moiſt Humours.* 370
Drink *very comfortable.* 148
Operative. ib.
Drinks *given when you neither haue Diateſſaron, Diahexaple nor Diapente.* 90
Dropſy, *general things good for it.* 395
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Drugs, *the Nature of the principal Sorts of them.* 105

E.

Ears *impoſtumated, general things good for them.* 378
Particular Receipts for them. ib.
Eating and Drinking *not good for a Horſe when hot.* 17
Election *of Horſes for War, for Swiftneſs, for Travel, and for Draught.* 12, 13
How divided. 64
Elements, *their Nature.* 81
Exerciſe *very good.* 19
Eyes, *general things good for all the Diſeaſes of them.* 310
Particular Receipts good for them. 313

F.

Falling-Evil, *general things good for it.* 256, 433
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Falling *of the Fundament, things good for it.* 336
Falling *of the Yard to cure.* 359

False-Quarters *cured.* 363
Farcin, *general things inwardly given for the Cure of it.* 349
General things apply'd outwardly for the Cure of it. 350
Particular Receipts for the Cure of it. ib.
Fattening *a lean Horse in* 12 *or* 15 *Days.* 138
Fattening *things in general.* 162
Feeding *betimes.* 17
Feet, *not to stop them with Cow-dung till they be cold.* ib.
To be picked after Travel. 21
Feltick, *vid.* Galled Back.
Fevers, *how to know every Sort one from another.* 145
General Simples good for them. 347
Particular Receipts for them. 348
Fig *to cure.* 424
Fistula *to cure.* 344
Flanks, *vid.* Wrench.
Flaps *cured.* 460
Flies *to keep from coming to a Horse.* 401
Foaling *in the Winter-Season.* 9
Foals, *how long to run with their Dams.* 8
To know the true Shape, Spirit and Height of them. 10
Weaning of them. ib.
Dead to expel. 167
Foundering, *general things good for it.* 292
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Frounce *to cure.* 325
Frush, *running or rotten, to cure.* 355.

G.

Gall overflowed, *things good for it.* 356
Galled Back *to cure.* 305
Galloping. 65
Gangrene *cured.* 356
Garded *or swelled Legs cured.* 323
Gelding *of Horse-Colts.* 6
Of Horses, how, and in what Season best. 134
Gigges *to cure.* 460
Girts. 17
Glanders, *general things good for them.* 273
Particular Receipts for them. ib.
Stopt for present Sale. 455
Glister *Laxative.* 103
Restringent. 104
For a fat Horse that cannot be kept clean. ib.
In case of a desperate Sickness. ib.

For the Peſtilence and all Fevers. ib.
For the Cholick. 105
Gliſters, *their Uſes.* 101
For Coſtiveneſs. 103
Advice upon giving of them, and what is to be put into them. 105
What they are. 165
Graſs *good once a Year*, &c. 19
Graveling, *general things good for it.* 395
Greaſe-*Molten, general things good for it.* 396
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Fallen into the Legs to cure. ib.
Green *Ointments.* 156
Griping *of the Guts, general things good for it.* 393
Particular Receipts for it. 394
Groom, *Care in the Choice of one.* 25, 26
Grounds, *the Change of them.* 4

H.

Hair *made ſmooth, ſleek and ſoft.* 173
Made to grow. 375
Shedding of it to prevent. 374
To take away. ib.
Made black. 375
Made yellow. ib.
Halting *where to find.* 115
To cure. 317
Hardneſs *mollified.* 399
Head *perfumed.* 155
Purged. ib.
Health, *twelve Cauſes of it.* 85
Heam *to expel.* 170
Heats, *four Conſiderations in giving them.* 43
Helps, *from the Voice, from the Rod*, &c. 29
Hens-dung *ſwallowed to cure.* 417
Hide-bound, *general things good for it.* 277
Particular Receipts for it. 278
Hip-ſhot. 433
Hoofs, *the ſeveral kinds of them.* 118
Of paring them. 119
All the Imperfections of them cured. 363
Horſe-bread *very good Food.* 18
Horſeman's *Rule in Verſe.* 21
Horſe-ſpice *how made.* 115

Horſe-

Horse-Treacle, *how made.* 39
Hough-bony *cured.* 424
Humours *four.* 82
Drove back; Dissolved. 372
Dried up. 370, 373
Stopped. 372
Made thin. ib.
Purged. 373
Hungry-Evil. 417
Hurle-bone *out of joint cured.* 433

I.

Imposthumations, *general Simples good for them.* 376
Particular Receipts for them. 377
Impostumated *Ears, general things good for them.* 378
Particular Receipts for them. ib.
Inflammations, *things good for them.* 376
Interfering *to cure.* 306
Joints, *general things good for any Ach or Numbness, Weakness or Swelling in them.* 249
Particular Receipts for the same. ib.
Comforted after Travel, Cold or Pain. 279

K.

Kib'd *Heels.* 286
Kidneys *that have Ulcers in them cured.* 391
Bruised, what is good for them. 400
Knitting *Simples.* 166
Knots *in the Joints, general and particular Receipts good for them.* 424

L.

Labour *moderate, when the Weather is extreme hot or cold.* 18
Lameness, *Observations for it.* 51
Lampas. 325
Lask *or Looseness stopt.* 332
Legs *bathed with cold Water, good to prevent Scabs and Swellings.* 21
Swelled, general and particular things good for them. 309, 323
Leprosy *or Mange, general things good to kill it.* 402
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Lessons, *for a Horse.* 29
Lethargy, *general things good for it.* 384

Lice *killed.*
Lighting *at every steep Hill very good.* 401
Litter, *Wheat-straw and Oat-straw best for it.* 20
Liver *preserved.* 18
Loosening *things in general.* 362
Lungs, *general things good for them.* 162
Particular Receipts good for them. 361
Lust *to provoke.* ib. 167

M.

Mallender, *general things good for it.* 296
Particular Receipts for it. 297
Mange. 402
Mare, *what time best for her to take Horse.* 6
How long she goes with Foal. ib.
How to order her before she be cover'd. ib.
The manner how to cover her, and to know whether she stands to her Covering. 7
How to order her after she is cover'd. ib.
How to help her if she cannot Foal. ib.
How to order her after Foaling. 8
To know whether she be with Foal or not. 13
To make her conceive a Male-Foal. ib.
Mares, *Choice of them.* 5, 12
Age of them. 5
How many for one Horse. 7
When fit to take Horse. 9
Barren ones. 11
General Observations concerning them. ib.
Infirmities of them to cure. 359
Mares-*Milk to drink.* 20
Mash *how made.* 109
Mattering *of the Yard.* 358
Meat *and Drink.* 51
How a fat Horse is to have it. 20
Medicaments *hot.* 449
Cold. 451
Purging. 452
Altering. 453
Mellet *cured.* 423
Members, *the principal in a Horse.* 77
Milk *to cause.* 168
Mithridate, *how made.* 89
Mouthing. 27

Mouth-sore, *things good for it.* 400
Mud-wall, *naught to be nigh a Horse.* 19
Muzzle, *the Use of it.* 44

N.

Nature *of a Horse in general.* 13
Navel-gall, *general things good for it.* 383
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Neighing *to prevent, either in Company or when ridden.* 136
Night-Mare. 256

O.

Oil *of Oats.* 147
Of Camomile. 245
Of Spike. 246
Of Mastick. ib.
Ointments, *Salves, Powders and Waters.* 149
Green to make. 156
General Simples good to put into them. 301
Old *Horses made seemingly young.* 135
Ordering *a Horse for the Wars.* 16
For a Prince or great Lady's Seat. ib.
Of Travelling Horses at home and abroad. ib.
Of Hunting Horses. 22
Of Running Horses. ib. & 38
Of Coach-Horses. 23
Of the Pack and Cart-Horse. ib.

P.

Pace. 64
Pains, *vid.* Scratches. 286, 343
Palsy. 256, 384
Perfumes. 155
Phrenzy, *things good for it.* 385
Physical *Observations.* 458
Physicking *of Horses.* 96
Pills *of all sorts.* 111
Purging. 152
What they are for. 165
Pissing *of Blood, general Simples good for it.* 340
Particular Receipts for it. 341
Plague, *general things good for it.* 339
Particular Receipts for it. 340
Planets, *their Names.* 81

Planet-ſtruck, *general Simples good for it.* 256
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Plaſter *to diſſolve and take away evil Humours, which ſhall at any time fall down into the Legs of a Horſe.* 153
To dry up any ſuperfluous Moiſture, and to bind parts looſened. 371
To lay upon the Wound to keep in the Tent or Salve. 411
To dry up any Swelling, &c. 371
Poiſon *of all ſorts expelled.* 338
Poll-Evil, *general things good for it.* 342
Particular Receipts for it. ib.
Potion, *what it is.* 165
Powder *made of Honey and Lime, that will dry up any Wound or Ulcer.* 148
Powders *Cordial how to make.* 141
Prick'd. 431
Proud *Fleſh to eat away.* 298
Provender, *what things good to ſtrew amongſt it.* 309
More Obſervations concerning it. 19
Purgation *for a Horſe that is ſick of Greaſe or Coſtiveneſs.* 412
Purgations *and their ſeveral Uſes.* 108
Purgers *of the Head.* 155
Purging *or ſcouring Simples in general.* 159
Purgings *of all ſorts.* 165
Purfineſs, *general Simples good for it.* 271
Particular Receipts for it. 272
Putrefactives. 130, 164
Puncture, *or green Wound.* 299

Q.

Quarters-*falſe to amend.* 363
Quick-ſcab. 434
Quinſey, *general things good for it.* 400
Quitter-bone, *general things good for it.* 385
Particular Receipts for it. 386

R.

Racking. 65
Raking *of a Horſe.* 97
Red-Water, *general and particular Receipts for it.* 388
Reſt, *too much of it naught.* 21
Retiring. 31
Rhubarb, *its Nature.* 106
Rider, *how he ought to be qualified.* 25

Riding *softly very good.* 21
Who first invented it. 136
Ring bone, *general and particular Receipts good for it,* 386
Ring-worm, *Receipts for it.* 404
River-Water *not so good as standing Water.* 18
Roots. 437
Rot *cured.* 435
Rowelling *of Horses.* 131
Rubbing *very good for a Horse.* 21
Run-away *Jade how to cure.* 34
Running *and rotten Frush to cure.* 355
Running *of the Reins.* 358
Ruptures. 422

S.

Saddle, *to be well look'd to.* 21
Not to be presently taken off, when hot. 18
Salves. 149
Scab, *general and particular Receipts good for it.* 404
Scaldings *by Shot, Gun-powder or Wild-Fire.* 414
Scouring *things in general.* 159
Scourings, *what they are.* 110
By Grass, by Sorrage, by Sallow and Elm, by Thistles and Malt. ib.
Of a little stronger Nature. ib.
Of all sorts for Running Horses, &c. 160
Scratches, *general and particular Receipts good for them.* 286
Sellander, *general and particular Receipts good for it.* 296
Shackle-gall *to help.* 306, 310
Shapes *of a Horse.* 2, 3
Shedding *of the Seed, general things good for it.* 358
Shoeing *all manner of Hoofs.* 118
The perfect Hoofs and fore Feet. 120
The rough and brittle Hoof. 122
The long Hoof. ib.
The crooked Hoof. 123
The flat Hoof. ib.
The over-hollow Hoof. 124
The Hoof that hath the broad Frush ib.
The Hoof that hath the narrow Heel. ib.
The hinder Feet. ib.
The Hoof that hath a false Quarter. 125
The Hoof that is Hoof-bound. ib.
For Interfering. ib.

Shoes

Shoes, *to be look'd to.* 17
With Calkins, Rings, Welts and turning Vices. 126
Shortneſs *of Breath.* 263, 271
Shoulder-pight *to cure.* 460
Shoulder-Splaiting. 459
Shoulder-ſtrain *or Sprain.* 381
Sick *Horſes how ordered.* 243
Sickneſs *dangerous, how it cometh.* 85
Accidental. 87
Cured when it cometh, and prevented before it comes. ib.
Signs *of Diſeaſes in a Horſe.* 86, 90
Signs *of the Zodiack, and Government of them.* 81
Simples, *general Notes concerning ſome of them.* 76
How mixed. 97
Certain Principles concerning them. 175
Purging. 179
Binding. ib.
Hot. 179, 430
Cooling. 180, 431
An Alphabetical Table of them, ſhewing their Nature, Temperature and Virtue. 181
The way of gathering, drying and preſerving them and their Juices. 437
Sinews *of a Horſe, their Number.* 78
Cut, prick'd, bruiſed or ſhrunk, general things good for them. 406
Sit-faſt, *general things good for it.* 383
Sores *of all ſorts to waſh.* 168
Sorrances. 99
Spaven-blood *to cure.* 280
Spaven-bone *to cure.* 281
Spaying *of Mare-Colts.* 6
Spleen. 356
Splint *taken away.* 283
Stable, *Swine and Pullen naught to be nigh it.* 18
The Light of it beſt to be made towards the South and North. ib.
What it ought to be built with. 23
Paving of it better than Planking of it. 24
Staling *of Blood, general and particular Receipts good for it.* 340
Staling *to cauſe when ſtopt.* 388

Stal-

Stallions, *Choice of them.* 5
Stars *white and black, how to make.* 135
Stature. 66
Stavers, *general and particular Receipts good for them.* 252
Stifled *Horse to cure.* 428
Stinging *and Biting of venomous Beasts.* 171
Stomach, *to get a Horse one.* 17
Stomach *hot to help.* 279
Cold to help. 280
Stone, *general and particular Receipts good for it.* 391
Stone-Cholick, *general and particular Receipts for it.* 393
Stopping. 31
Strains *of all sorts to cure.* 318
Strangury *or Strangullion.* 391
Strangles, *general and particular Receipts good for them.* 379
String-halt. 370, 429
Stubborn *Horse to be made to go.* 174
Stumbling, *vid.* Cords.
Suppositories, *the several sorts of them.* 106
Suppository, *what it is.* 106, 165
One for inward Sickness. 144
Surbated, *things good for it.* 405
Surfeits, *general and particular Receipts good for them.* 398
Swayed *Back.* 435
Sweat *to cause.* 169
Swelled *Cods, general and particular Receipts for them.* 420
Swelled *Legs of all sorts to cure.* 309, 323
Swellings *of all sorts to cure.* 168
Dissolved without breaking. 305
By Blood-letting. 412

T.

Teeth, *all the Infirmities if them cured.* 418
Terms *of Art to commend a Horse.* 4
Tetter-scab, *general and particular Receipts good for it.* 404
Tired *Horses to help.* 278
Tongue *hurt to cure.* 407
Tramel, *Errors in it.* 57
The Form of it. 59
The true Use of it. 60
When to alter it. 61
Travelling *moderate.* 17
Not to be used too late. 18
A Horse hath good store of Blood after it. 20

Trimming *an unruly Horse.* 174
Trotters *Oil very good to help stiff Limbs.* 21
Trotting. 64
Turnings *streight.* 32

U.

Veins, *their Number that you are to take Blood from.* 79
Opened for what use. 79
Taken up. 101
For what Cause they are taken up. 131
Venomed *things.* 407
Viewing *a Horse, how to stand for it.* 66
Vital *Blood.* 78
Vives, *general and particular Receipts for it.* 409
Ulcers, *general and particular Receipts good for them.* 172, 408
In the Kidneys to cure. 391
Unguentum Theriacum. 430
Vomits. 151
Urine *caused to a Horse that cannot stale.* 388

W.

Washing *at the Stable-door very good if necessity requires.* 21
Water-Farcin *a Receipt for it.* 355
Watering *in the Morning.* 17
Wen *taken away.* 300
Wind *to expel.* 170
Wind *preserved.* 271
Wind-broken. 263, 269
Wind-Cholick, *things good for it.* 410
Wind-galls, *general and particular Receipts good for them.* 411
Withers *wrung cured.* 420
Worms *of all sorts killed.* 327
Wounds *cleansed before you dress them.* 159
How to order and dress in the Cure of them. 303
By Shot cured. 426
Wrench, *things good for it.* 324

Y.

Yard *cleanſed.* 416
Fallen, things good for it. 359
Mattering to cure. 358
Yellows, *general and particular Receipts good for them.* 254
Black, general and particular Receipts good for them. 256

An Alphabetical

TABLE

OF

MEDICINES

Proper for the DISTEMPERS incident to Horfes.

[*N. B.* Such as are not inſerted here, may be found in the *Table of Simples.*]

ANIMALS.

THE Bone *that is found in a* Stag's Heart, *being well dried and beaten to powder, and given in Ale, is very good againſt Poiſon and Peſtilence.*

Cantharides *are* Spaniſh *Flies, that will raiſe Bliſters in any ſound part of the Body, if they be bruiſed and applied.*

Graſhoppers

Grashoppers *bruised and given in Ale or Beer, are very good to ease the griping Pains of the* Guts *and* Bladder. *Every Meadow affords plenty of them.*

Hartshorn-Shavings *resist Poison and the Plague, provoke Urine, and strengthen Nature very much.*

Honey *is a most excellent cleansing thing, and very profitable in all inward Ulcers and Wounds, in what part of the Body soever they be: It also opens the Veins, and strengthens the Reins and Bladder.*

Isinglass *is made of the Skin of Fishes, it is a very great Strengthner of a weak Back, given inwardly, boiled in Milk with some fine* Bole-Armoniack; *if you find it very clear and sweet when you break it, you may conclude that it is very good.*

Ivory burnt *strewed upon a galled Back, or any raw place, drieth and healeth it up.*

Ivory rasped *strengthens the Heart and Stomach, and helps the* Yellows.

Oysters *newly opened and applied to a Pestilential Swelling, draw the Venom out of it.*

A Stag's Pizzel *dried, and the Powder given in Ale, cures the Biting of venomous Beasts, stirs up Lust, and provokes Urine.*

Wax *softens, heals, and fills up Sores with Flesh, put into Ointments and used as a Salve.*

BARKS.

CAssia Lignea *is somewhat more oily then* Cinnamon, *and is much of the virtue of that, only this is loosening, whereas the other is binding.*

Cinnamon *is hot and dry and binding; it strengthens the Stomach, and helps Digestion, Coughs and Defluction of Humours upon the* Lungs, *Dropsy and Pain in pissing. There is hardly a better Remedy to be given to a Mare or Cow that is foaling or calving, to expedite it, and to comfort them after it, than two Drams of the Powder given in* White-Wine *or* Ale.

Pomegranate-Rinds *or* Peell, *cools and binds, and is therefore very good to stay* Fluxes *or* Scourings. *It helps also Digestion, and strengthens the Stomach.*

Tamarisk Bark *is good to strengthen weak and feeble Joints, infused in Ale and given, and the burnt Ashes of it made into an Ointment, and applied to the Place grieved.*

COMPOUNDS *or* ELECTUARIES.

Diascordium *stops* Fluxes, *and mightily strengthens the Heart; it is not so hot, but it may be given to a sick Horse to provoke Sleep; one Ounce of it is enough to give him at a time, dissolved in a Quart of warm Beer.*

Diatessaron, *See the Virtues of it in the* first Part.

London-Treacle *is a very good Cordial; it resists Poison, and is an excellent Antidote against Pestilential Diseases; it strengthens also a cold Stomach, and helps Digestion: You may give him with safety two Ounces of it by it self, or more (according to the Strength and Courage of the Horse) dissolved in a Pint of Sack, or for want of that a Quart of strong Ale or Beer sweetned with Honey. But if you put it into Drenches where there are other Compounds mixed with it, then half the quantity will serve.*

Mithridate *is good against* Poison, *provokes* Sweat, *is good for* Consumptions *and* Colds, *helps the* Cholick, *by expelling the* Wind, *as also* Ulcers *in the* Bladder: *Two or three Drams is enough to give him at a time dissolved in a Quart of Ale or Beer.*

FLOWERS.

Belausi *is a red Flower, and is very binding, and is often given with very good Success to stop Scourings and Bloody-Fluxes.*

Clove-Gilliflowers *strengthens the Heart, Liver and Stomach, provokes Lust, and resists Pestilence. The Gardens do afford them you.*

Melilote *is good for the Reins.*

Stæchas *or* Stœchados *is hot and binding, and opens Stoppings in the Bowels, and is a very great Strengthner of the whole Body. They are not much unlike in Shape and Scent unto* Lavender.

FRUITS.

FRUITS.

Cubebs, *is a kind of* Pepper *that comes out of the* Indies, *is hot and dry in the third Degree; they expel Wind, and cleanse the Stomach from tough and vitious Humours, and provoke Lust.*

Mace *is a great Comforter of the Heart and Spirits.*

Myrtle-berries *are dry in the third Degree; they loosen evil Humours.*

Nutmegs *strengthen the* Brain, Stomach, Liver *and* Body; *they ease* Pain in the Head, *and stop* Lasks *or* Looseness.

Raisins of the Sun *help the Inflammations of the* Breast *and* Liver; *they help* Coughs *and* Consumptions, *and cleanse and loosen the Belly.*

Tamarinds *are cold and dry in the second Degree; they cool the* Blood, Liver *and* Stomach, *and purge* Choler, *and are also good for the* Yellows.

GUMS, Congealed JUICES, and ROZINS.

Acacia *is a small Thorn growing in* Egypt, *out of the Leaves and Fruit whereof is drawn a Juice or Liquor, which being dried is called by this Name; it is cold and very astringent and binding, and therefore is very good to stop* Lasks, Looseness *or* Scouring: *the* Apothecaries *have seldom the right, but instead thereof use the Juice of* Sloes, *which they call by this Name.*

Barbadoes Alloes *hath the same Virtues as* Aloes Succotrina, *but is a great deal stronger, and therefore the better Purge for a Horse of the two; for an Ounce and a quarter of it is a Purge strong enough for the strongest bodied Horse almost that is.*

Benjamin *is a very good Perfume for a Horse's Head that is stuffed with a Cold, the Smoke being received up his Nostrils through a Tunnel, it being strowed upon a Chaffing-dish of Coals.*

Borax *inwardly taken in small quantities, stops* Fluxes *and the* Runing of the Reins, *and being beaten to fine Powder, and put into green Wounds, cureth them speedily; the best is that that comes out of the Silver and Gold Mines.*

Burgundy-Pitch *is good applied as a Plaster, for all Pains coming of* Bruises *or* Dislocations.

Camphire *is cold and dry in the third Degree; if beaten to Powder and mixed with Oil of Olives, and the Temples anointed with it, it eaſeth the Pain in the Head coming of Heat; it takes away alſo any hot Inflammation in the Eyes, and cools any place that 'tis applied to.*

Engliſh Liquorice-Juice *ſtrengthens the Lungs, and helpeth Colds and Coughs, and is better for uſe than the Powder of* Liquorice.

Euphorbium *is a Gum that comforteth Wounds: You may ſee more of the Virtues of it in the* Table of Simples.

Frankincenſe, *applied to the Temples, ſtops the Rheum that flows to the* Eyes, *and alſo is very good to ſtop the Bleeding of* Wounds, *though the* Arteries *be cut, if it be applied to them, made up into a Salve or Ointment.*

Galbanum *is a Gum that is hot and dry, and diſcuſſing; applied to the Shape, it expels the Heam. See more of the Virtues of it in the* Table of Simples.

Gum Arabick *thickneth, cooleth and correcteth ſharp Humours, helpeth Burnings, and keepeth the Place from bliſtering.*

Gum Armoniack, *or* Ammoniack, *ſoftens, draws and heals; diſſolved in Vinegar, and applied plaſter-wiſe, it taketh away Hardneſs in the Fleſh; and made into an Ointment with Sallet-Oil, is good to anoint the ſtiff and wearied Limbs of a Horſe: an Ounce of it made up into a Pill according to Art, looſeneth the Belly, and is good for a Horſe that ſtales Blood.*

Gum Coppal *and* Gum Animæ *are in Nature much alike; it is good for Pains and Megrim in the Head, and to ſtop Defluctions that flow from thence, if it be uſed as* Benjamin: *It is alſo a great Strengthner of the Sinews.*

Gum Coreanna *outwardly applied is very good for* Aches *and* Swellings *in the* Nerves *and* Joints, *and alſo good to draw back Humours from the* Eyes, *ſpread upon a Leather and laid behind his* Ears.

Gum Dragon *is good for Coughs and Diſtillations upon the* Lungs, *and is alſo good put into Poultices to ſodder Wounds together, eſpecially* Nerves *and* Sinews *that be hurt.*

Gum Elemi *is very good for Fractures in the Skull, and alſo for Wounds, and is commonly put into Plaſters for that purpoſe.*

Labdanum *is a Gum that is of a very heating Nature, yet mollifying; it is uſed in Plaſters to open the Mouth of Veins, and is alſo good to keep Hair from falling off, and for Pains in the Ears.*

Manna *is a very safe and gentle Purger, you may give him a quarter of a Pound of it, or more, dissolved in a Pint of Canary, or for want of that a Quart of warm Ale or Beer: It is temperately hot, and cleanseth the Throat and Breast.*

Myrrh *is a Gum that heats and dries, yet opens and softens the Womb, given inwardly, and expels the Heam in Beasts, (which is the same as the After-birth in Women.) It is also very good for* Colds *and* Coughs, *and outwardly applied fills up hollow* Ulcers *with* Flesh. *The Quantity that you may give him inwardly with safety, is about two or three Drams, with other Compounds: You may see more of the Virtue of it if you look in the* Table of Simples.

Olibanum *is hot in the second Degree, and dry in the first; you may give an Ounce of it safely at a time: It helps Looseness and the Shedding of* Seed: *It is also good for* Colds *and* Coughs, *and to make Plasters of.*

Opium *is good to cause Sleep, but be very cautious how you use it; two or three Grains are enough to give him at a time.*

Opoponax *is of a healing, mollifying, digesting Quality.*

Pitch common *mollifieth hard* Swellings, *and bringeth them to Suppuration; it cleanseth* Ulcers, *and filleth them with* Flesh. The Table of Simples *will shew you more of the Use of it.*

Rosins, *all the sorts of them are good to fill up hollow* Ulcers *and* Wounds *with Flesh, and to comfort the Body oppressed with cold Griefs.*

Rosin of Jallop *is a very good Purge for a Horse; but if you think it too dear, you may use the Powder of the Root.*

Sanguis Draconis *in the Lump or in Drops, cools and binds exceedingly, and is very good given inwardly or applied outwardly, for the stopping of* Fluxes of Blood.

Spanish Liquorice-Juice *is of far better Use than the* English, *and hath the same Virtues as the* English, *but is more effectual.*

Stone-Pitch *is very good to strengthen weak and swayed Backs, or Sinew-strains, applied in the nature of a Charge, with other strengthening Gums.*

Storax Calamitis *is a sweet Gum, which helps Coughs and Distillations upon the Lungs. It is also a very good Perfume for Sickness in the Head, to draw away evil Humours from thence.*

Storax Liquid *is much like* Tar: *It is good put into Plasters, to mollify hard* Wounds *and* Swellings.

Tar *is very good for a Cold, given a Horse, mingled with the* Flower of Brimstone, *the Fat of* Rusty Bacon *and* Honey, *made up into Balls with some* Powder of Liquorice. *and given*

ven him for two or three Mornings together: It is also good to put into Salves *for the Cure of Wounds.*

Tartar French *is the Excrements of Wine which ſtick to the Veſſel; it is hot and dry and cleanſeth.*

Turpentine common; *if you intend to cleanſe the Horſe's Reins, being foul, which you may know by the Mattering of his Yard, then make it up into Balls, according to Art, with ſome* Flower *and* Bole-Armoniack, *and give him a Ball of it every Morning till you find him cured.*

MINERALS, METALS, and STONES.

BOle-Armoniack *is a certain red Earth which is cold and dry, and driveth back evil Humours: It is alſo very good to ſtop Bleeding, either inwardly given, or outwardly applied, by ſtrewing the Powder of it upon Wounds. The greateſt is accounted the beſt.*

Flower of Brimſtone *is better than the common* Powder, *for any inward Uſe you apply it to, therefore I adviſe you wherever you meet with any of the common Powder in your Medicaments, take this in the room of the other; the Virtues are the ſame with the common* Brimſtone, *but more effectual in Operation: 'Tis good for* Colds, Coughs *and rotten* Lungs, *as alſo for the* Worms, Yellows *and* Mange.

Iriſh Slate *beaten to a very fine Powder, and about an Ounce of it given in a Quart of warm Ale is very good for a Horſe that hath been bruiſed by Falls.*

Lapis Hæmatites *or* Blood ſtone, *is good to ſtanch Bleeding inwardly and outwardly, being ground very fine, and given him. It hath alſo many other medicinal Virtues.*

Lithargy *of Gold and Silver binds and dries much, it fills up* Ulcers *with Fleſh, and heals them; the gold is accounted the beſt.*

Quickſilver *is good given a Horſe that hath his Guts twiſted by Wind, and is alſo good for the* Farcin; *you may give him with ſafety a quarter of a Pound of it at a time with* Sallet-Oil.

Red Coral *prepared according to Art, that is made into a very fine Powder, and about as much of it as will lie upon a broad Shilling given him in Claret or Beer, ſtops any* Iſſue of Blood, Scouring *or* Running of the Reins, *if it be often repeated: You may ſee more of the Virtues of it in the* Table of Simples.

Red Lead *mixed with* Sallet-Oil, *being beaten to a very fine Powder, and the grieved place where the* Poll-evil *is, anointed with*

with it every day, and heated well in with a hot Fireſhovel, will ſink it.

Sal Armoniack *is hot and dry in the fourth Degree.*

Salt Peter *refined in the Lump evaporateth, it comforteth the Sinews, and taketh away Tiring and Wearineſs.*

Steel-Filings *cleanſe not only the* Reins *and* Bladder *from* Gravel, *but are alſo a great Purifier and Sweetner of the* Blood.

Tutia *is a certain Mineral that is cold in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree, and is very good for the Defects in the* Eyes.

Vitriol, *which we call* Copperas *is of two Kinds,* viz. Vitriol Romanum, *which we call green* Copperas, *and* Vitriol Album, *which we call white* Copperas: *They are both hot and dry, but the white is accounted the ſtronger. They take away Scurfs and kill Scabs, boiled in Spring-water, and the grieved place bathed therewith.*

White Lead *is of a cold, dry and earthy Quality, it helps Inflammations, and dries up evil Humours.*

OILS.

NERVE Oil *is good to ſtrengthen the Nerves and Sinews.*

Oil of ſweet Almonds *helps* Colds *and* Coughs *wet and dry, ſweetned with brown* Sugar-Candy; *it is good alſo for* Ulcers *in the* Bladder *and* Reins, *and is a great Increaſer of* Seed: *If you give it inwardly, uſe new, for it will ſour in three or four Days.*

Oil of Bays *is good for the* Cholick, *and is a ſovereign Remedy for any Diſeaſe in any part of the Body, coming of Wind or Cold, you may ſafely give him four or five Drops of it at a time, in any Compound Medicine appropriated to that Uſe.*

Oil of Euphorbium *helps Sinews and ſtrengthens them, mollifying their Hardneſs.*

Oil of Exeter *is very good for* Strains, *hard* Swellings, Splints, Spavins *and* Bruiſes, *the Places grieved being anointed with it.*

Oil of Peter *is good for the ſame Diſtempers, as the* Oil of Exeter.

Oil of Origanum *is very good for all manner of* Swellings *occaſioned by Bruiſes or Strains in the Nerves and Sinews.*

Oil

Oil of Spike *is alſo good for all manner of* Strains, *whether in the Shoulder or Joints, and alſo for all manner of Swellings in any part of the Body.*

Oil of St. John's-wort *is alſo very good for all* Sinew-Strains *and* Swellings *in any part of the Body.*

Oil of Swallows *is very good to anoint the Sinews of a Horſe that ſtumbles, when they are ſhrunk, to ſtretch and make them give way again; and is alſo good for all manner of* Bruiſes, Sprains, *and* Strains.

Oil of Turpentine *is good for* Swellings, Bruiſes, Strains *and old* Sores *and* Fiſtula's.

OINTMENTS.

Dialthæa *is very good to moiſten hard Wounds, and to ſoften hard Swellings, or any bony Excreſcence in the Fleſh: It is ſometimes given inwardly to a Horſe or Cow, (with very good Succeſs) that is in great danger of his Life, by licking up any venomous or poiſonous thing, either at hay or graſs, or when they have over-gorged themſelves by eating too much delicious Food, as* Clover-graſs, Turnip-tops, *or the like, which will cauſe them to ſwell ſo full, that they will be ready to burſt. If you find him in this deſperate condition, give him according to his Strength and Conſtitution, more or leſs of this Ointment, mixed with the like quantity of* Caſtle-Soap, *diſſolved in ſome warm Beer, and ride or ſtir him afterwards, which will not only make him piſs freely, but alſo cauſe him to ſcour, which is the beſt means I know of to be uſed for the Preſervation of his Life. If you deſire to know for your farther Satisfaction, what things this Ointment is made up with, take this Account of them: They are theſe,* viz. Sallet-Oil, Marſhmallows, Linſeeds, Fenugreek-ſeeds, Bees-Wax, Roſin *and* Turpentine. *If he be a ſtrong, luſty and healthy Horſe, you may venture to give him two Ounces of each: but this I leave to the skilful* Farrier's *Diſcretion.*

Patch *or* Piece-Greaſe, *is made from the Shreds of Shoomakers Leather boiled in Spring-Water, on the top of which ariſes a certain oily unctuous Matter, which they skum off, and boil up with other Ingredients to a Salve. 'Twas many Years ago frequently uſed to liquor Boots and Shoos with, and only made for that purpoſe: But the more skilful in the Art of* Farring *have found out a far better uſe for it,* viz. *The Curing of many outward Diſtempers.* 'Tis

'Tis a most excellent Ointment of it self both for Man or Beast, for all Pains and Aches in the Limbs new or old: as also for all manner of Strains *and* Swellings, *in what part of the Body soever they be: But more powerful and effectual it is in its Operation, for these several Distempers, if it be used according to* Markham's *Direction*, viz. *To melt ten Ounces of it on the Fire, and after you have taken it off, put into it the several Oils here underwritten*, viz.

Oil of Spike *four Ounces.*
Oil of Origanum *one Ounce.*
Oil of Exeter *an Ounce and a half.*
Oil of St. John's-wort *three Ounces.*

Stir all these very well together, and put it up into a Gally-Pot close covered with a Bladder, and Leather over that, and keep it for your Use.

If you cannot get Piece-Grease, *use* Goose-Grease, *but this is not half so powerful in Operation as the other. But this I must needs say of it, it is of such thin and subtile Parts, that it will quickly search to the bottom of the grieved Part.*

Melt your Ointment over the Fire, and anoint the grieved place, and rub and chafe it in very well with your Hand, holding at the same instant before it a hot Brick-bat *or* Fire-shovel *to make it sink in the better.*

Anoint it once in two Days, but rub and chafe it twice or thrice a day, and give him moderate Exercise.

Unguentum Nervinum, *or* Nerve Ointment, *is a most excellent Ointment for all Griefs or Pains in the* Nerves *and* Arteries *coming of Cold, as also for old* Bruises, *dead* Palsies, Chilness, Coldness *or* Numbness *of any particular Member, by hard Travel or otherwise; 'tis indeed a most precious Jewel both for Man or Beast, for any Disease in any part of the Body coming of Cold: It is also very good for the* Wind-Cholick, *if the Body be anointed with it, and it be chafed and heated in very well.*

POW-

POWDER.

CArolina *is a kind of* Sea-Moſs, *that grows upon the Rocks; it is cold, binding and drying, and is good for hot Inflammations, and to kill* Worms, *you may ſafely give him as much of the Powder of it as will lie upon a Shilling in Ale or Beer.*

ROOTS.

ANgelica *ſtrengthens the Heart, and is good againſt* Peſtilence *and* Poiſon.

Ariſtolochia Longa, *or long* Birth-wort, *brings away the Heam in Beaſts (which is the ſame as the After-birth is in Women.)*

Ariſtolochia Rotunda, *or round* Birth-wort, *powdered and given in* Malaga Wine, *is good for* Ruptures. *Both of them reſiſt* Peſtilence *and* Poiſon.

Biſtort *is good againſt* Peſtilence *and* Poiſon, Bruiſes, Fluxes *and* Staling of Blood.

Coſtus Amarus *and* Coſtus Dulcis *are both hot and dry, and are good to bring away* Wind, *given him: And boiled in* Sallet-Oil, *and applied outwardly to any Pain or Grief in the Legs, it eaſeth it.*

Dittany *is hot and dry in the third Degree; it bringeth away the Heam in Beaſts.*

Doronicum Romanum *is hot and dry in the third Degree; it is a great Strengthner of the Heart, and is a very ſovereign Cordial: It preſerves wonderfully againſt* Peſtilence *and* Poiſon, *and is alſo good for the Biting of any venomous Beaſt.*

Hellebore, *black and white: See for* Bears-foot *in the* Table of Simples, *and you ſhall there find the Uſes of them.*

Hermodactils *purge Phlegm from the Joints, and therefore they are good for the Diſeaſes of them. Their Vices you may correct with long* Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, Maſtick, *&c.*

Jallop *powdered, is very good to mix amongſt other Powders, to purge a Horſe (correct it with* Liquorice *Powder to prevent Griping.)*

Mechoacan, *is to be corrected with* Cinnamon; *it is temperate, yet drying; it purgeth* Phlegm *from the Head and Joints:*

Joints: it is also very good for Coughs *and Pains in the* Reins; *and is also good against the most pockey and inveterate* Farcin *that is. You may safely give as much of the Powder of it as will lie upon a Sixpence.*

Meum *is very good given in pestilential Diseases, and is much of the Vertue of* Angelica *Root, and is used in the room of it, when it cannot be got.*

Orice *of* Florence *is hot and dry in the third Degree; it resists* Poison, *and helps* Shortness of Breath.

Polypody *of the Oak, is a great Drier up of superfluous Humors from the Legs, being corrected with* Fennel-seeds, Anniseeds *or* Ginger, *&c.*

Tormentil *is a kind of* Cinquefoil, *and is dry in the third Degree, but moderately hot; it is very good given in pestilential* Diseases, *and for* Poison. *See more of the Usefulness of it in the* Table of Simples.

SEEDS.

BUrdock-seeds, *bruised and given in White-wine or Ale, causeth a Horse to stale freely, that could not stale before.*

Cardamom-seeds, *heat and kill* Worms, *cleanse the* Reins, *and cause a Horse to stale.*

Common Nettle-seeds *provoke Lust, and is a great Fattener of a Horse, given him amongst his Provender.*

Cummin-seeds *heat and dry, they stop* Blood, *expel* Wind, *ease* Pain, *and help the Biting of any venomous Beasts; and being outwardly applied in Plasters, are of a discussing Nature.*

Fennel-seeds *are good for the same purpose as* Burdock-seeds; *they cause also Milk in Mares.*

Fenugreek-seeds *are also of a discussing Nature, they ease Inflammations both internal and external; they are also very good for Colds, given him amongst his Provender, or boiled amongst his Oats, keeping his Body solvable.*

Linseed *hath the same Vertue as* Fenugreek.

Lupines *are a kind of small flat Beans, they ease the Pain of the* Spleen, *kill* Worms, *given inwardly, and being outwardly applied, cleanse filthy* Ulcers *and* Gangrenes, *help* Scabs, Itch *and* Inflammations.

Piony-Seeds *help the* Wild-Mare, Convulsions *and* Falling-Sickness.

Plantain-seeds *are good for the* Plague *and* Pestilence.

Poppy-seeds, *white and black, provoke Sleep.*

SPI-

SPIRITS.

SPirit of Lavender *is a most excellent Cordial, and may serve in the room of many more; you may give half an Ounce of it in a Quart of warm Ale or Beer sweetned with Honey or common Treacle.*

WOODS.

LIgnum vitæ *is a great Drier up of evil Humours, causeth Sweat, resists Putrefaction, and is good for the pockiest* Farcin *that is; as also for all manner of* Scabs, Ulcers *and* Leprosy, *given inwardly in the nature of a Diet-drink, not exceeding a Quart of it at a time.*

Saunders, *white, yellow and red, are all cold and dry in the second and third Degree; they stop Defluctions from any part of the Body, help Inflammations, and cool the Heat of* Fevers; *the yellow is accounted the best, but the red is good enough to use for Horses. See more of the Virtues of them in the* Table of Simples.

Saffafras *is a very large and fair Tree growing in* Florida, *and smells very much like unto* Fennel; *it is hot and dry in the second Degree, and is also a great Drier up of evil Humours. The Decoction of it, or some of the Chips with* Lignum vitæ *boiled in a Horse's Drink that is given for the* Farcin, *is a great Furtherer of the Cure. It is very good also to open Obstructions and Stoppings in the Stomach, and is a great Strengthner of the Breast, if it be weakned through Cold.*

The End of the TABLE.